

KOREAN

BASIC COURSE

Volume 1



This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

B. NAM PARK

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

WASHINGTON, D.C.

1968

DEPARTMENT OF STATE

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
BASIC COURSE SERIES
Edited by
AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office Washington, D.C. 20402

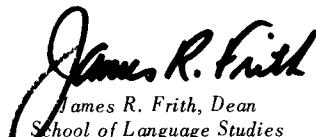
KOREAN BASIC COURSE

P R E F A C E

FSI Korean Basic Course, Volume 1, provides introductory materials in modern spoken Korean for the student who wishes to achieve a working command of the language currently spoken by an estimated 40 to 43 million people on the Korean peninsula and in Japan, Manchuria and the Soviet Union.

B. Nam Park, supervisor of Korean language instruction at FSI, is the principal author of the text. Richard B. Noss gave general direction to the project; James C. Bostain reviewed the English portions of the text for style and clarity of expression; Chunghwa T. Kay, Korean instructor, worked closely with the author in the classroom testing, revision and tape recording and also typed the Korean version of the dialogues and the glossary; Evelyn C. Vass did the final typing of the English portions. The tape recordings which accompany this volume were produced in the Foreign Service Institute studios with the technical assistance of Jose M. Ramirez.

The Foreign Service Institute gratefully acknowledges the financial assistance of the U.S. Office of Education which has made the preparation and publication of this volume possible.



James R. Frith
James R. Frith, Dean
School of Language Studies
Foreign Service Institute
Department of State

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PREFACE.....	iii
INTRODUCTORY UNIT	
Introduction.....	1
Organization and Use of This Course.....	2
Romanization.....	5
Korean Orthography (Hankil).....	6
Special Symbols.....	6
Pronunciation.....	7
Basic Syllable Chart.....	9
Syllable Final Consonant Chart.....	11
UNIT 1. GREETINGS	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	19
Additional Greeting Expressions.....	25
Notes on Dialogues.....	25
Grammar Notes.....	27
1. The Verbals and the Copula.....	27
2. Particles <u>in/nin</u> , <u>il/ill</u> , <u>e</u>	28
3. Nouns and Noun Phrases.....	30
DRILLS.....	31
EXERCISES.....	36
UNIT 2. FINDING ONE'S WAY AROUND	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	39
Notes on Dialogues.....	44
Grammar Notes.....	45
1. Formal Polite Speech Sentences.....	45
2. Particles <u>i/ka</u> , <u>lo/ilo</u> , <u>e</u>	47
3. Determinatives <u>i</u> , <u>ce</u> , <u>ki</u> , <u>en</u> , <u>ol</u> , <u>wen</u>	47
4. Post-Nouns <u>k</u> , <u>p</u> , <u>c</u>	48
5. <u>imnita</u> and <u>issimnita</u>	48
DRILLS.....	50
EXERCISES.....	59
UNIT 3. FINDING ONE'S WAY AROUND (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	61
Notes on Dialogues.....	66
Grammar Notes.....	67
1. Verbs: Action vs. Description and Transitive vs. Intransitive.....	67
2. Future Tense.....	68
3. Honorifics.....	68
4. Negative <u>an</u>	69
5. Particle <u>ese</u> 'from', 'at', 'in', 'on'.....	69
6. Particle <u>e</u> 'to'.....	70
DRILLS.....	71
EXERCISES.....	78
UNIT 4. SHOPPING	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	81
Numerals (1).....	87

Notes on Dialogues.....	89
Grammar Notes.....	90
1. Informal Polite Speech.....	90
2. Past Tenses.....	94
3. Particle <u>to</u>	95
4. Particle <u>wa/kwa</u>	95
5. <u>-ci</u> + <u>anhsimnita</u>	95
6. Numerals.....	96
DRILLS.....	97
EXERCISES.....	107
UNIT 5. SHOPPING (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	111
Numerals (2).....	119
Notes on Dialogues.....	120
Grammar Notes.....	121
1. <u>-n/in/nin</u> + Nominal.....	121
2. <u>-l/lil</u> <u>kka</u> <u>yo?</u>	122
3. Adverbs.....	122
4. Counters <u>cang</u> , <u>can</u> , <u>kwen</u> , <u>kœ</u> , <u>pun</u> , <u>mali</u>	124
DRILLS.....	126
EXERCISES.....	138
UNIT 6. TIME	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	141
Notes on Dialogues.....	148
Grammar Notes.....	150
1. Time Counters <u>nyen</u> , <u>hae</u> , <u>-wəl</u> , <u>tal</u> , <u>cuil</u> , <u>il</u> , <u>nal</u> , <u>-si</u> , <u>sikan</u> , <u>pun</u>	150
2. <u>-ci</u> <u>yo?</u>	151
3. <u>-lə/lle</u>	152
4. Adverbial Phrases.....	152
DRILLS.....	154
EXERCISES.....	168
UNIT 7. TIME (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	171
Numeral Phrases.....	177
Notes on Dialogues.....	178
Grammar Notes.....	179
1. Numeral Phrases.....	179
2. Particle <u>lo/ilo</u> 'as', 'in the capacity of', 'by means of'..	179
3. <u>-n/in/nin</u> <u>ka</u> <u>yo?</u>	180
4. <u>-lyeko/ilyeko</u>	180
5. <u>-(i)l</u> <u>kka</u> <u>ha</u>	181
6. Particle <u>kkaci</u>	181
7. Inflected Forms and Verb Phrases.....	182
DRILLS.....	184
EXERCISES.....	196
UNIT 8. TALKING ABOUT ONE'S WORK	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	199
Notes on Dialogues.....	204
Grammar Notes.....	205
1. <u>-ki</u>	205
2. Particle <u>mata</u>	206

3. <u>-l/il</u> <u>su iss-</u> vs. <u>-l/il</u> <u>su eps-</u>	207
4. Particle <u>pota</u>	208
DRILLS.....	208
EXERCISES.....	221
UNIT 9. GOING TO THE MOVIES	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	225
Notes on Dialogues.....	230
Grammar Notes.....	231
1. <u>-ko</u>	231
2. <u>-ci man</u>	232
3. <u>-l/il</u>	232
4. Particle <u>hako</u>	233
DRILLS.....	234
EXERCISES.....	248
UNIT 10. GOING AROUND THE TOWN..	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	251
Notes on Dialogues.....	256
Grammar Notes.....	257
1. <u>-myen/imyen</u>	257
2. Infinitive + <u>to</u> 'even though—!', 'although—'.....	258
3. <u>ceil</u> or <u>kacang</u>	258
4. Particle <u>na/ina</u>	259
DRILLS.....	261
EXERCISES.....	274
UNIT 11. GOING AROUND THE TOWN (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	277
Notes on Dialogues.....	282
Grammar Notes.....	283
1. <u>-ci ma(l)</u>	283
2. Infinitive + <u>cu</u>	284
3. Particle <u>ya</u>	285
4. <u>-n/in/nin kes</u>	286
5. <u>-(i)l kes immita</u>	287
6. Further Notes on Honorifics.....	289
DRILLS.....	289
EXERCISES.....	304
UNIT 12. EATING AND DRINKING	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	307
Notes on Dialogues.....	314
Grammar Notes.....	316
1. <u>-(i)ni kka</u> , 'because..!', 'since..!'	316
2. <u>-(i)lyemyen</u>	316
3. Infinitive + <u>po</u>	317
4. Particle <u>tinci/itinci</u>	317
5. Particle <u>man</u> 'only'.....	318
DRILLS.....	319
EXERCISES.....	328
UNIT 13. EATING AND DRINKING (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	331
Additional Vocabulary and Phrases.....	335
Notes on Dialogues.....	342

Grammar Notes.....	343
1. <u>-(i)na</u> , 'but'.....	343
2. <u>-n/in</u> { <u>cək</u> } <u>i issimmikka?</u> 'Have [you] ever done...?'.....	343
{ <u>i1</u> }.	
3. Interrogative + <u>-n/in/nin ci</u>	344
4. Particles <u>eke</u> 'to' and <u>ekese</u> 'from'.....	345
5. Dependent Nouns.....	346
DRILLS.....	347
EXERCISES.....	357
UNIT 14. TALKING ABOUT ONE'S LIFE AND FAMILY	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	361
Notes on Dialogues.....	368
Grammar Notes.....	370
1. <u>tte</u> 'time', 'occasion', 'when'.....	370
2. Infinitive + <u>se</u> 'and..!', 'and so..!'.....	371
3. A Nominal +{ <u>we e</u> } 'beside Nominal'.....	372
{ <u>pakk e</u> }.	
4. <u>ssik</u> 'each', 'at one time'.....	372
5. Infinitive + <u>iss-</u>	373
DRILLS.....	374
EXERCISES.....	384
UNIT 15. TALKING ABOUT ONE'S LIFE AND FAMILY (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	387
Notes on Dialogues.....	394
Grammar Notes.....	395
1. <u>hu</u> 'after', 'the later time', 'next'.....	395
2. <u>cən</u> 'before', 'the previous time'.....	395
3. <u>-n/in ci</u> + (period of time) + <u>twe-</u>	396
4. <u>-nin tongan</u> 'while doing something'.....	396
5. Nominal + <u>e təhə se</u> 'concerning Nominal'.....	397
DRILLS.....	398
EXERCISES.....	408
UNIT 16. TELEPHONING	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	411
Notes on Dialogues.....	419
Grammar Notes.....	420
1. <u>-n/in/nin te</u> 'while..!', 'such is the case'.....	421
2. Infinitive + <u>tu-</u> (or <u>noh-</u>).....	421
3. <u>-ke</u>	422
4. <u>-n/in/nin ci</u>	423
DRILLS.....	424
EXERCISES.....	431
UNIT 17. TELEPHONING (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	435
Notes on Dialogues.....	440
Grammar Notes.....	440
1. Plain Speech: Formal and Informal.....	440
2. Personal Nouns in the Polite and Plain Speeches.....	443
3. Particles <u>lako</u> and <u>ko</u>	443
DRILLS.....	446
EXERCISES.....	461

UNIT 18. TALKING ABOUT WEATHER	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	465
Notes on Dialogues.....	472
Grammar Notes.....	473
1. <u>-ninkun/kun yo!</u>	473
2. Infinitive + <u>ci</u>	473
3. <u>-n/in/nin kes kath-</u>	474
4. Particle <u>cheləm</u>	475
5. Particle <u>lato/llato</u>	476
6. <u>-(i)l kyehwek i-</u> 'be planning to-'.....	476
DRILLS.....	478
EXERCISES.....	486
 Korean-English Glossary.....	488
Index to the Grammar Notes.....	551

INTRODUCTORY UNIT

Introduction

This is the first of two volumes designed to teach spoken Korean to English speakers. The Korean presented in this book is representative of the 'standard' speech of educated Koreans in Seoul, which has been the capital city and cultural, educational and political center of the country for over five hundred years. In Korea, as in every other nation, there is considerable local variation in pronunciation and vocabulary as well as in styles of speech. However, in schools all over Korea the language presented here is used and taught as the national standard and, if you learn it well, you will be speaking a form of Korean which has prestige throughout the country and which will be understood everywhere.

This course is written primarily for use in an intensive language program of twenty or more hours per week; but it can also be used for other situations, such as a language program in which one or more part-time students attend class for three to six hours per week, or for individual study with the aid of recorded tapes.

Acquiring proficiency in the use of language is like acquiring proficiency in any other skill, for example, driving an automobile-- you must practice until the mechanics of driving - or speaking - are reflex. It is the aim of this course, therefore, to bring students to 'automacity' in speaking and understanding everyday Korean.

The following points are emphasized to both the teacher and the student:

1. ALWAYS SPEAK AT A NORMAL CONVERSATIONAL SPEED. Neither the teacher nor the student should ever allow himself to speak slower than a 'normal rate of speed'.
2. AVOID THE USE OF ENGLISH IN THE CLASSROOM except for occasional linguistic explanations or discussions by a linguist. Drill hours with the native-speaking instructor should be carried out entirely in Korean from the very beginning. Time spent in speaking English in class is largely time wasted.
3. CORRECT MISTAKES IMMEDIATELY. Mistakes made by a student should not be passed over, but should be immediately corrected by the instructor.
4. AVOID QUESTIONS beginning with WHY, such as "Why do you say it that way?"

If a student wants to ask questions, he should ask more useful and answerable questions beginning with HOW or WHEN, such as, "How do you use the word?" or, "When do you use this expression?"

5. AVOID DISCUSSIONS WITH THE INSTRUCTOR ABOUT KOREAN. Talking about Korean should be confined to the linguistic hour specially set aside for such discussions with a scientific linguist, separate from regular drill hours.
6. REVIEW CONSTANTLY. As the students proceed through the course, they should master everything thoroughly. Each new unit presupposes thorough mastery of what has been covered before. Otherwise, do not go ahead.

Organization and Use of This Course

Each unit in Korean Basic Course Volume 1 (Units 1-18) consists of four major parts: Basic Dialogues or other 'basic sentences', Notes on Dialogues, Grammar Notes, Drills and Exercises.

Basic Dialogues

Each unit begins with a connected dialogue of about ten sentences between two or (occasionally) more speakers. Each dialogue is to be practiced, memorized and acted out until it has been so 'overlearned' that the utterances and their sequence are understood and can be produced automatically without conscious thought or hesitation. In some units, there is a group of two or (rarely) more short dialogues which are related to one another. In such a unit, the dialogues may be treated as one connected dialogue.

In the Basic Dialogues, new words and phrases ('build-ups') are introduced immediately before each sentence. They are not part of the Dialogue itself.

In dealing with the Basic Dialogues, the following steps are suggested:

1. First, the instructor reads each sentence line-by-line at normal speed. The students listen with books closed, so that they may become accustomed to depending on their ears.
2. The instructor says the words or phrases of the 'build-ups' and then the complete sentences. The students repeat immediately after the instructor (books still closed). The instructor corrects errors by repeating mispronounced

words or phrases as they should have been said, so that the students can try again.

3. When the students are able to approximate an imitation of the instructor, they begin intensive practice on the dialogue, imitating the instructor line-by-line (books optionally open), until the instructor is satisfied that their performance is sure and fluent.

4. After going through the dialogue several times in this way, the students take the roles in the dialogue (books closed) and practice until they are freely able to do it from memory.

Notes on Dialogues and Grammar Notes

Notes on Dialogues and Grammar Notes follow the Basic Dialogue section. The Notes are intended to be self-explanatory and to be read outside the class after the Basic Dialogue has been introduced. The Notes on Dialogues are numbered according to the sentences in the dialogue, and are intended to give additional information on the use of the words, phrases or sentences. The Grammar Notes are systematic presentations of new patterns or major grammatical constructions that occur for the first time in the Basic Dialogues or other 'basic sentences' in the unit.

If the course is being taught (as intended) by a team composed of a scientific linguist and a native speaker, some explanation of the Notes may be appropriate in class. However, in general, drill time in class with a native instructor should be conducted entirely in Korean. If the native-speaking instructor is also a trained linguist and fluent in English, specific periods may be set aside for grammatical explanations; these should be kept separate from regular drill sessions during which English should be used only for translations or paraphrases designed to keep the student aware of the meaning of the Korean sentences he is practicing.

The Grammar Notes are written to give some basic understanding of Korean to the beginning student, and are intended to be immediately and practically relevant. If, however, the student finds them difficult to understand, he can simply ignore them. Instead of wasting time talking about Korean, extensive drill concentrated on specific points of pronunciation or grammar can produce the desired goal - proficiency in performance. The course is designed to produce an operational competence in Korean, not a theoretical understanding of it.

Drills

The Drills in this Course are of a considerable variety. However, each

unit basically has five kinds of drills:

Substitution Drills
Transformation (or Grammar) Drills
Response Drills
Combination Drills
Expansion Drills

It is to be noted that each drill has its own specific purpose, but the final goal of all the drills is to lead the student to develop his proficiency in free conversation. Without sufficient drill practice, he cannot achieve such proficiency. Therefore, a great proportion of class time is to be devoted to drills, until the students are able to do them accurately with their books closed.

Drills can be done in the following steps:

1. Drills are learned first like the sentences of the dialogues. That is, each new drill sentence is repeated after the instructor until it is correctly produced with books closed.
2. The students read the drill sentences aloud at normal speed from their books.
3. The drill is then done without the book; the instructor gives the appropriate cues or stimuli, and the students produce the proper responses.

a. Substitution Drills

In this course, there are several kinds of substitution drills: Simple Substitution; Multiple Substitution; Alternate Substitution, Correlation Substitution, etc. In substitution drills - of whatever kind - students will be required to produce the given pattern sentence, and then they will be required to make substitutions in one or more 'slots', using the 'cues' furnished by the instructor. Sometimes, he may be asked to form a properly arranged sentence by inserting a correlated cue. The basic aims of a substitution drill are two-fold: the first is to make the student's control of the pattern sentences automatic and reflex, in order to develop fluency in actual free conversation; the second is to practice useful lexical items in the given sentence patterns. The lexical items are either those which have occurred previously or new related ones. New words and phrases added in the substitution drills are marked with an asterisk to the left of the sentence on their first occurrence. New words and phrases are used only in substitution drills. Substitution drills are printed in two columns, with English equivalents on the right and drill sentences with cues underlined on the left. English equivalents are not provided except for

the model sentences at the beginning of each drill; but only in Substitution Drills are English equivalents provided for subsequent sentences.

b. Response Drills

These are mostly question-and-answer drills designed to help the students develop ability to respond to questions normally. A model is provided at the beginning of the drill. The student is required to produce a response for each question or remark, using the cue or stimulus supplied by the instructor.

c. Transformation Drills

The student is required to produce sentences parallel in an easily generalizable way to the pattern sentence. For example, the student may be asked to transform a negative to an affirmative pattern; or a statement to a question. Transformation Drills are sometimes designated as Grammar Drills in this course.

d. Combination Drills

These are drills in which the student is asked to produce one long pattern by combining two short patterns.

e. Expansion Drills

Starting from a short sentence, the instructor gives cues one by one requesting the student to expand the sentence each time in specific ways.

Exercises

The exercises are of two sorts: (1) they ask the student to complete unfinished utterances or to give appropriate responses to the questions based on reality relevant to each situation; (2) they offer suggestions about additional practice and review for what has been covered in the unit.

The students should be able to do all these exercises fluently and accurately before going on to the next unit.

Romanization

The symbols used to represent Korean sounds are based on a phonemic analysis (see Pronunciation), but each word is transcribed morphophonemically - that is, each word is always written with the same sequence of symbols, even though its pronunciation may be changed by what precedes or follows it. However, if a word has two shapes, our selection is made on the basis of the final sound of the preceding word. The stems of inflected words (i.e. verbs) are written the same way always, even if phonetic changes take place when certain endings or suffixes are added to them.

Words are separated by spaces. A Korean word is a form which may be either (1) inflected or uninflected, (2) bound or free. Free forms can occur alone, while bound forms can occur only with other forms. If a bound form occurs with another form, the combination is a single word unless at least one of the bound forms also occurs with free forms in other constructions.

The first letter of a sentence (except 1 or ə) is capitalized. So is the first letter of a proper noun wherever it occurs.

Korean Orthography (Hankil)

In Volume 1, the dialogue portions of each unit are accompanied by Korean orthography (Hankil) throughout the text. And in the glossary at the end of the text, Hankil is provided for all entries, in addition to English equivalents.

We follow the standard Korean spelling rules in this text regardless of the transcription. Spaces within a phrase or sentence are based on Hankil writing rules; for example, particles are not separated from the words preceding them.

Since Hankil is relatively easy to learn, it may be introduced gradually during the middle part of the text, replacing the Romanized transcription completely by the time Volume 1 is completed. A student should thus be able to read in Hankil at normal speed before he goes on to Volume 2, which is entirely in Hankil and English.

It is not the intention of this text to teach spoken Korean through Hankil from the very beginning, since it requires some time before the student can read it fluently. Hankil can be easily mastered by reading (in Hankil) dialogues which have already been memorized by the students.

It is suggested that students interested in written Korean (which requires the knowledge of Chinese characters in addition to Hankil) use an appropriate basic reading text.

Special Symbols

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>In a KOREAN sequence</u>	<u>In an ENGLISH sequence</u>
()	Optional addition, no change of meaning. <u>a(b)</u> = <u>a</u> <u>or</u> <u>ab</u> ; <u>b</u> is optional. Muəs (11) hasimnikka? 'What do [you] do?'	Explanatory information, not required in English. Korean (language)

(' ')	---	Literal translation. [I]'m fine. ('[I] exist well.')
[]	---	English items not represented in Korean. [I]'m fine. ('[I] exist well.')
a/b	Alternate forms (like English <u>a/an</u>). i/ka, i/lil	---
/ /	'Sentence' pronunciation of preceding words (like English <u>can't you /kancha/</u>) ettəhsimnikka?/ettəssimnikka/ haksəng/haks səng/ Hankuk mal/hangkungmal/	---
;	---	(In 'Build-ups') or child; baby
*	(In substitution drills) new lexical item.	---
?	End of question-sentence.	---
.	End of other kinds of sentences.	---
,	After (1) sentence adverbs and adverb phrases, (2) subordinate clauses.	---
-	(1) Connects parts of compound words (like English <u>sister-in-</u> <u>law</u>), (2--in Grammar Notes) indicates end of verb stem or beginning of some verb endings.	---

Pronunciation

Standard Korean, spoken by educated natives of Seoul, has an inventory of 8 vowels, 2 semi-vowels and 19 consonants:

(a) Vowels

i	ɪ	u
e	ə	o
æ		a

(b) Semi-vowels

w	y
---	---

(c) Consonants

p	t	c	k	
pp	tt	cc	kk	
ph	th	ch	kh	h
		s		
		ss		
m	n	ng		
	l			

Note: The symbols pp, tt, cc, kk, ph, th, ch, kh, ss, ng in the above chart are unit sounds, not combination sounds.

The Korean phonological system can be described in terms of possible syllable formation:

- (a) 8 single vowels
- (b) 144 consonant + vowel
- (c) 11 semi-vowel + vowel
- (d) 108 consonant + y (semi-vowel) + vowel
- (e) 90 consonant + w (semi-vowel) + vowel
- (f) 1 ɪ + y
- (g) 1 w + ə + y
- (h) 8 consonant + w + ə + y
- (i) 56 vowel + consonant
- (j) 1008 consonant + vowel + consonant
- (k) 42 y + vowel + consonant
- (l) 35 w + vowel + consonant
- (m) 756 consonant + y + vowel + consonant
- (n) 630 consonant + w + vowel + consonant

The most common syllable types, however, are the first five kinds: (a) 8 single vowels, (b) 144 consonant + vowel, (c) 11 semi-vowel + vowel, (d) 108 consonant + y + vowel, (e) 90 consonant + w + vowel.

The following chart shows the formation of the basic Korean syllables. It is essential that the student should ultimately be able to pronounce and distinguish each syllable type correctly.

Practice 1

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
a	ka	kka	kha	na	ta	tta	tha	la	ma	pa	ppa	pha	sa	ssa	ca	cca	cha	ha	ang
ə	kə	kkə	kha	nə	tə	ttə	thə	lə	mə	pə	ppə	phə	sə	sse	cə	cce	chə	hə	əng
o	ko	kko	kho	no	to	tto	tho	lo	mo	po	ppo	pho	so	sso	co	cco	cho	ho	ong
u	ku	kku	khu	nu	tu	ttu	thu	lu	mu	pu	ppu	phu	su	ssu	cu	ccu	chu	hu	ung
l	kł	kkł	khl	nl	tl	ttl	thł	ll	ml	pl	ppł	phł	sl	ssi	cł	ccl	chl	hl	łng
i	kł	kkł	khl	nl	tl	ttl	thł	ll	ml	pl	ppł	phł	sł	ssi	cł	ccl	chl	hl	łng
e	ke	kke	khe	ne	te	tte	thে	le	me	pe	ppe	phe	se	sse	ce	cce	che	he	eng
əə	kəə	kkəə	khəə	nəə	təə	ttəə	thəə	ləə	məə	pəə	ppəə	phəə	səə	sseə	cəə	cceə	chəə	həə	əŋg
ya	kya	kkya	khya	nya	tya	ttya	thya	lya	mya	pya	ppya	phya	sya	ssya	cya	ccya	chya	hya	yang
ye	kye	kkye	khye	nye	týe	ttýe	thye	lye	mye	pye	ppye	phye	sye	ssye	cye	ccye	chyə	hye	yeng
yo	kyo	kkyo	kyo	nyo	týo	ttýo	thyo	lyo	myo	pyo	ppyo	phyo	syo	ssyo	cyo	ccyo	chyo	yo	yong
yu	kyu	kkyu	kyu	nyu	týu	ttýu	thyu	lyu	myu	pyu	ppyu	phyu	syu	ssyu	cyu	ccyu	chyu	yu	yung
ye	kye	kkye	khye	nye	týe	ttýe	thye	lye	mye	pye	ppye	phye	sye	ssye	cye	ccye	chye	hye	yeng
ÿe	kÿe	kkÿe	khye	nyÿe	tÿe	ttÿe	thÿe	lyÿe	myÿe	pyÿe	ppÿe	phyÿe	syÿe	ssyÿe	cyÿe	ccyÿe	chÿe	hyÿe	ÿeng
wa	kwa	kkwa	khwa	nwa	twa	ttwa	thwa	lwa	mwa	pwa	ppwa	phwa	swa	sswa	cwa	ccwa	chwa	hwa	wang
wə	kwə	kkwə	khwə	nwə	twə	ttwə	thwə	lwə	mwə	pwə	ppwə	phwə	swe	sswə	cwə	ccwə	chwə	hwə	wəng
wł	kwł	kkwł	khwł	nwł	twł	ttwł	thwł	lwł	mwł	pwł	ppwł	phwł	swł	sswł	cwł	ccwł	chwł	hwł	wing
we	kwe	kkwe	khwe	nwe	twe	ttwe	thwe	lwe	mwe	pwe	ppwe	phwe	swe	sswe	cwe	ccwe	chwe	hwe	weng
wəə	kwəə	kkwəə	khwəə	nwəə	twəə	ttwəə	thwəə	lwəə	mwəə	pwəə	ppwəə	phwəə	swəə	sswəə	cwəə	ccwəə	chwəə	hwəə	wəng

Syllable Final Consonant Chart

Possible syllable final consonants within or at the end of words.		Actual syllable-final sounds
(1)	-k -kk -kh	/ -k/
(2)	-t -tt -th -s -ss -c -cc -ch	/ -t/
(3)	-p -pp -ph	/ -p/
(4)	-h	/ --/
(5)	-l	/ -l/
(6)	-m	/ -m/
(7)	-n	/ -n/
(8)	-ng	/ -ng/

Practice 2

(1)	kak kakk kakh	/kak/
(2)	tat tatt tath tas tass	/tat/

	tac		/tat/
	tacc		
	tach		
(3)	pap		/pap/
	papp		
	paph		
(4)	ah		/a/
(5)	lal		/lal/
(6)	mam		/mam/
(7)	nan		/nan/
(8)	ang		/ang/

Every syllable-final consonant within or at the end of a word becomes the initial consonant of the following syllable when a vowel occurs immediately after it. If two consonants occur in a cluster, the first of the cluster belongs to the preceding syllable and the second goes to the following syllable. Morphophonemic boundary within a word is not indicated. Thus, the consonant combinations -p p-, -t t-, -c c-, -k k-, -s s-, -p h-, -t h-, -c h-, -k h-, which may be divided morphemically so that the first consonant of the cluster belongs to the preceding syllable and the second to the following syllable, are not distinguished syllabically from the unit consonants pp, tt, cc, kk, ss, ph, th, ch, kh, even though the Korean orthography does distinguish them. In Korean, every syllable contains a vowel; therefore, there are as many syllables as there are vowels.

Practice 3

(1)	kaka	(3)	papa
	kakka		pappa
	kakha		papha
(2)	tata	(4)	aha
	tatta	(5)	lala
	tatha	(6)	mama
	tasa	(7)	nana
	tassa	(8)	anga
	taca		
	tacca		
	tacha		

1	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:
	a	'a' in 'father'	short
	ə	'u' in 'but'	open; phonetically [ɔ] or [ʌ]
	o	'o' in 'for'	rounded; with lips protruded
	u	'u' in 'food'	short with lip-rounding
	ɪ	'u' in 'put'	long and unrounded
	ı	'ee' in 'meet'	short
	e	'e' in 'pen'	lower than English 'e'
	æ	'a' in 'bat'	short

Practice 4

1. /a/	2. /ə/	3. /o/
a 'oh'	əə 'quickly'	o 'a family name'
ai 'child'	əce 'yesterday'	oi 'cucumber'
ca 'well'	ce 'I' (polite form)	Co 'a family name'
4. /u/	5. /ɪ/	6. /i/
un 'luck'	in 'silver'	i 'lice'
au 'younger brother'	ysa 'doctor'	Kim 'a family name'
kutu 'shoe'	kim 'gold'	pi 'rain'
7. /e/	8. /æ/	
ne 'yes'	əki 'child'	
eku 'gee'	pəu 'actor'	
ke 'crab'	kæ 'dog'	

2	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	k	'c' in 'can'	slightly aspirated	sometimes voiced intervo- callically	unreleased
	kk	'c' in 'scan'	unaspirated; tense	unaspirated; tense	unreleased
	kh	'k' in 'keen'	heavily aspirated	heavily aspirated	unreleased

Practice 5

1. /k/

Kim 'a family name'
 koki 'meat'
 aka 'baby'
 kuk 'soup'

2. /kk/

kkum 'dream'
 kkachi 'magpie'
 akka 'a little while ago'
 cakku 'repeatedly'

3. /kh/

khi 'height'
 kho 'nose'
 cokha 'nephew'

3	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	t	't' in 'top'	slightly aspirated	sometimes voiced intervocalically	unreleased
	tt	't' in 'stop'	unaspirated; tense	unaspirated; tense	unreleased
	th	't' in 'teen'	heavily aspirated	heavily aspirated	unreleased

Practice 6

1. /t/

tal 'moom'
 eti 'where'
 pata 'sea'
 tot 'sail'

2. /tt/

ttal 'daughter'
 itta 'later'
 patta 'receive'
 tto 'again'

3. /th/

thal 'mask' or 'trouble'
 ithil 'two days'
 pithal 'slope'
 tho 'particle (in grammar)'

4	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	p	'p' in 'pin'	slightly aspirated	sometimes voiced intervocalically	unreleased
	pp	'p' in 'spin'	unaspirated; tense	unaspirated; tense	unreleased
	ph	'p' in 'peen'	heavily aspirated	heavily aspirated	unreleased

Practice 7

1. /p/	2. /pp/	3. /ph/
pal 'foot'	ppalkan 'red'	phal 'arm'
pul 'fire'	ppul 'horn'	phul 'grass'
ipal 'hair-cut'	ippal 'tooth'	naphal 'trumpet'
nap 'lead'	nappin 'bad'	nophi 'height'

5	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	c	'ch' in 'chick'	slightly aspirated	sometimes voiced intervocalically	unreleased
	cc	'j' in 'Jack'	unaspirated; tense	unaspirated; tense	unreleased
	ch	'ch' in 'cheek'	heavily aspirated	heavily aspirated	unreleased

Practice 8

1. /c/	2. /cc/	3. /ch/
cam 'sleep'	ccam 'spare time'	cham 'truth'
ceul 'scale'	ccok 'side'	chima 'skirt'
ice 'now'	acci 'how'	kicha 'train'
ece 'yesterday'	eccease 'why'	achim 'morning'

6	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:	
			initially	finally
	s	's' in 'Smith'	regularly voiceless;	unreleased in final position
	ss	'ts' in 'puts'	voiceless; tense;	unreleased in final position

Practice 9

1. /s/	2. /ss/
sal 'flesh'	ssal 'rice'
si 'poetry'	ssi 'seed'

Pusan 'name of a city'

pissan 'expensive'

susul 'operation'

malssim 'speech'

7	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	m	'm' in 'mother'	consonantal	consonantal	syllabic
	n	'n' in 'name'	consonantal	consonantal	syllabic
	ng	'ng' in 'sing'	--	consonantal	syllabic

Practice 10

1. /m/

mal 'horse'

Mikuk 'America'

imi 'already'

mom 'body'

2. /n/

nal 'day'

nui 'sister'

əni 'which'

men 'far'

3. /ng/

kang 'river'

congi 'paper'

pang 'room'

səng 'castle'

8	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	l	'l' in 'light' or 'ball'	front l	flap	back l

Practice 11

1. /l/

lætio 'radio'

palam 'wind'

salang 'love'

kəlsang 'chair'

pal 'foot'

9	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	h	'h' in 'hire'	strong friction	weak friction	--

Practice 12

1. /h/

hana	'one'	ohu	'afternoon'
hilin	'cloudy'	inhi	'girl's name'
hakkyo	'school'	ahin	'90'
huson	'descendent'		

10	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:
	w before { a ə i e æ	'wh' in 'why'	lip rounding
	y before { a ə o u e æ	'y' in 'yet'	palatalizing

Practice 13

1. /w/

wi	'stomach'	yek	'station'
wənki	'energy'	yuli	'glass'
wæ	'why'	yaku	'baseball'
cəngwen	'garden'	uyu	'milk'
I-wəl	'February'	wəlya	'moon-night'

2. /y/

(대화 A)

안녕

1. 김 : 안녕하십니까

2. 제임스 : 예, 안녕하십니까?

처음

봅습니다

3. 김 : 처음 뵙습니다.

71

기수

4. 길 기수입니다.

이름

자

저의, 제

저의 이름, 제 이름

저의 이름은

제이스입니다

5. 제이스 : 제 이름은 제이스입니다.

선생

선생은

미국

사람

미국 사람

UNIT 1. Greetings
BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue AKim

annyøng

peace; tranquility

1. Annyøng-hasimnikka?

How are you? ('Are you at peace?')

James

2. Ne, annyøng-hasimnikka?

Fine. How are you? ('Yes, how are you?')

Kim

chøim

first time

pwepsimnita/pwepssimnita/

(I see you)

3. Chøim pwepsimnita.

('I'm glad to meet you.') ('I see you for the first time.')

Kim

(family name)

Kisu

(given name)

4. Kim Kisu imnita.

[I] am Kisu Kim.

James

ilim

name

ce

I

ce e }

my

ce

my name

ce e ilim }

as for my name

ce ilim }

[it] is James

Ceimsi imnita

5. Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita.
My name is James. ('As for my name, it is James.')Kim

sønsæng

teacher; you (polite)

sønsæng in

as for the teacher; as for you

Mikuk

America; the United States

salam

person

Mikuk salam

an American

6. Sønsæng in Mikuk salam imnikka?

Are you an American?

6. 김 : 선생은 미국 사람입니다?

예

그렇습니다

7. 제임스 : 예, 그렇습니다.

무엇

무엇을

하십니까

8. 김 : 선생은 무엇을 하십니까?

저는

학생

학생입니다

9. 제임스 : 저는 학생입니다.

공부

공부합니다

10. 김 : 무엇을 공부합니다?

한국

말

한국 말

공부합니다

11. 제임스 : 한국 말을 공부합니다.

(대화 B)

제임스 선생

12. 김 : 제임스 선생, 안녕하십니까?

James

- ne yes
 kilehsimnita/kilessimnita/ [it]is so; [that]'s right
 7. Ne, kilehsimnita. Yes, I am. ('Yes, that's right.')

Kim

- muəs what(thing)?
 muəs il what (as direct object)
 hasimnikka do [you] do?
 8. Sənsəng ɪn muəs (il) hasimnikka? What do you do? ('As for you, what do [you] do?')

James

- cə nɪn I (as a topic); as for me
 haksəng/hakssəng/ student
 haksəng imnita [I] am a student
 9. Cə nɪn haksəng imnita. I am a student.

Kim

- kongpu studying
 kongpu-hamnikka do [you] study?
 10. Muəs il kongpu-hamnikka? What do [you] study?

James

- Hankuk/Hangkuk/ Korea
 mal language; utterance; speech
 Hankuk mal/Hangkungmal/ Korean (language)
 kongpu-hamnita [I] study
 11. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita. [I] study Korean.

Dialogue BKim

- Ceimsi Sənsəng Mr. James
 12. Ceimsi Sənsəng, annyəng-hasimnikka? Good morning, Mr. James.

아

13. 제임스 : 아, 안녕하십니까, 김 선생?

잘

있읍니다

14. 김 : 예, 잘 있읍니다.

요즘

어떻게

지나십니까

15. 제임스 : 요즘 어떻게 지나십니까?

덕분에

16. 김 : 덕분에 잘 지냅니다.

재미

어떻습니까

17. 선생은 재미 어떻게니까?

그저

18. 제임스 : 그저 그렇습니다.

부인

부인도, 부인께서도

19. 김 : 부인께서도 안녕하십니까?

20. 제임스 : 예, 잘 있읍니다.

James

a

oh

13. A, annyøng-hasimnikka, Kim
Sønsøng?

Kim

cal

well

issimnita

[there] is; [there] exists

14. Ne, cal issimnita.
(Yes) I'm fine. ('I exist well.')

James

yocim

these days; lately

ettøhke/ettøhke/

how; in what way

cinasimnikka

are [you] getting along?

15. Yocim ettøhke cinasimnikka?
How are you getting along these days?

Kim

tøkpun e/tøkppune/

(at favor)

16. Tøkpun e cal cinamnita.
I'm doing fine, thank you. ('I'm
getting along well at your favor.')

cømi

fun; interest

ettøhsimnikka/ettøssimnikka/

how is [it]?

17. Sønsøng in cømi ettøhsimnikka?
And how are you? ('As for you, how is
fun?')

James

kicø

just

18. Kicø kilehsimnita.
Just so-so. ('It is just so.')

Kim

puin

your wife; lady

puin to

your wife also

puin kkesø to }

19. Puin (kkesø) to annyøng-
hasimnikka?
How is your wife? ('Is your wife also
at peace?')

James

20. Ne, cal issimnita.
She is fine. ('Yes, [she] exists
well.')

21. 미안합니다.
22. 고맙습니다.
23. 천만에 맙습니다.
24. 슬퍼합니다.
25. 슬퍼해줍니다.
26. 슬퍼하게됩니다.
27. 안 됩니다.
28. (아니요) 괜찮습니다.
29. 안녕히 가십시오.
30. 안녕히 계십시오.
31. 또 뵙겠습니다.

ADDITIONAL GREETING EXPRESSIONS

21. Mianhamnita. { I'm sorry
Thank you for your trouble.
22. Komapsimnita. Thank you.
23. Chenman e malssim imnita. { You're welcome.
Not at all.
Don't mention it.
24. Sillye-hamnita./silyehamnita/ Excuse me (on leaving, on inter-
rupting).
25. Sillye-hæssimnita. Excuse me (for what was done).
26. Sillye-hakessimnita. Excuse me (for what I'm going to do).
27. An twessimnita. That's too bad.
28. (Aniyo) kwænchanhsimnita. Not at all. ('No, that's all right,')
- /kwænchanssimnita/
29. Annyøngħi kasipsiyo. Goodbye (to someone leaving). ('Go
peacefully.')
30. Annyøngħi kyesipsiyo. Goodbye (to someone staying). ('Stay
peacefully.')
31. Tto pwejkessimnita. { See you again.
So long.
I'll see you again.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogues.)

- 1.2. The expression Annyøng-hasimnikka? ('Are you at peace?') is a general greeting similar to such English expressions as 'How are you?', 'How do you do?', 'Good morning!', 'Good evening.', etc. It is used for first meetings at any time of the day. The usual response to Annyøng-hasimnikka? are Annyøng-hasimnikka?; Ne, annyøng-hasimnikka?
3. Chøim pwejkessimnita. ('I meet you for the first time.') is regularly said by someone who has just been introduced. The response is usually Chøim pwejkessimnita.; Annyøng-hasimnikka?
4. Kim Kisu is a full name: the family name Kim plus the given name Kisu. Most Korean names consist of three syllables: the first is a family name, the last two are a given name. Cø 'I' is the politest equivalent of na.

6. Sensæng means either 'teacher' or polite 'you'. After a family name or a family name plus a given name it is used as a title or term of address like English Mr., Mrs., or Miss. This form of address (i.e. Name + Sensæng) is most commonly used among or to the teachers of all levels, regardless of age and/or sex, but is also commonly used among and to educated male adults. Mr./Mistta/, Mrs./Missessi/, and Miss/Missi/, followed by the family name are commonly used by Koreans as forms of address when speaking to equals and young people. These forms of address are not applied to individuals older than or superior to the speaker. A full or last name + Ssi 'Mr. ____' occurs for other than the addressee to refer to a male adult of any age, rank or status. A family name + Ssi is also used as a term of address directly to the addressee who is a blue-collar worker.
7. Ne, kilehsimnita. ('What you just said is right, that's so.') is used as a response when you agree to the Yes-No question regardless of whether it is negative or affirmative. Aniyo, the opposite of Ne, means 'What you just said is wrong.' It is used in a parallel way as opposed to Ne. Often Ne and Aniyo are used similarly as 'yes' and 'no' in affirmative Yes-No questions but are the other way around in negative Yes-No questions.
- 10.11. When a situation is obvious, the subject or topic in a Korean sentence is usually omitted. For example, (Sensæng in) muæs il kongpu-hamnikka? 'What do you study?'; (Na nin) Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita. 'I study Korean.' Note that the subjects or topics in brackets may be omitted in speech. Kongpu-hamnita 'studies' is one of many Korean verbs which are formed from nouns. The noun kongpu 'studying' makes a verb (stem) by simply adding another verb (stem) ha- 'to do', that is, kongpu + ha- kongpu-ha- 'to study'. (See Grammar Notes, the Verbs.) Examples:
- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| Kongpu-hamnita. | '[I] study.' |
| Kongpu-hamnikka? | 'Do [you] study?' |
12. Ceimsi Sensæng, annyæng-hasimnikka? ('Mr. James, how are you?') and Annyæng-hasimnikka, Ceimsi Sensæng? ('How are you, Mr. James?') can be freely interchangeable.
15. Yocim ettehke cinasimnikka? ('How do you pass by these days?') is a polite greeting to someone you know well, to ask him how things are going. The usual responses are Tekpun e cal cinamnita. ('I pass by well at your favor.') or Kice kilehsimnita. 'Just so-so.'

19. Puin without being preceded by a name means either 'lady' or 'your wife'. A family name (with or without being followed by a given name) + Sensang (or a title) + puin means 'Mrs. ____' or 'Mr. so-and-so's wife'.
Example:
Kim Sensang puin 'Mrs. Kim' or 'Mr. Kim's wife'
21. Mianhamnita. is commonly used to apologize, or to express thanks immediately upon receiving something.
23. Chenman e malssim imnita. ('A million words.') is a formal response to 'Thank you!', complimentary statements, and apologies. The English equivalent is 'You're welcome!' or 'Not at all.'
- 24.25. Sillye-hamnita. ('I commit rudeness.'), Sillye-hassimnita. ('I committed rudeness.'), Sillye-hakessimnita. ('I'll commit rudeness.') are different only in time: present, past, and future, respectively. The proper one depends on the situation. Sillye-hamnita. and Sillye-hakessimnita. are used interchangeably for what is not done. Sillye-hassimnita. is used for something already done. 'Excuse me.' in English is used generally for all three expressions.
27. An twessimnita. 'That's too bad.' ('[It] has not become.') is used to express the speaker's sympathy or regret.
28. (Aniyo), kwanchanhsimnita. 'Not at all.' ('(No), that's not bad.') is an informal response to Mianhamnita., Komapsimnita., Sillye-hamnita. (or Sillye-hakessimnita. or Sillye-hassimnita.), or to An twessimnita.
- 29.30. When two people part, the one who goes away says Annyenghi kyesipsiyo. ('Stay peacefully!'), and the one who remains says Annyenghi kasipsiyo. ('Go peacefully!'). If both are departing, they both say Annyenghi kasipsiyo.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. The Verbals and the Copula

In Korean, inflected words, which may be used by themselves as complete sentences, are called Verbals. Korean verbals are made up of two main parts: Verb Stems + Endings.

Neither of the two main components in a verbal occurs alone. The verbals occur in a variety of forms depending on what endings are added to the verb stems,

but the verb stems maintain their shapes, in most instances. Hereafter, we will call verb stems as well as all members of the inflected class of words Verbs.

In Korean dictionaries, verbs always are listed with the ending -ta. For instance, ka-ta 'to go', o-ta 'to come', mek-ta 'to eat', ca-ta 'to sleep', ilk-ta 'to read'. This is called the dictionary form of a verb. When -ta is dropped from the dictionary form the Verb Stem remains. It is very important to recognize every verb stem because all the inflected forms are based on them. Examples of Verbals:

(Cé nín) <u>Kongpu-hamnita</u> .	'(I)'m studying.'
(Cé nín) Hankuk mal íl <u>kalichimnita</u> .	'(I) teach Korean.'
Cal <u>cinamnita</u> .	'[I]'m fine.' ('I pass by well.')
<u>Komapsimnita</u> .	'(I) thank (you).'

Imnita is a verb: i- is its stem and -mnita is its ending. Imnita and the other inflected forms of i- (for example, its dictionary form i-ta) are used in sentences like 'Noun A is Noun B.' Often Noun A is not stated, but is understood. Thus, the verb stem i- is equivalent to one meaning of the English verb 'to be'. Notice, however, that the English verb 'to be' is used not only to connect two nouns ('A is B') as in 'I am a teacher', but is also used in sentences like 'A is in such and such a state', as in 'She is beautiful'. The Korean verb imnita is used only for 'A is B', never in sentences like 'A is beautiful'.

Imnita is called the Copula; i- is the stem of the Copula.

The Copula never occurs alone. It is always preceded immediately by a noun and there is no pause between the noun and the Copula.

The Copula is distinguished from other verbals only in that the Copula never occurs as a complete sentence, whereas other verbals may occur as complete sentences. Observe the following Copula expressions:

(Cé nín) <u>Kim imnita</u> .	'(I) am Kim.'
(Ki kés;) <u>Muès imnikka?</u>	'What is (it)?'
(Cé nín) <u>Mikuk salam imnita</u> .	'(I) am an American.'
(Ceimsi nín) <u>Haksæng imnita</u> .	'(James) is a student.'

2. Particles in/nin, il/lil, e

There is a class of uninflected words in Korean which occurs within a sentence or at the end of a sentence, but never at the beginning of one. These words are never preceded by a pause; they are regularly pronounced as though they were part of the preceding word. All such words are called Particles.

Some particles have only one shape; others occur in either of two shapes determined by the final sound of the preceding word.

(a) in/nin 'as for', 'in reference to' is a two-shape particle: in occurs after a word ending in a consonant and nin occurs after a word ending in a vowel.

(1) It follows the general topic (often one already under discussion) about which something new or significant is about to be stated or asked:

Examples:

Cø nin haksæng imnita. 'I am a student.'

Cø ilim in Ceimsi imnita. 'My name is James.'

Sønsæng in Mikuk salam imnikka? 'Are you an American?'

(2) in/nin also occurs as the particle of comparison following a topic which is being compared: A in/nin 'A in comparison with (others)' or 'insofar as we're talking about A.' Examples:

Sønsæng in muøs il hasimnikka? 'What are YOU doing?'

Cø nin Yønge nin kongpu-hamnita. 'ENGLISH I am studying.'

(in/nin never follows an interrogative word (i.e. a word that asks a question: 'What?', 'Who?', 'Where?', etc.)

(b) il/lil is a two-shape particle: il occurs after a noun ending in a consonant and lil after a noun ending in a vowel. The particle il/lil singles out the preceding noun as the direct object of the following inflected expression. Examples:

Muøs il kongpu-hamnikka? 'What do [you] study?'

Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita. '[I] am studying Korean.'

Ilpon mal il kalichimnita. '[He] teaches Japanese.'

Cungkuk mal il mal-hamnita. '[He] speaks Chinese.'

(c) e

When the particle e occurs between two nouns, it is called the Possessive Particle. Noun 1 + e + Noun 2 means 'Noun 1's Noun 2' or 'Noun 2 of Noun 1.'

Examples:

Cø e ilim 'my name'

hakkyo e ilim 'the name of the school'

Kim e cheøk 'Kim's book'

3. Nouns and Noun phrases.

Korean nouns are uninflected words, that is, they have only one form. (They do not, for example, reflect the singular-plural distinction as English nouns do.) In Korean two or more nouns often make up noun phrases and are used as though they were one word. Compare:

(a) Single nouns:

Mikuk	'America', 'the U.S.'
salam	'person', 'man'
mal	'language', 'utterance'

(b) Noun Phrases:

(1) Country name + salam = Nationality

Mikuk salam	'(an) American' ('America person')
Yengkuk salam	'(an) Englishman' ('Britian person')
Ilpon salam	'(a) Japanese' ('Japan person')
Cungkuk salam	'(a) Chinese' ('China person')

(2) Country name + mal = language of the country named

Hankuk mal	'Korean (language)' ('Korea language')
Cungkuk mal	'Chinese (language)' ('China language')
Pullansé mal	'French' ('France language')
Yengé*	'English'

Note 1: Place name + mal = dialect

Séul mal	'Seoul dialect'
Pusan mal	'Pusan dialect'

Note 2: Place name + salam = Person of the place named

Nam-Han salam	'South Korean'
Pusan salam	'Pusanian'
Séul salam	'Seoulite'
Nyuyok salam	'New Yorker'

A noun which may occur as a free form is called a Free Noun. Hereafter, any noun or noun phrase which occurs in a position where a free noun can be substituted shall be called a Nominal Expression or simply a Nominal.

————— x —————

* Yengé is a single-word expression for 'English'.

Yengkuk mal ('British language') is rarely used for English.

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita. | My name is James. |
| 2. Ce ilim in <u>Kim</u> imnita. | My name is Kim. |
| 3. Ce ilim in <u>Kisu</u> imnita. | My name is Kisu. |
| 4. Ce ilim in <u>Kim Kisu</u> imnita. | My name is Kisu Kim. |
| *5. Ce ilim in <u>Pak</u> imnita. | My name is Park (family name). |
| *6. Ce ilim in <u>I Kisu</u> imnita. | My name is Kisu Lee (family name + given name). |
| *7. Ce ilim in <u>Chwe</u> imnita. | My name is Choe (family name). |
| *8. Ce ilim in <u>Ceng</u> imnita. | My name is Chung (family name). |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Cə nin <u>haksəng</u> imnita. | I am a student. |
| 2. Cə nin <u>sənsəng</u> imnita. | I am a teacher. |
| 3. Cə nin <u>Hankuk salam</u> imnita. | I am a Korean. |
| 4. Cə nin <u>Mikuk salam</u> imnita. | I am an American. |
| 5. Cə nin <u>Mikuk haksəng</u> imnita. | I am an American student. |
| 6. Cə nin <u>Hankuk haksəng</u> imnita. | I am a Korean student. |
| 7. Cə nin <u>Hankuk mal haksəng</u> imnita. | I am a Korean (language) student. |
| 8. Cə nin <u>Hankuk mal sənsəng</u> imnita. | I am a Korean (language) teacher. |
| *9. Cə nin <u>Mikuk mal sənsəng</u> imnita. | I am an American (language) teacher. |
| *10. Cə nin <u>Yəngə sənsəng</u> imnita. | I am an English teacher. |
| *11. Cə nin <u>Mikuk salam</u> imnita. | I am an American. |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. Cə nin Hankuk salam imnita. | I am a Korean. |
| *2. Cə nin <u>Yəngkuk salam</u> imnita. | I am an Englishman. |
| *3. Cə nin <u>Ilpon salam</u> imnita. | I am a Japanese. |
| *4. Cə nin <u>Cungkuk salam</u> imnita. | I am a Chinese. |
| *5. Cə nin <u>Tokil salam</u> imnita. | I am a German. |
| *6. Cə nin <u>Pullansə salam</u> imnita. | I am a Frenchman. |
| *7. Cə nin <u>Səul salam</u> imnita. | I am from Seoul. |

D. Substitution Drill

1. Sənsəng in Mikuk salam imnikka?
 {Are you an American?
 Is the teacher an American?
2. Sənsəng in Hankuk salam imnikka?
 {Are you a Korean?
 Is the teacher a Korean?
3. Sənsəng in Yəngkuk salam imnikka?
 {Are you an Englishman?
 Is the teacher an Englishman?
4. Sənsəng in Ilpon salam imnikka?
 {Are you a Japanese?
 Is the teacher a Japanese?
5. Sənsəng in Cungkuk salam imnikka?
 {Are you a Chinese?
 Is the teacher a Chinese?
6. Sənsəng in Tokil salam imnikka?
 {Are you a German?
 Is the teacher a German?
7. Sənsəng in Pullansə salam imnikka?
 {Are you a Frenchman?
 Is the teacher a Frenchman?
8. Sənsəng in Səul salam imnikka?
 {Are you from Seoul?
 Is the teacher from Seoul?
9. Sənsəng in Kim sənsəng imnikka?
 {Are you Mr. Kim
 Is the teacher Mr. Kim?
- *10. Sənsəng in Hankuk yəca imnikka?
 Is the teacher a Korean woman?
- *11. Sənsəng in Mikuk yəca imnikka?
 Is the teacher an American woman?
- *12. Sənsəng in Yəngkuk yəca imnikka?
 Is the teacher an English woman?

E. Substitution Drill

1. Sənsəng in Mikuk salam imnikka?
 Is the teacher an American?
2. Kim Sənsəng in Mikuk salam imnikka?
 Is Mr. Kim an American?
3. Ceimsi Sənsəng in Mikuk salam
 imnikka?
 Is Mr. James an American?
4. Pak Sənsəng in Mikuk salam
 imnikka?
 Is Mr. Park an American?
5. Haksəng in Mikuk salam imnikka?
 Is the student an American?
6. Hankuk mal haksəng in Mikuk salam
 imnikka?
 Is the Korean (language) student an
 American?
7. Hankuk mal sənsəng in Mikuk salam
 imnikka?
 Is the Korean (language) teacher an
 American

F. Substitution Drill

1. Sənsəng in muəs (il) hasimnikka?
What do you do?
What does the teacher do?
2. Haksəng in muəs (il) hasimnikka?
What does the student do?
- *3. Tangsin in muəs (il) hasimnikka?
What do you do (to husband or wife,
or to the same male adult friend)?
4. Ceimsi Sənsəng in muəs (il)
hasimnikka?
What does Mr. James do?
5. I Sənsəng in muəs (il) hasimnikka?
What does Mr. Lee do?
6. Chwe Sənsəng in muəs (il)
hasimnikka?
What does Mr. Choe do?
7. Kim Sənsəng in muəs (il) hasimnikka?
What does Mr. Kim do?
8. Kim Sənsəng in muəs (il) kongpu-
hamnikka?
What does Mr. Kim study?
- *9. Kim Sənsəng in muəs (il) pəumnikka?
What does Mr. Kim learn?
- *10. Kim Sənsəng in muəs (il)
kalichimnikka?
What does Mr. Kim teach?
- *11. Kim Sənsəng in muəs (il)
i(l)ksimnikka?
What does Mr. Kim read?

G. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sənsəng in muəs il
i(l)ksimnikka?
What does Mr. Kim read?
2. Pak Sənsəng in muəs il
i(l)ksimnikka?
What does Mr. Park read?
3. Pak Sənsəng in muəs il pəumnikka?
What is Mr. Park learning?
4. Chwe Sənsəng in muəs il pəumnikka?
What is Mr. Choe learning?
5. Chwe Sənsəng in muəs il
kalichimnikka?
What does Mr. Choe teach?
6. Mikuk haksəng in muəs kalichimnikka?
What is the American student teaching?
- *7. Mikuk haksəng in muəs il mal-
hamnikka?
{What does the American student say?
What does the American student speak?
8. Hankuk mal sensəng in muəs il mal-
hamnikka?
What does the Korean teacher say?
9. Hankuk mal sensəng in muəs il
kongpu-hamnikka?
What is the Korean teacher studying?
10. Ilpon haksəng in muəs il kongpu-
hamnikka?
What is the Japanese student studying?

H. Substitution Drill

1. (Cè nin) Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita. I('m) study(ing) Korean.
2. (Cè nin) Mikuk mal il kongpu-hamnita. I('m) study(ing) the American language.
3. (Cè nin) Ilpon mal il kongpu-hamnita. I('m) study(ing) Japanese.
4. (Cè nin) Cungkuk mal il kongpu-hamnita. I('m) study(ing) Chinese.
5. (Cè nin) Yengè lil kongpu-hamnita. I('m) study(ing) English.
6. (Cè nin) Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita. I('m) study(ing) Korean.
7. (Cè nin) Hankuk mal il kalichimnita. I('m) teach(ing) Korean.
8. (Cè nin) Hankuk mal il mal-hamnita. I speak Korean.
9. (Cè nin) Hankuk mal il pæumnita. I('m) learn(ing) Korean.
10. (Cè nin) Hankuk mal il i(l)ksimnita. I('m) read(ing) Korean.

I. Substitution Drill

1. (Sønsæng in) mues il kongpu-hamnikka? What do you study?
2. (Sønsæng in) Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnikka? Do you study Korean?
hamnikka?
3. (Sønsæng in) Mikuk mal il kongpu-hamnikka? Do you study the American language?
4. (Sønsæng in) Cungkuk mal il kongpu-hamnikka? Do you study Chinese?
5. (Sønsæng in) Ilpon mal il kongpu-hamnikka? Do you study Japanese?
6. (Sønsæng in) Yengè lil kongpu-hamnikka? Do you study English?
7. (Sønsæng in) Tokil mal il kongpu-hamnikka? Do you study German?
8. (Sønsæng in) Pullanse mal il kongpu-hamnikka? Do you study French?

J. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Cè nin Yèngè lìl mal-hamnita. | I speak English. |
| 2. <u>Kim</u> Sènsæng in Yèngè lìl mal-hamnita. | Mr. Kim speaks English. |
| 3. Kim Sènsæng in <u>Pullansé</u> mal lìl mal-hamnita. | Mr. Kim speaks French. |
| 4. Kim Sènsæng in Pullansé mal lìl pæumnita. | Mr. Kim is learning French. |
| 5. <u>Hankuk</u> haksæng in Pullansé mal lìl pæumnita. | Korean students are learning French. |
| 6. Hankuk haksæng in <u>Tokil</u> mal lìl pæumnita. | Korean students are learning German. |
| 7. Hankuk haksæng in Tokil mal lìl ilksimnita. | Korean students read German. |
| 8. <u>Yèngkuk</u> haksæng in Tokil mal lìl ilksimnita. | British students read German. |
| 9. Yèngkuk haksæng in <u>Cungkuk</u> mal lìl ilksimnita. | British students read Chinese. |
| 10. Yèngkuk haksæng in Cungkuk mal lìl <u>kalichimnita</u> . | A British student is teaching Chinese. |
| 11. <u>Mikuk</u> haksæng in Cungkuk mal lìl kalichimnita. | An American student is teaching Chinese. |

K. Response Drill (based on the dialogues)

Teacher:

1. Annyèng-hasimnikka?
2. Cheim pwepsimnita.
3. Ce ilim in Kim Kisu imnita.
4. Sènsæng in Mikuk salam imnikka?
5. (Sènsæng in) muës (il) hasimnikka?
6. Muës il kongpu-hamnikka?
7. Ceimsi Sènsæng, annyèng-hasimnikka?
8. Yocim èttèhke cinasimnikka?
9. (Sènsæng in) cæmi (ka) èttèhsimnikka?

Student:

- Ne, annyèng-hasimnikka?
 Annyèng-hasimnikka? Cheim pwepsimnita.
 Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita.
 Ne, kilehsimnita.
 Cè nin haksæng imnita.; Hankuk mal lìl kongpu-hamnita.
 Hankuk mal lìl kongpu-hamnita.
 Ne, cal issimnita.
 (Tækpun e) cal cinamnita.
 Kice kilehsimnita.

L. Response Drill

Teacher:

1. Mianhamnita.
2. Sillye-hamnita.
3. Sillye-hakessimnita.
4. Sillyehassimnita.
5. Annyənghi kasipsiyo.
6. Annyənghi kyesipsiyo.
7. Komapsimnita.
8. Mianhamnita.
9. An twessimnita.
10. Tto pwepkessimnita.

Student:

- Chənman e malssim imnita.
 (Aniyo) kwənchanhsimnita.
 (Aniyo) kwənchanhsimnita.
 (Aniyo) kwənchanhsimnita.
 Annyənghi kyesipsiyo.
 Annyənghi kyesipsiyo.
 Chenman e malssim imnita.
 (Aniyo) kwənchanhsimnita.
 (Aniyo) kwənchanhsimnita.
 Ne, tto pwepkessimnita.

EXERCISES

A. Tell Kim Sənsəng:

1. your name.
2. that you are an American.
3. that you are a student.
4. that you are studying Korean.
5. that you are fine.
6. that Mr. Park teaches Korean.
7. that you are glad to meet him.
8. that you speak Japanese.
9. that you read French.
10. that Mr. Park is learning English.
11. that the Korean (language) teacher is a woman from Seoul.
12. that the American is an English teacher.
13. that the English teacher speaks Chinese.
14. that the Chinese woman teaches German.
15. that the German (language) student speaks Japanese.

B. Conduct the following conversations:

Ask Mr. Kim:

1. if he is a Korean.
2. what he does.
3. what he teaches.
4. how he's getting along these days.
5. if the teacher is an American.
6. if the student is a Korean.
7. if he speaks Korean.
8. if Mr. James is a Korean (language) student.

Mr. Kim answers:

- that he is.
 that he is a teacher.
 that he teaches Korean.
 that he's doing fine.
 that he is.
 that he is an Englishman.
 that he does.
 that he is.

C. You've met a stranger at a party; tell him:

1. that you are glad to meet him.
2. that your name is so-and-so.
3. that you're studying Korean.
4. that Mr. Park is your Korean teacher.
5. that you'll see him again.

제 2 과

(대화 A)

장간

시례

실례합니다

1. A: 잠간 시**체**합**니**다.

말, 말씀

총

물어 볼시다

2. 말씀 좀 물어 봅시다.

3. B: 예, 무엇입니까?

대사관

미국 대사관이

어느

어디에

있읍니까

4. A: 미국 대사관이 어디에 있습니까?

저기

저기에

쪽

왼쪽

왼쪽으로

가십시요

5. B: 저기애 있읍니다. 왼쪽으로 가십시오.

UNIT 2. Finding One's Way Around
BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue AA

- | | |
|------------------------------|---|
| camkan/camkkān/ | for a moment |
| sillye | rudeness |
| sillye-hamnita | [I] commit rudeness |
| 1. Camkan sillye-hamnita. | Excuse me for a moment. |
| mal
malssim} | word; speech; language |
| com | a little |
| mule popsita/muləpopssita/ | let's inquire; let's ask |
| 2. Malssim com mule popsita. | May I ask you a question? ('Let's inquire a word.') |

B

3. Ne, muəs imnikka?

Yes, what is [it]?

A

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| təsakwan | embassy |
| Mikuk Təsakwan i | the U.S. Embassy (as subject) |
| əti | what place? |
| əti e | at what place?; where? |
| issimnikka | does [it] exist?; is [there]? |
| 4. Mikuk Təsakwan i əti e issimnikka? | Where is the U.S. Embassy? ('At what place does the U.S. Embassy exist?') |

B

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| cəki | that place; there |
| cəki e | at that place; over there |
| ccok | side; direction |
| wen ccok | the left (side) |
| wen ccok ilo | to the left |
| kasipsiyo/kasipssiyo/ | (please) go |
| 5. Cəki e issimnita. Wen ccok ilo | [It]'s over there. Go to the left. |
| kasipsiyo. | |

건물

저 건물

학교

6. A: 저 건물이 학교입니까?

7. B: 예, 그렇습니다.

대단히

고맙습니다

8. A: 대단히 고맙습니다.

아니요

천만에 말씀

9. B: 아니요, 천만에 말씀입니다.

(대화 B)

어데

시청

10. A: 시청이 어데 있습니까?

이 건물

11. B: 이 건물이 시청입니다.

저거

저거요

12. A: 저거는 무엇입니까?

A

kənmul

building

cə kənmul

that building

hakkyo

school

6. Cə kənmul i hakkyo imnikka? Is that building a school?

B

7. Ne, kilehsimnita. Yes, it is.

A

tətanhi

very; very much

komapsimnita

[I]'m grateful

8. Tətanhi komapsimnita. Thank you very much.

B

chenman e malssim

('a million words!')

9. Aniyo, chenman e malssim imnita. (No,) Not at all. ('You're welcome!')

Dialogue BA

ete

where

sichəng

City Hall

10. Sichəng i ete issimnikka? Where is the City Hall?

B

i kənmul

this building

11. I kənmul i sichəng imnita. This building is the City Hall.

A

cə kes

that (thing); the thing over
there

cə kes in

as for that

12. Cə kes in mues imnikka? What is THAT?

그것

여관

13. B: 그 것은 여관입니다.

어느 것

백화점

14. A: 어느 것이 백화점입니다?

여

여에

시청 여에

15. B: 백화점은 시청 여에 있습니다.

공보

공보원

미국 공보원

16. A: 미국 공보원은 어디에 있습니다?

바로

앞

앞에

바로 앞에

17. B: 바로 앞에 있습니다.

감사

감사합니다

18. A: 대단히 감사합니다.

19. B: 아니요, 천만에요.

B

ki kəs

that; it

yəkwan

inn; hotel

13. Ki kəs in yəkwan imnita.

It's a hotel. ('It's an inn.')

A

ən̩i kəs

which one

pækhwacəm

department store

14. ən̩i kəs i pækhwacəm imnikka?

Which one is the department store?

B

yəph

the side

yəph e

beside; by

sichəng yəph e

beside the City Hall; next to
the City Hall15. Pækhwacəm in sichəng yəph e
issimnita.The department store is beside the
City Hall. ('As for a department
store it exists besides the City
Hall.')A

kongpo

public information

kongpowən

information office

Mikuk Kongpowən

USIS

16. Mikuk Kongpowen in et e issimnikka?

Where is USIS? ('As for USIS, where
is [it]?)B

palo

just; right

aph

the front

aph e

at the front

palo aph e

right ahead

17. Palo aph e issimnita.

[It]'s right up ahead.

A

kamsa

gratitude

kamsa-hamnita

[I] thank you

18. Tətanhì kamsa-hamnita.

Thanks a lot.

B

19. Aniyo, chənman e yo.

No, not at all.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogues)

1. Camkan sillye-hamnita. 'Excuse me for a moment.' is usually said when you stop a stranger to get some information.
2. Malssim com mule popsita. ('Let us ask [you] a word') is often preceded by Camkan sillye-hamnita. and is regularly used to a stranger from whom you want to inquire about something, such as directions.
3. Muəs 'what (thing)' is always a free noun. It is never used to modify a following noun.
5. Ccok 'direction' occurs after determinatives (See Grammar Note 3) or place names. It never stands along. Examples:

i ccok	'this way'
ce ccok	'that way'
ki ccok	'that way'
hakkyo ccok	'the direction of the school'
təsakwan ccok	'the direction of the embassy'
wen ccok	'the left'
clɪn ccok	'the right'

- 8.18 Komapsimnita. and Kamsa-hamnita. 'Thank you.' are freely interchangeable on any occasion.
10. ete 'where' is the contracted form of eti + e.
13. Yekwan generally refers to 'inns' or 'hotels' of all sizes. However, modern western-style hotels are often called hothel.
14. enɪ 'which', 'what' always occurs before a nominal (free or bound) as a determinative. It never occurs as a free form.
19. Chənman e yo. 'Not at all.' is the informal equivalent of Chənman e malssim imnita.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Formal Polite Speech Sentences

The nucleus of a Korean sentence comes at the end of the sentence. When the nucleus of a normal sentence is a verb, we talk about verb-stems and verb-endings. There are several levels and/or styles of speech which show the relationship between the speaker and the person spoken to and/or about. The distinctions of speech level are shown mostly by the inflected forms of verbs.

In all societies, everywhere, when people talk to one another, they give each other signals (gestures, tones of voice, word-choice, etc.) to show that they understand their personal relationship (equality, dominance, subordination) and the situation (polite-casual, formal-informal, etc.). Sometimes, in our democratic society, we like to pretend these things don't exist, but they do. Very few of us can talk to our boss the way we talk to our best friend. In Korean, the personal relationship signals are built into the language.

Formal Polite Speech is the polite style of speech commonly used between adults who do not have a casual relationship. The four forms of Formal Polite Speech verb-endings are listed below.

(a) Formal Polite Statement Form: -mnita ~ -(s)imnita

In Formal Polite Statements, -mnita is added to a verb stem ending in a vowel; -(s)imnita to a verb stem ending in a consonant. Examples:

<u>Stem</u>		<u>Verbal</u>	
ka-	'to go'	Kamnita.	'[I] go.'
o-	'to come'	Omnita.	'[I] come.'
pəu-	'to learn'	Pəumnita.	'[I] learn.'
kongpu-ha-	'to study'	Kongpu-hamnita.	'[I] study.'
ilk-	'to read'	Ilk(s)imnita.	'[I] read.'
mek-	'to eat'	Mek(s)imnita.	'[I] eat.'
a(1)-	'to know'	Amnita.	'[I] know.'

(b) Formal Polite Question Form: -mnikka? ~ -(s)imnnikka?

In Formal Polite Questions, -mnikka? is added to a verb stem ending in a vowel, -(s)imnnikka? to a verb stem ending in a consonant. Compare:

Kamnita.	'[I] go.'	Kamnikka?	'Do [you] go?'
Omnita.	'[I] come.'	Omnikka?	'Do [you] come?'
Pæumnita.	'[I] learn.'	Pæumnikka?	'Do [you] learn?'
Kongpu-hamnita.	'[I] study.'	Kongpu-hamnikka?	'Do [you] study?'
Ilk(s)imnita.	'[I] read.'	Ilk(s)imnikka?	'Do [you] read?'
Mek(s)imnita.	'[I] eat.'	Mek(s)imnikka?	'Do [you] eat?'

(c) Formal Polite Imperative Form: -sipsiyo ~ -isipsiyo

In Formal Polite Requests, -sipsiyo is added to a verb stem ending in a vowel and -isipsiyo to a verb stem ending in a consonant. Examples:

<u>Stem</u>		<u>Verbal</u>	
ha-	'to do'	Hasipsiyo.	'Please do [it].'
ka-	'to go'	Kasipsiyo.	'Please go.'
o-	'to come'	Osipsiyo.	'Please come.'
mule po-	'to inquire'	Mule posipsiyo.	'Please ask.'
iss-	'to exist'	Issisispsiyo.	'Please stay.'
ilk-	'to read'	Ilkisipsiyo.	'Please read.'

(d) Formal Polite Propositative Form: -psita ~ -ipsita

In Formal Polite Proposals ('Let's ____.'), -psita is added to a verb stem ending in a vowel, and -ipsita is added to a verb stem ending in a consonant. Examples:

<u>Stem</u>		<u>Verbal</u>	
ka-	'to go'	Kapsita.	'Let's go.'
kalichi-	'to teach'	Kalichipsita.	'Let's teach.'
mal-ha-	'to speak'	Mal-hapsita.	'Let's speak.'
mule po-	'to inquire'	Mule popsita.	'Let's ask.'
ilk-	'to read'	Ilkipsita.	'Let's read.'

2. Particles i/ka, lo/ilo, e(a) i/ka

The particle i/ka singles out the preceding word as the emphasized subject of a sentence; i occurs after a word ending in a consonant and ka after a word ending in a vowel. When the particle i/ka is added, the subject is emphatic. Observe the location of the emphasis in the English equivalents. Examples:

Hakkyo <u>ka</u> issimnita.	'There is a <u>school</u> .' ('A school exists.')
Ce <u>kənmul i</u> təsakwan imnita.	' <u>That building</u> is the embassy.'
Ce <u>ka</u> Hankuk mal il pəumnita.	' <u>I</u> am studying Korean.'

(b) lo/ilo 'to, toward'

A place nominal + lo/ilo followed by such verbs as ka- 'to go', o- 'to come' indicates the direction of the following inflected expression. Lo occurs after a place noun which ends in a vowel and ilo after a noun ending in a consonant.

Examples:

Hakkyo <u>lo</u> kamnita.	{ '[I] go to school.' '[I] 'm going toward the school.'
Cip <u>ilo</u> osipsiyo.	'Please come to the house.'
Wen ccok <u>ilo</u> kasipsiyo.	'Please go to the left (side).'

(c) e 'at', 'on', 'in', 'to'

A place (or location) noun + e indicates that the action of the following inflected expression takes place at the noun. Examples:

Səul <u>i</u> Hankuk <u>e</u> issimnita.	'Seoul is <u>in</u> Korea. ('Seoul is in Korea.')
Təsakwan <u>i</u> eti <u>e</u> issimnikka?	' <u>Where</u> is the Embassy? ('At what place does the Embassy exist?')
Yəkwan <u>in</u> palo aph <u>e</u> issimnita.	'A hotel is right <u>ahead</u> .'
Chæk <u>il</u> cheksang <u>e</u> tuessimnita.	'[I] have placed (put) the book <u>on</u> the <u>desk</u> .'

3. Determinatives

There is a small class of uninflected words in Korean which never occur by themselves but are followed by nominals. Words of this class are called Determinatives. A determinitive + a nominal = a noun phrase. In Unit 2, we have the following determinatives: i 'this __', ce 'that __', k1 'the (or that) __', en 'which __', olin 'right __', wen 'left __'. Observe the following examples:

i chæk	'this book'
i kès	'this (thing)'
ce salam	'that man'
ce kès	'that ('thing over there)'
kì kënmul	'that ('the!) building'
kì salam	'that man (mentioned previously)'
eni pækwacëm	'which department store'
eni kès	'which one'
olìn ccok	'the right (direction)'
wen ccok	'the left (direction)'

Note that i 'this __' and ce 'that __' before nominals indicate nominals within the sight of the speaker, while kì 'that (or the) __' before a nominal refers to a previously mentioned one; olìn 'the right __' and wen 'the left __' occur only before the word ccok.

4. Post-Nouns: kès, pun, ccok

Kès ('thing'), pun ('person'), ccok ('side') belong to a small class of Korean nouns which never occur alone but only after such words as determinatives, free nouns, or other modifier classes of words and make up nominal phrases. Words of this class are called Post-Nouns. Examples:

i kès	'this (thing)'
ce pun	'that man (honored)'
khìn kès	'(a) big one'
wen ccok	'the left (side)'

5. Imnita and Issimnita

In Korean there is a distinction between the expression (a) 'A is B' and (b) 'There is an A.' or 'A exists.' In Unit 1, we learned that the copula i- (of which imnita is one inflected form) is used to denote 'Noun A is Noun B.' In contrast to the copula, the verb iss- (of which issimnita is one inflected form) means '(something) exists.' (See Grammar Note 1, Unit 1.) Compare:

(a)

(Ki kès in) chæk imnita.	'[It] is a book.'
I kënmul i hakkyo imnita.	'This building is a school.'
Na nin sënsëng issimnita.	'I am a teacher.'

(b)

Chæk i issimnita.

'There is a book.'
('A book exists.')

Səul e təsakwan i issimnita.

'There is an Embassy at Seoul.'
('An exbassy exists at Seoul.')

Note that a nominal i/ka + issimnita preceded by a personal noun as a topic occurs to express that the personal noun has or possesses the nominal. Examples:

Na nin chæk i issimnita.

'I have a book.'
('As for me a book exists.')Sənsəng in Hankuk mal sacən i
issimnikka?

'Do you have a Korean dictionary?'

Ne, (na nin) sikye ka issimnita.

'Yes, I have a watch.'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Tæsakwan i eti e issimnikka? | Where is the Embassy? |
| 2. <u>Mikuk Tæsakwan</u> i eti e issimnikka? | Where is the U.S. Embassy? |
| 3. <u>Hakkyo</u> ka eti e issimnikka? | Where is the school? |
| 4. <u>Sichæng</u> i eti e issimnikka? | Where is the City Hall? |
| 5. <u>Pækhwacæm</u> i eti e issimnikka? | Where is the department store? |
| 6. <u>Yekwan</u> i eti e issimnikka? | Where is the inn? |
| 7. <u>Kongpowen</u> i eti e issimnikka? | Where is the information center? |
| 8. <u>Mikuk Kongpowen</u> i eti e issimnikka? | Where is the USIS? |
| 9. <u>Hankuk Tæsakwan</u> i eti e issimnikka? | Where is the Korean Embassy? |
| 10. <u>Haksæng</u> i eti e issimnikka? | Where is the student? |
| 11. <u>Hankuk mal sænsæng</u> i eti e issimnikka? | Where is the Korean (language) teacher? |
| 12. <u>Ki kes</u> i eti e issimnikka? | Where is it? |
| *13. <u>Ai ka</u> eti e issimnikka? | Where is the child? |
| 14. <u>Puin</u> i eti e issimnikka? | Where is your wife? ('Where is the lady?') |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Cæki e issimnita. | [It]'s over there. |
| *2. <u>Yeki</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s over here. |
| 3. <u>Wen ccok</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s on the left. |
| *4. <u>Olin ccok</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s on the right. |
| 5. <u>Aph</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s in front [of you]. |
| *6. <u>Twi</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s in the back. |
| 7. <u>Yeph</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s beside [you]. |
| 8. <u>Hakkyo</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s at school. |
| 9. <u>Mikuk</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s in America. |
| 10. <u>Hankuk</u> e issimnita. | [It]'s in Korea. |

C. Substitution Drill (Supply i/ka Particle.)

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Sicheng</u> i issimnita. | [There] is the City Hall. |
| 2. <u>Hakkyo</u> (ka) issimnita. | [There] is a school. |
| 3. <u>Kenmul</u> (i) issimnita. | [There] is a building. |
| 4. <u>Yekwan</u> (i) issimnita. | [There] is an inn. |
| 5. <u>Sensang</u> (i) issimnita. | [There] is a teacher. |
| *6. <u>Kyosil</u> (i) issimnita. | [There] is a classroom. |
| *7. <u>Sikye</u> (ka) issimnita. | [There] is a watch. |
| *8. <u>Chæk</u> (i) issimnita. | [There] is a book. |
| *9. <u>Chæksang</u> (i) issimnita. | [There] is a {table.
desk. |
| *10. <u>Iyca</u> (ka) issimnita. | [There] is a chair. |
| *11. <u>Yenphil</u> (i) issimnita. | [There] is a pencil. |
| *12. <u>Cito</u> (ka) issimnita. | [There] is a map. |
| 13. <u>Ai</u> (ka) issimnita. | [There] is a child. |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Tæsakwan</u> i yeki e issimnita. | The Embassy is here ('at this place'). |
| 2. <u>Tæsakwan</u> i <u>ceki</u> e issimnita. | The Embassy is over there ('at that place'). |
| 3. <u>Hakkyo</u> ka ceki e issimnita. | The school is over there. |
| 4. <u>Hakkyo</u> ka <u>wen ccok</u> e issimnita. | The school is on the left. |
| 5. <u>Mikuk Kongpowen</u> i wen ccok e
issimnita. | USIS is on the left. |
| 6. <u>Mikuk Kongpowen</u> i <u>i kænmul</u> e
issimnita. | USIS is in this building. |
| 7. <u>Pækhwacem</u> i i kænmul e issimnita. | The department store is in this building. |
| 8. <u>Pækhwacem</u> i <u>aph</u> e issimnita. | The department store is ahead. |
| 9. <u>Yekwan</u> i aph e issimnita. | The inn is ahead. |
| 10. <u>Yekwan</u> i <u>yeph</u> e issimnita. | The inn is nearby. |

E. Substitution Drill (Supply lo/ilo Particle.)

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Wen ccok ilo kasipsiyo. | (Please) go to the left. |
| *2. <u>Olin</u> ccok (ilo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go to the right. |
| *3. <u>I</u> ccok (ilo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go this way. |
| *4. <u>Ce</u> ccok (ilo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go that way. |
| 5. <u>Hakkyo</u> (lo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go to school. |
| 6. <u>Ce kənmul</u> (lo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go to that building. |
| 7. <u>Pækhwacəm</u> (ilo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go to the department store. |
| 8. <u>Sichəng</u> (ilo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go to the city hall. |
| 9. <u>Yekwan</u> (ilo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go to the inn. |
| 10. <u>Tæsakwan</u> (ilo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go to the Embassy. |

F. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Ce kənmul i hakkyo imnikka? | Is that building a school? |
| 2. Ce kənmul i <u>tæsakwan</u> imnikka? | Is that building the embassy? |
| 3. Ce kənmul i <u>Mikuk Tæsakwan</u> imnikka? | Is that building the U.S. Embassy? |
| 4. Ce kənmul i <u>sichəng</u> imnikka? | Is that building the City Hall? |
| 5. Ce kənmul i <u>kongpowen</u> imnikka? | Is that building the information center? |
| 6. Ce kənmul i <u>pækhwacəm</u> imnikka? | Is that building a department store? |
| 7. <u>Ce kəs</u> i pækhwacəm imnikka? | Is that a department store? |
| 8. <u>I kəs</u> i pækhwacəm imnikka? | Is this a department store? |
| 9. <u>Ki kəs</u> i pækhwacəm imnikka? | Is it a department store? |
| 10. <u>I kənmul</u> i pækhwacəm imnikka? | Is this building a department store? |
| 11. <u>əni kəs</u> i pækhwacəm imnikka? | Which is the department store? |
| 12. <u>əni kənmul</u> i pækhwacəm imnikka? | Which building is the department store? |

G. Substitution Drill (Supply i/ka Particle)

1. Cè kənmul i hakkyo imnikka? Is that building a school?
2. Cè salam i haksæng imnikka? Is he ('that person') a student?
3. Cè kes i yekwan imnikka? Is that an inn?
4. Cè kənmul i Mikuk Tæsakwan imnikka? Is that building the U.S. Embassy?
5. Cè haksæng i Mikuk salam imnikka? Is that student an American?
6. Cè yeca ka Yængæ sensæng imnikka? Is she ('that woman') an English teacher?
7. Cè ccok i Mikuk Kongpowæn imnikka? Is USIS that way?
8. Cè hakkyo ka Hankuk mal hakkyo imnikka? Is that school a Korean language school?
9. Cè kənmul i pækhwacæm imnikka? Is that building a department store?
10. Cè puin i Hankuk yeca imnikka? Is that lady a Korean woman?

H. Substitution Drill

1. Sænsæng e ilim in muæs imnikka? What is your name?
2. Haksæng e ilim in muæs imnikka? What is the student's name?
3. Cè sænsæng e ilim in muæs imnikka? What's that teacher's name?
4. I kənmul e ilim in muæs imnikka? What's the name of this building?
5. Cè hakkyo e ilim in muæs imnikka? What's the name of that school?
6. Cè Mikuk salam e ilim in muæs imnikka? What's the name of that American?
7. Cè Hankuk salam e ilim in muæs imnikka? What's the name of that Korean?
8. Ki salam e ilim in muæs imnikka? What's the name of that man?
9. Cè yekwan e ilim in muæs imnikka? What's the name of that inn?
10. Cè ai e ilim in muæs imnikka? What's the name of that child?
11. Cè puin e ilim in muæs imnikka? What's the name of that lady?

I. Substitution Drill

1. Paekhwacem in hakkyo yeph e issimnita. The department store is next to the school.
2. Taeakwan in hakkyo yeph e issimnita. The Embassy is next to the school.
3. Mikuk Taeakwan in hakkyo yeph e issimnita. The U.S. Embassy is next to the school.
4. Mikuk Kongporen in hakkyo yeph e issimnita. USIS is next to the school.
5. Hankuk yekwan in hakkyo yeph e issimnita. The Korean inn is next to the school.
- *6. inhaeng in hakkyo yeph e issimnita. The bank is next to the school.
- *7. Sangcem in hakkyo yeph e issimnita. The store is next to the school.
8. Hothel in hakkyo yeph e issimnita. The hotel is next to the school.
- *9. Cip in hakkyo yeph e issimnita. The house is next to the school.
- *10. Kongwen in hakkyo yeph e issimnita. The park is next to the school.

J. Substitution Drill

1. Paekhwacem in sicheng yeph e issimnita. The department store is next to the City Hall.
2. Paekhwacem in sicheng aph e issimnita. The department store is in front of the City Hall.
3. Paekhwacem in sicheng twi e issimnita. The department store is behind the City Hall.
4. Paekhwacem in sicheng wen ccok e issimnita. The department store is on the left side of the City Hall.
5. Paekhwacem in sicheng olin ccok e issimnita. The department store is on the right side of the City Hall.
- *6. Paekhwacem in sicheng aph ccok e issimnita. The department store is on the front side of the City Hall.
- *7. Paekhwacem in sicheng twi ccok e issimnita. The department store is on the back side of the City Hall.
- *8. Paekhwacem in sicheng kakkai issimnita. The department store is near the City Hall.

K. Substitution Drill (Supply in/nin Particle.)

1. Pækhwacem in sicheng yeph e issimnita. The department store is next to the City Hall.
2. Sicheng in tæsakwan yeph e issimnita. The City Hall is next to the Embassy.
3. Hakkyo nin yeawan yeph e issimnita. The school is next to an inn.
- *4. Yeawan in inhang yeph e issimnita. The inn is next to a bank.
- *5. inhang in sangcem yeph e issimnita. The bank is next to a store.
- *6. Sangcem in hothel yeph e issimnita. The store is next to a hotel.
- *7. Hothel in cip yeph e issimnita. The hotel is next to a house.
- *8. Cip in kongwen yeph e issimnita. The house is next to a park.
- *9. Kongwen in kil yeph e issimnita. The park is right near the street.

L. Substitution Drill

1. Pækhwacem in sicheng yeph e issimnita. The department store is next to the City Hall.
2. Hakkyo nin sicheng aph e issimnita. The school is in front of the City Hall.
3. Hankuk Tæsakwan in sicheng twi e issimnita. The Korean Embassy is behind the City Hall.
4. inhang in sicheng wen ccok e issimnita. The bank is on the left side of the City Hall.
5. Sangcem in sicheng olin ccok e issimnita. The store is on the right side of the City Hall.
6. Hothel in sicheng kakkai issimnita. The hotel is near the City Hall.
7. Kongwen in sicheng aph ccok e issimnita. The park is on the front side of the City Hall.
8. Cip in sicheng twi ccok e issimnita. The house is on the back side of the City Hall.
9. Mikuk Kongpowen in sicheng yeph e issimnita. USIS is next to the City Hall.

M. Response Drill

Tutor: Mikuk Tæsakwan i issimnikka?

'Is there a U.S. Embassy?'

Student: Ne, Mikuk Tæsakwan i
issimnita.

'Yes, [there] is a U.S. Embassy.'

1. Ceki e issimnikka? Ne, ceki e issimnita.
2. Ce kes i hakkyo imnikka? Ne, ce kes i hakkyo imnita.
3. Kilehsimnikka? Ne, kilehsimnita.
4. I kənmul i sichəng imnikka? Ne, i kənmul i sichəng imnita.
5. (Sənsəng in) Mikuk salam imnikka? Ne, Mikuk salam imnita.
6. (Sənsəng in) Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita? Ne, Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita.
7. Cal issimnikka? Ne, cal issimnita.
8. Mianhamnikka? Ne, mianhamnita.
9. Kwænchanhsimnikka? Ne, kwænchanhsimnita.
10. Hankuk mal il pæumnikka? Ne, Hankuk mal il pæumnita.
11. Yengə lil mal-hamnikka? Ne, Yengə lil mal-hamnita.
12. Ilpon mal il kalichimnikka? Ne, Ilpon mal il kalichimnita.

N. Response Drill (Answer the question based on the dialogue.)

1. Sillye-hamnita. Aniyo, kwænchanhsimnita.
2. Malssim com mule popsita. Ne, muəs imnikka.
3. Taətanhı komapsimnita. Aniyo, chənman e malssim imnita.
(Təkpun e) cal cinamnita.
4. Yocim ettehke cinasimnikka? Ne, kilehsimnita.
5. Sənsəng in Mikuk salam imnikka? Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita.
6. Sənsəng in muəs hasimnikka? Hankuk mal il kalichimnita.
7. Kim Sənsəng in muəs il
kalichimnikka? Chæksang e issimnita.
8. Chæk i ete issimnikka? Hankuk e issimnita.
9. Səul i ete issimnikka? Chæksang aph e issimnita.
10. iyca ka eti e issimnikka?

0. Grammar Drill (Based on Grammar Note 2 supply i/ka in a proper place.)

Tutor: Tæsakwan ete issimnikka?

Student: Tæsakwan i ete issimnikka?

1. Sicheng (i) ceki e issimnita.
2. Hakkyo (ka) wen ccok e issimnita.
3. Ceimsi Sensæng (i) Mikuk salam imnita.
4. Haksæng (i) kongpu-hamnita.
5. Yeki (ka) tæsakwan imnita.
6. iyca (ka) eti e issimnikka?
7. Kim Kisu (ka) haksæng imnikka?
8. Seoul (i) Hankuk e issimnikka?
9. eni kës (i) pækhwacëm imnikka?
10. I kënmul (i) sicheng imnikka?

P. Transformation Drill (Transform the sentence as in the example supplying the particle i/ka.)

Tutor: I kës i chæk imnita.

'This is a book.'

Student: Chæk i issimnita.

'There is a book.'

1. I kës i hakkyo imnita.
 2. I kës i tæsakwan imnita.
 3. I kës i sicheng imnita.
 4. I kës i sikye imnita.
 5. I kës i iyca imnita.
 6. I kës i kyosil imnita.
 7. I kës i Cungkuk Tæsakwan imnita.
 8. I kës i chæksang imnita.
 9. I kës i pækhwacëm imnita.
 10. I kës i yekwan imnita.
- Hakkyo (ka) issimnita.
Tæsakwan (i) issimnita.
Sicheng (i) issimnita.
Sikye (ka) issimnita.
iyca (ka) issimnita.
Kyosil (i) issimnita.
Cungkuk Tæsakwan (i) issimnita.
Chæksang (i) issimnita.
Pækhwacëm (i) issimnita.
Yekwan (i) issimnita.

Q. Response Drill (Use the particle in/nin in place of i/ka and answer the questions as in the example.)

Tutor: Hakkyo ka issimnikka?

'Is there a school?'

Student: Ne, hakkyo nin issimnita.

'Yes, there is a school... (but) ...'

1. Cè kès i pækhwacem imnikka?

Ne, cè kès in pækhwacem imnita.

2. Sicheng i wen ccok e issimnikka?

Ne, sicheng in wen ccok e issimnita.

3. Čeimsi ka Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnikka?

Ne, Ceimsi nin Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita.

4. iyca ka yeki e issimnikka?

Ne iyca nin yeki e issimnita.

5. Kim Kisu ka Hankuk salam imnikka?

Ne, Kim Kisu nin Hankuk salam imnita.

6. Søul i Hankuk e issimnikka?

Ne, Søul in Hankuk e issimnita.

7. Pak Sønsæng i Yøngø lìl kalichimnikka?

Ne, Pak Sønsæng in Yøngø lìl

kalichimnita.

8. Mikuk salam i Cungkuk mal il pæumnikka?

Ne, Mikuk salam in Cungkuk mal il pæumnita.

R. Grammar Drill (Supply the right particle wherever appropriate: in/nin, il/lìl, e, ilo/lo.)

Tutor: Ce ilim Ceimsi imnita.

Student: Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita.

1. Cè (nin) haksæng imnita.

2. Muës (il) kongpu-hamnikka?

3. Hankuk mal (il) pæumnita.

4. Pak Sønsæng in Yøngø (lìl) kalichimnita.

5. Taësakwan in cèki (e) issimnita.

6. Wen ccok (ilo) kasipsiyo.

7. Cè kès (in) muës imnikka?

8. Palo aph (e) issimnita.

9. Hakkyo (lo) kasipsiyo.

10. Olin ccok (ilo) kasipsiyo.

11. Cè nin Yøngø (lìl) mal-hamnita.

12. Čeimsi Sønsæng in Ilpon mal (il) kalichimnita.

EXERCISES

A asks B for the following information and B responds.

A asks:

1. where the U.S. Embassy is.
2. what that building is.
3. which building the department store is.
4. where USIS is.
5. where the City Hall is.
6. what he does.
7. how he's doing these days.
8. whether that building is a department store.
9. whether the school is next to the City Hall.
10. whether the school is behind the City Hall.
11. whether the department store is in front of the U.S. Embassy.
12. whether USIS is beside the Embassy.
13. whether that is the school building.
14. where a bank is.
15. whether the park is near the street.
16. whether the store is beside the street.

B answers:

- that it is next to the City Hall.
that it is the USIS building.
that the department store is in front of USIS.
that it is in front of the department store.
that it is in front of USIS.
that he teaches Korean.
that he's doing O.K.
that it is.
that it is behind the City Hall.
that it is in front of the City Hall.
that it is next to the Embassy.
that it is in the Embassy building.
that it is a department store.
that it is near the park.
that it is beside the street.
that it is so.

제 3 과 길 찾기(계속)

(대화 A)

여보세요

길

쯤

물어 봐겠습니다

1. A: 여보세요, 길 좀 물어 봐겠습니다.

어디를

찾습니까

2. B: 예, 어디를 찾습니까?

역

서울역

가는 길

아십니까, 압니까

3. A: 서울역에 가는 길을 아십니까?

똑 바로

가십시오

4. B: 예, 똑 바로 가십시오.

여기에서

멀니까, 멀읍니까

5. A: 여기에서 멀니까?

UNIT 3. Finding One's Way Around (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue AA

yəpose yo

hello there!; say!

kil

street; road; way

com

a little

mule pokessimnita

I will inquire

1. Yəpose yo! Kil com mule
pokessimnita.

Excuse me. May I ask you for directions?
('I'll inquire about the street a
little.')

B

əti lil

where (as direct object)

chacsimnikka/chassimnikka/

do [you] look for?

2. Ne, əti lil chacsimnikka?

Certainly, where do you want to go?
('What (place) are you looking for?')

A

yək

station

Səul Yək e

to Seoul Station

kanin kil

the way to ('going way')

asimnikka
amnikka }

do [you] know?

3. Səul Yək e kanin kil il asimnikka?

Can you tell me how to get to Seoul
Station? ('Do you know the way to
Seoul Station?')

B

ttokpalo

straight ahead, straight

kasipsiyo

(please) go

4. Ne, ttokpalo kasipsiyo.

Go straight ahead.

A

yəki ese

from here

mə(lı)mnikka

is [it] far?

5. Yəki ese memnikka?

Is [it] far from here?

안 떠니다

가깝습니다

6. B: 아니요, 안 떠니다. 가깝습니다.

7. A: 대단히 고맙습니다.

괜찮습니다

8. B: 아니요, 괜찮습니다.

(대화 B)

어디에

가십니까, 갑니까

9. 박 어디에 가십니까?

정거장

10. 김 : 정거장에 갑니다.

정거장에서

하겠습니까

무엇을 하겠습니까

11. 박 : 정거장에서 무엇을 하겠습니까?

거기

거기에서

만나겠습니다

친구

B

- an məmnita [it] is not far
 kakkapsimnita/kakkapssimnita/ [it]'s near
 6. Aniyo, an məmnita. Kakkapsimnita. No, it's not far. It's near(by).

A

- tətanhi very; very much
 komapsimnita I'm grateful
 7. Tətanhi komapsimnita. Thank you very much.

B

- kwənchanhsimnita [that]'s O.K.
 8. Aniyo, kwənchanhsimnita. (No,) Not at all.

Dialogue BA

- əti e in what place; to what place
 kasimnikka } do [you] go?
 kamnikka }
 9. eti e kasimnikka? Where are you going? ('Where do you go?')

B

- cəngkəcang railroad station
 10. Cəngkəcang e kamnita. I'[m] go[ing] to the station.

A

- cəngkəcang ese at the station; from the station
 hakessimnikka will you do?
 muəs (il) hakessimnikka what will you do?
 11. Cəngkəcang ese muəs (il) What are you going there for? ('What are you going to do at the station?')
 hakessimnikka?

12. 김 : 거기에서 친구를 만나겠습니다.

누구

13. 박 : 그 친구는 누구입니다?

그분

그분을

14. 김 : 제임스 선생입니다. 그분을 아닙니까?

모릅니다

학교 선생

15. 박 : 아니요, 모릅니다. 학교 선생입니다?

아닙니다

외교관

16. 김 : 아니요, 학교 선생이 아닙니다. 외교관입니다.

Additional Expressions for Classroom Use

17. 알겠습니다?

18. 예, 알겠습니다.

19. 아니요, 모르겠습니다.

20. 다시 한번 말씀 하십시오.

21. 있어 버렸습니다., 있어옵니다.

B

keki	that place
keki ese	at that place; there
mannakessimnita	[I] will meet
chinku	friend

12. Keki ese chinku l'il mannakessimnita. I'm going to meet a friend there.

A

nuku	who; what person
13. Ki chinku nin nuku imnikka?	Who is he ('that friend')?

B

ki pun	he (honored); ('that person')
ki pun il	him (as direct object)
14. Ceimsi Sənsəng imnita. Ki pun il amnikka?	(He is) Mr. James. Do you know him?

A

molimnita	[I] do not know
hakkyo sənsəng	(school) teacher
15. Aniyo, molimnita. Hakkyo sənsəng imnikka?	No, I don't know [him]. Is he a teacher?

B

an imnita	[he] is not
wekyokwan	diplomat; foreign service personnel
16. Aniyo, hakkyo sənsəng i an imnita. Wekyokwan imnita.	No, [he] is not a (school) teacher. [He] is in the foreign service.

Additional Expressions for Classroom Use

17. Alkessimnikka?	Do you understand? ('Will you know?')
18. Ne, alkessimnita.	Yes, I understand. ('Yes, I'll know.')
19. Aniyo, molikessimnita.	No, I don't understand. ('No, I'll not know.')
20. Tasi (hanpən) malssim-hasipsiyo.	Please say [it] once more.
21. Icə pəlyessimnita. Icessimnita. }	I forgot [it].

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogues.)

1. Yəpose yo. 'Hello there!' ('Please look here.') is the informal polite equivalent of the less frequently used form Yəposipsiyo. Yəpose yo. is said only when you try to get the attention of a passerby and is not said as the equivalent of the English greeting expression 'Hi!' or 'Hello.' Yəpose yo! also occurs regularly when you make and/or receive a phone call.
Kil com mule pokessimnita. ('I'll inquire [you] about the street a little.') is used when you ask someone for street directions.
2. The verb stem chac- means 'to look for (something, someone)', 'to find', 'to get (money at the bank)', 'to claim (something)', etc.
3. Səul Yək e kanin kil il asimnikka? means literally 'Do you know the street which goes to Seoul Station?' The phrase 'place noun + e kanin kil' is the equivalent of English 'the way to + place noun.'
5. The verb stem in Məmnikka? 'Is [it] far?' is mə(1)-. l in mə(1)- is dropped when either -(1)mnita or -(1)mnikka ending is added to the stem.
13. Nuku 'who' or 'what person' is a noun. When nuku is used as the subject of a sentence, with the particle i/ka, it has the irregular form nuka. When other particles follow, the full form nuku occurs. For example, nuku lil 'whom!', nuku wa 'with whom!', nuku eke 'to whom!', nuku e 'whose!', etc.
14. Ki pun 'he (honored)' is the politer equivalent of ki salam ('that person'). Salam is a free noun, whereas pun occurs only as a post-noun.
15. The verb stem moli- 'do not know' is the negative of the verb stem a(1)- 'know'. When one of -(1)mnita, -(1)mnikka, -(1)psita and -(1)sippsiyo endings is added to the stem a(1)-, l is dropped and is not pronounced.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Verbs: Action vs. Description and Intransitive vs. Transitive

Korean verbs fall into two main classes: Action Verbs and Description Verbs.

An action verb is used in sentences like 'X does something' or 'X takes a certain action', whereas a description verb is used in sentences like 'X is in such and such a state'. A Korean action verb corresponds generally to an English verb; a Korean description verb, to English 'be + adjective'.

The only difference between action and description verbs is that most description verbs do not occur in either propositative or imperative sentences. Otherwise, the forms of description verbs are similar to those of action verbs.

Korean verbs are further classified into another two main classes: Transitive and Intransitive. A transitive verb is one which may be preceded by an object, that is, noun + i1/l1l may precede the verb. There is no change in the verb itself. An intransitive verb is one which is never preceded by an object. Both transitive and intransitive verbs may be preceded by an emphasized subject, that is, noun + i/ka.

All description verbs are intransitive verbs; most action verbs are transitive, but some are intransitive and others are both transitive and intransitive.

Examples:

Group 1 (intransitive verbs)

Hakkyo ka <u>kakkapsimnita</u> .	'The school is near.'
Chæk i <u>cohsimnita</u> .	'The book is good.'
Yeki ese <u>tæsakwan i me(l1)mnikka?</u>	'Is the embassy far from here?'
Haksæng i <u>kongpu-hamnita</u> .	'The student is studying.'
Hakkyo ka <u>sicak-hamnita</u> .	'School begins.'

Group 2 (transitive verbs)

Yæng e <u>l1l pæumnita</u> .	'[I] I'm learning English.'
Hankuk mal i <u>kalichimnita</u> .	'[I] I'm teaching Korean.'
Yæng e chæk i <u>l1(l)kimnita</u> .	'[I] I read an English book.'
Hakkyo l1l <u>sicak-hamnita</u> .	'[I] I begin school.'

Note that inflected forms (e.g. 'verbals') may occur as complete sentences. In Korean when the context or situation is clear as to the subject and/or topic of a sentence, the speaker often omits the subject or the topic, and the sentence consists of the verbal alone, or the verbal plus its modifiers and/or objects.

The topic/subject in the following examples may be omitted.

Examples:

(Sənsəng in) eti e kamnikka?

'Where are (you) going?'

(Cə nin) hakkyo e kamnita.

'(I) am going to school.'

Ne, (hakkyo ka) məmnita.

'Yes, [it] ('the school') is far.'

2. Future Tense in Korean

Tenses in a Korean sentence are indicated in verbals. The form -kess- is infixated between the verb stem and the verb ending to mark the future tense. There is a small class of forms which occur after verb stems but always before verb endings. We shall call them Verb Suffixes. The form -kess- is called the Future Tense Suffix. When a verbal is a statement sentence and includes -kess-, it indicates the speaker's intention for the future. If the verbal which includes -kess- is a question sentence, the speaker asks the addressee about his future intention or opinion. If the subject or the topic of the sentence is other than the speaker or the addressee, the sentence which includes -kess- denotes an opinion or presumption about the subject or the topic in the sentence. Examples;

(Cə nin) hakkyo e kakessimnita.

'I will go to school.'

(Ce ka) Yəngə lɪl pəukessimnita.

'I will study English.'

(Sənsəng in) mues il hakessimnika?

{ 'What are you going to do?'
'What will you do?'

Chinku lɪl mannakessimnika?

'Are you going to meet a friend?'

Hakkyo ka kakkapessimnika?

'Will the school be near (do you think)?'

Kim Sənsəng i cip e issessimnita.

'Mr. Kim must be home (I suppose).'

3. Honorifics

Whenever the subject and/or the topic in the sentence is honored, a verb suffix -(i)si- is added immediately after the verb stem. We shall call the suffix -(i)si- the Honorific Suffix. When -(i)si- and other suffixes such as the future tense suffix -kess- occur in the same verb, the honorific suffix -(i)si- always precedes other suffixes. In an inflected form the honorific suffix is not used if the subject in the sentence is inferior to the speaker. Note that the speaker never honors himself, that is, the suffix -(i)si- in a verbal does not occur when the subject and/or the topic is the speaker. -Si- occurs after a stem ending in a vowel; -isi- after a stem ending in a consonant. Compare:

a. eti e kamnikka?

'Where are [you] going.'

eti e kasimnikka?

'Where are [you] going?' (H)

eti e kasikessimnika?

'Where will [you] go?' (H)

- b. Muès il hamnikka? 'What do [you] do?'
 Muès il hasimnikka? 'What do [you] do?' (H)
 Muès il hasikessimnikka? 'What will [you] do?' (H)
- c. Kim Sensæng i kalichimnita. 'Mr. Kim's teaching.'
 Kim Sensæng i kalichisimnita. 'Mr. Kim's teaching.' (H)
 Kim Sensæng i kalichisikessimnita. 'Mr. Kim will teach (I think).' (H)
- d. Ce salam in Yëngë lil pëumnita. 'He's learning English.'
 Ce salam in Yëngë lil Pëusimnita. 'He's learning English.' (H)
 Ce salam in Yëngë lil pëusikessimnita. 'He will learn English.' (H)

4. Negative an

There are two ways of expressing negation in Korean statement and question sentences. One simple way is the use of the word an immediately before an inflected expression. However, with some verbs, an does not normally occur; another form of negation is used. (See Unit 4.) Compare:

- a. Hakkyo e kamnita. '[I] go to school.'
 Hakkyo e an kamnita. '[I] don't go to school.'
- b. Kim Sensæng i omnita. 'Mr. Kim's coming.'
 Kim sensæng i an omnita. 'Mr. Kim is not coming.'
- c. Ne, kalichimnita. 'Yes, [I] teach.'
 Aniyo, an kalichimnita. 'No, [I] don't teach.'

5. Particle ese 'from', 'at', 'in', 'on'

A place nominal + ese denotes either dynamic location or point of departure for the following inflected expression depending on what verb follows after it. Examples:

- Ce nin Seul ese omnita. 'I'm coming from Seoul.'
 Hakkyo ka cip ese memnita. 'The school is far from the house.'
 Uli nin kyosil ese kongpu-hamnita. 'We study in the classroom.'
Cengkècang ese chinku lil
mannakesimnita. 'I'll meet a friend at the station.'
- Kim Sensæng i Seul ese il-hamnita. 'Mr. Kim works in Seoul.'

Compare the above construction with place nominal + e in Unit 2. Before issimnita 'exists', a place nominal + e may occur but not a place nominal + ese.

6. Particle e 'to'

A place nominal + e followed by either ka- 'to go' or o- 'to come' indicates the direction of the action of the inflected expression. Compare e with lo/ilo in Unit 2, Grammar Note 2. Observe the examples:

Ce nin hakkyo e kamnita.

'I'm going to school.'

Ce e cip e ośipsiyo.

'Please come to my house.'

Cengkəcang e kakessimnikka?

'Will you go to the station?'

Kim Sənsəng in Mikuk e an omnita.

'Mr. Kim is not coming to America.'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drills

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>eti</u> <u>lil</u> chacsimnikka? | What (place) are [you] looking for? |
| 2. <u>Muès</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | What are you looking for? |
| 3. <u>eni</u> <u>hakkyo</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | What school are you looking for? |
| 4. <u>eni</u> <u>haksæng</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | Which student are you looking for? |
| 5. <u>eni</u> <u>kil</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | Which street are you looking for? |
| 6. <u>eni</u> <u>pækhwacem</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | Which department store are you looking for? |
| 7. <u>Nuku</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | Whom are you looking for? |
| 8. <u>eni</u> <u>kyosil</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | Which classroom are you looking for? |
| 9. <u>eni</u> <u>sensæng</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | Which teacher are you looking for? |
| 10. <u>eni</u> <u>ai</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | Which child are you looking for? |
| 11. <u>eni</u> <u>pun</u> (il) chacsimnikka | Whom (H) are you looking for? |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Sæul</u> <u>Yek</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to Seoul Station? |
| 2. <u>Sæul</u> <u>Sichæng</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to Seoul City Hall? |
| 3. <u>Cængkecang</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to the station? |
| 4. <u>Pækhwacem</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to the department store? |
| 5. <u>Sicang</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to the market place? |
| 6. <u>Kongwen</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to the park? |
| *7. <u>Tapang</u> e kanin il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to the tearoom? |
| *8. <u>Siktang</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to the restaurant? |
| *9. <u>Kim</u> <u>Sensæng</u> <u>cip</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to Mr. Kim's house? |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1. <u>Ttokpalo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go straight ahead. |
| 2. <u>Wen ccok ilo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go to the left. |
| 3. <u>Olin ccok ilo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go to the right. |
| *4. <u>I ccok ilo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go this way (direction). |
| *5. <u>Ce ccok ilo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go that way (direction). |
| 6. <u>Seul Yek ilo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go to Seoul Station. |
| 7. <u>Cengkecang ilo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go to the railroad station. |
| 8. <u>Sicheng ccok ilo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go toward the City Hall. |
| 9. <u>Mikuk Tassakwan ilo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go to the U.S. Embassy. |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Yeki ese</u> məmnikka? | Is it far from here? |
| 2. <u>Hakkyo ese</u> məmnikka? | Is it far from school? |
| 3. <u>Cengkecang ese</u> məmnikka? | Is it far from the station? |
| 4. <u>Mikuk Tassakwan ese</u> məmnikka? | Is it far from the U.S. Embassy? |
| 5. <u>Seul Yek ese</u> məmnikka? | Is it far from Seoul Station? |
| 6. <u>Sicheng ese</u> məmnikka? | Is it far from the City Hall? |
| *7. <u>Sangcəm ese</u> məmnikka? | Is it far from the store? |
| 8. <u>Pakhwacəm ese</u> məmnikka? | Is it far from the department store? |
| *9. <u>Tapang ese</u> məmnikka? | Is it far from the tearoom? |
| *10. <u>Kongwən ese</u> məmnikka? | Is it far from the park? |
| *11. <u>Sicang ese</u> məmnikka? | Is it far from the market place? |
| 12. <u>Mikuk ese</u> məmnikka? | Is it far from America? |
| *13. <u>Uphyenkuk ese</u> məmnikka? | Is it far from the post office? |
| *14. <u>Samusil ese</u> məmnikka? | Is it far from the office? |
| *15. <u>Kikcang ese</u> məmnikka? | Is it far from the theatre? |

E. Substitution Drill

1. Na nin cengkæcang e kamnita. I['m] go[ing] to the railroad station.
2. Na nin kongwən e kamnita. I['m] go[ing] to the park.
3. Na nin kikcang e kamnita. I['m] go[ing] to the theatre.
4. Na nin inhæng e kamnita. I['m] go[ing] to the bank.
5. Na nin sangcəm e kamnita. I['m] go[ing] to the store.
6. Na nin Cungkuk siktang e kamnita. I['m] go[ing] to a Chinese restaurant.
7. Na nin Seul Uphənkuk e kamnita. I['m] go[ing] to the Seoul Post Office.
8. Na nin Hankuk inhæng e kamnita. I['m] go[ing] to the Bank of Korea.
9. Na nin Seul Pækhwacəm e kamnita. I['m] go[ing] to the Seoul Department Store.
- *10. Na nin tæsakwan siktang e kamnita. I['m] go[ing] to the Embassy dinning hall.
- *11. Na nin na e samusil e kamnita. I['m] go[ing] to my office.
- *12. Na nin Ceimsi Sənsəng cip e kamnita. I['m] go[ing] to Mr. James' house.

F. Substitution Drill

1. Keki ese muəs (il) hakessimnikka? What are you going to do there?
('What will you do there?')
2. Cengkæcang ese muəs (il) hakessimnikka? What are you going to do at the station?
3. Tapang ese muəs (il) hakessimnikka? What are you going to do at the tea-room?
4. Kongwən ese muəs (il) hakessimnikka? What are you going to do in the park?
5. Hakkyo ese muəs (il) hakessimnikka? What are you going to do at school?
6. Hakkyo ese muəs (il) chackessimnikka? What are you going to look for at school?
7. Hakkyo ese muəs (il) pæukessimnikka? What are you going to study at school?
8. Hakkyo ese muəs (il) kalichikessimnikka? What are you going to teach at school?
9. Hakkyo ese muəs (il) mal-hakessimnikka? What are you going to say at school?
10. Hakkyo ese muəs (il) mule pokessimnikka? What are you going to inquire about at school?
11. Hakkyo ese muəs (il) kongpu-hakessimnikka? What are you going to study at school?
12. Hakkyo ese muəs (il) ilkkessimnikka? What are you going to read at school?

G. Substitution Drill

1. Ki chinku nin nuku imnikka? Who is that friend [of yours]?
2. Ki salam in nuku imnikka? Who is that man?
3. Ce haksæng in nuku imnikka? Who is that student over there?
4. Ce Mikuk salam in nuku imnikka? Who is that American over there?
5. Ce Ilpon salam in nuku imnikka? Who is that Japanese over there?
6. Ce pun in nuku imnikka? Who is that man (honored)?
7. Ce Mikuk wekyokwan in nuku imnikka? Who is that American diplomat?
8. Ki Hankuk haksæng in nuku imnikka? Who is the Korean student?
9. Hankuk mal sensæng in nuku imnikka? Who is the Korean (language) teacher?
10. Ce puin in nuku imnikka? Who is that lady?
11. Ce ai nin nuku imnikka? Who is that child?

H. Response Drill

Tutor: eti lil chacsimnikka? /Səul Yək/

'What (place) are you looking for?'
/Seoul Station/

Student: Səul Yək il chacsimnita.

'I'm looking for Seoul Station.'

1. Muəs il chacsimnikka? /Hankuk mal chæk/ Hankuk mal chæk il chacsimnita.
2. eti e kasimnikka? /uphyənkuk/ Uphyənkuk e kamnita.
3. Ki Mikuk salam in nuku imnikka? /Ceimsi/ Ceimsi imnita.
4. Sensæng in muəs hakessimnikka? /Hankuk mal kongpu/ (Na nin) Hankuk mal kongpu (lil) hakessimnita.
5. Cəngkəcəng eṣe nuku lil manakessimnikka? /chinku/ Chinku lil manakessimnita.
6. Pəkhwacəm i eti e issimnikka? /uphyənkuk twi e/ Uphyənkuk twi e issimnita.
7. Kim Sensæng in hakkyo eṣe muəs il kalichimnikka? /Yənge/ Yənge lil kalichimnita.
8. əni kənmul i inhaeng imnikka? /wen ccok kənmul/ Wen ccok kənmul i inhaeng imnita.
9. eti eṣe chinku lil manakessimnikka? /tapang/ Tapang eṣe manakessimnita.
10. Səul Yək in eti lo kamnikka? /olın ccok/ Olin ccok ilo kamnita.

11. Nuka Hankuk mal il pæumnikkka?
/Mikuk salam/
12. Sønsæng samusil i eti e issimnikka?
/tæsakwan kænmul/

Mikuk salam i pæumnita.
Tæsakwan kænmul e issimnita.

I. Response Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo sønsæng imnikka?
Student: Aniyo, (hakkyo sønsæng i)
an imnita.

'Is [he] a school teacher?'
'No, [he] is not.'

1. I kæs i chæksang imnikka?
2. (Hakkyo ka) mæmnikkka?
3. Cøngkæcang e kamnikka?
4. Ki pun il amnikka?
5. Hankuk mal il pæumnikkka?
6. Chinku lïl mannakessimnikka?
7. Yønge lïl kalichimnikka?
8. Hakkyo ka kakkapsimnikka?
9. Hakkyo e kakessimnikka?
10. Kil il mule pokessimnikka?
11. Yønphil il chackessimnikka?

Aniyo, (chæksang i) an imnita.
Aniyo, an mæmnita.
Aniyo, an kamnita.
Aniyo, molimnita.
Aniyo, an pæumnita.
Aniyo, an mannakessimnita.
Aniyo, an kalichimnita.
Aniyo, an kakkapsimnita.
Aniyo, an kakessimnita.
Aniyo, an mule pokessimnita.
Aniyo, an chackessimnita.

J. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Yønge lïl pæumnikkka?
Student: Yønge lïl pæukessimnikka?

1. Hakkyo e kamnikka?
2. Muës il hamnikka?
3. Nuku lïl mannamnikka?
4. Ilpon mal il pæumnikkka?
5. Pækhwacøm il chacsimnikka?
6. (Sønsæng in) cip e issimnikka?
7. Nuku lïl pwepsimnikka?
8. Nuka Yønge lïl kalichimnikka?

'[Are] you learn[ing] English?'
'Will you learn English?'
Hakkyo e kakessimnikka?
Muës il hakessimnikka?
Nuku lïl mannakessimnikka?
Ilpon mal il pæukessimnikka?
Pækhwacøm il chackessimnikka?
(Sønsæng in) cip e isskessimnikka?
Nuku lïl pwepkessimnikka?
Nuka Yønge lïl kalichikessimnikka?

K. Response Drill

Tutor: Kongpu-hakessimnikka?
 Student: Ne, (na nin) kongpu-
 hakessimnita.

'Will you study?'
 'Yes, I'll study.'

1. Hankuk mal il pækessimnikka?
2. Cip e isskessimnikka?
3. Chinku lil mannakessimnikka?
4. Yeng e lil kalichikessimnikka?
5. inhæng e kakessimnikka?
6. Hakkyo e an kakessimnikka?
7. Ki chæk il chackessimnikka?
8. Kil il mule pokessimnikka?
9. Ki kes il hakessimnikka?
10. Hankuk mal il mal-hakessimnikka?

Ne, (na nin) Hankuk mal il pækessimnita.
 Ne (na nin) cip e isskessimnita.
 Ne, (na nin) chinku lil mannakessimnita.
 Ne, (na nin) Yeng e lil kalichikessimnita.
 Ne, (na nin) inhæng e kakessimnita.
 Ne, (na nin) hakkyo e an kakessimnita.
 Ne, (na nin) ki chæk il chackessimnita.
 Ne, (na nin) kil il mule pokessimnita.
 Ne, (na nin) ki kes il hakessimnita.
 Ne, (na nin) Hankuk mal il mal-hakessimnita.

L. Response Drill

Tutor: Muës il kongpu-hakessimnikka?
 /Cungkuk mal/

'What will you study?' /Chinese/

Student: Cungkuk mal il kongpu-
 hakessimnita.

'I will study Chinese.'

1. eti e kasikessimnikka? /cengkècang/
2. eti ese chinku lil mannakessimnikka?
 /tapang/
3. eni mal il pækessimnikka?
 /Hankuk mal/
4. Nuku e samusil il chackessimnikka?
 /Kim Sënsæng/
5. Sënsæng in cip ese muës il
 hakessimnikka? /chæk/
6. Tapang ese nuku lil mannakessimnikka?
 /chinku/
7. Nuka Yeng e lil kalichikessimnikka?
 /Mikuk salam/

Cengkècang e kakessimnita.
 Tapange ese mannakessimnita.
 Hankuk mal il pækessimnita.
 Kim Sënsæng e samusil il chackessimnita.
 (Cip ese) chæk il ilkessimnita.
 Chinku lil mannakessimnita.
 Mikuk salam i kalichikessimnita.

M. Grammar Drill (as a level drill based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: Muəs il kongpu-hamnikka?	'What are you studying?'
Student: Muəs il kongpu-hasimnikka?	'What are you studying?'
1. əti e kamnikka?	əti e kasimnikka?
2. Muəs il hamnikka?	Muəs il hasimnikka?
3. əni mal il pəəumnikka?	əni mal il pəəusimnikka?
4. Nuku lɪl chacsimnikka?	Nuku lɪl chacisimnikka?
5. Nuka Yəŋə lɪl kalichimnikka?	Nuka Yəŋə lɪl kalichisimnikka?
6. Səul Yək e kanın kil il amnikka?	Səul Yək e kanın kil il asimnikka?
7. Ki chinku nɪn nuku imnikka?	Ki chinku nɪn nuku isimnikka?
8. Cə pun in hakkyo sənsəng imnikka?	Cə pun in hakkyo sənsəng isimnikka?
9. (Sənsəng in) wekyokwan imnikka?	Sənsəng in wekyokwan isimnikka?
10. I salam il molimnikka?	I salam il molisimnikka?
11. Hankuk mal il mal-hamnikka?	Hankuk mal il mal-hasimnikka?

N. Response Drill (as a level drill)

Tutor: Ceimsi Sensəng in əti e kamnikka? /hakkyo/	'Where does Mr. James go?' /school/
Student: Hakkyo e kasimnita.	'He goes to school.'
1. Ceimsi Sensəng in muəs il kongpu-hamnikka? /Hankuk mal/	Hankuk mal il kongpu-hasimnita.
2. Ceimsi Sensəng in nuku lɪl chacsimnikka? /Pak Sensəng/	Pak Sensəng il chacisimnita.
3. Ceimsi Sensəng in nuku lɪl mannamnikka? /chinku/	Chinku lɪl mannasimnita.
4. Ceimsi Sensəng in Səul Yək e kanın kil il amnikka? /aniyo/	Aniyo, molisimnita.
5. Ceimsi Sensəng in Yəŋə lɪl kalichimnikka? /aniyo/	Aniyo, an kalichisimnita.
6. Ceimsi Sensəng in wekyokwan imnikka? /ne/	Ne, wekyokwan isimnita.
7. Ceimsi Sensəng in Yəŋə lɪl pəəumnikka? /aniyo/	Aniyo, an pəəusimnita.
8. Ceimsi Sensəng in Yəŋə lɪl ilksimnikka? /aniyo/	Aniyo, an ilkisimnita.

EXERCISES

1. Ask a passerby:

- a. if he knows the way to USIA.
- b. if it is near.
- c. if the building (over there) is the railroad station.
- d. if he is going in the direction of the City Hall.
- e. if the park is far.
- f. if the station is to the left of the market place.

2. Mr. Kim asks:

You answer that:

- a. where you're going. you're going to the station.
- b. what you'll do there. you'll meet a friend.
- c. who your friend is. he is an American.
- d. what your friend does. he is in the foreign service.
- e. how you know him. he is with the U.S. Embassy.
- f. if your friend speaks Korean. he speaks a little.
- g. if you know Mr. Park. you know him well.
- h. if you are a Korean teacher. you are not.
- i. if you're going to learn Japanese. you're not.

3. Tell Pak Sensang the following:

- 1. The department store is near the street.
- 2. The classroom is in this building.
- 3. The park is behind my house.
- 4. The store is next to the theatre.
- 5. The bank is on the left side of the City Hall.
- 6. The market (place) is in front of the Chinese restaurant.
- 7. The USIS is this way.
- 8. The Ambassador's office is on your right.
- 9. The school building is next to the inn.
- 10. This is the map of that lady's child.

4. Find out the following information from Pak Sensang:

- 1. Which building is the department store.
- 2. Where he is going.
- 3. What Mr. James does.

4. Whom he's going to meet.
 5. Who teaches Korean.
 6. Which classroom he is looking for.
 7. Who his friend is.
 8. How he knows him.
 9. If he knows the way to the City Hall.
 10. If he is going to be home.
5. Tell Pak Sensang that:
1. you're looking for Kim's house.
 2. you're in the foreign service.
 3. you're going to meet James at the restaurant.
 4. your office is not far from here.
 5. you will be home.
 6. you don't know that Korean's name.
 7. this Korean lady is not { in the foreign service.
a diplomat.
 8. the Bank of Korea is straight ahead.
 9. you're not going to come to school.
 10. the post office is not near.

제 4 과 물건 사기

(대화 A)

어제

갔읍 니까

1. 이 : 김 선생, 어제 어디에 갔읍 니까?

시내

상점

갔았읍 니다

2. 김 : 시내 상점에 갔았읍 니다.

샀어요

3. 이 : 무언을 샀어요?

용품

일상 용품

4. 김 : 일상 용품을 좀 샀읍 니다.

오늘

도

가겠어요

안 가겠어요

5. 이 : 오늘은 시내에 도 안 가겠어요?

글씨

글 써세요

책방

UNIT 4. Shopping
 BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue ALee

- ece yesterday
 kassimnikka did [you] go?
 1. Kim Sensæng, ece eti e kassimnikka? Where did you go yesterday, Mr. Kim?

Kim

- sinæ downtown
 sangcæm store
 kassessimnita [I] went; [I] had gone
 2. Sinæ sangcæm e kassessimnita. [I] went to a store downtown.

Lee

- sasse yo did [you] buy?
 3. Muæ il sasse yo? What did [you] buy?

Kim

- yongphum necessary goods
 ilsang yongphum daily necessities
 4. Ilsang yongphum il com sassimnita. [I] bought some daily necessities.

Lee

- onil today
 tto again
 kakesse yo will you go?
 an kakesse yo ('will you not go?')
 5. Onil in sinæ e tto an kakesse yo? Are you going downtown again today?
 ('Will you not go downtown again?')

Kim

- kilsse } well; maybe
 kilsse yo } chækpang bookstore
 tillikessimnita [I]'ll stop by
 com a little; a little while
 6. Kilsse yo. Nan nin chækpang e com Maybe. I'll stop by a bookstore
 tillikessimnita. (for a while).

들르겠습니다

좀

6. 김 : 글쓰세요. 나는 책방에 좀 들르겠습니다.

그럼

같이

나와

나와 같이

갑시다

7. 이 : 그림, 나와 같이 갑시다.

그럽시다

그럭저럭

사겠어요

8. 김 : 예, 그럽시다. 선생은 무엇을 사겠어요?

나도

보겠습니다

같

비쌉니까?

9. 이 : 나도 책을 좀 보겠습니다. 책 값이 비쌉니까?

그리

비싸지 않습니다

쌉니다

10. 김 : 아니요, 그리 비싸지 않습니다. 쌉니다.

Lee

kiləm	if so; then
kathi	together
na wa	with me
na wa kathi	(together) with me
kapsita	let us go

7. Kiləm, na wa kathi kapsita. Then, let's go together.

Kim

kilehapsita	}	let's do so
kilepsita		will you buy?
sakessə yo	Let's (do so). What are you going to buy?	

8. Ne, kilepsita. Sensəng in muəs il sakessə yo?

Lee

na to	I also; me too
pokessimnita	I'll see [it]; I'll look at [it]
kaps	price
pissamnikka	is [it] expensive?
9. Na to chæk il com pokessimnita.	I would like to see some books too.
Chæk kaps i pissamnikka?	('I'll also see books a little.') Are books expensive?

Kim

kili	so; like that
pissaci anhsimnita/anssimnita/	[it] is not expensive
ssamnita	[it] is cheap

10. Aniyo, kili pissaci anhsimnita. No, [they]'re not so expensive.
Ssamnita. [They] are [fairly] cheap.

Dialogue B
(--at the store--)

Cəmwən

ese	quickly; (please)
osipsiyo	come!
ese osipsiyo	(welcome!); come in

11. ese osipsiyo. Muəs il sasikessimnikka? Please come in. May I help you?
('What would you like to buy?')

(대화 B)

어서

오십시오

어서 오십시오

11. 접원 : 어서 오십시오. 무엇을 사시겠습니까?

여기에서

수건

팝니까, 팝읍니까

12. 이 : 여기에서 수건을 팝니까?

식

무슨 식

원하세요

13. 접원 : 예, 팝니다. 무슨 식을 원하세요.

노란 식

좋아합니다

14. 이 : 노란 식을 좋아합니다. 노란 것이 있어요?

여러 가지

어떻습니까

15. 접원 : 여러 가지가 있습니다. 이것이 어떻게니까?

얼마

좋습니다

16. 이 : 예, 좋습니다. 그것 얼마입니까?

Lee

- yəki ese here; at this place
 sukən towel
 phalimnikka }
 phamnikka }
 12. Yəki ese sukən il phamnikka? Do you carry towels here? ('Do you sell towels here?')

Cəmwən

- musin what sort of
 sæk color
 wənhase yo do [you] want?
 13. Ne, phamnita. Musin sæk il Yes, we do. What color would you like? ('What sort of color do you want?')
 wənhase yo?

Lee

- nolan sæk yellow color
 cohamnita [I] like; [I] prefer
 14. Nolan sæk il cohamnita. Nolan ('[I] like yellow color.') Yellow, please. ('Do you have yellow ones?')
 kəs i issə yo?

Cəmwən

- yələ kaci several kinds; many kinds
 ettehsimnikka how is [it]?
 15. Yələ kaci ka issimnita. I kəs i We have several kinds. How do you like this one? ('How is this one?')
 ettehsimnikka?

Lee

- əlma how much
 cohsimnita [that]'s good
 16. Ne, cohsimnita. Ki kəs, əlma On, that's nice. How much is it?
 imnikka?

Cəmwən

- osip 50
 osip Wən fifty Won W50
 17. Osip Wən e phamnita. W50. ('We sell it for W50!')

오십

오십 원

17. 점원 : 오십 원에 팝니다.

하나

주십시오

18. 이 : 그것 하나 주십시오.

19. 점원 : 예, 여기(에) 있읍니다.

Lee

hana

one

cusipsiyo

give [me]

18. Ki kès, hana cusipsiyo.

Please give [me] one [of them].

Cəmən

19. Ne, yəki (e) issımnita.

Here you are.

NUMERALS (1)

1	11	11	sip-il	21	isip-il	31	samsip-il
2	1	12	sip-i	22	isip-i	40	sasip
3	sam	13	sip-sam	23	isip-sam	50	osip
4	sa	14	sip-sa	24	isip-sa	60	yuksip ~ nyuksip
5	o	15	sip-o	25	isip-o	70	chilsip
6	yuk	16	sip-yuk /simnyuk/	26	isip-yuk /isimnyuk/	80	phalsip
7	chil	17	sip-chil	27	isip-chil	90	kusip
8	phal	18	sip-phal	28	isip-phal	91	kusip-il
9	ku	19	sip-ku	29	isip-ku	99	kusip-ku
10	sip	20	i-sip	30	samsip	100	(il)pæk
101	pæk-il	200	ipæk	1,001	chen-il		
102	pæk-i	300	sampæk	1,011	chen-sip-il		
103	pæk-sam	400	sapæk	1,111	chen-pæk-sip-il		
104	pæk-sa	500	opæk	2,000	ichən		
105	pæk-o	600	yukpæk /nyukpæk/	3,000	samchen		
106	pæk-yuk	700	chilpæk	4,000	sachən		
107	pæk-chil	800	phalpæk	5,000	ochən		
108	pæk-phal	900	kupeæk	6,000	yukchen ~ nyukchen		
109	pæk-ku	999	kupæk-kusip-ku	7,000	chilchən		
110	pæk-sip	1,000	(il)chen	10,000	(il)man		
		100,000	sipman /simman/	1,000,000	pækman /peəngman/		

수자 (1)

1 일	11 십 일	21 이십 일	31 삼십 일
2 이	12 십 이	22 이십 이	40 사십
3 삼	13 십 삼	23 이십 삼	50 으십
4 사	14 십 사	24 이십 사	60 육십
5 오	15 십 오	25 이십 오	70 칠십
6 육	16 십 육	26 이십 육	80 팔십
7 칠	17 십 칠	27 이십 칠	90 구십
8 팔	18 십 팔	28 이십 팔	91 구십 일
9 구	19 십 구	29 이십 구	99 구십 구
10 십	20 이십	30 삼십	100 (일)백

101 백 일	200 이백	1,001 천 일
102 백 이	300 삼백	1,011 천 십 일
103 백 삼	400 사백	1,111 천 백 십 일
104 백 사	500 으백	2,000 이천
105 백 오	600 육백	3,000 삼천
106 백 육	700 칠백	4,000 사천
107 백 칠	800 팔백	5,000 오천
108 백 팔	900 구백	6,000 육천
109 백 구	999 구백 구십 구	7,000 칠천
110 백 십	1,000 (일)천	10,000 (일)만
		100,000 십만
		1,000,000 백만

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. Sinse ('the inside of city') originally meant any part of a city which had walls around it. Today, it refers to the downtown area in general.
3. Sasse yo? 'Did [you] buy?' is the informal polite equivalent of the formal polite form Sassimnikka?
5. Tto 'again', 'also', 'too', is an adverb which occurs before a sentence, a verbal, or other words of a modifier class.
6. Kilsse yo. 'Well..!' is a kind of hesitating response to or comment upon someone's question, statement, suggestion or command.
9. Chæk kaps 'the price of the book' is a noun phrase which literally means 'book price'. Kaps 'price' occurs after certain nouns. For example, cip kaps 'the rent' or 'the price of a house', ppesi kaps 'bus fare', imsik kaps 'food price'.
10. Kili before verbs or words of a modifier class in a negative statement means '(not) so!', '(not) very' or '(not) that'. In propositative, imperative and question sentences, it means 'like that', 'such a' or 'in such a way'.
11. ese osipsiyo. ('Come quickly.') is a general greeting expression for welcoming; it is commonly used by business people to customers.
12. Yeki ese X il/lil pha(lı)mnikka? ('Do you sell X here?') is one common way of asking store clerks a certain item you want to buy. Yeki e X i/ka issimnikka? ('Do you have X here?' or 'Is there X here?') is another common question in such a situation. The stem of pha(lı)mnikka? 'Do [you] sell?' is pha(lı)-.
13. Musin 'what sort of', 'what', occurs before a noun, and asks about the type or the characteristics of the noun: musin chæk 'what kind of book', musin mal 'what language', musin salam 'what kind of person', musin cip 'what type of house', musin cha 'what kind of car'.
14. Nolan 'yellow', hayan 'white', phalan 'blue', kkaman 'black', ppalkan 'red', are all modifier class words formed from the verb stems nola- 'to be yellow', haya- 'to be white', phala- 'to be blue', kkama(h)- 'to be black', ppalka- 'to be red', by the addition of the modifier ending -n/in/nin (See Unit 5). The verb stem cohaha- 'to like' has an unpredictable negative form: silheha- 'to dislike'.

15. Yele 'several', 'many' ('more than a few but not too many in number') is a numeral which may occur before free or post nouns only as a determinative: yelə kaci 'many kinds', yelə salam 'several people', yelə pun 'many people (H)'. Kaci 'kind' occurs only as a post-noun preceded by numerals of Korean origin, and never occurs after other modifiers. Examples:

<u>yelə kaci</u>	'several kinds'
<u>han kaci</u>	'one kind'
<u>tu kaci</u>	'two kinds'
<u>se kaci</u>	'three kinds'

In the verbal ettehsimnikka? 'How is [it]?', etteh- 'how is' is its verb stem, of which inflected forms are used only as question words. Most Korean question words are either nouns or adverbs.

16. The verb stem coh- 'to be good', 'to be nice', 'to be O.K.', has as its antonymous verb stem nappi- 'to be bad'. elma imnikka? 'How much is [it]?' is a fixed expression when you ask about the price of something. elma 'how much' occurs always as a noun and is never used as a modifier.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Informal Polite Speech

We noticed in the Grammar Notes of Unit 2 that Formal Polite Speech is a level and/or style of speech. In standard Korean, there is another style and/or level of speech which is no less polite than the Formal Polite but is considered more casual and friendly. This style of speech is called Informal Polite Speech. Usually both styles are mixed in one's speech, but in general women tend to use more informal polite speech than men. Informal Polite Speech is often called yo speech style, because any sentence which ends in the particle yo is Informal Polite Speech. Regardless of the sentence type (i.e. statement, question, imperative, propositative), yo at the end of an utterance is the sign that is an Informal Polite sentence.

When the particle yo occurs immediately after a verb which does not have a verb-ending but is inflected from the stem in a certain form ending in a vowel, the inflected form which precedes yo is called an Infinitive. Note that an infinitive is a word, whereas a verb stem is not a word. An infinitive is formed from a verb stem by a certain phonetic change at the end of the stem.

Infinitives are formed not only from verb stems but also from verb stem plus suffix(es), that is, verb stem + (i)si + (tense suffixes) can be made into infinitives by adding ə at the end of the suffixes. For example, the verb stem

ha- 'to do' + (suffixes) can have the following kinds of infinitive:

hæ (or haye), hasie (or hase), hakesse, hæsse (or hayesse), hasikesse, hasiesse, etc.

For the time being, however, our term Infinitive refers to the inflected form without any suffix. Yo may be added to the infinitive to make an informal polite speech present form. The verbs we have had so far are listed below.

Compare:

	<u>Stem</u>	<u>Formal Polite Present statement</u>	<u>Informal Polite Present</u>
'to do'	ha-	hamnita	hæ yo
'to study'	kongpu-ha-	kongpu-hamnita	kongpu-hæ yo
'to pass by'	cina-	cinamnita	cina yo
'to exist'	iss-	issimnita	isse yo
'to learn'	pæu-	pæumnita	pæwæ yo
'to teach'	kalichi-	kalichimnita	kalichie yo
'to read'	ilk-	ilk(s)imnita	ilke yo
'to ask'	mule po-	mule pomnita	mule pwa yo
'to go'	ka-	kamnita	ka yo
'to be so'	kileh-	kilehsimnita	kilehæ yo <u>or</u> kilæ yo
'to know'	a(1)-	amnita	ale yo
'to look for'	chac-	chac(s)imnita	chace yo
'to be far'	mæ(1)-	mæmnita	mele yo
'to meet'	manna-	mannamnita	manna yo
'to come'	o-	omnita	wa yo
'to buy'	sa-	samnita	sa yo
'to stop by'	tilli-	tillimnita	tille yo
'to look at'	po-	pomnita	pwa yo <u>or</u> poa yo
'to be expensive'	pissa-	pissamnita	pissa yo
'to be cheap'	ssa-	ssamnita	ssa yo
'to sell'	pha(1)-	pha(l1)mnita	phale yo
'to like'	cohaha-	cohahamnita	cohahæ yo
'to want'	wenha-	wenhamnita	wenhæ yo
'to be good'	coh-	cohsimnita	coha yo
'to give'	cu-	cumnita	cue yo

Note that the verbs which occur hereafter will be treated individually for the formation of Infinitives. Refer to the following rules and the glossary at the end of the book for the infinitive form of each verb.

Observe the following regularities in forming infinitives from verb stems. Do not try to memorize the rules at this point; rather it is simpler to memorize each inflected form as a separate word. It is not necessary to memorize the verbs listed below. Add yo to the infinitive to make informal polite speech:

- a. Stems ending in a or e do not change:

ka-	ka yo	'goes'
sa-	sa yo	'buys'
se-	se yo	'stands'

Exception:

ha-	ha yo <u>or</u> haye yo	'does'
-----	-------------------------	--------

- b. Stems ending in e, æ or we have alternative forms:

mæ-	mæ yo <u>or</u> mæe yo	'ties'
twe-	twe yo <u>or</u> twee yo	'becomes'

- c. Stems ending in o change o to wa:

o-	wa yo	'comes'
po-	pwa yo	'sees'

- d. Stems ending in l change l to e:

khi-	khé yo	'is big'
ssi-	sse yo	'writes'

- e. Stems ending in u add e:

cu-	cue yo	'gives'
tu-	tue yo	'places'

- f. The copula stem i- changes to eye or iye.

- g. Stems ending in i have three alternatives:

swi-	swiə yo <u>or</u> swiye yo <u>or</u> swye yo	'rests'
masi-	masiə yo <u>or</u> masiye yo <u>or</u> masye yo	'drinks'
kitali-	kitaliə yo <u>or</u> kitaliye yo <u>or</u> kitalye yo	'waits (for)'
kalichi-	kalichiə yo <u>or</u> kalichiye yo <u>or</u> kalichye yo	'teaches'

- h. Stems ending in consonants: these are divided into several groups on the basis of the morphophonemic changes of the final sounds.

Most consonant stems belong to Group 1, and are called e-adding stems; Group 2 stems are called a-adding stems; Group 3, we-replacing stems; Group 4, l-dropping stems; Group 5, l-doubling stems. Note that there is a small number of verbs which are not classed into one of the 5 groups. They will be treated separately as irregular verbs.

Group 1

mek-	mekə yo	'eats'
cuk-	cuke yo	'dies'
cap-	cape yo	'holds'
ip-	ipe yo	'wears'
nelp-	nelpə yo	'is wide'
pis-	pise yo	'combs'
iss-	isse yo <u>or</u> isse yo	'exists'
eps-	epse yo <u>or</u> epse yo	'does not exist'
pes-	pese yo	'takes off (clothes, hats, shoes)'
alh-	alhe yo	'aches', 'gets sick'

Group 2

cop-	copa yo	'is narrow'
noph-	nopha yo	'is high'
pokk-	pokka yo	'roasts (beans)'
noh-	noha yo	'places', 'puts'

Group 3

swip-	swiwe yo	'is easy'
elyəp-	elyəwe yo	'is difficult'
kakkap-	kakkawe yo	'is near'
alimtap-	alimtawe yo	'is beautiful'

Group 4

me(l)-	mele yo	'is far'
ki(l)-	kile yo	'is long(in length)'
a(l)-	ale yo	'knows'
sa(l)-	sale yo	'lives'
manti(l)-	mantile yo	'makes'

Group 5

moli-	molla yo	'does not know'
-------	----------	-----------------

tali-	talla yo	'is different'
puli-	pulle yo	'calls'
hili-	hille yo	'flows'

2. Past Tenses

A past tense form of a Korean verb denotes either 'something was in such state' or 'something which has been done', or 'someone took such and such action'.

There are two past tenses in Korean: Simple Past and Remote Past. The simple past designates any action or description which has been finished before the speech takes place. The remote past denotes an action which was done or happened a relatively long time ago, or a description of a condition which ended a relatively long time ago. The remote past also is used to indicate the more remote of two or more past actions or descriptions occurring in the same context.

Past tenses in Korean are formed by infixing the suffixes -(a, e, yə)ss- for the Simple Past and -(a, e, yə)ssəss- for the Remote Past between verb stems and endings. We shall call the suffixes the Past Tense Suffixes. Depending on the final sound of a verb stem, a certain vowel change takes place between verb stem and the past tense suffix. The verb element preceding ss(əss)- is identical with the infinitive form, so it may be simpler to consider that the past tense is formed by infixing ss(əss)- between infinitive and ending.

Compare:

	<u>Stem</u>	<u>F. P. Present</u>	<u>Inf. P. Present</u>	<u>F.P. Past</u>	<u>Inf.P. Past</u>
'to do'	ha-	hamnita	hə yo	həssimnita	həsse yo
'to go'	ka-	kamnita	ka yo	kassimnita	kasse yo
'to come'	o-	omnita	wa yo	wassimnita	wasse yo
'to see'	po-	pomnita	pwa yo	pwassimnita	pwasse yo
'to buy'	sa-	samnita	sa yo	sassimnita	sasse yo
'to be cheap'	ssa-	ssamnita	ssa yo	ssassimnita	ssasse yo
'to be expensive'	pissa-	pissamnita	pissa yo	pissassimnita	pissa yo
'to pass by'	cina-	cinamnita	cina yo	cinassimnita	cinasse yo
'to want'	wənha-	wənhamnita	wənhə yo	wənhəssimnita	wənhəsse yo
'to give'	cu-	cumnita	cuə yo	cuəssimnita	cuəsse yo
'to meet'	manna-	mannamnita	manna yo	mannassimnita	mannasse yo
'to exist'	iss-	issimnita	isə yo	issəssimnita	issəsse yo
'to read'	ilk-	ilksimnita	ilke yo	ilkəssimnita	ilkəsse yo
'to be far'	mə(l)-	məmnita	mələ yo	mələssimnita	məlesse yo

'to know'	a(1)-	amnita	ale yo	aləssimnita	aləsse yo
'to be near'	kakkap-	kakkapsimnita	kakkawə yo	kakkawəssimnita	kakkawəsse yo
'to be different'	tali-	talimnita	talla yo	tallassimnita	tallasse yo
'not to know'	moli-	molimnita	molla yo	mollassimnita	mollassə yo

3. Particle to

To is a one-shape particle, which following a noun or another particle means 'also' or 'too' in an affirmative sentence; '(not) either' in a negative sentence. When to occurs after the object, topic, or emphasis subject of a sentence, the particles in/nin, il/lil, i/ka respectively are dropped.

Examples:

Na to amnita.	'I know [it], too.'
I kəs to chæk imnikka?	'Is this also a book?'
Ilpon mal to pəwessimnita.	'[I] have studied Japanese also.'
Kim Sənsəng to molimnita.	'Mr. Kim doesn't know [it], either.'

4. Particle wa/kwa 'with', 'and'

Wa occurs after a word ending in a vowel; kwa after a word ending in a consonant. It occurs in the following two constructions:

- a. Personal noun + wa/kwa means 'with the P. N.!

Examples:

<u>Na wa</u> (kathi) kapsita.	'Let us go <u>with me</u> .'
<u>Chinku wa</u> mannassimnita.	'[I] met <u>with a friend</u> .'
<u>Kim Sənsəng kwa</u> okesse yo.	'I'll come <u>with Mr. Kim</u> .'

- b. Noun 1 + wa/kwa + Noun 2 means 'N 1 and N 2'

Examples:

chæk kwa yənphil	'a book and a pencil'
hakkyo wa cip	'a school and a house'

5. -ci + anhsimnita

-ci is a verb ending which is added to a verb stem, or to a verb stem plus other suffix(es). Hereafter, we shall call such a verb form the ci form.

The ci form is an inflected word which occurs before a small class of words. The verb anh- 'not' occurs only after the ci form and is used to mean the verb in the ci form is in negative. The distinction of tenses, levels of speech may be made in the verb anh-.

Compare:

Kaci anh(s)imnita.	'[I] don't go.'
Kaci anh(s)imnikka?	'Don't [you] go?'
Kaci anhkessimnita.	'I will not go.'
Kaci anhessimnita.	'I did not go.'
Kaci anhe yo.	'[I] don't go.'
Kaci anhkesse yo.	'[I]'ll not go.'
Kaci anhessse yo.	'[I] didn't go.'

6. Numerals

In Korean, there are two series of numbers, both of which occur either as free nouns or before a special class of nouns called Counters. One of the two series of the Korean numbers was borrowed from Chinese characters; the other is of Korean origin. The counters are a class of words which occur only as post-nouns preceded by numbers. Some counters occur after the character numbers; some occur after the numbers of Korean origin; others occur after both sets of numbers. Therefore, it is important to know which series of numbers a certain counter goes with. For example, the counter Wen 'Korean monetary unit' occurs only after the character numbers as do all other monetary units, whereas the counter sal 'year(s) old (age counter)' occurs only with the numbers of Korean origin. Some counters like kwen 'book counter' occur after both series. In Unit 4 we have the numbers of the Chinese character origin, and in Unit 5 the numbers of Korean origin are listed. When the numbers of Korean origin are used as modifiers, the final sounds of the first four are dropped, thus making hana 'one' han, tul 'two' tu, ses 'three' se, nes 'four' ne. Others do not change (See Unit 5).

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1. ece əti e kassimnikka? Where did [you] go yesterday?
2. Onil əti e kassimnikka? Where did [you] go today?
- *3. Achim e əti e kassimnikka? Where did [you] go in the morning?
- *4. Ohu e əti e kassimnikka? Where did [you] go in the afternoon?
- *5. Cənyək e əti e kassimnikka? Where did [you] go in the evening?
- *6. Pam e əti e kassimnikka? Where did [you] go at night?
- *7. Kicəkke əti e kassimnikka? Where did [you] go the day before yesterday?
- *8. Onil achim e əti e kassimnikka? Where did [you] go this morning?
- *9. ece pam e əti e kassimnikka? Where did [you] go last night?
- *10. Kicəkke ohu e əti e kassimnikka? Where did [you] go in the afternoon, the day before yesterday?
11. Onil ohu e əti e kassimnikka? Where did [you] go this afternoon?
12. Onil ohu e əti e kakessimnikka? Where will [you] go this afternoon?
- *13. Næil əti e kakessimnikka? Where will [you] go tomorrow?
- *14. Mole əti e kakessimnikka? Where will [you] go the day after tomorrow?
- *15. Næil pam e əti e kakessimnikka? Where will [you] go tomorrow night?

B. Substitution Drill

1. Ilsang yongphum il sassimnita. [I] bought some daily necessities.
2. Chæk il sassimnita. [I] bought a book.
3. Sukən il sassimnita. [I] bought a towel.
4. I kəs il sassimnita. [I] bought this.
- *5. Nolan suken il sassimnita. [I] bought a yellow towel.
- *6. Nolan sæk yənphil il sassimnita. [I] bought a yellow pencil.
7. Yələ kaci lil sassimnita. [I] bought several kinds.
8. Nolan kəs il sassimnita. [I] bought a yellow one.
- *9. Ppalkan kəs il sassimnita. [I] bought a red one.
- *10. Hayan kəs il sassimnita. [I] bought a white one.
- *11. Phalan kəs il sassimnita. [I] bought a blue one.
- *12. Kkaman kəs il sassimnita. [I] bought a black one.
13. Hana lil sassimnita. [I] bought one.
14. Hankuk mal chæk il sassimnita. [I] bought a Korean book.

C. Substitution Drill

1. Chæk kaps i pissamnikka? Are the books expensive?
2. Chæk kaps i ssamnikka? Are the books cheap?
3. Chæk kaps i ettahsimnikka? How expensive are books?
4. Chæk kaps i kwænchanhsimnikka? Is the price of books reasonable ('not bad')?
5. Chæk kaps i elma imnikka? How much is the book? ('What is the price of the book?')
6. Chæk kaps i kicə kiləhsimnikka? Is the (price of) book just so?
7. Chæk kaps i pissamnikka? Are the books expensive?
8. Cip kaps i pissamnikka? Are the houses expensive?
9. Ilsang younphum kaps i pissamnikka? Are the daily necessities expensive?
- *10. Kutu kaps i pissamnikka? Are the shoes expensive?
- *11. Yangpok kaps i pissamnikka? Are the suits expensive?

D. Substitution Drill

1. I sukən sæk in nolahsimnita. The color of this towel is yellow.
- *2. I sukən sæk in ppalkahsimnita. The color of this towel is red.
- *3. I sukən sæk in hayahsimnita. The color of this towel is white.
- *4. I sukən sæk in kkamahsimnita. The color of this towel is black.
- *5. I sukən sæk in phalahsimnita. The color of this towel is blue.
- *6. I sukən sæk in nuləhsimnita. The color of this towel is yellowish.
- *7. I sukən sæk in pulkimnita. The color of this towel is reddish.
- *8. I sukən sæk in himnita. The color of this towel is whitish.
- *9. I sukən sæk in kəmsimnita. The color of this towel is dark.
- *10. I sukən sæk in phulimnita. The color of this towel is bluish.

E. Substitution Drill

1. Musin sæk il wənhase yo? What color would you like? ('What color do you want?')
2. Musin sukən il wənhase yo? What kind of towels would you like?
3. Musin chæk il wənhase yo? What books would you like?
4. Musin yənphil il wənhase yo? What kind of pencils would you like?
5. Musin sikye lɪl wənhase yo? What kind of watches would you like?
6. Musin moça lɪl wənhase yo? What kind of hats would you like?
7. Musin phen il wənhase yo? What kind of pens would you like?
8. Musin phen il phamnikka? What kind of pens do you carry ('sell')?
9. Musin phen il sakesse yo? What kind of pens will you buy?

10. Musin phen il cohahamnikka? What kind of pens do you prefer?
 11. Musin phen il pokessimnikka? What kind of pens would you like to see?

F. Substitution Drill

1. Yeki ese suken il phamnikka? Do you carry towels here? ('Do you sell towels here?')
 *2. Yeki ese yangpok il phamnikka? Do you carry suits here?
 *3. Yeki ese son-suken il phamnikka? Do you carry handkerchiefs here?
 *4. Yeki ese yangmal il phamnikka? Do you carry socks here?
 *5. Yeki ese kutu l'il phamnikka? Do you carry shoes here?
 *6. Yeki ese nekthai l'il phamnikka? Do you carry neckties here?
 *7. Yeki ese waisyassi l'il phamnikka? Do you carry dress shirts here?
 *8. Yeki ese kongchæk il phamnikka? Do you carry notebooks here?
 *9. Yeki ese sinmun il phamnikka? Do you carry newspaper here?
 *10. Yeki ese capci l'il phamnikka? Do you carry magazines here?
 *11. Yeki ese tampæ l'il phamnikka? Do you carry cigarettes here?
 *12. Yeki ese cito l'il phamnikka? Do you carry maps here?

G. Substitution Drill

1. I kës i ettëhsimnikka? How do you like this? ('How is this?')
 *2. I son-suken (i) ettëhsimnikka? How do you like this handkerchief ('hand towel')?
 3. I kutu (ka) ettëhsimnikka? How do you like these shoes?
 4. I sikye (ka) ettëhsimnikka? How do you like this watch?
 5. I waisyassi (ka) ettëhsimnikka? How do you like this dress shirt?
 6. I kongchæk (i) ettëhsimnikka? How do you like this notebook?
 7. I sinmun (i) ettëhsimnikka? How do you like this newspaper?
 8. I capci (ka) ettëhsimnikka? How do you like this magazine?
 9. I yangpok (i) ettëhsimnikka? How do you like this suit?
 *10. I yangmal (i) ettëhsimnikka? How do you like these socks?
 11. I sæk (i) ettëhsimnikka? How do you like this color?
 12. I sangcæm (i) ettëhsimnikka? How do you like this store?
 13. I pækhwacæm (i) ettëhsimnikka? How do you like this department store?
 *14. I os (i) ettëhsimnikka? How do you like this { this dress?
 *15. I pang (i) ettëhsimnikka? How do you like these clothes?
 How do you like this room?

H. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Ki kès, elma imnikka?</u> | How much is that? |
| *2. <u>Cə moça, elma imnikka?</u> | How much is that hat? |
| *3. <u>Cə kkaman yangpok, elma imnikka?</u> | How much is that black suit? |
| *4. <u>Cə hayan kutu, elma imnikka?</u> | How much are these white shoes? |
| *5. <u>I nolan son-sukən, elma imnikka?</u> | How much is this yellow handkerchief? |
| *6. <u>I phalan yangmal, elma imnikka?</u> | How much are these blue socks? |
| *7. <u>Ki hayan waisyassi, elma imnikka?</u> | How much is the dress shirt? |
| *8. <u>Ki ppalkan sukən, elma imnikka?</u> | How much is the red towel? |
| *9. <u>Ki kkaman yangmal, elma imnikka?</u> | How much are the black socks? |

I. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>I chæk, elma e phamnikka?</u> | How much do you sell this book for?
('At what price do you sell this book?') |
| *2. <u>Ki moça, elma e phamnikka?</u> | How much do you sell that hat for? |
| *3. <u>Cə kkaman yangpok, elma e phamnikka?</u> | How much do you sell that black suit for? |
| *4. <u>Cə hayan kutu, elma e phamnikka?</u> | How much do you sell these white shoes for? |
| *5. <u>I nolan son-sukən, elma e phamnikka?</u> | How much do you sell this yellow handkerchief for? |
| *6. <u>I phalan yangmal, elma e phamnikka?</u> | How much do you sell these blue socks for? |
| *7. <u>I hayan waisyassi, elma e phamnikka?</u> | How much do you sell this dress shirts for? |
| *8. <u>I ppalkan sukən, elma e phamnikka?</u> | How much do you sell this red towel for? |
| *9. <u>Ki kkaman yangmal, elma e phamnikka?</u> | How much do you sell those black socks for? |

J. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---------------------------|
| 1. <u>I moça nin o-sip Wən imnita.</u> | This hat is W 50. |
| 2. <u>Cə sikye (nin) i Wən imnita.</u> | That watch is W 2. |
| 3. <u>Ki kutu (nin) sa Wən imnita.</u> | Those shoes are W 4. |
| *4. <u>I mannyənphil (in) yuk Wən imnita.</u> | This fountain pen is W 6. |
| *5. <u>Cə kılım (in) phal Wən imnita.</u> | That picture is W 8. |
| *6. <u>Ki os (in) sip Wən imnita.</u> | That dress is W 10. |
| 7. <u>I sinmun (in) sip-il Wən imnita.</u> | This newspaper is W 11. |
| 8. <u>Cə capci (nin) sɪp-sam Wən imnita.</u> | That magazine is W 13. |
| 9. <u>Ki syassi (nin) sip-o Wən imnita.</u> | That shirt is W 15. |

10. I son-sukən (in) sip-chil Wən imnita. This handkerchief is W 17.
 11. Cə iyca (nin) sip-ku Wən imnita. That chair is W 19.

K. Grammar Drill (as a response drill based on Grammar Note 2)

- Tutor: ece hakkyo e kassimnikka? 'Did you go to school yesterday?'
 Student: Ne, kassimnita. 'Yes, I did.'
1. Moca lil sassimnikka? Ne, sassimnita.
 2. Chækpang e tilləssimnikka? Ne, tilləssimnita.
 3. Kim Sənsəng il mannassimnikka? Ne, mənnassimnita.
 4. Ki chæk il ilkəssimnikka? Ne, ilkəssimnita.
 5. Pak Sənsəng i cip e issəssimnikka? Ne, cip e issəssimnita.
 6. Haksəng il chacəssimnikka? Ne, (haksəng il) chacəssimnita.
 7. Pak Sənsəng i Hankuk mal il Ne, (Pak Sənsəng i) kalichyəssimnita.
 kalichyəssimnikka?
 8. Ceimsi Sənsəng il pwassimnikka? Ne, pwassimnita.
 9. Cungkuk mal il pəwəssimnikka? Ne, (Cungkuk mal il) pəwəssimnita.
 10. I yənphil il wənhəssimnikka? Ne, (ki yənphil il) wənhəssimnita.
 11. Kil il mule pwassimnikka? Ne, (kil il) mule pwassimnita.
 12. Ki chæk il phalassimnikka? Ne, phalassimnita.
 13. Ki sæk il cohahəssimnikka? Ne, (ki sæk il) cohahəssimnita.

L. Response Drill

- Tutor: ece əti e kassimnikka? /sinə/
 Student: Sinə e kassimnita. 'Where did you go yesterday? /downtown/
 /[I] went downtown.'
1. Muəs il sassimnikka? /ilsang yongphum/ Ilsang yongphum il sassimnita.
 2. ece əti e tilləssimnikka? /chækpang/ Chækpang e tilləssimnita.
 3. Musin sæk il wənhəssimnikka? Nolan sæk il wənhəssimnita.
 /nolan sæk/
 4. Muəs i issəssimnikka? /yələ kaci/ Yələ kaci ka issəssimnita.
 5. Nuku əlil cohahəssimnikka? /Ceimsi/ Ceimsi əlil cohahəssimnita.
 6. Ki kəs, əlma e phaləssimnikka? O-sip Wən e phaləssimnita.
 /o-sip Wən/
 7. Nuka cip e wassimnikka? /Mikuk salam/ Mikuk salam i wassimnita.
 8. Muəs il chacəssimnikka? /haksəng/ Haksəng il chacəssimnita.
 9. Muəs il kongpu-həssimnikka? Hankuk mal il kongpu-həssimnita.
 /Hankuk mal/

10. Muəs il pəwəssimnikka? /Ilpon mal/ Ilpon mal il pəwəssimnita.
 11. Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichyəssimnikka? Pak Sənsəng i kalichyəssimnita.
 /Pak Sənsəng/
 12. əti eəe ki chæk il pwassimnikka? Sinəe chækpang eəe pwassimnita.
 /sinəe chækpang/

M. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 5)

- | | | |
|----------|---------------------------------|--|
| Tutor: | Hakkyo e kamnikka? | 'Do you go to school?' |
| Student: | Aniyo, kaci anhsimnita. | 'No, I don't (go).' |
| 1. | Hankuk mal il pəəumnikka? | Aniyo, pəəuci anhsimnita. |
| 2. | Chæk kaps i pissamnikka? | Aniyo, pissaci anhsimnita. |
| 3. | Cip kaps i ssamnikka? | Aniyo, ssaci anhsimnita. |
| 4. | Onil chækpang e tillimnikka? | Aniyo, tillici anhsimnita. |
| 5. | Kim Sənsəng il mannamnikka? | Aniyo, mannaci anhsimnita. |
| 6. | Ki chæk il ilksimnikka? | Aniyo, ilkci anhsimnita. |
| 7. | Hankuk mal il mal-hamnikka? | Aniyo, mal-haci anhsimnita. |
| 8. | Pak Sənsəng i cip e issimnikka? | Aniyo, (cip e) issci/icci/ anhsimnita. |
| 9. | I sæk il cohahamnikka? | Aniyo, cohahaci anhsimnita. |
| 10. | Yəki eəe chæk il phamnikka? | Aniyo, pha(1)ci anhsimnita. |
| 11. | I kəs il wənhamnikka? | Aniyo, wənhaci anhsimnita. |
| 12. | Hakkyo ka məmnikka? | Aniyo, mə(1)ci anhsimnita. |
| 13. | Təsakwan i kakkapsimnikka? | Aniyo, kakkapci anhsimnita. |

N. Response Drill

- | | | |
|----------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Tutor: | Hakkyo e kakessimnikka? | 'Are [you] going to school?' |
| Student: | Aniyo, kaci anhkessimnita. | ('Will you go to school?') |
| 1. | Hankuk mal il pəukessimnikka? | 'No, [I] 'm not (going).' |
| 2. | Onil chækpang e tillikessimnikka? | ('No, I 'll not go.)' |
| 3. | Kim Sənsəng il mannakessimnikka? | Aniyo, pəəuci anhkessimnita. |
| 4. | Ki chæk il ilkkessimnikka? | Aniyo, tillici anhkessimnita. |
| 5. | Hankuk mal il mal-hakessimnikka? | Aniyo, mannaci anhkessimnita. |
| 6. | Kutu ləl sakessimnikka? | Aniyo, ilkci anhkessimnita. |
| 7. | Moca ləl phalkessimnikka? | Aniyo, mal-haci anhkessimnita. |
| 8. | Nolan syassi ləl pokessimnikka? | Aniyo, saci anhkessimnita. |
| 9. | Kil il mule pokessimnikka? | Aniyo, pha(1)ci anhkessimnita. |
| 10. | Kim Sənsəng il chackessimnikka? | Aniyo, poci anhkessimnita. |

0. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 5 with Past Tense)

- Tutor: ece sinæ e kassimnikka? 'Did you go downtown yesterday?'
- Student: Aniyo, kaci anhessimnita. 'No, I didn't (go).'
1. Hankuk mal il pæwessimnikka? Aniyo, pæuci anhessimnita.
2. Ki chæk il ilkessimnikka? Aniyo, ilkci anhessimnita.
3. Kim Sænsæng il mannassimnikka? Aniyo, mannaci anhessimnita.
4. Kutu lîl sassimnikka? Aniyo, saci anhessimnita.
5. Kil il mule pwassimnikka? Aniyo, mule poci anhessimnita.
6. Kim Sænsæng il chacessimnikka? Aniyo, (Kim Sænsæng il) chacci anhessimnita.
7. Chæksang il phalæssimnikka? Aniyo, phalci anhessimnita.
8. Samusil e tillæssimnikka? Aniyo, tillici anhessimnita.
9. Sænsæng in Yængæ lîl kalichyæssimnikka? Aniyo, kalichici anhessimnita.
10. Hakkyo ka mælessimnikka? Aniyo, mæ(l)ci anhessimnita.
11. Chæk kaps i pissassimnikka? Aniyo, pissaci anhessimnita.
12. Phalan sæk il wænhæssimnikka? Aniyo, (phalan sæk il) wænhaci anhessimnita.
13. Ceimsi Sænsæng il aleßimnikka? Aniyo, alci anhessimnita.

P. Response Drill (as a level drill based on Grammar Note 1)

- Tutor: Hakkyo e ka yo? 'Do you go to school?'
- Student: Ne, (hakkyo e) ka yo. 'Yes, I do (go to school).'
1. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hæ yo? Ne, (Hankuk mal il) kongpu-hæ yo.
2. Chæk kaps i ssa yo? Ne, (chæk kaps i) ssa yo.
3. Yangpok i pissa yo? Ne, (yangpok i) pissa yo.
4. Hakkyo ka mæle yo? Ne, (hakkyo ka) mæle yo.
5. Cængkæcang i kakkawæ yo? Ne, (cængkæcang i) kakkawæ yo.
6. Sænsæng in Mikuk salam iye yo? Ne, Mikuk salam iye yo.
7. Sænsæng in cal issæ yo? Ne, cal issæ yo.
8. Ceimsi Sænsæng in Yængæ lîl mal-hæ yo? Ne, Yængæ lîl mal-hæ yo.
9. Sænsæng in cæ salam il ale yo? Ne, (cæ salam il) ale yo.
10. Pækhwacem i sichæng yæph e issæ yo? Ne, sichæng yæph e issæ yo.
11. Yæki esæ sukæn il phalæ yo? Ne, (sukæn il) phalæ yo.
12. Nolan sæk il wænhæ yo? Ne, (nolan sæk il) wænhæ yo.
13. Hankuk mal il cohahæ yo? Ne, (Hankuk mal il) cohahæ yo.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 14. Onil chækpang e tillə yo? | Ne, (chækpang e) tillə yo. |
| 15. Ki chæk i coha yo? | Ne, (ki chæk i) coha yo. |
| 16. Sangcəm il chacə yo? | Ne, sangcəm il chacə yo. |
| 17. Səngsəng in Hankuk mal il pæwə yo? | Ne, cə nin Hankuk mal il pæwə yo. |
| 18. Kim Sənsəng i kalichie yo? | Ne, Kim Sənsəng i kalichie yo. |

Q. Response Drill (as a level drill based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Hakkō e kamnikka?

'Do you go to school?'

Student: Ne, (hakkyo e) ka yo.

'Yes, I do ('go to school').

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnikka? | Ne, kongpu-hæ yo. |
| 2. Chæk kaps i ssamnikka? | Ne, ssa yo. |
| 3. Yangpok i pissamnikka? | Ne, pissä yo. |
| 4. Hakkyo ka məmnikka? | Ne, mələ yo. |
| 5. Cəngkəcang i kakkapsımnikka? | Ne, kakkawə yo. |
| 6. Sənsəng in Mikuk salam imnikka? | Ne, Mikuk salam iye yo. |
| 7. Kim Sənsəng in cip e issımnikka? | Ne, (cip e) issə yo. |
| 8. Cə salam il amnikka? | Ne, ale yo. |
| 9. Yəki esə sukən il phamnikka? | Ne, phalə yo. |
| 10. Kkaman sæk il wənhamnikka? | Ne, kkaman sæk il wənhæ yo. |
| 11. I kyosil il cohahamnikka? | Ne, cohahæ yo. |
| 12. Haksəng il chacsımnikka? | Ne, haksəng il chace yo. |
| 13. Cə salam il molimnikka? | Ne, molla yo. |

R. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Hakkvo e kasimnikka?

612 *Journal of Health Politics, Policy and Law* / March 2007

Student: Hakkwo e kaso ye?

Are you going to school?

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hasimnikka? | Hankuk mal il kongpu-hase yo? |
| 2. Cungkuk mal il pæusimnikka? | Cungkuk mal il pæuse yo? |
| 3. Hankuk mal chæk il ilkisimnikka? | Hankuk mal chæk il ilkise yo? |
| 4. Kim Sənsəng in kutu lıl sasimnikka? | Kim Sənsəng in kutu lıl sase yo? |
| 5. Sənsəng i haksəng il chacisimnikka? | Sənsəng i haksəng il chacise yo? |
| 6. Annyəng-hasimnikka? | Annyəng-hase yo? |
| 7. Yocım əttəhke cinasimnikka? | Yocım əttəhke cinase yo? |
| 8. Ceimsi Sənsəng il asimnikka? | Ceimsi Sənsəng il ase yo? |
| 9. Onıl Mikuk salam i Hankuk e osimnikka? Onıl Mikuk salam i Hankuk e ose yo? | |

10. Yëngë sënsëng i Hankuk mal chæk il
ilkisimnikka? Yëngë sënsëng i Hankuk mal chæk il
ilkise yo?
11. Ceimi Sënsëng i na e samusil e
tillisimnikka? Ceimsi Sënsëng i na e samusil e
tillise yo?
12. Pak Sënsëng in wekyokwan isimnikka? Pak Sënsëng in wekyokwan ise yo?

- S. Response Drill (as a grammar drill based on Grammar Notes 2 and 5)
(Answer in Informal Polite Speech for the Formal Polite using the stimulus
/ne/ or /aniyo/.)

Tutor: Hakkyo e kakessimnikka? /aniyo/ 'Are you going to school?' /no/
Student: Aniyo, kaci anhkessë yo. 'No, I'm not (going to go).'

1. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hakessimnikka? Ne, kongpu-hakessë yo.
/ne/
2. I chæk il ilkessimnikka? /aniyo/ Aniyo, ilkci anhkessë yo.
3. Mikuk salam chinku lil
mannakessimnikka? /ne/ Ne, mannakessë yo.
4. Kil il mule pokessimnikka? /aniyo/ Aniyo, mule poci anhkessë yo.
5. I chëksang il phalkessimnikka? /ne/ Ne, phalkessë yo.
6. Cë e samusil e tillikessimnikka? Aniyo, tillici anhkessë yo.
/aniyo/
7. Yëngë lil kalichikessimnikka? /ne/ Ne, kalichikessë yo.
8. Cip e isskessimnikka/ikkessimnikka/? Aniyo, (cip e) issci anhkessë yo.
/aniyo/

- T. Response Drill (as a level drill based on Grammar Note 1)
(Answer in Informal Polite Speech using the stimulus.)

- Tutor: Kim Sënsëng in eti e
kasiëssimnikka? /sicang/ 'Where did Mr. Kim go?' /market place/
Student: Sicang e kasse yo. '[He] went to the market place.'
1. Kim Sënsëng in eti e kasiëssimnikka? Chækpang e kasiësse yo.
/chækpang/
2. Muës il sassimnikka? /Hankuk kilim/ Hankuk kïlim il sasse yo.
3. Ceimsi Sënsëng i muës il mule
pwassimnikka? /kil/ Kil il mule pwasse yo.

4. Nuka sənsəng cip e tilləssimnikka? Chinku ka tilləsse yo.
 /chinku/
 5. Sənsəng e yangpok əlma e sassimnikka? O-sip Wən e sassə yo.
 /o-sip Wən/
 6. Ki Mikuk salam in nuku iyəssimnikka? Ceimsi Sənsəng iyəsse yo.
 /Ceimsi Sənsəng/
 7. Sənsəng in əce musin chæk il Ilpon mal chæk il ilkəsse yo.
 ilkəssimnikka? /Ilpon mal chæk/
 8. I chæk, əlma e phaləssimnikka? O-sip Wən e phaləsse yo.
 /o-sip Wən/
 9. Hankuk mal in nuka kalichyəssimnikka? Pak Sənsəng i kalichyəsse yo.
 /Pak Sənsəng/
 10. Nuka Yəngə sənsəng iəssimnikka? Mikuk yəca ka Yəngə sənsəng iəsse yo.
 /Mikuk yəca/

U. Response Exercise (Answer the questions on the basis of the dialogues at the beginning of this Unit: Formal Polite question in Informal Polite and vice versa.)

Tutor: əce əti e kassimnikka? 'Where did you go yesterday?'
 Student: Sinə sangcəm e kasse yo. 'I went to a store downtown.'

1. Pəekhwacəm esə muəs il sassə yo?
2. Onil in sinə e an kakessimnikka?
3. Chæk kaps i pissa yo?
4. Chækpang esə sukən il phamnikka?
5. Musin sək il wənhase yo?
6. Sənsəng in nolan waisyassı lıl cohahəssimnikka?
7. Sənsəng e moça, əlma ye yo?
8. Sənsəng e kutu, əlma e sassimnikka?
9. Səul e os kaps i ssamnikka?
10. Sənsəng in onil achim e muəs hakessə yo?
11. əce cənyək e muəs həssimnikka?
12. Onil pam e cip e isskessə yo?
13. əce ohu e əti e kasse yo?
14. Nəıl nac e ce samusil e tillikessimnikka?
15. Sənsəng in yosə musin chæk il ilkise yo?

EXERCISES

Conduct the following conversations, once in Formal Polite Speech and once in Informal Polite Speech:

A. You ask Mr. Kim:

- a. where he's going to go this afternoon.
 - b. what he'll buy.
 - c. what kind of pictures he likes.
 - d. what he's going to do at school.
 - e. what books he's going to read.
 - f. where he'll stop by.
 - g. who is going to teach English.
 - h. whom he's going to meet.
 - i. where he's going to teach Korean.
 - j. How much he is going to pay for shoes.
 - k. where he'll be tonight.
- that he's going to the market place.
 - that he's going to buy some pictures.
 - that he likes Korean pictures.
 - that he's going to study.
 - that he's going to read English books.
 - that he's going to stop by his friend's office.
 - that he (i.e. Mr. Kim) will teach it.
 - that he's going to meet a friend.
 - that he will teach [it] at a school.
 - that he's going to pay W 95.
 - that he'll be in class.

B. Ask Mr. Kim:

- a. if the books are expensive.
 - b. if he's going downtown.
 - c. if downtown is near.
 - d. if he has black shoes.
 - e. if they sell many kinds.
 - f. if they sell towels here.
 - g. where Mr. Lee's office is.
 - h. if he wants a pencil.
 - i. if he wants several kinds.
 - j. if he'll drop in the school.
 - k. if he's looking for USIS.
 - l. if he knows the way to Seoul Station.
 - m. where he went yesterday.
 - n. what he bought.
 - o. how much he paid for the pen.
 - p. how much the book was.
 - q. what color he liked.
- that they are not (expensive).
 - that he is (going downtown).
 - that it is far.
 - that he doesn't.
 - that they don't.
 - that they do.
 - that he doesn't (know).
 - that he wants paper.
 - that he does.
 - that he won't.
 - that he's looking for the Embassy.
 - that he doesn't know.
 - that he went to a store.
 - that he bought some daily necessities.
 - that he paid W 35.
 - that it was W 55.
 - that he liked blue color.

- r. what book he read yesterday.
 s. where he stopped by this morning.
 t. who taught Korean.
 u. whom he met at school.
 v. what the man's name was.
 w. what the American asked [him].
 x. how much the cəmwen sold this book for.
 y. how much he paid for his shoes.
 z. whom he looked for.
- that he read a Korean book.
 that he stopped by his friend's office.
 that Mr. Park taught it.
 that he met an American teacher.
 that (it) was James.
 that he asked him for directions.
 that he sold it for W 65.
 that he paid W 73.
 that he looked for his teacher.

C. Say the following in Korean:

- | | |
|---------|------------|
| a. W 12 | i. W 103 |
| b. W 23 | j. W 214 |
| c. W 34 | k. W 358 |
| d. W 45 | l. W 893 |
| e. W 56 | m. W 2,539 |
| f. W 67 | n. W 7,927 |
| g. W 78 | o. W10,111 |
| h. W 89 | p. W11,123 |

D. Mr. James asks the price of the following objects and you answer with the given price.

<u>Mr. James</u>	<u>You</u>
a. this yellow towel	W 28
b. that Seoul map	W 52
c. those red shoes	W 250
d. those black suits	W 3,210
e. these blue socks	W 8
f. that hat	W 79
g. that American watch	W 1,700
h. this dress shirt	W 95
i. your fountain pen	W 55
j. that chair	W 527
k. this woman's dress	W 250

E. Pak Sənsəng will respond with /Ne, kilepsita./ 'Yes, let's do so.' when you propose to:

- a. go downtown with him.
- b. see the picture.
- c. buy some daily necessities.
- d. stop by a bookstore.
- e. sell the house.
- f. ask the street directions.
- g. find Mr. Kim.
- h. meet friends.
- i. read that book.
- j. come again tomorrow.
- k. learn Chinese.
- l. stay at home.
- m. find out that Korean's name.

제 5 과 물건 사기 (계속)

(대화 A)

(-책방에서-)

사전

좋은 사전

1. 김 : 실례합니다. 여기 좋은 사전이 있습니까?

영한 사전

사전 많습니까

2. 점원 : 영한 사전 많습니까?

3. 김 : 예.

4. 점원 : 예, 있습니다.

보여 주십시오

5. 김 : 좀 보여 주십시오.

자

6. 점원 : 자, 여기 있습니다.

어떤

어떤 사전

7. 김 : 이것은 어떤 사전입니까?

UNIT 5. Shopping (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

(--Kim stopped by a bookstore--)

Kim

- sacən dictionary
cohn sacən a good dictionary
1. Sillye-hamnita. Yəki cohn sacən
i issimnikka? Excuse me. Do you have a good
dictionary here?

Cəmwən

- Yəng-Han sacən English-Korean dictionary
sacən mal imnikka do you mean [a] dictionary?
2. Yəng-Han sacən mal imnikka? Do you mean an English-Korean diction-
ary?

Kim

3. Ne. Yes.

Cəmwən

4. Ne, issimnita. Yes, we do.

Kim

- poyə cusipsiyo please show [me]
5. Com poyə cusipsiyo. May I see it? ('Please show [it to
me].')

Cəmwən

- ca well; here
6. Ca, yəki issimnita. Here you are! ('Here! [it] is.')

Kim

- əttən what kind of
əttən sacən what kind of dictionary
7. I kəs in əttən sacən imnikka? Is this a good dictionary? ('What
kind of dictionary is this?')

대단히 좋습니다

그러나

다른 것

8. 점원 : 대단히 좋습니다. 그러나 다른 것도 있읍니다.

어떻습니까

9. 김 : 다른 것은 어떻게니까?

비싼 사진

그리고

큰 책

10. 점원 : 다른 것은 좀 비싼 사진입니다. 그리고 큰 책입니다.

작은 것

11. 김 : 나는 작은 것이 좋습니다. 이 작은 것을 사겠습니다.

또

필요합니까

12. 점원 : 또 다른 것이 필요합니까?

종이

펜과 종이

13. 김 : 아, 펜과 종이는 어디에서 팝니까?

Cəmwen

- tætanhi cohsimnita [it]'s very good
 kilena but; however
 talin kəs different one; other one
 8. Tætanhi cohsimnita. Kilena, talin [It] is very good. But we also have
 kəs to issimnita. another one.

Kim

- ettəhsimnikka how is [it]?
 9. Talin kəs in ettəhsimnikka? Is the other one good? ('How is the
 other one?')

Cəmwen

- pissan sacən [an] expensive dictionary
 kiliko and
 khin chæk a big book
 10. Talin kəs in com pissan sacən The other one is [a] fairly expensive
 imnita. Kiliko, khin chæk (dictionary). And, [it]'s a big
 imnita. book.

Kim

- cakin kəs a small one
 11. Na nin cakin kəs i cohsimnita. A small one is fine for me. I'll
 I cakin kəs il sakessimnita. take this small one.

Cəmwen

- tto again; besides; also
 philyo necessity; need
 philyo-hamnikka do [you] need?; is [something]
 needed?
 12. Tto takin kəs i philyo-hamnikka? Do you need anything else? ('Is
 other thing also needed?')

Kim

- congi paper
 phen kwa congi pen and paper
 13. A, phen kwa congi nin eti esə Oh, where can I buy a pen and paper?
 pha(lı)mnikka? ('As for pens and paper, where do
 [they] sell?')

다음

다음 집

문방구점

14. 접원 : 다음 집이 문방구점입니다.

(대화 B)

(-문방구점에서-)

드릴까요

15. 접원 : 어서 오십시오. 무엇을 드릴까요?

16. 김 : 종이와 펜이 있읍니까?

원하십니까

17. 접원 : 예, 있읍니다. 종이는 무슨 종이를 원하세요?

타이프 종이

18. 김 : 타이프 종이를 원합니다.

두 가지

두 가지 종이

19. 접원 : 아, 그려세요? 두 가지 종이가 있읍니다.

20. 김 : 얼마예요?

Cəmwen

taim

next; next time

taim cip

the next door ('next house')

munpangkucəm

stationary shop

14. Taim cip i munpangkucəm imnita.

There's a stationary shop next door.
('Next door is a stationary shop.')Dialogue B

(--Kim enters next door--)

Cəmwen

tilil kka yo

shall [I] give [you]?

15. eṣe osipsiyo. Muəs il tilil
kka yo?Come in. What would you like? ('What
shall I give you?')Kim

16. Congi wa phen i issimnikka?

Do you have paper and pens?

Cəmwen

wənhasimnikka

do [you] want?

17. Ne, issimnita. Congi nın musin
congi lɪl wənhase yo?Yes, we have. What kind of paper do
you want?Kim

thaiphı congı

typewriter paper

18. Thaiphı congı lɪl wənhamnita.

I want typewriter paper.

Cəmwen

tu kaci

two kinds

tu kaci congı

two kinds of paper

19. A, kiləse yo? Tu kaci congı ka
issimnita.Fine. ('Oh, is that so?') We have two
kinds of typewriter paper.Kim

20. əlma (i)ye yo?

How much are [they]?

한 가지

순

순 장

오십 원

21. 점원 : 한 가지는 순 장에 칠십 원입니다. 그리고,
다른 것은 오십 원에 팝니다.

더

더 쌉니다

더 쌓 것

좀 더 쌓 것

없어요

22. 금 : 좀 더 쌓 것은 없어요?

지금

23. 점원 : 예, 좀 더 쌓 것은 지금 없읍니다.

그 터면

오십 원 짜리

24. 금 : 그 터면, 오십 원 짜리를 주읍시요.

Cəmwən

han kaci	one kind
swin	fifty
swin cang	fifty sheets; fifty pieces
o-sip Wén	W50

21. Han kaci nin swin cang e chil-sip
Wən imnita. Kiliko, talin kəs
in o-sip Wən e phamnita.
One (kind) is W70 for 50 sheets, and
the other is W50. ('We sell it
for W50.')

Kim

te	more
te ssamnita	[it]'s cheaper
te ssan kəs	cheaper one; cheaper kind
com te ssan kəs	a little cheaper one
əpsə yo	don't [you] have?; isn't [there]?

22. Com tê ssan kés in əpsə yo? Don't you have anything cheaper?

Cəmwən

cikim now
ce ssan kes in cikim No, not right now. ('We don't have a
simnita. cheaper kind now.')

Kim

kiləmyən	then; if so
o-sip Wən ccali	₩50 worth; in the value of ₩50
nyən, o-sip Wən ccali lil	Then I'll take the 50 Won kind.
insivo	('Then give me the ₩50's.')

수자 (2)

1	하나	11	열 하나	21	스물 하나
2	둘	12	열 둘	29	스물 아홉
3	셋	13	열 셋	30	서른
4	넷	14	열 넷	40	마흔
5	다섯	15	열 다섯	50	쉰
6	여섯	16	열 여섯	60	예순
7	일곱	17	열 일곱	70	일흔 (이흔)
8	여덟	18	열 여덟	80	여든
9	아홉	19	열 아홉	90	아흔
10	열	20	스물 (스무)	99	아흔 아홉
100	(일)백	200	이백	300	삼백
101	백 하나	210	이백 열	401	사백 하나
102	백 둘	220	이백 스물	502	오백 둘
103	백 셋	230	이백 서른	603	육백 셋
104	백 넷	240	이백 마흔	704	칠백 넷
105	백 다섯	250	이백 쉰	805	팔백 다섯
106	백 여섯	260	이백 예순	906	구백 여섯
107	백 일곱	270	이백 일흔	911	구백 열 하나
108	백 여덟	280	이백 여든	922	구백 스물 둘
109	백 아홉	290	이백 아흔	1,000	(일)천
119	백 열 아홉	300	삼백	10,000	(일)만

NUMERALS (2)

1 han(a)	11 yəl-han(a)	21 s̄imul-han(a)
2 tu(1)	12 yəl-tu(1)	29 s̄imul-ahop
3 se(s)	13 yəl-se(s)	30 {s̄elh̄in {s̄elin
4 ne(s)	14 yəl-ne(s)	40 mahin
5 tasəs	15 yəl-tasəs	50 swin
6 yəsəs	16 yəl-yəsəs	60 yesun
7 ilkop	17 yəl-ilkop	70 il(h)in
8 {yətəl {yətə(1)p	18 yəl-yətəl	80 yətin
9 ahop	19 yəl-ahop	90 ahin
10 yəl	20 s̄imu(1)	99 ahin-ahop

100 (il)-pæk	200 ipæk	300 sampæk
101 pæk-han(a)	210 ipæk-yəl	401 sapæk-han(a)
102 pæk-tu(1)	220 ipæk-s̄imul	502 opæk-tu(1)
103 pæk-se(s)	230 ipæk-s̄elh̄in	603 yukpæk-se(s)
104 pæk-ne(s)	240 ipæk-mahin	704 chilpæk-ne(s)
105 pæk-tasəs	250 ipæk-swin	805 phalpæk-tasəs
106 pæk-yəsəs	260 ipæk-yəsəs	906 kupæk-yəsəs
107 pæk-ilkop	270 ipæk-il(h)in	911 kupæk-yəl-han(a)
108 pæk-yətəl(yətəp)	280 ipæk-yətin	922 kupæk-s̄imul-tu(1)
109 pæk-ahop	290 ipæk-ahin	1,000 (il)chən
119 pæk-yəl-ahop	300 sampæk	10,000 (il)man

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. Yeki (e) X i/ka issimnikka? ('Is there X here?') is another expression commonly used in the situations similar to Yeki ese X il/lil phamnikka? ('Do [you] sell X at this place?'). It means something like 'Do you carry X here (where X is a certain thing you want to buy)?'. Cohin 'good, nice' is a noun-modifier word which is formed from the verb stem coh- 'to be good' (See Grammar Note 1).
2. Mal imnikka? 'Do you mean...?' is always immediately preceded by something. The affirmative response to X mal imnikka? 'Do you mean X?' is Ne, X mal imnita. 'Yes, I mean X.' Yeng-Han 'English-Korean' is the contracted form of either Yengə Hankuk mal 'English-Korean language' or Yengkuk Hankuk 'Britian-Korea'. This kind of contraction in one word made out of two or more words appears often in Korean. In each case, the first syllables of the words are brought together to make the contraction. Examples: Han-Yeng 'Korea(n)-English (Britian)', Han-Il 'Korea(n)-Japan(ese)', Cung-Tok 'Sino-German', Han-Mi 'Korea-U.S.'.
6. Ca 'well', 'here!' occurs always at the beginning of the sentence followed by a pause to signify that the speaker is going to suggest or produce something.
7. etten 'what sort of' is a question noun-modifier word which denotes the quality or characteristics of the following noun. Compare with musin 'what kind of' which denotes the type, essence or denomination of the following noun.
8. Talin 'different', 'other' is a noun-modifier word which is formed from the verb stem tali- 'to be different'.
10. Kiliko 'And' occurs at the beginning of the sentence and is followed by a pause.
11. The verb stem of the noun-modifier word cakin 'small' is cak- 'to be small in size'; cək- means 'to be little in quantity'.
12. The verb stem philyo-ha- 'to be needed', 'to be necessary', is an intransitive verb which may be preceded by the emphasized subject but never by an object. Examples:
Talin kes i philyo-hamnita. '[I] need another one' ('A different thing is needed').

Chæk i philyo-hamnikka?

'Do you need a book?' ('Is a book needed?')

14. Taim 'the next time', 'next' occurs either as a free noun or as a determinative.
15. The verb stem tili- 'to give' is the politest equivalent of cu-. A sentence which ends in -(i)l kka yo? is always a question sentence (See Grammar Note 2).
22. Te 'more', '-er' occurs immediately before description verbs or other adverbs (See Grammar Note 3). The antonym of te is the adverb tel 'less...!'.
24. Ccali 'worth', 'value' is a post-noun which occurs only after a stated amount of money. If followed by another noun, the phrase ending in ccali describes the value of the noun. If not followed by another noun, the phrase ending in ccali indicates the denomination of money in the stated amount. Examples:

pæk Wən ccali sikye
 o-sip Wən ccali moça
 sip Wən ccali
 o-sip Pul ccali

a watch which is W100 worth
 a hat which is W50 worth
 W10 bill
 \$50 bill

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -n/in/nin

The verb ending -n/in/nin is added to a verb stem, or to a verb stem plus other suffix(es): -n is added to a description verb stem which ends in a vowel; -in to a description verb stem which ends in a consonant; -nin, to an action verb stem. The inflected form which ends in -n/in/nin occurs only before a noun as a modifier of the noun, and never alone nor before other classes of words. It shows only the present action or state of the modified noun. We shall call the words of this class Present Noun-Modifier Words and the -n/in/nin ending the Present Noun-Modifier Ending. Examples:

Group 1

pissan sikye
 mən hakkyo
 nolan yənphil
 kkamhan moça

'(an) expensive watch'
 'a school which is far'
 '(a) yellow pencil'
 '(a) black hat'

Group 2

cohin chæk	'(a) good book'
copin kill	'(a) narrow street'
nelpin kyosil	'(a) large classroom'

Group 3

kanin salam	'a man who is going'
canin ai	'a sleeping child'
kalichinin yeca	'a woman who is teaching'
chæk il ilknin haksæng	'a student who is reading a book'
næ ka pæunin mal	'the language that I'm learning'

2. -l/il kka yo? 'Shall I...?', 'Shall we...?', 'Will [it]... (do you think)?'

The construction -l/il kka yo? occurs only as a final form of a question sentence. If the subject or the topic in the sentence is the speaker, he asks the addressee's consent or permission for the action he is going to take. If the subject or the topic of the sentence includes both the speaker and addressee, the speaker asks the addressee whether he is interested in doing something. If the subject or the topic in the sentence is other than the speaker or the speaker plus addressee, the speaker asks the addressee for his opinion about the possibility of the action or description occurring in the future. Note: -l is added to a stem ending in a vowel; -il to a stem ending in a consonant (See Grammar Note 3, Unit 9). Examples:

Tapang e kal kka yo?	'Shall I go to the tearoom?' 'Shall we go to the tearoom?'
Sənsæng cip e tillil kka yo?	'Shall I stop by your house?' 'Shall we stop by the teacher's house?'
Kim Sənsæng i ol kka yo?	'Will Mr. Kim come?'
Hakkyo ka məl kka yo?	'(Do you think) the school will be far?'

3. Adverbs

Adverbs are a class of words which may or may not be inflected. They occur before and modify other inflected expressions (i.e. verbals, noun-modifiers, sentences, other adverbs). This class of words is distinguished from noun-modifiers (See Grammar Note 1) which occur only before nouns. There are some nouns which occur sometimes as adverbs also. For examples: are two kinds of adverbs: (1) one kind may be separated by a pause from the subsequent inflected expressions, and (2) the other kind occur without pause as

an integral part of an inflected expressions. The adverbs of group (1) are called Sentence Adverbs; those of the group (2), simply Adverbs. We have had so far the following kinds of adverbs.

kilik 'and'; kilena 'but'; kilemyen 'then'; ne 'yes'; aniyo 'no'; ettehke 'how'; tto 'again', 'also'; kili '(not) so', 'in such a way'; com 'a little'; ese 'please', 'quickly'; ttokpalo 'straight ahead'; cal 'well', etc.

Some of these adverbs occur at the beginning of sentences which succeed always other sentences: others occur before inflected expressions which do not need to be preceded by other sentences.

(a). te 'more', '-er' and tel 'less'

te and tel occur without pause before noun-modifier words, verbals or other adverbs. They denote the comparative degree of the following descriptive expression. Compare:

1. Ki kès i cohsimnita.	'[It] is good.'
Ki kès i te cohsimnita.	'[It] is better.'
Ki kès i tel cohsimnita.	'[It] is poorer.'
2. I chæk i pissamnita.	'This book is expensive.'
I chæk i te pissamnita.	'This book is more expensive.'
I chæk i tel pissamnita.	'This book is less expensive.'
3. eleyeun mal	'[a] difficult language'
te eleyeun mal	'[a] more difficult language'
tel eleyeun mal	'[a] less difficult language'
4. Kim Sənsəng i Yəngə lɪl cal hamnita.	'Mr. Kim speaks English well.'
Kim Sənsəng i Yəngə lɪl te cal hamnita.	'Mr. Kim speaks English better.'
Kim Sənsəng i (Ceimsi pota) Yəngə lɪl tel cal hamnita.	'Mr. Kim speaks English less well (than James).'

(b). tətanhi 'very'

Tətanhi 'very' occurs without pause before noun-modifiers, verbals or other adverbs. Compare:

1. Chæk i pissamnita.	'The book is expensive.'
Chæk i tətanhi pissamnita.	'The book is very expensive.'
2. Ssan kutu lɪl sasse yo.	'[I] bought cheap shoes.'
Tətanhi ssan kutu lɪl sasse yo.	'[I] bought very cheap shoes.'

3. Kim Sənsəng i Yəngə lil cal
mal-hæ yo. 'Mr. Kim speaks English well.'

Kim Sənsəng i Yəngə lil tætanhi
cal mal-hæ yo. 'Mr. Kim speaks English very well.'

4. Counters: cang, can, kwən, kæ, pun, mali, pel, tae

In Unit 4, we noticed that certain counters such as Wən 'Korean monetary unit' occur only after numerals of character origin. The counters cang, can, kwən, kæ, pun, etc. are some of the commonly used counters which occur only after Korean numerals.

(a). Cang is used in counting such things as paper, letters, towels, sheets, flat glasses, etc.

thaipi cong i tases cang	'5 sheets of typing paper'
phyenci tu cang	'two letters'
tamyo se cang	'three blankets'

(b). Can is used in counting cups or glasses of liquid.

khəphi han can	'a cup of coffee'
sul tu can	'two glasses of wine'

(c). Kwən is used in counting books.

yəksa chæk yələ kwən	'several volumes of history books'
Yəngə chæk tu kwən il sasse yo.	'I bought two English books.'

(d). Kæ is used in counting common object nouns such as pencils, desks, chairs, etc.

Yənphil han kæ cuse yo.	'Give me a pencil.'
Chæksang i tases kæ issə yo.	'There are five desks.'
Iyca ka myəch* kæ issimnikka?	'How many chairs are there?'

*myəch 'how many' is a determinative which occurs before counters as a question word.

(e). Pun or salam is used in counting persons. Pun is the honorific equivalent of salam.

sənsəng se pun	'three teachers'
haksəng tu salam	'two students'
Mikuk salam yələ pun	'several Americans'

(f). Mali is used in counting animals.

mal han mali	'one horse'
so tu mali	'two cattle'
kæ se mali	'three dogs'
koyangi ne mali	'four cats'

(g). Pel is used in counting suits.

yangpok tu pel	'two suits'
----------------	-------------

(h). Tæ is used in counting vehicles, airplanes, machines, etc.

catongcha yælæ tæ	'several automobiles'
pihængki se tæ	'three airplanes'

Note that all the counters occur typically after the determinative myeck 'how many?'. Also note that in Korean things are counted in the following manner:
Nominal + Numeral + Counter.

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drills

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Yəki Hankuk mal sacən i issimnikka? | Do you have a Korean dictionary here? |
| 2. Yəki <u>Yəng-Han</u> sacən (i) issimnikka? | Do you have an English-Korean dictionary here? |
| 3. Yəki <u>thaiphi</u> <u>congi</u> (ka) issimnikka? | Do you have typewriter paper here? |
| 4. Yəki <u>munpangkucəm</u> (i) issimnikka? | Is there a stationary shop here? |
| 5. Yəki <u>yələ kaci</u> <u>congi</u> (ka) issimnikka? | Do you have several kinds of paper here? |
| 6. Yəki <u>cohın</u> <u>sacən</u> (i) issimnikka? | Do you have a good dictionary here? |
| 7. Yəki <u>ətten</u> <u>sacən</u> (i) issimnikka? | What kind of dictionary do you have here? |
| 8. Yəki <u>talın</u> <u>kəs</u> (i) issimnikka? | Do you have a different one here? |
| 9. Yəki <u>khin</u> <u>chæk</u> (i) issimnikka? | Do you have a big book here? |
| 10. Yəki <u>cakın</u> <u>sacən</u> (i) issimnikka? | Do you have a small dictionary here? |
| 11. Yəki <u>pissan</u> <u>sacən</u> (i) issimnikka? | Do you have any expensive dictionaries here? |
| 12. Yəki <u>ssan</u> <u>congi</u> (ka) issimnikka? | Do you have cheap paper here? |

B. Subsitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Yəng-Han sacen mal imnikka? | Do you mean an English-Korean dictionary? |
| 2. <u>I</u> <u>cip</u> mal imnikka? | Do you mean this house? |
| 3. <u>Pissan</u> <u>congi</u> mal imnikka? | Do you mean expensive paper? |
| 4. <u>Yələ</u> <u>kaci</u> mal imnikka? | Do you mean several kinds? |
| 5. <u>Khın</u> <u>sukən</u> mal imnikka? | Do you mean a big towel? |
| 6. <u>Mikuk</u> <u>salam</u> mal imnikka? | Do you mean the Americans? |
| 7. <u>ənı</u> <u>kəs</u> mal imnikka? | Which do you mean? |
| 8. <u>Musın</u> <u>sacən</u> mal imnikka? | What dictionary do you mean? |
| *9. <u>ənce</u> mal imnikka? | When do you mean? |
| 10. <u>Nuku</u> mal imnikka? | Whom do you mean? |
| 11. <u>Muəs</u> mal imnikka? | What do you mean? |
| 12. <u>əti</u> mal imnikka? | Where do you mean? |
| 13. <u>ətəhke</u> mal imnikka? | How do you mean? |
| 14. <u>Myəch</u> <u>salam</u> mal imnikka? | How many people do you mean? |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Ki kès</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show [me] that. |
| *2. <u>Cə kilim</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show [me] that picture. |
| 3. <u>Ki capci</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show me that magazine. |
| 4. <u>Cə sinmun</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show me that newspaper. |
| 5. <u>Nolan yangmal</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show me some yellow socks. |
| 6. <u>Phalan kès</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show me a blue one. |
| 7. <u>Kkamhan kutu</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show me some black shoes. |
| 8. <u>Hayan waisyassi</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show me some white shirts. |
| 9. <u>Ppalkan os</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show me a red dress. |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Talin kès</u> to issimnita. | [We] also have a different one(s). |
| 2. <u>Cohin kès</u> to issimnita. | [We] also have a good one. |
| 3. <u>Pissan kès</u> to issimnita. | [We] also have an expensive one. |
| 4. <u>Ssan kès</u> to issimnita. | [We] also have a cheap one. |
| 5. <u>Khin kès</u> to issimnita. | [We] also have a big one. |
| 6. <u>Cakin kès</u> to issimnita. | [We] also have a small one. |
| 7. <u>Nolan kès</u> to issimnita. | [We] also have a yellow one. |
| 8. <u>Ppalkan kès</u> to issimnita. | [We] also have a red one. |
| 9. <u>Phalan kès</u> to issimnita. | [We] also have a blue one. |
| *10. <u>Kathin kès</u> to issimnita. | [We] also have the same thing. |
| *11. <u>Alimtaun kès</u> to issimnita. | [We] also have a beautiful one. |
| *12. <u>Yeppin kès</u> to issimnita. | [We] also have a pretty one. |
| *13. <u>Nelpin kès</u> to issimnita. | [We] also have a wide one. |
| *14. <u>Copin kès</u> to issimnita. | [We] also have a narrow one. |

E. Substitution Drill

1. Talin kës in ettëhsimnikka? How is the other one?
2. Talin kës in elma imnikka? How much is the other one?
3. Talin kës in cohsimnikka? Is the other one good?
4. Talin kës in nappimnikka? Is the other one bad?
5. Talin kës in khimnikka? Is the other one big?
6. Talin kës in caksimnikka? Is the other one small?
7. Talin kës in epsimnikka? Don't you have a different one?

8. Talin kës in issimnikka? Do you have another one?
9. Talin kës in talimnikka? Is the other one different?
- *10. Talin kës in alimtapsimnikka? Is the other one beautiful?
- *11. Talin kës in yeppimnikka? Is the other one pretty?
- *12. Talin kës in në(1)psimnikka? Is the other one wide?
- *13. Talin kës in copsimnikka? Is the other one narrow?
- *14. Talin kës in kathsimnikka? Is the other one the same?
- *15. Talin kës in swipsimnikka? Is the other one easy?
- *16. Talin kës in elyepsimnikka? Is the other one difficult?

F. Substitution Drill

1. Talin kës i philyo-hamnikka? Do [you] need anything else?
2. Yëng-Han sacëñ (i) philyo-hamnikka? Do you need an E-K dictionary?
3. Han-Yëng sacëñ (i) philyo-hammikka? Do you need a K-E dictionary?
4. Phen kwa congì (ka) philyo-hamnikka? Do you need a pen and paper?
5. Chæksang kwa lyca (ka) philyo-hamnikka? Do you need a desk and a chair?

6. Moca wa kutu (ka) philyo-hamnikka? Do you need a hat and shoes?
7. Yëphil kwa kongchæk (i) philyo-hamnikka? Do you need a pencil and a notebook?
8. Sacëñ kwa congì (ka) philyo-hamnikka? Do you need a dictionary and paper?

G. Substitution Drill

1. Phen kwa congi nin eti ese phamnikka?
Where can I buy pens and paper?
('Where do [they] sell pens and paper?')
2. Yangmal (kwa) yangpok in eti ese phamnikka?
Where can I buy socks and suits?
3. Sinmum (kwa) capci nin eti ese phamnikka?
Where can I buy newspapers and magazines?
4. Sikye (wa) son-sukən in eti ese phamnikka?
Where can I buy watches and handkerchiefs?
5. Congi (wa) phen in eti ese phamnikka?
Where can I buy paper and pens?
6. Yangmal (kwa) kutu nin eti ese phamnikka?
Where can I buy socks and shoes?
7. Chæksang (kwa) lyca nin eti ese phamnikka?
Where can I buy tables and chairs?
8. Moca (wa) kutu nin eti ese phamnikka?
Where can I buy hats and shoes?
9. Yənphil (kwa) kongchæk in eti ese phamnikka?
Where can I buy pencils and notebooks?

H. Substitution Drill

1. Muəs il tilil kka yo?
What would you like? ('What shall I give you?')
2. əni chæk (il) tilil kka yo?
Which book would you like?
3. Musin sæk (il) tilil kka yo?
What color would you like?
4. Talin kəs (il) tilil kka yo?
Would you like a different one?
5. Tə ssan congi (il) tilil kka yo?
Would you like cheaper paper?
6. Tə pißan sikyo (il) tilil kka yo?
Would you like a more expensive watch?
7. Tə cohin kəs (il) tilil kka yo?
Would you like a better one?
8. Tə cakin kəs (il) tilil kka yo?
Would you like a smaller one?
9. Tə khin kəs (il) tilil kka yo?
Would you like a bigger one?
10. Tə hayan kəs (il) tilil kka yo?
Would you like a whiter one?

I. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Chæk i pissamnita.	'The book is expensive.'
Student: Pissan chæk i issimnita.	'There's an expensive book.'
1. Sacən i cohsimnita.	Cohin sacən i issimnita.
2. Cip i khimnita.	Khin cip i issimnita.
3. Mannyənphil i caksimnita.	Cakin mannyənphil i issimnita.
4. Yangpok i kkamhamnita.	Kkamhan yangpok i issimnita.
5. Waisyassi ka hayamnita.	Hayan waisyassi ka issimnita.
6. Yənphil i nolahsimnita.	Nolan yənphil i issimnita.
7. Os i ppalkahsimnita.	Ppalkan os i issimnita.
8. Sicang i kakkapsimnita.	Kakkaun sicang i issimnita.
9. Kilim i alimtapsimnita.	Alimtaun kilim i issimnita.
10. Kyosil i nəlpisimnita.	Nəlpin kyosil i issimnita.
11. Samusil i copsimnita.	Copin samusil i issimnita.
12. Sæk i talimnita.	Talin sæk i issimnita.
13. Sacən i pissamnita.	Pissan sacən i issimnita.
14. Kilim i kathsimnita.	Kathin kilim i issimnita.
15. Chæk i swipsimnita.	Swiun chæk i issimnita.
16. Mal i əlyəpsimnita.	əlyəun mal i issimnita.

J. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Haksəng i kongpu-hamnita.	'A student (is) study(ing).'
Student: Kongpu-hanin haksəng i issimnita.	'There is a student who is studying.'
1. Salam i omnita.	Onin salam i issimnita.
2. Mikuk salam i Hankuk mal il (mal-) hamnita.	Hankuk mal il (mal-)hanin Mikuk salam i issimnita.
3. Hankuk haksəng i Mikuk e kamnita.	Mikuk e kanin Hankuk haksəng i issimnita.
4. Sənsəng i Yəngə lil kalichimnita.	Yəngə lil kalichinin sənsəng i issimnita.
5. Puin i kutu lil samnita.	Kutu lili sanin puin i issimnita.
6. Ai ka chæk il ilksimnita.	Chæk il ilknin ai ka issimnita.
7. Mikuk yəca ka kil il mule ponita.	Kil il mule ponin Mikuk yəca ka issimnita.

8. Hankuk yəca ka Cungkuk mal il
kalichimnita.
9. Haksəng i ki pun il amnita.
10. Yəca ka kilim il pomnita.
- Cungkuk mal il kalichinın Hankuk
yəca ka issimnita.
- Ki pun il anın haksəng i issimnita.
- Kilim il ponın yəca ka issimnita.

K. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 4)

- Tutor: Congi ka myəch cang issimnikka?
/tu(1)/
- Student: Tu cang issimnita.
1. Sənsəng i myəch pun issimnikka?
/se(s)/
2. Yənphil il myəch kæ sassimnikka?
/tasəs/
3. Haksəng i myəch salam issimnikka?
/ne(s)/
4. Mikuk haksəng i myəch salam kongpu-
hamnikka? /ilkop/
5. Kyosil e ıyca ka myəch kæ issimnikka?
/ahop/
6. Yəki e chæk i myəch kwən issimnikka?
/yəl-se(s)/
7. Khophi lıl myəch can masimnikka?
/yələ/
8. Hakkyo e kyosil i myəch kæ
issimnikka? /simu(1)/
9. Kæ lıl myəch mali pwassimnikka?
/tasəs/
10. Yangpok il myəch pəl sassimnikka?
/tu(1)/
- 'How many sheets of paper are there?
/two/
- 'There are two sheets [of paper]!.
- Se pun issimnita.
- Tasəs kæ sassimnita.
- Ne salam issimnita.
- Ilkop salam (i) kongpu-hamnita.
- Ahop kæ issimnita.
- Yəl-se kwən issimnita.
- Yələ can masimnita.
- Simu kæ issimnita.
- Tasəs mali pwassimnita.
- Tu pəl sassimnita.

L. Expansion Drill (Supply the proper counter /pun, salam, kœ, cang, kwœn/ and expand the sentence as in the example.)

Tutor: Sœnsæng i issimnita. /hana/

'There is (a) teacher.' /one/

Student: Sœnsæng i han pun issimnita.

'There is one teacher.'

1. Yœnphil i issimnita. /tul/

Yœnphil i tu kœ issimnita.

2. Haksæng i issimnita. /nes/

Haksæng i ne salam issimnita.

3. Congi ka issimnita. /yœsœs/

Congi ka yœsœs cang issimnita.

4. Chœksang il sassimnita. /tœsœs/

Chœksang il tœsœs kœ sassimnita.

5. Sinmun il sassimnita. /hana/

Sinmun il han cang sassimnita.

6. Kyosil e iyca ka issimnita. /ilkop/

Kyosil e iyca ka ilkop kœ issimnita.

7. Yœngœ chœk il sakessimnita. /yœtœl/

Yœngœ chœk il yœtœl kwœn sakessimnita.

8. Na nin achim e khœphi lœl masimnita.

Na nin achim e khœphi lœl se can
masimnita.

/se(s)/

Congi lœl tu cang cusipsiyo.

9. Congi lœl cusipsiyo. /tul/

Mikuk salam il se salam pwassimnita.

10. Mikuk salam il pwassimnita. /ses/

M. Response Drill (Use tœtanhi in the proper place.)

Tutor: Ki sacœn i cohœsimnikka?

'Is that dictionary good?'

Student: Ne, tœtanhi cohœsimnita.

'Yes, [it] is very good.'

1. Ki chœk i pißamnikka?

Ne, tœtanhi pißamnita.

2. Cœngkœcang i kakkapsimnikka?

Ne, tœtanhi kakkapsimnita.

3. Hankuk yœca ka yeppimnikka?

Ne, tœtanhi yeppimnita.

4. Samusil i copsimnikka?

Ne, tœtanhi copsimnita.

5. I chœk i talimnikka?

Ne, tœtanhi talimnita.

6. Ce kutu ka kkamahsœimnikka?

Ne, tœtanhi kkamahsœimnita.

7. Han-Yœng sacœn i philyo-hamnikka?

Ne, tœtanhi philyo-hamnita.

8. Pak Sœnsæng i cal kalichimnikka?

Ne, tœtanhi cal kalichimnita.

9. Ceimsi Sœnsæng i Yœngœ lœl cal
(mal-)hamnikka?

Ne, tœtanhi cal (mal-)hamnita.

10. Os i ppalkahsœimnikka?

Ne, tœtanhi ppalkahsœimnita.

N. Response Drill

Tutor: Muəs il tilil kka yo? /khal/

'What would you like? ('What shall I give you?') /knife/

Student: Khal il cusipsiyo.

'Please give [me] a knife.'

1. eni chæk il tilil kka yo? /Hankuk mal sacən/

Hankuk mal sacən il cusipsiyo.

2. Musin sæk il tilil kka yo? /phalan sæk/

Phalan sæk il cusipsiyo.

3. Talin kəs il tilil kka yo? /ki kəs/

Ki kəs il cusipsiyo.

4. Pissan yənphil il tilil kka yo?
/com ssan kəs/

Com ssan kəs il cusipsiyo.

5. Yəng-Han sacən il tilil kka yo?
/Han-Yəng sacən/

Han-Yəng sacən il cusipsiyo.

6. Cakin sukən il tilil kka yo?
/khin son-sukən/

Khin son-sukən il cusipsiyo.

7. Nolan sæk yangmal il tilil kka yo?
/kkaman yangmal/

Kkaman yangmal il cusipsiyo.

8. Mikuk moça lîl tilil kka yo?
/Ilpon moça/

Ilpon moça lîl cusipsiyo.

O. Response Drill

Tutor: Cip e kal kka yo?

{ 'Should I go home?'
'Do you want me to go home?'

Student: Ne, kasipsiyo.

'Yes, you should ('please go').'

1. I chæk il sal kka yo?

Ne, sasipsiyo.

2. Kim Sənsəng il mannal kka yo?

Ne, mannasipsiyo.

3. Kil il mulə pol kka yo?

Ne, mulə posipsiyo.

4. Yəki e issil kka yo?

Ne, { issisipsiyo.
kyesipsiyo.

5. I chæk il phal(il) kka yo?

Ne, phalisipsiyo.

6. Yəng-Han sacən il tilil kka yo?

Ne, cusipsiyo.

7. Kilim il kılıl kka yo?

Ne, kilisipsiyo.

8. Sənsəng cip e tillil kka yo?

Ne, tillisipsiyo.

9. Ki ai lîl chacil kka yo?

Ne, chacisipsiyo.

10. I chæk il ilkıl kka yo?

Ne, ilkisipsiyo.

P. Response Drill.

Tutor: Hakkyo lo kal kka yo? /cip/

Student: Cip ilo kapsita.

1. Hankuk mal il pæul kka yo? /Yængæ/
2. Pækhwacem eſe sal kka yo? /sangcæm/
3. Kim Sænsæng il mannal kka yo?
/Ceimsi Sænsæng/

4. Onil pækhwacem e tillil kka yo?
/næil/
5. Onil in Cungkuk mal il (mal-)hal
kka yo? /Yængæ/
6. Sinunn il ilkil kka yo? /capci/
7. Kyosil eſe kongpu-hal kka yo?
/samusil/
8. Cænyæk e samusil e issil kka yo?
/cip/

'Shall we go to school?' /house/

'Let's go to the house, [instead].'

Yængæ lil pæupsita.

Sangcæm eſe sapsita.

Cemisi Sænsæng il mannapsita.

Næil tillipsita.

Yængæ lil (mal-)hapsita.

Capci lil ilkipsita.

Samusil eſe kongpu-hapsita.

Cip e issipsita.

Q. Response Drill (Answer the question in Informal Polite Speech beginning with Aniyo.)

Tutor: Hakkyo e kassimnikka?

Student: Aniyo, kaci anhessæ yo.

1. Ki sacen i cohsimnikka?
2. Cakin kæs il sakessimnikka?
3. Tto talin kæs i philyo-hamnikka?
4. Phen kwa congî lil phalessimnikka?
5. Congî lil wænhasimnikka?
6. Sinæ e munpangkucem i issessimnikka?
7. Kill il mule pwassimnikka?
8. Tæ ssan kæs in epsimnikka?
9. Yækì eſe phen il pha(lì)mnikka?
10. Chæk kaps i ssamnikka?
11. Yæng-Han sacen i issimnikka?
12. Nolan sæk il cohahamnikka?

'Did you go to school?'

'No, I didn't (go).'

Aniyo, cohci anhæ yo.

Aniyo, saci anhkessæ yo.

Aniyo, philyo-haci anhæ yo.

Aniyo, phalci anhessæ yo.

Aniyo, wænhaci anhæ yo.

Aniyo, epæsse yo.

Aniyo, mule poci anhessæ yo.

Aniyo, isse yo.

Aniyo, phalci anhæ yo.

Aniyo, ssaci anhæ yo.

Aniyo, epse yo.

Aniyo, cohahaci anhæ yo.

R. Grammar Drill

Tutor: I kës i issimnita. /talın kës/

Student: Talın kës to issimnikka?

1. Cakin chæk i cohsimnita. /khın chæk/
2. Congi ka philyo-hamnita. /yənphil/
3. I kës in pissamnita. /cë kës/
4. Na nın Hankuk mal il pæumnita.
/Ceimsı/
5. Sukən il sassimnita. /yangpok/
6. Sacən il wənhamnita. /capci/
7. Yəki esə kutu lıl phamnita. /moca/
8. Pak Sənsəng i kalichimnita.
/I Sənsəng/
9. Ceimsı Sənsəng il mannamnita.
/chinku/
10. Hankuk mal i swipci anhsimnita.
/Ilpon mal/
11. Hankuk mal il mal-haci anhsimnita.
/Cungkuk mal/

'[We] have this.' /a different one/
'Do you have any others?'
'Do you have a different one, too?'

Khın chæk to cohsimnikka?
Yənphil to philyo-hamnikka?
Cë kës pissamnikka?
Ceimsı to Hankuk mal il pæumnikka?

Yangpok to sassimnikka?
Capci to wənhamnikka?
Yəki esə moca to phamnikka?
I Sənsəng to kalichimnikka?
Chinku to mannamnikka?
Ilpon mal to swipci anhsimnikka?
Cungkuk mal to mal-haci anhsimnikka?

S. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo ka məmnita. /sinə/

Student: Sinə to məmnita.

1. Chæk i philyo-hamnita. /yənphil/
2. I kës i issimnita. /talın kës/
3. Na nın Yəngə lıl mal-hamnita.
/Ceimsı/
4. Na nın Hankuk mal il kalichimnita.
/Yəngə/
5. Khın sacən i cohsimnita. /cakin sacən/
6. Moca lıl sal kka hamnita. /kutu/
7. Yəki esə capci lıl pha(lı)mnita.
/sinmun/
8. Kyosil i nəlphsimnita. /samusil/

'The shcool is far.' /downtown/
'Downtown is far, too.'

Yənphil to philyo-hamnita.
Talın kës to issimnita.
Ceimsı to Yəngə lıl mal-hamnita.

Na nın Yəngə to kalichimnita.

Cakin sacən to cohsimnita.

Kutu to sal kka hamnita.
Yəki esə sinmun to pha(lı)mnita.

Samusil to nəlphsimnita.

9. Mikuk yëca nin alımtapsımnita. Hankuk yëca to alımtapsımnita.
 /Hankuk yëca/
 10. Kim Sënsëng il chacsımnita. I Sënsëng to chacsımnita.
 /I Sënsëng/

T. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Mikuk pësakwan i kakkapsımnita. 'The U.S. Embassy is near.' /USIA/
 /Mikuk Kongpowen/

Student: Mikuk Kongpowen i të kakkapsımnita. 'USIA is nearer.'

1. Yënphil i pissamnita. /mannyenphil/ Mannyenphil i të pissamnita.
 2. I kılım i alımtapsımnita. /ce kılım/ Cë kılım i të alımtapsımnita.
 3. Hankuk mal kyosil i nëlpsımnita. Congkuk mal kyosil i të nëlpsımnita.
 /Cungkuk mal kyosil/
 4. Nëe moça ka cohımnita. /Kim Sënsëng moça/ Kim Sënsëng moça ka të cohımnita.
 5. Ilpon mal i swipsımnita. /Cungkuk mal/ Cungkuk mal i të swipsımnita.
 6. Cungkuk mal i əlyëpsımnita. /Hankuk mal/ Hankuk mal i të əlyëpsımnita.
 7. Khın sacen i ssamnita. /cakin sacen/ Cakin sacen i të ssamnita.
 8. Ilpon in caksımnita. /Hankuk/ Hankuk in të caksımnita.
 9. Na nın sinmun il cohahamnita. /capci/ Na nın capci lıl të cohahamnita.
 10. Pak Sënsëng in Yëngë lıl cal hamnita. /Kim Sënsëng/ Kim Sënsëng in (Yëngë lıl) të cal hamnita.

U. Response Exercise (Answer the question based on reality.)

Tutor: Yənphil kwa chæk in əni kəs
i tə pissamnikka?

'Which one is more expensive, a
pencil or a book?'

Student: Chæk i tə pissamnita.

'A book is more expensive.'

1. Yəngə wa Hankuk mal in əni mal i
tə swipsimnikka?

Yəngə ka tə swipsimnita.

2. Hankuk mal kyosil kwa Cungkuk mal
kyosil in əni kəs i tə nəlpsimnikka?

Cungkuk mal kyosil i tə nəlpsimnita.

3. Yəngə wa Hankuk mal in əni mal i
tə əlyəpsimnikka?

Hankuk mal i tə əlyəpsimnita.

4. Hankuk kwa Ilpon in eti ka tə
caksimnikka?

Hankuk i tə caksimnita.

5. Kim Sənsəng kwa Pak Sənsəng in
nuka Yəngə lil tə cal hamnikka?

Kim Sənsəng i tə cal hamnita.

6. Sənsəng e yangpok kwa moça nın əni
kəs i tə ssamnikka?

Moca ka tə ssamnita.

7. Nyuyok kwa Wəsingthon in eti lil
tə cohahamnikka?

Wəsingthon il tə cohahamnita.

V. Transformation Drill

Tutor: I chæk i ssamnita.

'This book is cheap.'

Student: Tə ssan chæk i issimnita.

'There's a cheaper one (book).'

1. I kilim i alimtapsimnita.

Tə alimtawn kilim i issimnita.

2. I kyosil i nəlphsimnita.

Tə nəlpin kyosil i issimnita.

3. I samusil i copsimnita.

Tə copin samusil i issimnita.

4. I sacən i cohsimnita.

Tə cohın sacən i issimnita.

5. I mal i swipsimnita.

Tə swiwn mal i issimnita.

6. I kyosil i caksimnita.

Tə cakin kyosil i issimnita.

7. I chæk i əlyəpsimnita.

Tə əlyəun chæk i issimnita.

8. I manyənphil i ssamnita.

Tə ssan manyənphil i issimnita.

9. I kəs il cohahamnita.

Tə cohahanın kəs i issimnita.

10. I pun i (Yəngə lil) cal hamnita.

(Yəngə lil) tə cal hanın pun i
issimnita.

EXERCISES

1. Mr. Kim asks you: You respond:
- a. to show him the dictionary. 'Which one do you mean?'
 - b. to give him that. 'What do you mean?'
 - c. to go downtown together. 'When do you mean?'
 - d. to study Korean together. 'Where do you mean?'
 - e. if you know him. 'Who(m) do you mean?'
 - f. if Korean is difficult. 'Yes, it is.'
 - g. if you have read a book. 'What kind of book do you mean?'
 - h. if she teaches Korean. 'Who do you mean?'
 - i. to buy this suit. 'How much do you want?'
2. You ask the store-clerk: He replies:
- a. if he carries any good K-E dictionary. 'Yes, we do.'
 - b. to show you one. 'Here you are.'
 - c. how it is. 'It's very good, but we have another kind.'
 - d. how the other one is. 'It's a little larger one.'
 - e. which one is better. 'They are the same.'
 - f. if the bigger one is more expensive. 'The price is also the same.'
 - g. where they sell fountain-pens and notebooks. '(They sell) at the stationary-store.'
 - h. how much they charge for a cup of coffee. 'W20.'
 - i. if the department stores also carry magazines and newspapers. 'Yes, they do.'
3. Ask Mr. Kim:
- a. How many cups of coffee he drinks in the morning.
 - b. How many students there are.
 - c. How many books he has read.
 - d. How many chairs there are in the room.
 - e. How many sheets of paper he needs.
 - f. How many colors he wants.
 - g. How many hats he'll buy.
 - h. How many teachers he has.

- i. How many suits he has.
 - j. How many horses there are on the street.
4. Tell Pak Sensæng that:
- a. You like a bigger one.
 - b. You want a little more expensive watch.
 - c. You need a pencil and paper.
 - d. A beautiful woman came to your house.
 - e. There is no English-Korean dictionary here.
 - f. French is easy, but Korean is very difficult
 - g. The store on the left is a stationary shop, and the building on the right is a department store.
 - h. The dictionary is small, but it is a very good one.
 - i. The small one is fine for you, but you need the other one, too.
 - j. You are studying Korean, and your friend is teaching German.
 - k. You met a pretty Korean girl.
 - l. There is a child who is reading a newspaper.
 - m. You know an American who speaks Korean.
 - n. You don't know the lady who is buying shoes.
 - o. You have learned Korean, but you don't speak well.
 - p. Korean is not easy, but you like it.
 - q. Mr. Park doesn't speak Chinese, but he reads it well.

제 6 과 시간

(대화 A)

지금

몇, 몇

몇 시

1. A: 지금 몇 시이에요?

여덟 시

오 분

오 분 전

o 2. B: 여덟 시 오 분 전입니다.

일

시작

시작합니까

3. A: 몇 시에 일어 시작합니까?

아침

여덟 시 삼십 분

4. B: (아침) 여덟 시 삼십 분에 시작합니다.

하루

시간

몇 시간

5. A: 그럼, 하루에 몇 시간 일을 하세요?

UNIT 6. Time

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue AA

- cikim now
 myech } how many?; what?
 mech/met/ }
 myech-si/myessi/ what time
 1. Cikim myech-si (i)ye yo? What time is it (now)?

B

- yətəl(p)-si/yətəlssi/ 8 o'clock
 o pun 5 minute(s)
 o pun cən 5 minutes of; 5 minutes before
 2. Yətəl(p)-si o pun cən imnita. It's five minutes before 8.

A

- il work; job
 sicak beginning
 sicak-hamnikka do [you] begin?; does [it] begin?
 3. Myech-si e il i sicak-hamnikka? What time do you start work? ('What times does work begin?')

B

- achim morning
 yətəl(p)-si samsip pun 8:30
 4. (Achim) yətəl(p)-si samsip pun I start at 8:30. ('It begins at 8:30 a.m.')
 e sicak-hamnita.

A

- halu one day
 sikan time; hour
 myech sikan/myessikan/ how many hours?
 5. Kilem, halu e myech sikan il il How many hours do you work a day
 hase yo? (then)?

여덟 시간(동안)
일곱니다

6. B: 여덟 시간(동안) 일곱니다.

대개

집에

7. A: 대개 몇 시에 집에 가세요?

다섯 시 쯤

사무실

떠납니다

사무실을 떠납니다

8. B: 대개 다섯 시 쯤 사무실을 떠납니다.

(대화 B)

며칠

9. A: 오늘 이 며칠이지요?

삼월

이월

10. B: 삼월 이월입니다.

달

이 달

벌써

11. A: 이 달이 벌써 삼월이니까?

B

- yøtel(p) sikan (tongan) for eight hours
 il-hamnita [I] work
 6. Yøtel(p) sikan (tongan) il-hamnita. I work (for) eight hours.

A

- tækæ usually
 cip e to the house; home
 7. Tækæ myøch-si e cip e kase yo? What time to you usually go home?

B

- tasøs-si ccim around 5 o'clock
 samusil office
 ttønamnita [I] leave
 samusil il ttønamnita [I] leave office
 8. Tækæ tasøs-si ccim samusil il I usually leave my office around
 ttønamnita. 5 o'clock.

Dialogue BA

- myøchil what day?; what date?; some
 days
 9. Onil i myøchil ici yo? What's today's date?

B

- Sam-wøl March
 il il the 1st (day of the month)
 10. Sam-wøl il il imnita. (It's) March 1st.

A

- tal month; moon
 i tal this month
 pølsse already
 11. I tal i pølsse Sam-wøl imnikka? Is it March already? ('Is this month
 already March?')

이월

이십 팔월

12. B: 예, 그렇습니다. 어제가 이월 이십 팔월이었습니다.

무슨 요일

13. A: 그러면, 오늘이 무슨 요일이에요?

목요일

14. B: 목요일입니다.

이하루

이하루 갑니다

15. A: 어제 이하루 갑았나?

16. B: 아니요, 이하루 가지 않았습니다.

주일

이 주일

사흘

지난 사흘

지난 사흘 동안

쉬었습니다

17. 이 주일에는 지난 사흘 동안 쉬었습니다.

왜요

몸

아픕니까

(몸이) 아파옵니까

18. A: 왜요? 몸이 아파옵니까?

B

- I-wəl
isip-phal il
12. Ne, kiləhsimnita. ece ka I-wəl
isip-phal il iessimnita.
- February
28th (of the month)
Yes, it is. Yesterday was February
28th.

A

- musin yoil
13. Kiləmyən, onll i musin yoil iye
yo?
- what day of the week?
What day of the week is it (today),
then?

B

- Mokyoil
14. Mokyoil imnita.
- Thursday
[It's] Thursday.

A

- il-hale
il-hale kamnita
15. ece il-hale kassimnikka?
- in order to work; to work
[I] go to work
Did [you] go to work yesterday?

B

16. Aniyo, il-hale kaci anhəssimnita.
cuil
i cuil
sahil
cinan sahil
cinan sahil tongan
swiəssimnita
- No, I didn't (go to work).
week
this week
three days
last three days
for the last three days
[I] rested; [I] took a rest
17. I cuil e nin cinan sahil tongan
swiəssimnita.
- This week I took three days off.
(*As for in this week I took a rest
for the last three days.*)

A

- wə yo
mom
aphimnikka
(mom i) aphəssimnikka
18. Wə yo? Mom i aphəssimnikka?
- how come?; why?
body
are [you] sick?; are [you]
hurt?
were [you] sick?
Why? Were you sick?

휴가

밥먹었읍니다

19. B: 아니요, 휴가를 밥먹었읍니다.

B

hyuka

vacation

patəssəssimnita

[I] received, [I] had received

19. Aniyo. Hyuka lil patəssəssimnita. No. I took a vacation.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. Myəch and its variant mech 'how many', 'what', 'some', occurs either as a free noun or as a determinative. Before counters or certain nouns in question sentences, it means 'how many' or 'what'; in a statement sentence it means 'some'. As a free noun myəch means 'how many' in a question sentence, and 'some' or 'several' in a statement sentence. Myəch plus certain counters make up (question) noun phrases. For example, myəch-si 'what time' is a noun phrase which is used only in asking time. Each phrase of this type should be memorized as a phrase. Myəch is pronounced as /myəs/ before s; /myən/ before n; /myət/ before t, etc. When a vowel follows, the final sound ch is released and forms a syllable with the following vowel: myəch-si/myəssi/ 'what time', myəch salam/myəssalam/ 'how many people', myəch nal/myənnal/ 'how many days', myəch tal/myəttal/ 'how many months', myəch i/myəchi/ 'how many (as a subject)' in Myəch i isse yo? 'How many are there?'.
2. Pun 'minute' is a time counter which occurs only after numerals of Chinese character origin. Numeral + pun designates either a point in time or a duration of time. Example:

<u>han-si o pun</u>	'5 minutes after 1 o'clock'
<u>o pun</u>	'five minutes'

3. The verb stem sicak-ha- 'to begin' is formed from the noun sicak 'the beginning' by adding ha-. Sicak-ha- is used either as a transitive verb or as an intransitive verb. Compare:

Il i sicak-hamnita.	'The work begins.'
Il il sicak-hamnita.	'[I] begin the work.'

The antonym of sicak-ha- is either kkith-na- 'to end', 'to be over' (intransitive verb), or kkith-næ- 'to finish' (transitive verb).

5. Kilem 'then' is the contracted form of kilemyen 'if so' which is a sentence adverbial. Both forms occur at the beginning of a sentence and are followed by a pause. Sikan 'hour', 'time', occurs either as a time counter or as a free noun. As a counter after Korean numerals sikan means 'hour': han sikan 'one hour', tu sikan 'two hours', se sikan 'three hours', myəch sikan 'how

many hours!', yēlē sikan 'many hours', etc. As a free noun, it means 'time': Sikan i issimmikka? 'Do you have time?'.

Il-ha- 'to work' is a verb stem formed from the noun il 'work', 'job'. The antonym of il-ha- is no(l)- 'not to work', 'to play', 'to loaf'.

6. Tongan 'for', 'during' is a post-noun. The nominal that precedes usually is a time expression, and 'time expression + tongan' is an adverbial expression. Example: han sikan tongan 'for an hour', halu tongan 'for one day', il pun tongan 'for one minute', Il-wēl tongan 'during January', kī tongan 'in the meantime'.
8. Ccim 'about', 'around' is a post-noun which occurs after other nominal expressions (e.g. time, place names, quality or quantity expressions) and denotes approximation of the preceding expressions. Examples:

han tal ccim	'about one month'
han tal tongan ccim	'for about one month'
Il-wēl ccim	'around January'
han sikan ccim	'about an hour'

The antonym of the verb stem ttēna- 'to leave' is tah- 'to arrive'.

9. Myēchil 'what date', 'some days' is one word; not a two-word compound of myēch + il.
11. The opposite word for pēsse 'already' is acik '(not) yet' which also means 'still'. Compare:

Hakkyo ka acik sicak-haci anhēssimnita.	'School has not begun yet.'
Cē nin acik Hankuk mal il pēsumnita.	'I'm still studying Korean.'
13. Yoil 'day of the week' occurs as a post-noun after certain nouns or determinatives. Examples: ənī yoil 'which day of the week', musin yoil 'what day of the week'.

14. Mokyoil 'Thursday' is one word. So is Ilyoil 'Sunday', Welyoil 'Monday', Hwayoil 'Tuesday', Suyoil 'Wednesday', Kimyoil 'Friday', Thoyoil 'Saturday'.
17. Halu 'one day', sahil 'three days' belong to a small class of one-word time expressions which enumerate days: halu 'one day', ithil 'two days', sahil 'three days', nahil 'four days', tassæ 'five days', yessæ 'six days', ile 'seven days', yetile 'eight days', ahile 'nine days', yelhil 'ten days'. This class of time expressions also is used infrequently to designate days of the month.
19. Hyuka 'vacation', 'leave' is distinguished from panghak 'school vacation'.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Time counters: nyen 'year', hæ 'year', -wæl 'month', tal 'month', cuil 'week', il 'day', nal 'day', -si 'o'clock', sikan 'hour', pun 'minute'. Korean time counters are classed in two groups: (a) those which occur after the numerals of Korean origin, and (b) those which occur after numerals of Chinese character origin. It is imperative to know the series of numerals with which each time counter is used.

The counters hæ 'year', tal 'month', cuil 'week', nal 'day', -si 'o'clock', sikan 'hour' occur after numerals of Korean origin.

The counters nyen 'year', -wæl 'month', cuil 'week', il 'day', pun 'minute' occur after numerals of Chinese character origin.

The above time counters are divided into three sub-classes without regard to the series of numerals with which they occur:

(a) Those which name:

1. the calendar months..... -wæl
2. hours..... -si

(b) Those which count:

1. the number of months..... tal
2. the number of weeks..... cuil
3. the number of hours..... sikan
4. the number of days (for only 20 days, 30 days, 40 days, 50 days, 60 days)..... nal

(c) Those which either:

1. name calendar years or enumerate years..... nyən
2. name dates or enumerate days..... il
3. specify the minutes or enumerate the minutes..... pun

Note that expressions of time in Korean are listed from the largest unit to the smallest unit: that is, in the order of year, month, day, hours, minute and second.

Note 1: Cuil 'week' is preceded by either set of numerals.

Note 2: For the words expressing the number of days from 1 day to 10 days, see number 17 of Notes on Dialogues in this Unit.

Note 3: The two time counters -wəl and -si are added to the numbers with a hyphen to signify that they occur only as parts of words which are expressions of time, i.e., -wəl for the names of months and -si for the hours of a day, respectively.

2. -ci yo?

We noticed in Unit 4 that the ci form occurs before the verb anh- 'not'. The ci form immediately followed by yo? (i.e. -ci yo?) occurs as an informal polite question sentence final form. If -ci yo? occurs without a preceding question word, the speaker expects the addressee to answer yes; if -ci yo? follows after a question word in the same sentence it simply substitutes for -(i)mnikka? or (infinitive) + yo?. Compare: Give attention to the final intonations.

Group 1

Kim Sənsəng i Yəngə lɪl mal-haci yo?	'Mr. Kim speaks English, doesn't he?'
Hakkyo ka məlci yo?	'The school is far, isn't it?'
Hankuk mal i əlyəpcı yo?	'Korean is difficult, isn't it?'
Sənsəng in Mikuk salam ici yo?	'You are an American, aren't you?'

Group 2

I kəs i muəs ici yo?	'What's this?'
Hakkyo ka əti e issci yo?	'Where is the school?'
Nuku lɪl mannassci yo?	'Whom did [you] meet?'
Myəch-si e il il sicak-haci yo?	'(At) What time do [you] begin the work?'

Note that -ci yo may also occur as an informal polite final form of a statement, propositivative or imperative sentence. We will learn more about it later.

3. -(i)le 'in order to'

The verb ending -(i)le is added to an action verb stem, or to an action verb stem plus honorific suffix -(i)si: -le is added to a stem ending in a vowel and -ile to a stem ending in a consonant. Tense suffixes do not occur in the inflected form ending in -(i)le. The (i)le form denotes that the following inflected expression in the same sentence occurs for the purpose of the action inflected by the -(i)le form. The verbs which follow the -(i)le form are usually ka- 'to go', o- 'to come', or tani- 'to attend'. Examples:

Na nin chæk (il) ilkilə hakkyo e tillikesse yo.	'I will stop by school to read books.'
Chinku lil mannalə wassimnita.	'I came to meet a friend.'
Hankuk mal il pəulə hakkyo e tanimnita.	'I am attending school to learn Korean.'
Chæk (il) salə sinə e an kakessə yo?	'Wouldn't you go downtown to buy books?'

4. Adverb phrases

In Unit 1 we learned that two or more nouns make up Noun Phrases, and that they occur as though they were one noun. Note that a noun phrase is used as a nominal. In Unit 5, we defined Adverbs. (See Grammar Notes 3, Unit 5.) If two or more words occur together and are used as if they were one adverb we shall call them Adverb Phrases. Hereafter, we shall use the term Adverbial for any word or phrase which occurs in a position where an adverb may be substituted. Note that some adverbials also occur as nominals but most adverbials are used only as adverbials. Nouns + particles are often used as adverb phrases. Examples:

(a) Question Adverb Phrases:

əti eṣə	'from where ('from what place') or where ('at what place')'
əti e } əti lo }	'to (or toward) where ('to what place')'
əti kkaci	'(as far as) where'
nuku wa	'with whom'
nuku eke	'(to) whom'
əlma e	'(for) how much ('at what price')'
əlma tongan	'(for) how long'
əlma na	'how (much)'
ənce kkaci	'until when'
ənce puthe	'from (or since) when'
myəch-si e	'(at) what time'

myəchil e	'(on) what date'
musin } əni tal e	'(in) what month'
musin } əni hæ e	'(in) what year'
musin yoil e	'(on) what day of the week'
myəch sikan tongan	'(for) how many hours'
myəch pun tongan	'(for) how many minutes'
myəchil tongan	'(for) how many days'
myəch tal tongan	'(for) how many months'
myəch nyən } əni tongan	'(for) how many years'
myəch hæ	

(b) Time Adverb Phrases

achim e	'in the morning'
nac e	'at noon'
ohu e	'in the afternoon'
cənyək e	'in the evening'
pam e	'at night'
onil achim e	'this morning'
næil nac e	'tomorrow noon'
molæ ohu e	'in the afternoon of the day after tomorrow'
kilphi cənyək e	'in the evening of two days after tomorrow'
əce pam e	'last night'
i tal e	'this month'
i cuil e	'this week'
cinan cuil e	'last week'
cinan tal e	'last month'
taim hæ e	'next year'
taim tal e	'next month'
taim cuil e	'next week'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Myəch-si</u> imnikka? | What time is [it]? |
| 2. <u>Myəchil</u> imnikka? | What date is [it]? |
| *3. <u>Musin hæ</u> imnikka? | What year is [this]? |
| 4. <u>Musin yoil</u> imnikka? | What day (of the week) is [it]? |
| 5. <u>Musin tal</u> imnikka? | What month is [it]? |
| 6. <u>əni cuil</u> imnikka? | Which week (of the month) is [it]? |
| *7. <u>Musin nal</u> imnikka? | What date} is [it]? |
| 8. <u>ənce</u> imnikka? | What day} is [it]? |
| | When will it be? |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Onil i myəchil ici yo? | What's the date today? |
| 2. <u>Næil</u> (i) myəchil ici yo? | What's the date tomorrow? |
| 3. <u>Mole</u> (ka) myəchil ici yo? | What's the date the day after tomorrow? |
| 4. <u>Kilphi</u> (ka) myəchil ici yo? | What's the date two days after tomorrow? |
| 5. <u>əce</u> (ka) myəchil ici yo? | What was the date yesterday? |
| 6. <u>Kicəkke</u> (ka) myəchil ici yo? | What was the date the day before yesterday? |
| 7. <u>Ki cən nal</u> (i) myəchil ici yo? | What was the date the day before that? |
| 8. <u>Næil</u> (i) myəchil ici yo? | What is the date tomorrow? |
| 9. <u>Næil</u> (i) <u>musin yoil</u> ici yo? | What day (of the week) is it tomorrow? |
| 10. <u>Næil</u> (i) <u>musin nal</u> ici yo? | What day is it tomorrow? |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---------------------|
| 1. <u>Onil</u> in <u>Suyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Wednesday. |
| *2. <u>Onil</u> in <u>Welyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Monday. |
| *3. <u>Onil</u> in <u>Hwayoil</u> imnita. | Today is Tuesday. |
| *4. <u>Onil</u> in <u>Mokyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Thursday. |
| *5. <u>Onil</u> in <u>Kimyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Friday. |
| *6. <u>Onil</u> in <u>Thoyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Saturday. |
| *7. <u>Onil</u> in <u>Ilyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Sunday. |
| 8. <u>Onil</u> in <u>Suyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Wednesday. |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Cikim</u> i <u>myəch-si</u> imnikka? | What time is it now? |
| 2. <u>Onil</u> (i) <u>myəchil</u> imnikka? | What date is it today? |
| *3. <u>Kimnyən</u> (i) <u>musin hæ</u> imnikka? | What year is it this year? |
| *4. <u>I hæ</u> (ka) <u>musin hæ</u> imnikka? | What year is it this year? |
| 5. <u>əce</u> (ka) <u>musin yoil</u> imnikka? | What day of the week was yesterday? |
| 6. <u>I tal</u> (i) <u>musin tal</u> imnikka? | What month is this month? |
| *7. <u>Cinan tal</u> (i) <u>musin tal</u> imnikka? | What month was last month? |
| 8. <u>Nəəil</u> (i) <u>musin nal</u> imnikka? | What day is tomorrow? |
| 9. <u>ənce</u> (ka) <u>Suyoil</u> imnikka? | When is Wednesday? |
| *10. <u>Cangnyən</u> (i) <u>musin hæ</u> imnikka? | What year was last year? |
| 11. <u>I cuil</u> (i) <u>əni cuil</u> imnikka? | Which week (of the month) is this week? |
| *12. <u>Nəənyən</u> (i) <u>musin hæ</u> imnikka? | What year is next year? |
| *13. <u>Taim hæ</u> (ka) <u>musin hæ</u> imnikka? | What year is next year? |
| *14. <u>Taim tal</u> (i) <u>əni tal</u> imnikka? | What month is next month? |
| *15. <u>Taim cuil</u> (i) <u>əni cuil</u> imnikka? | Which week of the month is next week? |

E. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. Onil in Il-wəl il il imnita. | Today is January first. |
| 2. Onil in I-wəl i il imnita. | Today is February second. |
| 3. Onil in Sam-wəl sam il imnita. | Today is March third. |
| 4. Onil in Sa-wəl sa il imnita. | Today is April fourth. |
| 5. Onil in O-wəl o il imnita. | Today is May fifth. |
| 6. Onil in Yu-wəl yuk il imnita. | Today is June sixth. |
| 7. Onil in Chil-wəl chil il imnita. | Today is July seventh. |
| 8. Onil in Phal-wəl phal il imnita. | Today is August eighth. |
| 9. Onil in Ku-wəl ku il imnita. | Today is September nineth. |
| 10. Onil in Si-wəl sip il imnita. | Today is October tenth. |
| 11. Onil in Sipil-wəl sip-il il imnita. | Today is November eleventh. |
| 12. Onil in Sipi-wəl sip-i il imnita. | Today is December twelfth. |

F. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Cikim in yətəlp-si imnita. | It is 8 o'clock now. |
| 2. Onil (in) Wəlyoil imnita. | Today is Monday. |
| 3. Nəeil (in) Hwayoil imnita. | Tomorrow is Tuesday. |
| 4. Mole (nin) Suyoil imnita. | The day after tomorrow is Wednesday. |
| 5. Cikim (in) Sam-wəl imnita. | Now it's March. |
| 6. ece (nin) Ilyoil imnita. | Yesterday was Sunday. |
| 7. Kicəkke (nin) isip il imnita. | The day before yesterday was the 20th. |
| 8. Kilphi (nin) I-wəl il il imnita. | Two days after tomorrow is February first. |

G. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Myəch-si e il i sicak-hamnikka? | What time do you start work?
('What time does your work begin?') |
| 2. Myechil e il i sicak-hamnikka? | What date will you start work? |
| 3. Musin yoil e il i sicak-hamnikka? | What day (of the week) will you start work? |
| 4. ən1 cuil e il i sicak-hamnikka? | Which week (of the month) will you start work? |
| 5. Musin tal e il i sicak-hamnikka? | What month will you start work? |
| 6. Musin nal e il i sicak-hamnikka? | What day will you start work? |

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 7. <u>ənce</u> <u>il</u> <u>i</u> sicak-hamnikka? | When will you start work? |
| 8. <u>ənce</u> <u>hakkyo</u> (ka) sicak-hamnikka? | When does school start? |
| 9. <u>ənce</u> <u>kongpu</u> (ka) sicak-hamnikka? | When will your studies begin? |
| 10. <u>ənce</u> <u>hyuka</u> (ka) sicak-hamnikka? | When does your vacation begin? |
| *11. <u>ənce</u> <u>samu</u> (ka) sicak-hamnikka? | When is your office going to open? |
| *12. <u>ənce</u> <u>panghak</u> (i) sicak-hamnikka? | When does (school) vacation begin? |
| *13. <u>ənce</u> <u>suep</u> (i) sicak-hamnikka? | When does the class begin? |
| *14. <u>ənce</u> <u>suep</u> (i) <u>kkith-namnikka</u> ? | When does the class end? |
| *15. <u>ənce</u> <u>suep</u> (i) <u>kkith-nassimnikka</u> ? | When was the class over? |

H. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Yetəl-si</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins at 8 o'clock. |
| 2. <u>Phal pun</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins in 8 minutes. |
| 3. <u>Phal il</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins on the 8th. |
| 4. <u>Phal-wəl</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins in August. |
| 5. <u>Yetəl(p)-si</u> <u>pan</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins at 8:30. |
| 6. <u>Achim ilkop-si</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins at 7 in the morning. |
| 7. <u>Cənyək yəsəs-si</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins at 6 in the evening. |
| 8. <u>Ohu təsəs-si</u> <u>pan</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins at 5:30 in the afternoon. |
| 9. <u>Suyoil pam ahop-si</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins at 9 o'clock in Wednesday night. |
| 10. <u>Təsəs-si</u> <u>sip pun cən</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins at 10 minutes to 5 o'clock. |

I. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1. <u>Ki</u> salam <u>in</u> <u>il-hale</u> kassimnita. | He went to work. |
| 2. <u>Ki</u> salam <u>in</u> <u>Kongpu-hale</u> kassimnita. | He went to study. |
| 3. <u>Ki</u> salam <u>in</u> <u>chək (il)</u> <u>sale</u> kassimnita. | He went to buy a book. |
| 4. <u>Ki</u> salam <u>in</u> <u>Hankuk mal (il)</u> <u>pəule</u> kassimnita. | He went to learn Korean. |
| 5. <u>Ki</u> salam <u>in</u> <u>chinku (lil)</u> <u>mannale</u> kassimnita. | He went to meet a friend. |
| 6. <u>Ki</u> salam <u>in</u> <u>il (il)</u> <u>chacile</u> kassimnita. | He went to find a job. |

7. Ki salam in kil (il) mule pole He went to ask directions.
kassimnita.
8. Ki salam in chæk (il) ilkile He went to read books.
kassimnita.
9. Ki salam in hyuka (lil) patile He's gone to ask for a vacation.
kassimnita.
10. Ki salam in Yëngë (lil) kalichile He went to teach English.
kassimnita.
11. Ki salam in Yëngë (lil) kalichile He came to teach English.
wassimnita.
12. Ki salam in Yëngë (lil) kalichile He comes to teach English.
omnita.

J. Substitution Drill

1. I cuil e il-hëssimnita. [We] worked this week.
2. I tal e il-hëssimnita. [We] worked this month.
3. Cinan tal e il-hëssimnita. [We] worked last month.
4. Cinan cuil e il-hëssimnita. [We] worked last week.
5. Cinan hæ e il-hëssimnita. [We] worked last year.
6. Cinan Suyoil e il-hëssimnita. [We] worked last Wednesday.
7. Onil achim e il-hëssimnita. [We] worked this morning.
8. Onil cenyek e il-hëssimnita. [We] worked this evening.
9. Onil pam e il-hëssimnita. [We] worked tonight.
10. Onil ohu e il-hëssimnita. [We] worked this afternoon.
11. æce pam e il-hëssimnita. [We] worked last night.
12. æce nac e il-hëssimnita. [We] worked yesterday at noontime.

K. Substitution Drill

1. ænce Hankuk mal il pæwëssimnikka? When did [you] study Korean?
- *2. Nuka Hankuk mal il pæwëssimnikka? Who studied Korean?
3. æti ese Hankuk mal il pæwëssimnikka? Where did [you] study Korean?
- *4. Wæ Hankuk mal il pæwëssimnikka? Why did [you] study Korean?
5. Myëch salam i Hankuk mal il pæwëssimnikka? How many people studied Korean?

6. əlma e Hankuk mal il pæwessimnikka? How much did you pay for studying Korean?
7. ettəhkhe Hankuk mal il pæwessimnikka? How did you study Korean?
- *8. Nuku wa Hankuk mal il pæwessimnikka? With whom did you study Korean?
- *9. əlma tongan Hankuk mal il pæwessimnikka? How long did you study Korean?
- *10. Myəchil tongan Hankuk mal il pæwessimnikka? How many days have you studied Korean?
- *11. Myəch sikan tongan Hankuk mal il pæwessimnikka? How many hours have you studied Korean?
- *12. Myəch cuil tongan Hankuk mal il pæwessimnikka? How many weeks have you studied Korean?
- *13. Myəch tal tongan Hankuk mal il pæwessimnikka? How many months have you studied Korean?

L. Substitution Drill

1. Sahil tongan cip ese swiessimnita. I stayed ('rested') at home for three days.
2. Se sikan tongan cip ese swiessimnita. I stayed at home for three hours.
3. Sam pun tongan cip ese swiessimnita. I stayed at home for three minutes.
4. Se cuil tongan cip ese swiessimnita. I stayed at home for three weeks.
5. Sam cuil tongan cip ese swiessimnita. I stayed at home for three weeks.
- *6. Sək cuil tongan cip ese swiessimnita. I stayed at home for three weeks.
- *7. Sək tal tongan cip ese swiessimnita. I stayed at home for three months.
8. Sam nyən tongan cip ese swiessimnita. I stayed at home for three years.
9. Yelə nal tongan cip ese swiessimnita. I stayed at home for several days.
10. Se sikan pan tongan cip ese swiessimnita. I stayed at home for three hours and a half.
11. Se cuil pan tongan cip ese swiessimnita. I stayed at home for three weeks and a half.
12. Sək tal pan tongan cip ese swiessimnita. I stayed at home for three months and a half.

13. Ne cuil pan tongan cip ese
swiessimnita.
I stayed at home for four weeks and
a half.
14. Sa cuil pan tongan cip ese
swiessimnita.
I stayed at home for four weeks and
a half.
- *15. Nek cuil pan tongan cip ese
swiessimnita.
I stayed at home for four weeks and
a half.

M. Substitution Drill

- *1. (Cə nin) Səul e halu tongan
issessimnita.
I was (or stayed) in Seoul for one
day.
- *2. (Cə nin) Səul e ithil tongan
issessimnita.
I was in Seoul for two days.
3. (Cə nin) Səul e sahil tongan
issessimnita.
I was in Seoul for three days.
- *4. (Cə nin) Səul e nahil tongan
issessimnita.
I was in Seoul for four days.
- *5. (Cə nin) Səul e tassæ tongan
issessimnita.
I was in Seoul for five days.
- *6. (Cə nin) Səul e yessæ tongan
issessimnita.
I was in Seoul for six days.
- *7. (Cə nin) Səul e ile tongan
issessimnita.
I was in Seoul for seven days.
- *8. (Cə nin) Səul e yetile tongan
issessimnita.
I was in Seoul for eight days.
- *9. (Cə nin) Səul e ahile tongan
issessimnita.
I was in Seoul for nine days.
- *10. (Cə nin) Səul e yelhil tongan
issessimnita.
I was in Seoul for ten days.
- *11. (Cə nin) Səul e yel-halu tongan
issessimnita.
I was in Seoul for eleven days.
- *12. (Cə nin) Səul e yel-halu tongan
məmuləssimnita.
I stayed in Seoul for eleven days.

N. Substitution Drill

1. Seoul e halu tongan issimmata. [I] stayed in Seoul for one day.
2. Washington e ithil tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in Washington for two days.
3. Ilpon e sahil tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in Japan for three days.
4. Pusan e nahil tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in Pusan for four days.
5. Inchon e tassæ tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in Inchon for five days.
6. Mikuk e yessæ tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in America for six days.
7. Cungkuk e ile tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in China for seven days.
8. Yengkuk e yetile tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in England for eight days.
9. Nam-Han e ahile tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in South-Korea for nine days.
10. Puk-Han e yelhil tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in North-Korean for ten days.
11. Nyuyok e yel-halu tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in New York for eleven days.
12. Tokil e yel-sahil tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in Germany for thirteen days.
13. Pullanse e yel-tassæ tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in France for fifteen days.
14. Ssolyen e yel-ile tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in the Soviet Union for seventeen days.
- *15. Kulapha e yel-ahile tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in Europe for nineteen days.
- *16. Nammi e simu_nal tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in South America for twenty days.
- *17. Ithæli e simu-halu tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in Italy for twenty-one days.
- *18. Wellam e simu-ithil tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in Vietnam for twenty-two days.
- *19. Thækuk e simu-sahil tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in Thailand for twenty-three days.
- *20. Hwalan e simu-nahil tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in Holland for twenty-four days.
- *21. Hocu e simu-tassæ tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in Australia for twenty-five days.
- *22. Into e simu-yessæ tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in India for twenty-six days.
- *23. Tøman e simu-ile tongan issessimnata. [I] stayed in Taiwan for twenty-seven days.

0. Response Drill

- Tutor: Cikim myəch-si imnikka?
 /yəl-si pan/
 Student: Yəl-si pan imnita.
 '[It]'s 10:30.'
1. Onil i myəchil imnikka? /O il/
 2. Myəch-si e il i sicak-hamnikka?
 /ahop-si/
 3. ece ka musin yoil iəssimnikka?
 /Mokyoil/
 4. ənce hakkyo ka kkith-namnikka?
 /ohu tasəs-si/
 5. Myəch sikan tongan il (il) hamnikka?
 /yətəl(p) sikan/
 6. Sənsəng in musin yoil e sicang e
 kamnikka? /Thoyoil/
 7. əlma tongan Hankuk mal il
 pəwəssimnikka? /tu tal/
 8. Myəch salam i Hankuk mal il mal-
 hamnikka? /yələ salam/
 9. Onil in myəch-si e cip e kamnikka?
 /ohu ne-si/
 10. əni tal e Hankuk mal kongpu ka
 sicak-həssimnikka? /Chil-wəl/
 11. ənce hyuka lil patkessimnikka?
 /taim tal/
 12. Onil cənyək e nuku lil
 mannakessimnikka? /chinku/
- 'What time is it now?' /10:30/
 O il imnita.
 Ahop si e sicak-hamnita.
 Mokyoil iəssimnita.
 Ohu tasəs-si e kkith-namnita.
 Yətəl(p) sikan tongan il hamnita.
 Thoyoil e sicang e kamnita.
 Tu tal tongan (Hankuk mal il)
 pəwəssimnita.
 Yələ salam i mal-hamnita.
 Ohu ne-si e (cip e) kamnita.
 Chil-wəl e sicak-həssimnita.
 Taim tal e (hyuka lil) patkessimnita.
 Chinku lil mannakessimnita.

P. Response Exercise (Answer the question in Informal Polite Speech based on reality.)

Tutor: Yocim muəs hase yo?

'What are you doing these days?'

Student: Tæsakwan esə il-hæ yo.

'I'm working at the Embassy.'

1. Onil i myəchil iye yo?
2. ece ka musin yoil iyəssə yo?
3. ənce Hankuk mal kongpu sicak-həssə yo?
4. Halu e myəch sikan Hankuk mal il pəause yo?
5. Sənsəng in əlma tonjan tæsakwan esə il-həssə yo?
6. Musin yoil e tækə sicang e kase yo?
7. Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichyə yo?
8. Haksəng i myəch salam isse yo?
9. Sənsəng e yangpok əlma e sassə yo?
10. əlma tongan Hankuk e issəssə yo?
11. Myəch-si e samusil e tillikesə yo?

Q. Grammar Drill (Change the sentence ending -(i)mnikka? to -ci yo?)

Tutor: Onil i myəchil imnikka?

'What's the date today?'

Student: Onil i myəchil ici yo?

'What's the date today?'

1. Muəs il cohahamnikka?
 2. Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichimnikka?
 3. ənce hakkyo ka sicak-hamnikka?
 4. Myəch-si e il i kkith-namnikka?
 5. əni sangcəm esə sikye lil phamnikka?
 6. Ki kutu, əlma e sassimnikka?
 7. əlma tongan Hankuk mal il pəwəssimnikka?
 8. ece ka musin yoil iəssimnikka?
 9. Sənsəng in əni nala esə wassimnikka?
 10. Tangsin in musin nala e kamnikka?
- Muəs il cohahaci yo?
 Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichici yo?
 ənce hakkyo ka sicak-haci yo?
 Myəch-si e il i kkith-naci yo?
 əni sangcəm esə sikye lil phalci yo?
 Ki kutu, əlma e sassci yo?
 əlma tongan Hankuk mal il pəwəssci
 yo?
 ece ka musin yoil iəssci yo?
 Sənsəng in əni nala esə wassci yo?
 Tangsin in musin nala e kaci yo?

R. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Yetel(p)-si e il i sicak-hamnita. 'I[!] start work at 8 o'clock.' ('The work begins at eight o'clock.')

Student: Yetel(p)-si e il i sicak-haci yo? 'You start work at 8 o'clock, don't you?' ('The work begins at 8, doesn't it?')

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Tasəs-si e cip e kamnita. | Tasəs-si e cip kaci yo? |
| 2. Təsakwan i məmnita. | Təsakwan i məlci yo? |
| 3. Mom i aphimnita. | Mom i aphici yo? |
| 4. Yetəl(p) sikan il il hamnita. | Yetəl(p) sikan il il haci yo? |
| 5. Onil i Sam-wəl il il imnita. | Onil i Sam-wəl il il ici yo? |
| 6. Kilehsimnita. | Kilehaci yo? |
| 7. Ceimsi Sənsəeng il asimnita. | Ceimsi Sənsəeng il asici yo? |
| 8. Pak Sənsəen il molisimnita. | Pak Sənsəen il molisici yo? |
| 9. Taim tal e hyuka ləl patsimnita. | Taim tal e hyuka ləl patci yo? |
| 10. Yəki esə son-sukən il phamnita. | Yəki esə son-sukən il phalci yo? |
| 11. Chək kaps i pissamnita. | Chək kaps i pissaci yo? |
| 12. Ki ica ka kwənchanhəsimnita. | Ki ica ka kwənchanhəci yo? |
| 13. Kim Sənsəeng e samusil e tillimnita. | Kim Sənsəeng e samusil e tillici yo? |
| 14. Kkaman sək il cohahamnita. | Kkaman sək il cohahaci yo? |

S. Combination Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor. Na nən hakkyo e kamnita. Kongpu- 'I['m] go[ing] to school.' 'I['m] study[ing].'

Student. Na nən hakkyo e kongpu-hale kamnita. 'I['m] go[ing] (to school) to study.'

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Na nən samusil e kamnita.
Il-hamnita. | Na nən (samusil e) il-hale kamnita. |
| 2. Na nən pəekhwacəm e kamnita. Chək il samnita. | Na nən (pəekhwacəm e) chək il sale kamnita. |
| 3. Na nən kyosil e kamnita. Chək il ilksimnita. | Na nən (kyosil e) chək il ilkile kamnita. |
| 4. Na nən cəngkəcəng e kamnita. Chinku Chinku ləl mannamnita. | Na nən (cəngkəcəng e) chinku ləl mannale kamnita. |
| 5. Na nən hakkyo e kamnita. Hankuk mal il pəəumnita. | Na nən (hakkyo e) Hankuk mal il pəəule kamnita. |

6. Na nin cikim cip e kamnita.
Swimnita.
7. Na nin sinæ e kamnita. Chinku e
samusil e tillimnita.
8. Na nin tapang e kamnita. Cha lil
masimnita.
- Na nin cikim cip e swile kamnita.
Na nin (sinæ e) chinku e samusil e
tillile kamnita.
Na nin (tapang e) cha lil masile
kamnita.

T. Response Exercise (Answer the questions based on reality.)

1. Cikim myæch-si imnikka?
'What time is it?'
2. Onil i myæchil imnikka?
'What's the day today?'
3. Cikim in musin tal imnikka?
'What month is it (now)?'
4. Onil i musin yoil imnikka?
'What day of the week is it today?'
5. Myæch-si e il i sicak-hamnikka?
'What time do you start working?'
6. Myæch-si e hakkyo ka kkith-namnikka?
'What time does the school end?'
7. ənce Hankuk e kasimnikka?
'When are you going to Korea?'
8. əlma tongan Hankuk mal il
pæwessimnikka?
'How long have you studied Korean?'
9. Musin yoil e sicang e kamnikka?
'What (week)day do you go to the market?'
10. Halu e myæch sikan tongan il-
hamnikka?
'How many hours a day do you work?'
11. əlma tongan Hankuk e kyesyæssimnikka?
'How long have you been in Korea?'
12. Myæch tal tongan Sœul e
isskessimnikka?
'How many months will you stay in
Korea?'
13. Myæch nyen tongan Sœul e
isskessimnikka?
'How many years will you stay in
Seoul?'

U. Response Drill (Use ccim in the proper place in your answer.)

Tutor: ənce il il sicak-hamnikka? 'When will you start work?' /the 5th/
/ə/ il/

Student: O il ccim sicak-hamnita. 'I begin work around the fifth.'

1. əlmə tongan Səul e isskessimnikka? Han tal ccim isskessimnita.
/han tal/
 2. Musin yoil e pækhwacəm e kakessə yo? Kimyoil ccim (pækhwacəm e) kakessə yo.
/Kimyoil/
 3. Myəch tal tongan Hankuk mal il pəwesse yo? /yəsəs tal/ Yəsəs tal ccim pəaessə yo.
 4. Myəch-si e cip il ttənamnikka? Ahop-si ccim ttənamnita.
/ahop-si/
 5. ənι tal e Hankuk mal kongpu ka kkith-namnikka? /taim tal/ Taim tal ccim kkith-namnita.
 6. Myəch sikan tongan il il hamnikka? Tækəe ahop sikan ccim il il hamnita.
/tækəe ahop sikan/
 7. Myəchil tongan hyuka lıl patəssimnikka? /yəlhil/ Yəlhil ccim (hyuka lıl) patəssimnita.
 8. Myəch-si e tapang e tillikessə yo? Cənyək ilkop-si ccim tillikessə yo.
/cənyək ilkop-si/

V. Response Drill

Student: Pelsse Sam-wel imnikka? 'Is [it] already March?'

Tutor: Ne, kiləhsimnita. 'Yes, it is.'

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Hakkyo ka sicak-hæsse yo. | Pæsse sicak-hæssimnikka? |
| Ne, kilehsimnita. | |
| 2. Il i kkith-nasse yo. | Pæsse kkith-nassimnikka? |
| Ne, kilehsimnita. | |
| 3. Cø nin ki il il kkith-næsse yo. | Pæsse kkith-næssimnikka? |
| Ne, kilehsimnita. | |
| 4. Pihaengki ka ttønasse yo. | Pæsse ttønassimnikka? |
| Ne, kilehsimnita. | |
| 5. Kicha ka han-si e tahasse yo. | Pæsse tahassimnikka? |
| Ne, kilehsimnita. | |

6. Cè nin pəlsse məkəsse yo. Pəlsse məkəssimnikka?
Ne, kilehsimnita.
7. Onil i Kimyoil iye yo. Pəlsse Kimyoil imnikka?
Ne, kilehsimnita.
8. Hakkyo ka kkith-nassə yo. Pəlsse kkith-nassimnikka?
Ne, kilehsimnita.

W. Response Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo ka pəlsse sicak-həssimnikka? 'Has the school already started?'

Student: Aniyo, acik sicak-haci anhəssimnita. 'No, it hasn't started yet.'

1. Ppəsi ka pəlsse ttənassimnikka? Aniyo, acik ttənaci anhəssimnita.
2. I tal i pəlsse Sa-wəl imnikka? Aniyo, acik Sa-wəl i an imnita.
3. Pihaengki ka pəlsse tahassimnikka? Aniyo, acik tahci anhəssimnita.
4. Pəlsse məkəssimnikka? Aniyo, acik məkci anhəssimnita.
5. Achim sinmun il pəlsse ilkəssimnikka? Aniyo, acik ilkci anhəssimnita.
6. Hyuka lil pəlsse patəssimnikka? Aniyo, acik patci anhəssimnita.
7. Hankuk mal sənsəng il pəlsse mannassimnikka? Aniyo, acik mannaci anhəssimnita.
8. Catongcha lil pəlsse sassimnikka? Aniyo, acik saci anhəssimnita.
9. Ki chæk il Ceimsi eke cuəssimnikka? Aniyo, acik cuci anhəssimnita.
10. Ki yənphil il Kim Sənsəng eke tiliəssimnikka? Aniyo, acik tilici anhəssimnita.

EXERCISES

1. Pak Sənsəng has asked what time it is. Give the following answers.
 - a. It's 8 o'clock.
 - b. It's 8:25.
 - c. It's 5 after 9.
 - d. It's 7:35.
 - e. It's 20 before 10.
 - f. It's a quarter to three.
 - g. It's about 2:30.
 - h. It's 6:28 in the morning.
 - i. It's 4 in the afternoon.
 - j. It's 7:43 in the evening.
 - k. It's 2 minutes after 10 at night.
2. Using a paper clock, practice asking and answering questions on time.
3. Using a calendar, practice asking and answering questions pertaining to dates, months and days of the week.
4. Ask Kim Sənsəng the following questions:
 1. What time it is now.
 2. What date it is today.
 3. What day of the week it is today.
 4. What year this is.
 5. What year last year was.
 6. What month last month was.
 7. What month next month will be.
 8. What year next year will be.
 9. What month this month is.
 10. What day tomorrow will be.
 11. What time he starts working in the morning.
 12. How many hours he works a day.
 13. How long he has been in America.
 14. How long he has taught Korean.
 15. How many days a week he comes to school.
 16. How many weeks the students have studied Korean.
 17. How many months the students will be in Washington.
 18. How many years he has lived in Washington.

5. Instructor says that he bought things at the following prices; the student repeats after the instructor with the book closed.

- | | |
|----------|------------|
| 1. W 56 | 16. W 813 |
| 2. W 72 | 17. W1,390 |
| 3. W 69 | 18. W2,917 |
| 4. W 91 | 19. W3,027 |
| 5. W 35 | 20. W4,014 |
| 6. W 98 | 21. W7,878 |
| 7. W 79 | 22. W3,427 |
| 8. W126 | 23. W4,592 |
| 9. W254 | 24. W4,760 |
| 10. W348 | 25. W8,352 |
| 11. W473 | 26. W7,265 |
| 12. W627 | 27. W6,327 |
| 13. W565 | 28. W5,279 |
| 14. W758 | 29. W9,822 |
| 15. W893 | 30. W6,789 |

제 7 과 시간(계속)

오셨읍니까

1. 박 : 제임스 선생, 언제 한국에 오셨읍니까?

이 년, 두 해

전에

이 년 전에, 두 해 전에

2. 제임스 : 이 년 전에 왔읍니다.

그 전

그 전에는

무슨 일

3. 박 : 아, 그러세요? 그 전에는 무슨 일을
했읍니까?

그 전에도

외고관으로

4. 제임스 : 그 전에도 외고관으로 있었읍니다.

이번

처음

5. 박 : 이번이 한국에 처음인가요?

두 번

두 번째

왔었읍니다

UNIT 7. Time (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

Park

- osiessimnikka
1. Ceimsi Sənsəeng, ənce Hankuk e
osiessimnikka?
- did [you] come?
When did you come to Korea, Mr.
James?

James

- tu hæ }
i nyən }
- cən e
- i nyən } cən e
tu hæ }
- two years
before; previously; ago
two years ago
2. I nyən cən e wassimnita. (I came) two years ago.

Park

- kı cən
- kı cən e nɪn
- musin il
3. A kilese yo? Ki cən e nɪn musin
il il həssimnikka?
- before that; the previous time
before then
what kind of job
(Oh, is that so?) What did you do
before that? ('What kind of work
did you do before then?')

James

- ki cən e to
- wekyokwan ilo
4. Ki cən e to wekyokwan ilo
issessimnita.
- before that time also
as a diplomat
I was in the foreign service before,
too. ('I exitsed as a diplomat
before that time, too.')

Park

- i pən
- chəim
5. I pən i Hankuk e chəim in ka yo?
- this time
first; the first time
Is the [your] first time in Korea?

6. 제임스 : 아니지요. 이번이 두 번 째입니다.
전에도 왔었읍니다.

그 때

그 때에

무엇 하러

7. 박 : 그 때에는 무엇 하러 왔었어요?

친구 백 오십 일 년

군대

8. 제임스 : 그 때는 친구 백 오십 일 년이었읍니다.
나는 그 때에 군대에 있었읍니다.

언제 쯤

돌아 가세요

9. 박 : 언제 쯤 미국에 돌아 가세요?

후에

한 달 후에

떠나려고 합니다

10. 제임스 : 한 달 후에 떠나려고 합니다.

무엇으로

11. 박 : 무엇으로 가시겠어요?

배

배로

갈까 합니다

James

tu pən

twice

tu pən ccə

the second time; for the second time

wassəssimnita

[I] came; [I] had come

6. An ici yo. I pən i tu pən ccə
imnita. Cən e to wassəssimnita.

No, this is my second time. I've
been here before. ('I came before,
too.')

Park

k1 ttə

that time

k1 ttə e

at that time

mues hale

to do what?; what for?

7. Ki ttə e nin mues hale wassəsse
yo?

What were you doing here then?
('What for did you come at that
time?')

James

chən-kupək-osip-il nyən

the year 1951

kuntə

military

8. Ki ttə nin chən-kupək-osip-il
nyən iyəssimnita. Na nin ki
ttə e kuntə e issəssimnita.

That was 1951. I was in the service.
('I was in the military at that
time.')

Park

ənce ccim

about when

tola kase yo

do [you] go back?

9. ənce ccim Mikuk e tola kase yo?

When are [you] going back to America?

James

hu e

later; afterward

han tal hu e

one month later

ttənalyəko hamnita

[I]'m going to leave

10. Han tal hu e ttənalyəko hamnita.

I'm going to leave in a month (from
now.)

Park

mues ilo

by what means

11. Mues ilo kasikessə yo?

How are you going? ('By what means
will you go?')

12. 제임스 : 이번에는 바로 갈까 합니다.

지난 번

비행기

13. 박 : 지난 번에 비행기로 왔어요?

탔습니다

14. 제임스 : 예, 비행기를 탔습니다.

한국에서

미국까지

얼마나

걸립니까

15. 박 : 한국에서 미국까지 (시간이) 얼마나
걸립니까?

스스로

설흔 시간 쯤

16. 제임스 : 배트는 대개 스스로 걸립니다. 그리고,
비행기로는 설흔 시간 쯤 걸립니다.

James

- pœ
pœ lo
kal kka hamnita
- [I] 'm thinking of going;
('[I] intend to go!')
12. I pœn e nin, pœ lo kal kka
hamnita.
- This time, I'm (thinking of) going
by boat.

Park

- cinan pœn
pihængki
13. Cinan pœn e pihængki lo wasse
yo?
- last time
airplane
- Did you come by air (last time)?

James

- thassimnita
14. Ne, pihængki lil thassimnita.
- [I] rode; [I] got on; [I] took
Yes, I flew. ('I got on airplane,')

Park

- Hankuk ese
Mikuk kkaci
elma na
kellimnikka
15. Hankuk ese Mikuk kkaci (sikan i)
elma na kellimnikka?
- from Korea
as far as America; to America
how long; how much
does it take?
- How long does it take to get to
America (from Korea)?

James

- simu nal
sælhin sikan ccim
16. Pœ lo nin tækœ simu nal kellimnita.
Kiliko, pihængki lo nin sælhin
sikan ccim kellimnita.
- twenty days
about thirty hours
- It usually takes 20 days by boat and
(about) 30 hours by plane.

NUMERAL PHRASES

(a) 한 번	(b) 첫 째
두 번	둘 째
세 번	셋 째
네 번	넷 째
다섯 번	다섯 째
여섯 번	여섯 째
일곱 번	일곱 째
여덟 번	여덟 째
아홉 번	아홉 째
열 번	열 째

(c) 처음 - 첫 번째	(d) 이 배 - 두 배
두 번째	삼 배 - 세 배
세 번째	사 배 - 네 배
네 번째	오 배 - 다섯 배
다섯 번째	육 배 - 여섯 배
여섯 번째	칠 배 - 일곱 배
일곱 번째	팔 배 - 여덟 배
아홉 번째	구 배 - 아홉 배
열 번째	십 배 - 열 배

NUMERAL PHRASES

(a)

han pən	'once'
tu pən	'twice'
se pən	'three times'
ne pən	'four times'
tases pən	'five times'
yəsəs pən	'six times'
ilkop pən	'seven times'
yətəlp pən	'eight times'
ahop pən	'nine times'
yəl pən	'ten times'

(b)

che(s) ccə	{'first' 'the first'
tu(l) ccə	{'second' 'the second'
se(s) ccə	{'third' 'the third'
ne(s) ccə	{'fourth' 'the fourth'
tases ccə	{'fifth' 'the fifth'
yəsəs ccə	{'sixth' 'the sixth'
ilkop ccə	{'seventh' 'the seventh'
yətəl(p) ccə	{'eighth' 'the eighth'
ahop ccə	{'ninth' 'the ninth'
yəl ccə	{'tenth' 'the tenth'

(c)

chəim	'the first time'
chəs pən ccə	'the first time'
tu pən	{'the second time' 'the second'
se pən ccə	{'the third time' 'the third'
ne pən ccə	{'the fourth time' 'the fourth'
tases pən ccə	{'the fifth time' 'the fifth'
yəsəs pən ccə	{'the sixth time' 'the sixth'
ilkop pən ccə	{'the seventh time' 'the seventh'
yətəlp pən ccə	{'the eighth time' 'the eighth'
ahop pən ccə	{'the ninth time' 'the ninth'
yəl pən ccə	{'the tenth time' 'the tenth'

(d)

i pəe	{'two times'
tu pəe	{'twice'
sam pəe	{'three times'
se pəe	{'four times'
sa pəe	{'five times'
ne pəe	{'six times'
o pəe	{'seven times'
tases pəe	{'eight times'
yuk pəe	{'nine times'
yəsəs pəe	{'ten times'
chil pəe	{'the first time'
ilkop pəe	{'the second time'
phal pəe	{'the third time'
yətəlp pəe	{'the fourth time'
ku pəe	{'the fifth time'
ahop pəe	{'the sixth time'
sip pəe	{'the seventh time'
yəl pəe	{'the eighth time'

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. Cən e without preceding any time expression means 'previously' or 'before'; point in time + cən e means 'before the point in time'; period of time + cən e means 'period of time ago'. Compare:
- a. Kim Sənsəng in cən e 'Mr. Kim has left previously.'
 - ttənnassimnita.
 - b. Il-wəl cən e ttənnassimnita. 'He left before January.'
 - c. Han tal cən e ttənnassimnita. 'He left one month ago.'
3. Ki cən e (nín) 'before then', 'before that time', is an adverbial phrase which denotes 'the time previous to the mentioned one'.
10. Hu e not preceded by any time expression means 'later'; point in time + hu e means 'after + the point in time'; period of time + hu e means 'period of time later'. Compare:
- a. Hu e mannapsita. 'Let's meet later.'
 - b. Han-si hu e mannapsita. 'Let's meet after 1 o'clock.'
 - c. Han sikan hu e mannapsita. 'Let's meet one hour from now.'
11. Muəs ilo ('by what') refers to a means of transportation.
14. The verb stem tha- is a transitive verb which means 'to ride', 'to mount', 'to get on', 'to take (vehicle)'. Compare it with thaəu- 'to give a ride (to someone)'. The antonym of tha- is nəli- 'to get off', 'to descend'.
15. The adverbial question phrase əlma na 'how long?', 'how much', 'how?', occurs before description verbs, noun modifiers or other adverbs. The intransitive verb stem kəlli-, preceded by a time expression means 'to take' or 'to require'. Example:
- Han sikan kəllimnita. 'It takes an hour.'

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Numeral Phrases

In Unit 7 we have 4 series of numeral phrases: (a) han pen 'once', tu pen 'twice', se pen 'three times'...; (b) ches ccæ 'first' or 'the first', tu(l) ccæ 'second' or 'the second', se(s) ccæ 'third' or 'the third'...; (c) cheim or ches pen ccæ 'the first time' or 'first', tu pen ccæ 'the second time' or 'second'...; (d) i pæ or tu pæ 'two times' or 'twice', sam pæ or se pæ 'three times', sa pæ or ne pæ 'four times'..., etc.

The numerals of series (a) occur as adverbial phrases and are used to denote the frequency of action of the subsequent inflected expressions; the numerals of series (b) occur before other nominals or by themselves and denote order within a sequence; the numerals of series (c) occur as noun or adverbial phrases and denote order within a sequence of occurrences or points of time; the numerals of series (d) occur as noun or adverbial phrases and denote multiplication in quantity, quality, size or degree of the subsequent inflected expressions.

Examples are provided in drills.

2. Particle lo/ilo 'as', 'in the capacity', 'by means of'

In Unit 2 we noticed that the particle lo/ilo after a place name indicates the direction of the following inflected expression. Lo/ilo occurring after other types of nominals denotes that the nominal is a capacity or means of subject or topic of the sentence. Examples:

a. Title names + lo/ilo 'as', 'in the capacity of'

sənsæng ilo	'as a teacher'
tæsa lo	'as an ambassador'
kongpokwan ilo	'as an information officer'

b. Transportation names + lo/ilo 'by means of'

ppesi lo	'by bus'
kicha lo	'by train'
catongcha lo	'by automobile'
pihaengki lo	'by airplane'
hapsing ilo	'by jitney'
cæncha lo	'by streetcar'

Other nominal + lo/ilo 'in', 'by', 'with'

Yəngə lo	'in English'
inkhi lo	'in ink'
yənphil lo	'with pencil'
ton ilo	'with money'
hyənkim ilo	'in cash'

3. -n/in/nin ka yo?

The construction -n/in/nin ka yo? occurs only as the final form of a question sentence. This construction is a kind of informal polite speech which can be substituted for previously learned Formal or Informal Polite Speech question forms. -n/in/nin is added to a verb stem or to a verb stem plus other suffixes: -n is added to a description verb stem ending in a vowel; -in to a description verb stem ending in a consonant; -nin to an action verb stem. (For the selection of -n, -in or -nin, see the rules for the formation of present noun-modifier ending, Unit 5.) Compare:

Cə yəca ka yeppin ka yo?	{	'Is that woman pretty?'
Cə yəca ka yeppiʌmnikka?		
Cə yəca ka yeppe yo?		

4. -(i)lyəko

The verb ending -(i)lyəko is added to a verb stem or to a verb stem plus the honorific suffix -(i)si-. Tense suffixes do not occur before the -(i)lyəko ending. The inflected form ending in -(i)lyəko (or simply the -(i)lyəko form) occurs in two constructions:

(a) -(i)lyəko + ha- 'be going to!', 'intend to!'

The construction -(i)lyəko immediately followed by the verb ha- indicates that the subject or topic of the sentence intends a future action. Examples:

Hankuk e kalyəko hamnita.	{ '[I] intend to go to Korea.' '[I] 'm going to go to Korea.'
Yəngə lil kalichilyəko həssimnita.	{ '[I] was going to teach English.' '[I] intended to teach English.'
Kim Sənsəng in næil ttenalyəko hamnikka?	'Is Mr. Kim going to leave tomorrow?'

(b) -(i)lyəko + other than ha-

In the above construction, the -(i)lyəko form which may be followed by a pause denotes that the following inflected expression in the same sentence occurs for the purpose of the action inflected by the -(i)lyəko form. Compare this construction with the -(i)le form (Unit 6, G.N. 3). Examples:

Hankuk e kalyəko, Hankuk mal
il pæwə yo. 'In order to go to Korea, [I]
am studying Korean.'

Chæk il salyəko, sinə chækpang
e tillessimnita. [I] stopped by a bookstore
downtown to buy books.'

5. -(1)1 kka ha-

In Unit 3, we had the construction -(1)1 kka yo? as a sentence final question form. The construction -(1)1 kka immediately followed by ha- without a pause occurs in a statement sentence and denotes the speaker's intention for future action of the verb in the -(1)1 form. The English equivalent for -(1)1 kka ha- is either 'be thinking of doing something' or 'intend to do something'. The tenses and/or levels of speech for the whole construction are generated in ha-. Examples:

I pən e nin pə lo kal kka hamnita.	'This time, I'm thinking of going by boat.'
Næil kkaci Səul e issil kka hæ yo.	'I intend to stay in Seoul until tomorrow.'
Na to ki ttæ e ttənal kka hæssimnita. Kiləna....	'I was thinking of leaving at that time, too, but....'

6. Particle *kkaci* 'to!', 'as far as', 'until', 'till', 'by'.

Kkaci occurs either after a place name or a time name:

(a) Place name + kkaci denotes the destination or goal for the following inflected expression. Examples:

Pusan kkaci kakessə yo.	'I will go as far as Pusan.'
Səul esə Inchən kkaci əlma na mələ yo?	'How far is it from Seoul to Pusan?'

(b) Time name + kkaci denotes the final limit of action for the following inflected expressions.

næil kkaci	'until tomorrow' or 'by tomorrow'
onil kkaci	'till now' or 'by now'
han-si kkaci	'by one o'clock'

7. Inflected forms and Verb Phrases

We have noticed that each inflected form of a verb is used in certain ways. For example, the verb stem ka- 'to go' is inflected in many ways by adding endings to it. So far we have had the following types of inflections built on the stem ka- 'to go'. Note that a hyphen is inserted between the stem and the ending to distinguish them:

ka-mnita	ka-nin
ka-mnikka	ka-l
ka-psita	ka-lyəko
ka-sipsiyo	ka-le
ka-ci	ka-ko

Each Korean verb is inflected in numerous forms. Many of these inflected forms are followed by other inflected forms. Some may be followed by other classes of words, namely nouns or particles. Therefore, it is important to know how each inflected form is used, e.g. whether as a verbal or as a modifier of another class of words. In Unit 4, we were introduced to the inflected form to which the particle yo can be added to make Informal Polite Speech. Remember that this form is called the Infinitive. An Infinitive is, then, distinguished from other inflected forms because it is not a verb stem + a certain ending, but instead is formed by a certain morphophonemic change in the final sound of the verb stem.

There are some verbs which occur without pause one after another. For example, mulə po-ta 'inquires', alə po-ta 'finds out', tola ka-ta 'goes back', tola o-ta 'comes back', etc. In such cases, the first verb occurs always in an infinitive form while the second verb may occur in any inflected form.

Such second verb is called the Auxiliary Verb and the first verb the Principal Verb. Any compound of principal verb + auxiliary verb is a Verb Phrase. Many of the principal verbs and auxiliary verbs that occur in verb phrases also occur independently or together with other principal or auxiliary verbs in other verb phrases, but some do not. Each verb phrase is not a simple combination of the separate meanings of its two parts: it is a compound deriving its unique indivisible meaning from both its parts. For instance, a(l)- means 'know', and po- means 'see', but alə po- means 'to find out'. Therefore, each verb phrase must be learned separately for its own unique meaning. Study the following examples:

mulə po-ta	'inquires'
alə po-ta	'finds out'
məkə po-ta	'tries (eating food)'

ipə po-ta	'tries on (clothes)'
na ka-ta	'goes out'
tile ka-ta	'goes in'
olla ka-ta	'goes up'
tola ka-ta	'goes back'
næliə ka-ta	'goes down'
na o-ta	'comes out'
tile o-ta	'comes in'
tola o-ta	'comes back'
olla o-ta	'comes up'
næliə o-ta	'comes down'
towa cu-ta	'gives help'
alə cu-ta	'recognizes (one's ability)'
pilliə cu-ta	'loans, lends'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. ənce Hankuk e osiəssimnikka? | When did you come to Korea? |
| 2. ənce <u>Mikuk</u> e osiəssimnikka? | When did you come to the United States? |
| 3. ənce <u>Səul</u> e osiəssimnikka? | When did you come to Seoul? |
| 4. ənce <u>ce samusil</u> e osiəssimnikka? | When did you come to my office? |
| 5. ənce <u>yəki</u> e osiəssimnikka? | When did you come here? |
| 6. <u>Myəch-si</u> e yəki e osiəssimnikka? | What time did you come here? |
| 7. <u>Muəs ilo</u> yəki e osiəssimnikka? | How ('by what means') did you come here? |
| 8. <u>Musin il lo</u> yəki e osiəssimnikka? | On what business did you come here? |
| 9. <u>Muəs hale</u> yəki e osiəssimnikka? | Why ('to do what') did you come here? |
| 10. <u>Nuku wa</u> yəki e osiəssimnikka? | With whom did you come here? |
| 11. <u>Myəch-si ccim</u> yəki e osiəssimnikka? | Around what time did you come here? |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Il nyən cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] one year ago. |
| 2. <u>Halu</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] yesterday ('a day ago'). |
| 3. <u>Han sikan</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] one hour ago. |
| 4. <u>Sam cuil</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] three weeks ago. |
| 5. <u>Sək tal</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] three months ago. |
| 6. <u>Yələ tal</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] several months ago. |
| * 7. <u>əlma</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] some time ago. |
| * 8. <u>Myəchil</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] some days ago. |
| * 9. <u>Myəch tal</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] some months ago. |
| *10. <u>Myəch nyən</u> cən e wassimnita. | [I] came [here] some years ago. |
| *11. <u>Myəch cuil</u> cən e <u>ttənassimnita</u> . | [I] came [here] some weeks ago. |
| 12. Myəch cuil cən e <u>tahassimnita</u> . | [He] left [here] some weeks ago. |
| *13. Myəch cuil cən e <u>tahassimnita</u> . | [He] arrived [here] some weeks ago. |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. I nyen cən e yəki e wasse yo. | I came here two years ago. |
| 2. <u>Ithil</u> cən e <u>cip</u> e wasse yo. | I came home two days ago. |
| 3. <u>Tu sikan</u> cən e <u>samusil</u> e wasse yo. | I came to my office two hours ago. |
| 4. <u>I cuil</u> cən e <u>Səul</u> e wasse yo. | I came to Seoul two weeks ago. |
| 5. <u>Tu tal</u> cən e <u>Mikuk</u> e wasse yo. | I came to America two months ago. |
| 6. <u>Yelə nal</u> cən e <u>yəki</u> e wasse yo. | I came here several days ago. |
| 7. <u>I-sip il</u> cən e <u>Pusan</u> e wasse yo. | I came to Pusan twenty days ago. |
| 8. <u>Tu ha</u> cən e <u>Wəsington</u> e wasse yo. | I came to Washington two years ago. |
| *9. <u>Myəchil</u> cən e <u>sinə</u> e wasse yo. | I came to town some days ago. |

D. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Cə nin wekyokwan ilo issimnita. | I am in the foreign service. ('I exist as a diplomat.') |
| 2. Cə nin <u>sənsəng</u> ilo issimnita. | I am a teacher. |
| 3. Cə nin <u>haksəng</u> ilo issimnita. | I am a student. |
| *4. Cə nin <u>təsa</u> lo issimnita. | I am an ambassador. |
| *5. Cə nin <u>yəngsa</u> lo issimnita. | I am a consul. |
| 6. Cə nin <u>kongpokwan</u> ilo issimnita. | I am a information officer. |
| *7. Cə nin <u>kunin</u> ilo issimnita. | I am in the military service. |
| *8. Cə nin <u>kongmuwen</u> ilo issimnita. | I am a {civil servant.
government employee. |
| 9. Cə nin <u>cəmwen</u> ilo issimnita. | I am a store clerk. |
| *10. Cə nin <u>samuwen</u> ilo issimnita. | I am a clerk. |
| *11. Cə nin <u>pise</u> lo issimnita. | I am a secretary. |
| *12. Cə nin <u>pise</u> lo <u>il-hamnita</u> . | I work as a secretary. |
| *13. <u>Cə yəca</u> nin <u>pise</u> lo <u>il-hamnita</u> . | She ('that woman') works as a secretary. |

E. Substitution Drill

1. I nyen cén kkaci wekyokwan ilo issessimnita. [I] was in the foreign service until two years ago.
2. Sahil cén kkaci sənsəng (ilo) issessimnita. [I] was a teacher until three days ago.
3. Se sikan cén kkaci haksəng (ilo) issessimnita. [I] was a student until three hours ago.
4. Ne cuil cén kkaci kunin (ilo) issessimnita. [I] was in the military service until 4 weeks ago.
5. Tasəs tal cén kkaci tæsa (lo) issessimnita. [I] was an ambassador until 5 months ago.
6. Sipo il cén kkaci yəngsa (lo) issessimnita. [I] was a consul until 15 days ago.
7. Yele hæ cén kkaci pise (lo) issessimnita. [I] was a secretary until several years ago.
8. əlma cén kkaci kongmuwən (ilo) issessimnita. [I] was a civil servant until some time ago.
9. Han tal cén kkaci cəmwən (ilo) issessimnita. [I] was a store clerk until one month ago.
10. Yelhil cén kkaci wekyokwan (ilo) issessimnita. [I] was in the foreign service until 10 days ago.

F. Substitution Drill

1. I pən i Hankuk e chəim in ka yo? Is this your first time in Korea?
2. I pən i Hankuk e tu pən ccə in ka yo? Is this your second time in Korea?
3. I pən i Hankuk e se pən ccə in ka yo? Is this your third time in Korea?
4. I pən i Hankuk e ne pən ccə in ka yo? Is this your fourth time in Korea?
5. I pən i Hankuk e tasəs pən ccə in ka yo? Is this your fifth time in Korea?
6. I pən i Hankuk e yəsəs pən ccə in ka yo? Is this your sixth time in Korea?
7. I pən i Hankuk e ilkop pən ccə in ka yo? Is this your seventh time in Korea?

8. I pən i Hankuk e yetəlp pən ccə Is this your eighth time in Korea?
in ka yo?
9. I pən i Hankuk e myəch pən ccə How many times have you been in
in ka yo? Korea?

G. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sənsəng il han pən mannassimnita. [I] met Mr. Kim once.
2. Pak Sənsəng il tu pən mannassimnita. [I] met Mr. Pak twice.
3. I Sənsəng il se pən mannassimnita. [I] met Mr. Lee three times.
4. Ceimsi Sənsəng il tasəs pən [I] met Mr. James five times.
mannassimnita.
5. Chwe Sənsəng il yələ pən [I] met Mr. Choe many times.
mannassimnita.
6. Ki salam il yələ pən pwassimnita. [I] saw him many times.
7. Hankuk mal il yələ pən [I] taught Korean on many occasions.
kalichiessimnita.
8. Kil il yələ pən mule pwassimnita. [I] inquired about street directions
many times.
9. Ki il il yələ pən həssimnita. [I] did the work many times.
10. Han-Yəng sacən il yələ pən [I] wanted a K-E dictionary many
wənhəssimnita. times.
11. Mikuk il yələ pən ttenassimnita. [I] left America many times.
- *12. Cha lɪl yələ pən phalassimnita. [I] sold cars many times.
- *13. Catongcha lɪl yələ pən sassimnita. [I] bought many automobiles.
- *14. Gungkuk imsɪk il yələ pən [I] have eaten Chinese food many
məkəssimnita. times.

H. Substitution Drill

1. Ki ttæ e (na nin) kuntæ e issessimnita. At that time I was in the military.
2. Han sikan cən e (na nin) samusil e issessimnita. An hour ago I was in the office.
3. Sip pun cən e (na nin) cip e issessimnita. Ten minutes ago I was at home.
4. Han cuil cən e (na nin) Seul e issessimnita. One week ago I was in Seoul.
5. Tu(l) tal cən e (na nin) Wəsingthon e issessimnita. Two months ago I was in Washington.
6. Onil achim e (na nin) Mikuk Kongpoven e issessimnita. This morning I was at USIS.
- *7. əce cənyək e (na nin) yəngsakwan e issessimnita. Last evening I was at the Consulate.
8. Ki nal pam e (na nin) kongwən e issessimnita. That night I was in the park.
9. Ilyoil ohu e (na nin) kikcang e issessimnita. Sunday afternoon I was at the theatre.
10. Ki ttæ e (na nin) siktang e issessimnita. At that time I was at a restaurant.

I. Substitution Drill

1. Han tal hu e ttənalyəko hamnita. I'm going to leave one month from now.
2. Han cuil hu e ttənalyəko hamnita. I'm going to leave one week from now.
3. Il nyən hu e ttənalyəko hamnita. I'm going to leave one year from now.
4. Han sikan hu e ttənalyəko hamnita. I'm going to leave in an hour.
5. Il pun hu e ttənalyəko hamnita. I'm going to leave in a minute.
6. I pun hu e ttənalyəko hamnita. I'm going to leave in two minutes.
- * 7. I sam pun hu e ttənalyəko hamnita. I'm going to leave in two or three minutes.
- * 8. I sam il hu e ttənalyəko hamnita. I'm going to leave in two or three days.
- * 9. Sam sa il hu e ttənalyəko hamnita. I'm going to leave in three or four days.

*10. Sa o il hu e ttənalyəko hamnita.

I'm going to leave in four or five days.

*11. I sam cuil hu e ttənalyəko hamnita.

I'm going to leave in two or three weeks.

J. Substitution Drill

1. Pihængki lo kal kka hamnita.
2. Pæ lo kal kka hamnita.
- * 3. Ppesi lo kal kka hamnita.
4. Cha lo kal kka hamnita.
- * 5. Thækssi lo kal kka hamnita.
- * 6. Kicha lo kal kka hamnita.
7. Catongcha lo kal kka hamnita.
- * 8. Cencha lo kal kka hamnita.
9. Hapsing ilo kal kka hamnita.

I'm thinking of going by airplane.
 I'm thinking of going by ship.
 I'm thinking of going by bus.
 I'm thinking of going by car.
 I'm thinking of going by taxi.
 I'm thinking of going by train.
 I'm thinking of going by automobile.
 I'm thinking of going by streetcar.
 I'm thinking of going by jitney.

K. Substitution Drill

1. Pihængki lo Səul e kakessimnikka?
2. Ppesi lo Inchen e kakessimnikka?
3. Cha lo Pusan e kakessimnikka?
4. Pæ lo Ilpon e kakessimnikka?
5. Pihængki lo Mikuk e kakessimnikka?
6. Kicha lo Nyuyok e kakessimnikka?
7. Catongcha lo sinæ e kakessimnikka?
8. Cencha lo sicang e kakessimnikka?

Will you go to Seoul by airplane?
 Will you go to Inchon by bus?
 Will you go to Pusan by car?
 Will you go to Japan by ship?
 Will you go to America by airplane?
 Will you go to New York by train?
 Will you go to downtown by automobile?
 Will you go to the market place by streetcar?

L. Substitution Drill

1. Hankuk ese Mikuk kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka?
2. Səul ese Inchen kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka?
3. Hakkyo ese cip kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka?

How long does it take to go to America from Korea?
 How long does it take to go to Inchon from Seoul?
 How long does it take from school to your house?

4. Sinæ esæ cengkæcang kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka? How long does it take from downtown to the station?
5. Tæsakwan esæ Mikuk Kongpowæn kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka? How long does it take from the Embassy to USIS?
6. Cip esæ sichæng kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka? How long does it take from your house to the City Hall?
7. Samusil esæ siktang kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka? How long does it take from your office to the restaurant?
8. Yeki esæ kikcang kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka? How long does it take from here to the theatre?
9. Uphyænkuk esæ tapang kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka? How long does it take from the post office to the tearoom?
10. Yeki esæ Mikuk kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka? How long does it take from here to America.

M. Substitution Drill

1. Yeki esæ Mikuk kkaci əlma (na) kəllimnikka? How long does it take to go from here to America?
2. Yeki esæ Mikuk kkaci myæchil (ina) kəllimnikka? How many days does it take to go from here to America?
3. Yeki esæ Mikuk kkaci myæch tal (ina) kəllimnikka? How many months does it take to go from here to America.
4. Yeki esæ Mikuk kkaci myæch cull (ina) kəllimnikka? How many weeks does it take to go from here to America?
5. Yeki esæ Mikuk kkaci myæch sikan (ina) kəllimnikka? How many hours does it take to go from here to America?
6. Yeki esæ Mikuk kkaci myæch pun (ina) kəllimnikka? How many minutes does it take to go from here to America?
7. Yeki esæ Mikuk kkaci əlma (na) kəllimnikka? How long does it take to go from here to America?

N. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 4)

Tutor: Na nin pihængki lo kakessimnita. 'I'll go by airplane.'

Student: Na to pihængki lo kalyeko 'I'm also planning to go by airplane.'

hæ yo.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Na nin næil tola kakessimnita. | Na to næil tola kalyeko hæ yo. |
| 2. Na nin pæ lil thakessimnita. | Na to pæ lil thalyeko hæ yo. |
| 3. Na nin i sam il hu e ttənakessimnita. | Na to i sam il hu e ttənalyeko hæ yo. |
| 4. Na nin Mikuk yangpok il sakessimnita. | Na to Mikuk yangpok il salyeko hæ yo. |
| 5. Na nin han cuil tongan Səul e isskessimnita. | Na to han cuil tongan Səul e issilyeko hæ yo. |
| 6. Na nin taim tal e tto okessimnita. | Na to taim tal e tto olyeko hæ yo. |
| 7. Na nin chinku lil mannakessimnita. | Na to chinku lil mannalyeko hæ yo. |
| 8. Na nin hyuka lil patkessimnita. | Na to hyuka lil patilyelo hæ yo. |
| 9. Na nin cha lil phalkessimnita. | Na to cha lil phallyeko hæ yo. |
| 10. Na nin tapang e tillikessimnita. | Na to tapang e tillilyeko hæ yo. |
| 11. Na nin Ilyoil e swikessimnita. | Na to Ilyoil e swilyeko hæ yo. |

O. Response Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| Tutor: Pihængki lo kakesse yo? | 'Will you go by airplane?' |
| Student: Ne, pihængki lo kalyeko hamnita. | 'Yes, I'm planning (to go) by airplane.' |
| 1. Næil tola kakesse yo? | Ne, næil tola kalyeko hamnita. |
| 2. Pæ lil thakesse yo? | Ne, pæ lil thalyeko hamnita. |
| 3. I sam il hu e ttənakesse yo? | Ne, i sam il hu e ttənalyeko hamnita. |
| 4. Han tal tongan Səul e isskesse yo? | Ne, han tal tongan (Səul e) issilyeko hamnita. |
| 5. Taim tal e tto okesse yo? | Ne, taim tal e tto olyeko hamnita. |
| 6. Hyuka lil patkesse yo? | Ne, hyuka lil patilyeko hamnita. |
| 7. Cha lil phalkesse yo? | Ne, phallyeko hamnita. |
| 8. Tapang e tillikesse yo? | Ne, tillilyeko hamnita. |
| 9. Ilyoil e swikesse yo? | Ne, swilyeko hamnita. |
| 10. Cungkuk mal kongpu lil sicak-hakesse yo? | Ne, sicak-halyeko hamnita. |

P. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 5)

- Tutor: Han tal hu e ttənalyəko hase yo?
Student: Ne, han tal hu e ttənal kka hamnita.
1. I pən e nɪn pihængki lɪl thalyəko hase yo?
2. Cə kənmul aph esə nəlilyəko hase yo?
3. Nənyən e Wəsingthon e tola olyəko hase yo?
4. Onɪl cənyək e sinə e na kalyəko hase yo?
5. Han tal hu e tola kalyəko hase yo?
6. Sichəng esə ale polyəko hase yo?
7. Taim cuil e hyuka lɪl patilyəko hase yo?
8. Sənsəng ɪn catongcha lɪl phalyəko hase yo?
- 'Are you going to leave in a month?'
'Yes, I'm thinking of leaving in a month.'
Ne, (i pən e nɪn) pihængki lɪl thal kka hamnita.
Ne, cə kənmul aph esə nəlil kka hamnita.
Ne, nənyən e (Wəsingthon e) tola ol kka hamnita.
Ne, (onɪl cənyək e sinə e) na kal kka hamnita.
Ne, han tal hu e tola kal kka hamnita.
Ne, sichəng esə ale pol kka hamnita.
Ne, taim cuil e hyuka lɪl patil kka hamnita.
Ne, (cə nɪn catongcha lɪl) phal kka hamnita.

Q. Response Drill

- Tutor: Muəs ɪl sakesse yo? /kutu/
Student: Kutu lɪl salyəko hamnita.
1. ənce sicak-hakesse yo? /han cuil hu e/
2. Nuku lɪl mannakessə yo? /Hankuk salam chinku/
3. ənce kkaci ki ɪl ɪl kkith-nəkessə yo? /taim cuil/
4. əlma e sənsəng cha lɪl phalkessə yo? /sam-man Wən/
5. Muəs ɪlo Hankuk e kakessə yo? /pihængki/
- 'What are you going to buy?' /shoes/
'I'm planning to buy shoes.'
Han cuil hu e sicak-halyəko hamnita.
Hankuk salam chinku lɪl mannalyəko hamnita.
Taim cuil kkaci kkith-nəlyəko hamnita.
Sam-man Wən e phallyəko hamnita.
Pihængki lo kalyəko hamnita.

6. ənì tal e hyuka lìl patkessë yo? Phal-wèl e patìlyèko hamnita.
/phal-wèl/
7. əlma tongan Mikuk esë cinækessë I nyèn ccim Mikuk esë cinælyèko
yo? /i nyèn ccim/ hamnita.
('I'm going to spend about two years
in America.')
8. Taim pèn e ənì nal il pæukessë Swiwn mal il pæulyèko hamnita.
yo? /swiwn mal/

R. Grammar Drill (Change -(i)mnikka? to -n/in/nin ka yo? based on Grammar Note 3.)

- Tutor: Hankuk e chèim imnikka? 'Is [this your] first time in Korea?'
Student: Hankuk e chèim in ka yo? 'Is [this your] first time in Korea?'
1. Kim Sønsæng il asimnikka? Kim Sønsæng il asinìn ka yo?
2. Ceimsi Sønsæng i Hankuk mal il Ceimsi Sønsæng i Hankuk mal il
ilksimnikka? ilknìn ka yo?
3. ənce Mikuk e tola kasimnikka? ənce Mikuk e tola kasinìn ka yo?
4. Han tal hu e ttènamnikka? Han tal hu e ttènanìn ka yo?
5. Pø lìl thasimnikka? Pø lìl thasinìn ka yo?
6. Mikuk kkaci əlma na køllimnikka? Mikuk kkaci əlma na køllinìn ka yo?
7. Hakkyo ka mèmnikka? Hakkyo ka mèn ka yo?
8. Cø yøca nin Mikuk salam imnikka? Cø yøca nin Mikuk salam in ka yo?
9. Hankuk mal i philyo-hamnikka? Hankuk mal i philyo-han ka yo?
10. Sønsæng in mom i aphimnikka? Sønsæng in mom i aphin ka yo?
11. Cungkuk mal i swipsimnikka? Cungkuk mal i swiun ka yo?
12. Ki kilim i alimtapsimnikka? Ki kilim i alimtaun ka yo?
13. Mikuk yøca ka yeppimnikka? Mikuk yøca ka yeppin ka yo?

S. Response Drill

Tutor: Hankuk e chəim in ka yo?
/ne/

Student: Ne, chəim iye yo.

'Is [this your] first time in Korea?
/yes/

'Yes, [this] is [my] first time [in
Korea].'

1. Kim Sənsəng il asinin ka yo?
/aniyo/
 2. Ceimsi Sənsəng i Hankuk mal il
ilknin ka yo? /ne/
 3. ənce Mikuk e tola kasinin ka yo?
/taim hæ/
 4. Han tal hu e Səul il ttənanin
ka yo? /aniyo/
 5. Pæ lɪl thanin ka yo? /ne/
 6. Mikuk kkaci sahil kəllinin ka
yo? /ne/
 7. Hakkyo ka kakkaun ka yo? /aniyo/
 8. Cə yəca nɪn Hankuk salam in ka
yo? /ne/
 9. Ilpon mal to əlyəun ka yo? /aniyo/
 10. Tangsin in mom i aphın ka yo?
/ne/
 11. Cungkuk mal i swiun ka yo? /aniyo/
 12. I kilim i alimtaun ka yo? /ne/
- Aniyo, molla yo.
- Ne, ilkə yo.
- Taim hæ e tola ka yo.
- Aniyo, (han tal hu e) ttənaci anh
yo.
- Ne, pæ lɪl tha yo.
- Ne, sahil kəllyə yo.
- Aniyo, kakkapci anhə yo.
- Ne, Hankuk salam iye yo.
- Aniyo, əlyəpcı anhə yo.
- Ne, (mom i) aphə yo.
- Aniyo, swipci anhə yo.
- Ne, (ki kilim i) alimtawə yo.

T. Response Drill

Tutor: Muəs ilo hakkyo e wassimnikka?
/catongcha/

Student: Catongcha lo wassimnita.

'How did you come to school?' /car/

'I came by car.'

1. ənce Hankuk e wassimnikka?
/chən-ku-pæk-yuk-sip nyən/
 2. Sənsəng in əti eṣe il-hasimnikka?
/Mikuk Kongpowən/
 3. Mikuk Təsakwan e muəs ilo issimnikka?
/yəngsa/
- Chən-ku-pæk-yu-sip nyən e wassimnita.
- Mikuk Kongpowən eṣe il-hamnita.
- Yəngsa lo issimnita.

4. Cip ese samusil kkaci əlma na I-sip-o pun kəllimnita.
kəllimnikka? /i-sip-o pun/
5. Han cuil e myəchil tongan il-haci Tassæ tongan il-hamnita.
yo? /tassæ/
6. Halu e myəch sikan kongpu-haci Yəsəs sikan kongpu-hamnita.
yo? /yəsəs sikan/
7. əlma tongan Hankuk mal il Tu tal tongan pəwəssimnita.
pəwəssci yo? /tu tal/
8. Muəs ilo yəki e wassimnikka? Pihængki lo wassimnita.
/pihængki/

U. Response Exercise (Answer the questions in Informal Polite speech based on the fact.)

1. ənce Hankuk e wassə yo?
2. Muəs ilo wasse yo?
3. Cikim eti ese il-hase yo?
4. Kəki ese muəs ilo issise yo?
5. əlma tongan kəki ese il-həssə yo?
6. Musin il il hase yo?
7. Achim e muəs illo il-hale ose yo?
8. Catongcha lo sikan i əlma na kəllyə yo?
9. Myəch-si e cip e kase yo?
10. Hankuk mal myəch tal tongan pəwəsse yo?
11. Halu e myəch sikan kongpu-haci yo?
12. Hakkyo ese sənsəng cip kkaci ppəsi lo əlma na kəllici yo?

EXERCISES

1. Tell the following story to Mr. Park once in Formal Polite and once in Informal Polite Speech.

You came to Korea two years ago. This is not your first time but second time in Korea. The first time was in 1951. At that time, you were in the military service. This time you have been here as a foreign service officer. Now, you're going to go back to America in one month. Last time you flew to Korea but you intend to go by boat this time. It usually takes 10 to 18 days (to go) to America by boat, and about 23 hours by plane.

2. Find out the following information from Mr. James (or Mr. Park)
 - a. When he came to Korea (or to America.)
 - b. How ('by what means of transportation') he came.
 - c. Where he is working.
 - d. In what capacity he works there.
 - e. How long he has been there.
 - f. What kind of work he does.
 - g. By what means he goes to work in the morning.
 - h. How long it takes.
 - i. How far it is from his house to the office.
 - j. What time he usually goes home.
 - k. How many hours a day he works.
 - l. How many days it takes to go to America (or Korea) by boat.
 - m. How many years he's going to live in Seoul (or Washington.)
 - n. How many weeks he has studied Korean.
 - o. What time he usually leaves home in the morning.
3. Using maps and/or a geometrical globe, practice asking and answering questions on how long it takes from one given geographical point to another by a given mode of transportation. The geographical points may include two place names within a city or building as well as countries.

4. Tell Mr. Park that:

- a. You have been to Korea several times.
- b. This is your third time in Seoul.
- c. Today is the fourth day of the week.
- d. Korean is your second foreign language.
- e. This week is your fifth week in Korean studies.
- f. Seoul is three times larger than Pusan.
- g. You were in the military service 8 years ago.
- h. Mr. Brown was an ambassador until three months ago.
- i. You are going to leave for America three weeks from now.
- j. You stayed in South Korea for five days.
- k. You came to work by streetcar this morning.

제 8 과 일에 관해서

(대화 A)

1. 이 : 선생은 요새 무엇(을) 하세요?

나

나마다

학교에 다닙니다

2. 제임스 : 나마다 학교에 다닙니다.

무엇(을) 배우 러

3. 이 : 무엇을 배우 러 (학교에) 다니세요?

배우 러고

4. 제임스 : 한국 말을 배우 러고 다닙니다.

배우 기

습습 니까

5. 이 : 한국 말을 배우 기 습습 니까?

그리

재미

재미 있읍니다

6. 제임스 : 아니요, 그리 습지 않읍니다. 그러나,
재미 있읍니다.

UNIT 8. Talking About One's Work
 BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue ALee

1. Sənsəng ɪn yosə̄ mues (ɪl) hase yo? What are you doing these days?

James

nal	day
nal mata	everyday
hakkyo e tanimnita	[I] 'm attending school

2. Nal mata hakkyo e tanimnita. I go to school everyday.

Lee

3. Muə̄s (ɪl) pəulə̄ (hakkyo) tanise yo? ('to learn what!'); ('what to learn?')
- What are you studying? ('What to learn do you go to school?')

James

4. Hankuk mal il pəulyə̄ko tanimnita. I'm studying Korean. ('I'm attending in order to learn Korean.')

Lee

5. Hankuk mal (ɪl) pəuki swipsimnikka? Is Korean easy? ('Is it easy to learn Korean?')

James

6. Aniyo, kili swipci ahhsimnita. Kilə̄na, cə̄mi issimnita. No, it's not very easy. But it's interesting.
- so; in such a way; not so
 fun
 [it]'s interesting ('there's fun!')

7. 이 : 선생은 독일 말을 하세요?

조금

(만) 할 수 있읍니다

하지 못 합니다

8. 제임스 : 예, 조금 (만) 할 수 있읍니다. 그러나,
하지 못 합니다.

더

어렵습니까

9. 이 : 독일 말과 한국 말은 어느 말이 배우기(가)
더 어렵습니까?

독일 말보다

10. 제임스 : 한국 말이 독일 말보다 더 어렵습니다.

(대화 B)

으래간만입니다

이쯤

재미가 어 ör ör 습니까

11. 김 : 으래간만입니다. 이쯤 이에 재미가
어 ör ör 습니까?

덕분에

12. 제임스 : 덕분에 재미 있읍니다. 선생은 어 떠서세요?

분주합니다

13. 김 : 저는 요즘 좀 분주합니다.

Lee

7. Sənsəng in Tokil mal il hase yo? Do you speak German?

James

cokim

a little

(mal-)hal su issimnita

[I] can speak

i(l)kci mot hamnita

[I] cannot read

8. Ne, cokim (mal-)hal su issimnita.
Kilena, ilkci mot hamnita.

Yes, I can speak [it] a little. I
can't read [it], though.

Lee

tə

more

elyəpsimnikka

is [it] difficult?

9. Tokil mal kwa Hankuk mal in əni
mal i pəuksi (ka) tə əlyəpsimnikka?

Which (language) is more difficult
to learn, German or Korean?

James

Tokil mal pota

than German

10. Hankuk mal i Tokil mal pota
tə əlyəpsimnita.

Korean is more difficult than
German.

Dialogue BKim

olæ kan man imnita

long time no see

icim

these days

cəmi ka əttəhsimnikka

('how is fun?')

11. Olæ kan man imnita. Icim il e
cəmi ka əttəhsimnikka?

I haven't seen you for some time.
How is your job coming along
(these days)? ('How is fun at
work these days?')

James

təkpun e

('at your favor!')

12. Təkpun e cəmi issimnita. Sənsəng
in əttəse yo?

I'm doing fine, thank you. And how
about you?

그런데

근무

근무 하십니까

14. 제임스 : 그런데, 요새는 어데 근무 하십니까?

전에

말하지 않았습니까

회사

15. 김 : 아, 제가 전에 말하지 않았습니까? 지금
반도 회사에 근무합니다.

주로

16. 제임스 : 무슨 일을 주로 하세요?

보통

사무

사무를 봅니다

17. 김 : 보통 사무를 봅니다.

오래

오래 동안

18. 제임스 : 아, 그렇세요? 그 회사에서 오래 동안
일했습니까?

한 삼년

되었습니다

19. 김 : 한 삼년 되었습니다.

Kim

punchuhamnita

[I]'m busy; [I]'m hectic

13. Ce nin yocim com punchuhamnita.

I'm a little busy these days.

James

kilən te

by the way

kinmu

('working')

kinmu-hasimnikka

do [you] work?

14. Kilən te, yosə nin əte kinmu-hasimnikka?

Where do you work (these days), by the way?

Kim

cən e

previously

mal-haci anhəssimnikka

didn't [I] say?

hwesa

company; business firm

15. A, ce kan cən e mal-haci anhəssimnikka? Cikim Panto Hwesa e kinmu-hamnita.

Oh, didn't I tell you before? I work at the Bando Company (now).

James

culo

mainly; mostly

16. Musin il il culo hase yo?

What kind of work do you do mainly?

Kim

pothong

ordinary; ordinarily

samu

office work

samu lil pomnita

[I] do office work

17. Pothong samu lil pomnita.

I do ordinary office work.

James

olə

a long time

olə tongan

for a long time

18. A, kiləse yo? Ki hwesa esə olə tongan il-həssimnikka?

Is that so? Have you worked there ('at that company') for a long time?

Kim

han sam nyən

about 3 years; approximately 3 years

tweəssimnita

[it] has been; [it] became

19. Han sam nyən tweəssimnita.

I've been there for about three years.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. The verb tani- denotes the action of 'going and coming regularly'. Examples:
- | | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Na nin hakkyo e tanimnita. | { 'I am attending school.'
'I go to school.' |
| Ppesi ka tanimnita. | 'Buses are running.' |
4. Pœulyøko and pœule mean the same. Their use is determined by environment: pœulyøko occurs before ha- and most other verbs, while pœule occurs before only a few verbs (usually ka-, o-, and tani-). (See Grammar Note 3 of Unit 6 and Grammar Note 4 of Unit 7.)
6. Cœmi iss-ta 'is interesting' is a usage which literally means 'fun exists' or 'there is fun'. Cœmi (ka) issimnita which may precede a subject or a topic occurs as an intransitive expression with or without the particle ka after cœmi. Examples:
- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Hakkyo ka cœmi (ka) issimnita. | 'I enjoy school.' ('School is interesting.') |
| I chæk i cœmi (ka) issimnikka? | 'Is this book interesting?' |
8. The negative equivalent of Hal su issimnita. 'is able to do' is Hal su epsimnita. 'is unable to do'. Haci mot hamnita '[I] cannot do' is a substitute for Hal su epsimnita. (See Grammar Note 3.)
11. Olækan man imnita. ('It's only a long time.') is a standard expression used under the same circumstances as its English equivalent, 'I haven't seen you for some time.' or 'Long time no see.'
14. Place name + e + kinmu-ha-ta and place name + ese + il-ha-ta both mean 'works at + place name'. Note that the verb kinmu-ha- takes the particle e when preceded by a place name while the verb il-ha- takes the particle ese when preceded by a place name.
17. Pothong is used either as a sentence adverb or as a noun, or as a determinative. When pothong is a free noun it means 'usual thing'; as determinative it means 'usual', 'average', 'ordinary'; as an adverb, it means 'usually', 'ordinarily', 'generally'. Compare:

Ki kes i pothong imnita. 'That's common. ('That is the usual thing.')

Ki pun in pothong salam imnita. { 'He is an average person.'
'He is an ordinary man.'

Pothong, achim il məkci anhsimnita. 'Generally, [I] don't eat breakfast.'

18. Olæ 'a long time' and olæ tongan 'for a long time' both occur either as a nominal or as an adverbial.

19. Han 'about' occurs before numerals and is a determinative which denotes approximation of the following numeral expressions. Compare han with ccim which occurs always after numeral expressions (Unit 6). The verb stem twe- is an intransitive verb which after a title name means 'to become' and after a period of time denotes elapsing.

Samu is a noun which means 'office work'; pothong samu 'general clerical office work'. Smau (lil) po-ta which literally means 'looks at office work' is an fixed usage, meaning 'does office work'.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -ki

The verb ending -ki is added to a verb stem, or to a verb stem plus other suffixes. An inflected form ending in -ki occurs only in the positions where nominals occur (e.g., in the positions of emphasized subject, topic or object). Since this form occupies only in nominal positions, we shall call it Nominalized Verb or simply the ki form, and the -ki ending Nominalizing Verb-Ending. Note that the ki form occurs mostly before description verbs and rarely before action verbs. Examples:

Hankuk mal (il) pœuki (ka) cœmi issimnita.	'Learning Korean is interesting.'
Yœngœ (lil) kalichiki (ka) elyœpsimnikka?	'Is teaching English difficult?'
Nal i cohki (lil) palamnita.	'I hope that the weather is nice.'
Hankuk mal (il) kongpu-haki (lil) wœnhamnita.	'I want to study Korean.'

2. Particle mata

Mata 'every', 'each' occurs after a period of time or the name of an object, and means either 'each' or 'every'. A nominal + mata is used as an adverbial phrase. Examples:

Uli nin sikan mata suep i issé yo.	'We have class every hour.'
Welyoil mata pi ka omnita.	'It rains every Monday.'
Hæ mata Nyuyok e kaci yo?	'You go to New York every year, don't you?'
Salam mata ilim i talimnita.	'Each man has a different name.'
Hakkyo mata Yëngë lil kalichimnita.	'All the schools teach English.'
	('Each school teaches English.')

3. -(i)l su iss- 'can' vs. -(i)l su eps- 'cannot'

The construction -(i)l su iss- ('[There] is a way to do.') is the Korean equivalent of English 'can' or 'is able to'. The verb stem to which -(i)l is added is the equivalent of the English verb which occurs after either can or be able to. Tenses, levels and/or styles of speech are generated in the verb iss-. Compare:

Kal su issimnita.	'[I] can go.'
Kal su issëssimnita.	'[I] could go.'
Kal su issëssëssimnita.	'[I] could go.'
Kal su isskessé yo.	'[I] will be able to go.'
Kal su issé yo.	'[I] can go.'
Kal su issësé yo.	'[I] could go.'

The negative equivalent of -(i)l su iss- is either -(i)l su eps- or -ci mot ha-. Compare:

Kal su epsimnita. Kaci mot hamnita.	{ '[I] cannot go.'
--	--------------------

Note that mot 'cannot' is an adverb which occurs in the following two constructions (a) and (b) which are the same in meaning:

(a) mot + an inflected expression:

Mot without pause before an inflected expression is used to denote either 'inability' or 'impossibility' of an action or description of the subject or topic in the sentence for the following expression.

(b) -ci + mot + ha-:

The ci form of an action verb plus mot followed by ha- is used to denote either 'inability' or 'impossibility' of an action of the subject or

topic in the sentence for the verb preceding mot. Compare:

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|--------------------------|
| 1. Cə nin mot kamnita. | } | 'I cannot go.' |
| Cə nin kaci mot hamnita. | | |
| 2. Cə nin Hankil il mot ilke yo. | } | 'I cannot read Hankil.' |
| Cə nin Hankil il ilkci mot
hæ yo. | | |
| 3. Kim Sənsəng i mot wassimnita. | } | 'Mr. Kim couldn't come.' |
| Kim Sənsəng i oci mot
hæssimnita. | | |

In either of the above two constructions, tenses and levels of speech are generated in the verb which occurs immediately after mot. Compare mot with the adverb an which is used before an inflected expression to denote simple negation of the following expression (See Unit 3). Note that the construction, the -ci form of a description verb + mot ha-, is synonymous with either -ci anh- or an + a description verb. We will learn more about this in further units.

4. Particle pota 'than', 'more than'

Pota follows a nominal X with which another nominal, Y, is being compared. Nominal Y may be followed by a description verb which may be preceded by tə 'more'. Examples:

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| Tokile pota Hankuke ka tə elyəpsimnita. | } | 'Korean is more difficult than German.' |
| Hankuke ka Tokile pota tə elyəpsimnita. | | |
| I chæk pota tə ssan chæk in əpsimnita. | } | 'We don't have a cheaper book than this (book).' |
| | | |
| əce pota onil il tə cohahamnita. | } | '[I] like today better than yesterday.' |
| Onil il əce pota tə cohahamnita. | | |

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1. Cə nin nal mata hakkyo e kamnita. I go to school every day.
2. Cə nin Wəlyoil mata hakkyo e kamnita. I go to school every Monday.
3. Cə nin achim mata hakkyo e kamnita. I go to school every morning.
4. Cə nin cənyək mata hakkyo e kamnita. I go to school every evening.
5. Cə nin tal mata hakkyo e kamnita. I go to school every month.
6. Cə nin cuil mata hakkyo e kamnita. I go to school every week.
7. Cə nin hə mata hakkyo e kamnita. I go to school every year.
8. Cə nin sikan mata hakkyo e kamnita. I go to school every hour.
9. Cə nin pam mata hakkyo e kamnita. I go to school every night.

B. Substitution Drill

1. Na nin nal mata hakkyo e kamnita. I go to school everyday.
2. Na nin cuil mata Səul e kamnita. I go to Seoul every week.
3. Na nin Ilyoil mata tapang e kamnita. I go to a tearoom every Sunday.
4. Na nin pam mata siktang e kamnita. I go to a restaurant every night.
5. Na nin cənyək mata kikcang e kamnita. I go to the theatre every evening.
6. Na nin achim mata samusil e kamnita. I go to the office every morning.
7. Na nin Thoyoil mata sicang e kamnita. I go to the market place every Saturday.
8. Na nin sikan mata kyosil e kamnita. I go to the classroom every hour.
9. Na nin tal mata inhəng e kamnita. I go to the bank every month.

C. Substitution Drill

1. Salam mata Yëngë lil pœulyëko
hamnita. Everybody intends to learn English.
2. Salam mata Yëngë lil kalichilyëko
hamnita. Everybody intends to teach English.
3. Salam mata Yëngë lil alyëko
hamnita. Everybody intends to know English.
4. Salam mata Yëngë lil mal-halyëko
hamnita. Everybody intends to speak English.
5. Salam mata Yëngë lil ilkilyëko
hamnita. Everybody intends to read English.
- *6. Salam mata Yëngë lil ssilyëko
hamnita. Everybody intends to write English.
7. Salam mata Yëngë lil kongpu-halyëko
hamnita. Everybody intends to study English.
8. Salam mata Yëngë lil mal-hal su
issimnita. Everybody can speak English.
9. Salam mata Yëngë lil mal-haci
anhsimnita. Not everybody speaks English.
10. Salam mata Yëngë lil kalichil su
epsimnita. Not everybody can teach English.
11. Salam mata Yëngë lil kalichici mot
hamnita. Not everybody can teach English.

D. Substitution Drill

1. Salam mata Yëngë lil pœumnita. Everybody learns English.
2. Hakkyo mata Yëngë il kalichimnita. All the schools teach English.
3. Sënsæng mata Yëngë lil amnita. All the teachers know English.
4. Haksæng mata Yëngë lil kongpu-
hamnita. Each student studies English.
5. Tëesa mata Yëngë lil cal hamnita. Every ambassador speaks good English.
6. Wekyokwan mata Yëngë ilil
ilksimnita. Everyone in the foreign service
reads English.
7. Ai mata Yëngë lil pœulyëko
hamnita. Every child intends to learn English.

8. Sənsəeng mata Yəngə lil (mal-)hal
su issimnita. All the teachers can speak English.
9. Sənsəeng mata Yəngə lil mal-haci mot
hamnita. Not every teacher can speak English.
10. Sənsəeng mata Yəngə lil kalichil su
epsimnita. Not every teacher can teach English.
11. Sənsəeng mata Yəngə lil kongpu-haci
anhsimnita. Not every teacher studies English.

E. Substitution Drill

1. Hankuk mal pæuki swipsimnikka? Is learning Korean easy?
2. Hankuk mal kalichiki swipsimnikka? Is teaching Korean easy?
3. Hankuk mal (mal-)haki swipsimnikka? Is speaking Korean easy?
4. Hankuk mal i(l)kki swipsimnikka? Is reading Korean easy?
5. Hankuk mal ssiki swipsimnikka? Is writing Korean easy?
6. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki swipsimnikka? Is studying Korean easy?
7. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki əlyepsimnikka? Is studying Korean difficult?
8. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki cæmi
issimnikka? Is studying Korean interesting?
9. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki
kwænchanhsimnikka?
10. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki
cohahamnikka? Do you like studying Korean?
11. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki consimnikka? Is learning Korean, O.K.?
12. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki əttəhsimnikka? How do you like studying Korean?

F. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Cə nin Panto Hwesa e kinmu-hamnita. | I work
I am employed } at Bando Company. |
| 2. Cə nin <u>Mikuk Tæsakwan</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work at the US Embassy. |
| 3. Cə nin <u>Səul Sichəng</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work at Seoul City Hall. |
| 4. Cə nin <u>Hankuk inhæng</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work at the Bank of Korea. |
| 5. Cə nin <u>Pusan Uphyənkuk</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work at the Pusan Post Office. |
| 6. Cə nin <u>Panto Hothel</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work at the Bando Hotel. |
| 7. Cə nin <u>Mikuk Cəngpu</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work for the US Government. |
| 8. Cə nin <u>sinæ sangcəm</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work at a store downtown. |
| 9. Cə nin <u>Səul pækhwacəm</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work at Seoul Department Store. |

G. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Il i cəmi issimnita. | [My] work is interesting. |
| 2. <u>Hakkyc</u> ka cəmi issimnita. | School is interesting.
I enjoy school. |
| 3. <u>Kongpu</u> ka cəmi issimnita. | Studying is interesting.
I enjoy studying. |
| 4. <u>Chæk</u> i cəmi issimnita. | This book is interesting. |
| 5. <u>Hankuk mal</u> i cəmi issimnita. | Korean is interesting. |
| 6. Cə salam i cəmi issimnita. | He ('that man') is interesting. |
| 7. <u>Il-haki</u> ka cəmi issimnita. | I enjoy working. ('It's interesting to
to work.') |
| 8. <u>Kongpu-haki</u> ka cəmi issimnita. | Working is interesting.
I enjoy studying.
Studying is interesting. |
| 9. <u>Chæk i(l)kki</u> ka cəmi issimnita. | I enjoy reading books.
Reading books is interesting. |
| *10. <u>Munce</u> ka cəmi issimnita. | The problem is interesting. |

H. Substitution Drill

1. Yëngë lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak a little English.
- *2. Wekuke lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak foreign languages a little.
- *3. Cungkuke lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak a little Chinese.
- *4. Tokile lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak a little German.
- *5. Ilpone lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak a little Japanese.
- *6. Pullansëe lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak a little French.
- *7. Ssolyene lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak a little Russian.
- *8. Ithælie lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak a little Italian.
- *9. Sepanaë lil com (mal-)hal su issimnita. I can speak a little Spanish.

I. Substitution Drill

1. Cë nin Yëngë lil ssici mot hamnita. I can't write in English.
2. Cë nin ilim il ssici mot hamnita. I can't write [my] name.
3. Cë nin Hankil il ssici mot ham ita. I can't write Hankul.
4. Cë nin Tokile lil ssici mot hamnita. I can't write in German.
5. Cë nin Pullansëe lil ssici mot hamnita. I can't write in French.
6. Cë nin Ssolyene lil ssici mot hamnita. I can't write in Russian.
7. Cë nin Ithælie lil ssici mot hamnita. I can't write in Italian.
8. Cë nin Hankuke lil ssici mot hamnita. I can't write in Korean.
9. Cë nin Hakuke lil ilkci mot hamnita. I can't read in Korean.

10. Cè nin Hankukè lil mal-haci mot
hamnita. I can't speak Korean.
11. Cè nin Hankukè lil pæuci mot
hamnita. I can't learn Korean.
12. Cè nin Hankukè lil kalichici mot
hamnita. I can't teach Korean.
- *13. Cè nin Hankukè lil alci mot
hamnita. I don't know Korean. ('I can't know
Korean.')
- *14. Cè nin Hankukè lil ssici mot
hamnita. {I can't use Korean.
{I can't write Korean.

J. Substitution Drill

1. Hankuk mal i Tokil mal pota tə
əlyəpsimnita. Korean is more difficult than
German.
2. Cungkuk mal i Yèngè pota tə
əlyəpsimnita. Chinese is more difficult than
English.
3. Pullanse mal i Ithæli mal pota
tə əlyəpsimnita. French is more difficult than
Italian.
4. Ssolyèn mal i Hankuk mal pota
tə əlyəpsimnita. Russian is more difficult than
Korean.
5. Ilpon mal i Ssolyèn mal pota tə
əlyəpsimnita. Japanese is more difficult than
Russian.
6. Yèngè ka Tokil mal pota te
əlyəpsimnita. English is more difficult than
German.
7. Yèngè ka Tokil mal pota tə
swipsimnita. English is easier than German.
8. Yèngè ka Tokil mal pota tə
cæmi issimnita. English is more interesting than
German.
9. Yèngè ka Tokil mal pota tə
pokcap-hamnita. English is more complicated than
German.
- *10. Yèngè ka Tokil mal pota tə
cæmi əpsimnita. English is less interesting than
German.
- *11. Yèngè ka Tokil mal pota tə
kantan-hamnita. English is simpler than German.

K. Substitution Drill

1. Musin il il culo hase yo? What (kind of work) do you do mainly?
2. Musin il il nal mata hase yo? What (kind of work) do you do every-day?
3. Musin il il kiləhke hase yo? {What are you working at so hard?
What are you doing in such a way?
4. Musin il il pothong hase yo? What do you usually do?
5. Musin il il kili hase yo? What are you doing so hard?
- * 6. Musin il il manhi hase yo? What do you do mostly?
7. Musin il il cənyək mata hase yo? What do you do every evening?
8. Musin il il taskə hase yo? What do you usually do?
- * 9. Musin il il cikim puthe hase yo? What [are] you [going to] do from now on?
10. Musin il il næil kkaci hase yo? What [are] you [going to] do until tomorrow?
11. Musin il il ki ttæ e hase yo? What [are] you [going to] do at that time?

L. Substitution Drill

1. Cən e mal-haci anhəssimnikka? Didn't [I] tell [you] before?
2. Cən e kaci anhəssimnikka? Didn't [you] go [there] before?
3. Cən e saci anhəssimnikka? Didn't [you] buy [it] before?
4. Cən e mannaci anhəssimnikka? Didn't [we] meet before?
5. Cən e pəuci anhəssimnikka? Didn't [you] learn [it] before?
6. Cən e ilkci anhəssimnikka? Didn't [you] read [it] before?
7. Cən e cohcı anhəssimnikka? Wasn't [it] nice before?
- *8. Cən e poci anhəssimnikka? Didn't [you] see [it] before?
- *9. Cən e kkith-næci anhəssimnikka? Didn't [you] finish [it] before?

M. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. (Han) sam nyen ccim tweessimnita. | It's been about three years. |
| 2. (Han) <u>sam cuil ccim</u> tweessimnita. | It's been about three weeks. |
| 3. (Han) <u>se sikan ccim</u> tweessimnita. | It's been about three hours. |
| 4. (Han) <u>sək tal ccim</u> tweessimnita. | It's been about three months. |
| 5. (Han) <u>sam pun ccim</u> tweessimnita. | It's been about three minutes. |
| 6. (Han) <u>sa nyen pan ccim</u> tweessimnita. | It's been about four and a half years. |
| 7. (Han) <u>ne sikan pan ccim</u> tweessimnita. | It's been about four and a half hours. |
| 8. (Han) <u>nək tal pan ccim</u> tweessimnita. | It's been about four and a half months. |

N. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Kim Sənsəng in wekyokwan (i)
tweessimnita. | Mr. Kim became a diplomat. |
| 2. Kim Sənsəng in <u>kunin</u> (i)
tweessimnita. | Mr. Kim became a soldier. |
| 3. Kim Sənsəng in <u>təsa</u> (ka)
tweessimnita. | Mr. Kim became an ambassador. |
| 4. Kim Sənsəng in <u>yəngsa</u> (ka)
tweessimnita. | Mr. Kim became a consul. |
| * 5. Kim Sənsəng in <u>Təthongyəng</u> (i)
tweessimnita. | Mr. Kim became the President. |
| * 6. Kim Sənsəng in <u>hakca</u> (ka)
tweessimnita. | Mr. Kim became a scholar. |
| * 7. Kim Sənsəng in <u>təhak kyosu</u> (ka)
tweessimnita. | Mr. Kim became a college professor. |
| * 8. Kim Sənsəng in <u>təhak kangsa</u> (ka)
tweessimnita. | Mr. Kim became a college instructor. |
| * 9. Kim Sənsəng in <u>kongpokwan</u> (i)
tweessimnita. | Mr. Kim became an information officer. |
| * 10. Kim Sənsəng in <u>thongyəkkwan</u> (i)
tweessimnita. | Mr. Kim became an interpreter. |
| * 11. Kim Sənsəng in <u>sinmun kica</u> (ka)
tweessimnita. | Mr. Kim became a journalist. |
| * 12. Kim Sənsəng in <u>lysə</u> (ka)
tweessimnita. | Mr. Kim became a doctor. |

- *13. Kim Sənsəng in sacang (i)
tweəssimnita. Mr. Kim became a president (of the company.)
- *14. Kim Sənsəng in pyənhosa (ka)
tweəssimnita. Mr. Kim became a lawyer.
- *15. Kim Sənsəng in kyəngchal(kwan) (i)
tweəssimnita. Mr. Kim became a policeman.

0. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal i əlyəpsimnita.
/Tokil mal/

Student: Tokil mal in tə əlyəwə yo.

1. Tokil mal i swipsimnita.

/Pullansə mal/

2. Yəng-Han sacən i pissamnita.

/Han-Yəng sacən/

3. Səul i khimnita. /Nyuyok/

4. Səul e mulkən kaps i ssamnita.

/Pusan/

5. Kim Sənsəng cip i kakkapsimnita.

/Pak Sənsəng cip/

*6. Catongcha ka copsimnita.

/pihəngki/

7. Hankuk yəca ka yeppimnita. /Mikuk
yəca/

8. Ilpon i cakin nala imnita.

/Hankuk/

'Korean is difficult.' /German/

'German is more difficult.'

Pullansə mal in tə swiwe yo.

Han-Yəng sacən in tə pissa yo.

Nyuyok in tə khə yo.

Pusan e mulkən kaps in tə ssa yo.

Pak Sənsəng cip in tə kakkawə yo.

Pihəngki nin tə copa yo.

Mikuk yəca nin tə yeppe yo.

Hankuk in tə cakin nala iye yo.

P. Expansion Drill

- Tutor: Tokil mal i swipsimnita.. 'German is easy.' /French/
 /Pullansè mal/
- Student: Tokil mal i Pullansè mal 'German is easier than French.'
 pota tè swipsimnita.
1. Hankuk i caksimnita. /Ilpon/ Hankuk i Ilpon pota tè caksimnita.
 2. Pusan i mèmnita. /Inchen/ Pusan i Inchèn pota tè mèmnita.
 3. Kicha ka cal tanimnita. /pihængki/ Kicha ka pihængki pota tè cal tanimnita.
 4. Yèngè ka əlyøpsimnita. /Hankuk mal/ Yèngè ka Hankuk mal pota tè əlyøpsimnita.
 5. Hankuk yèca ka alimtapsimnita. /Cungkuk yèca/ Hankuk yèca ka Cungkuk yèca pota tè alimtapsimnita.
 6. Kim Sønsæng i yèngè lil cal hamnita. /Ceimsi Sønsæng/ Kim Sønsæng i Ceimsi Sønsæng pota Yèngè lil tè cal hamnita.
 7. Khin sacèn il cohahamnita. /cakin sacèn/ Khin sacèn il cakin sacèn pota tè cohahamnita.
 8. Søul e salam i manhi issimnita. /Wøsingthon/ Søul e Wøsingthon pota tè salam i manhi issimnita.

Q. Response Drill

- Tutor: Yèngè lil mal-hal su issè yo? 'Can you speak English?'
- Student: Ne, (Yèngè lil) mal-hal su issimnita. 'Yes, I can (speak).'
1. Hankil il ilkil su issè yo? Ne, (Hankil il) ilkil su issimnita.
 2. Hakkyo e kal su issè yo? Ne, (hakkyo e) kal su issimnita.
 3. Yèngè lil kalichil su issè yo? Ne, (Yèngè lil) kalichil su issimnita.
 4. Onil cip e issil su issè yo? Ne, (onil) cip e issil su issimnita.
 5. Cikim kil il mule pol su issè yo? Ne, (cikim kil il) mule pol su issimnita.
 6. Næil il-hal su issè yo? Ne, (næil) il-hal su issimnita.
 7. Samusil e tillil su issè yo? Ne, (samusil e) tillil su issimnita.
 8. Ki catongcha lil phal su issè yo? Ne, (ki catongcha lil) phal su issimnita.

9. Ohu e ttənal su issə yo? Ne, (ohu e) ttənal su issimnita.
 10. Ppəsi lɪl thal su issə yo? Ne, (ppəsi lɪl) thal su issimnita.
 11. Taim tal puthə hakkyo e tanil su issə yo? Ne, (taim tal puthə hakkyo e) tanil su issimnita.
 12. Nəil kkaci il il kkith-nəl su i issə yo? Ne, nəil kkaci (il il) kkith-nəl su issimnita.
 12. Ki il il cikim sicak-hal su issə yo? Ne, (ki il il) cikim sicak-hal su issimnita.

R. Response Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo e kal su issimnikka?

'Can you go to school?'

Student: Aniyo, (hakkyo e) kal su əpsimnita.

'No, I cannot (go).'

1. Hankil il ilkil su issimnikka?

Aniyo, (Hankil il) ilkil su əpsimnita.

2. Yəngə lɪl kalichil su issimnikka?

Aniyo, (Yəngə lɪl) kalichil su əpsimnita.

3. Onil cip e issil su issimnikka?

Aniyo, (cip e) issil su əpsimnita.

4. Cikim kil il mule pol su issimnikka?

Aniyo, (kil il) mule pol su əpsimnita.

5. Nəil il-hal su issimnikka?

Aniyo, il-hal su əpsimnita.

6. Samusil e tillil su issimnikka?

Aniyo, tillil su əpsimnita.

7. Ki catongcha lɪl phal su issimnikka?

Aniyo, phal su əpsimnita.

8. Ohu e ttənal su issimnikka?

Aniyo, ttənal su əpsimnita.

9. Mikuk ese hakkyo e tanil su issimnikka?

Aniyo, tanil su əpsimnita.

S. Response Drill

- Tutor: Hakkyo e kal su əpsimnikka? 'Can't you go to school?'
- Student: Ne, kaci mot hamnita. 'No, I can't (go).'
1. Yenge l'il mal-hal su əpsimnikka? Ne, mal-haci mot hamnita.
2. Hankil il ilkil su əpsimnikka? Ne, ilkci mot hamnita.
3. Tokil mal il kalichil su əpsimnikka? Ne, kalichici mot hamnita.
4. Onil næ samusil e tillil su əpsimnikka? Ne, tillici mot hamnita.
5. Næil il-hal su əpsimnikka? Ne, (næil) il-haci mot hamnita.
6. Cha l'il phal su əpsimnikka? Ne, phalci mot hamnita.
7. Ohu e ttēnal su əpsimnikka? Ne, ttēnaci mot hamnita.
8. Næil kkaci il il kkith-næl su əpsimnikka? Ne, (næil kkaci) khith-næci mot hamnita.
9. Mikuk ese hakkyo e tanil su əpsimnikka? Ne, (Mikuk ese hakkyo e) tanici mot hamnita.

T. Response Drill

- Tutor: Hakkyo ka məmnikka? 'Is the school far?'
- Student: Aniyo, kili məlci anhsimnita. 'No, it's not so far.'
1. Haksəng i manhsimnikka? Aniyo, kili manhcí anhsimnita.
2. Sicang e mulken i pissamnikka? Aniyo, kili pissaci anhsimnita.
3. inħəng i kakkapsimnikka? Aniyo, kili kakkapci anhsimnita.
4. I kilim i alimtapsimnikka? Aniyo, kili alimtapci anhsimnita.
5. K1 pun i Ssolyen mal il cal hamnikka? Aniyo, kili cal haci anhsimnita.
6. Tangsin in cə yəca l'il cohahamnikka? Aniyo, kili cohahaci anhsimnita.
7. Hankuk mal kyosil i khimnikka? Aniyo, kili khici anhsimnita.
8. Sikan i manhi kəllimnikka? Aniyo, kili manhi kəllici anhsimnita.
9. Ssolyen mal i pəu ki swipsimnikka? Aniyo, kili swipci anhsimnita.
10. Cə tokil yəca ka yeppimnikka? Aniyo, kili yeppici anhsimnita.
11. Sənsəng in cikim puncuhamnikka? Aniyo, kili puncuhaci anhsimnita.
12. Yenge l'il kalichiki əlyepsimnikka? Aniyo, kili əlyepci anhsimnita.
13. Yeng-Han sacən i philyo-hamnikka? Aniyo, kili philyo-haci anhsimnita.

W. Response Drill (Answer the question using /pelsse/ in the proper place.)

Tutor: Kim Sənsəng i ttənasse yo?

'Has Mr. Kim left?'

Student: Ne, (Kim Sənsəng i) pelsse
ttənassimnita.

'Yes, he has laready left.'

1. Ki il il kkith-nəssə yo?

Ne, (ki il il) pelsse kkith-nəssimnita.

2. Yənge sənsəng il mannasse yo?

Ne, (Yənge sənsəng il) pelsse
mannassimnita.

3. Han sam nyən ccim tweəssə yo?

Ne, pelsse han sam nyən ccim
tweəssimnita.

4. Haksəng i kicha e thasse yo?

Ne, (haksəng i) pelsse (kicha e)
thassimnita.5. Hankuk mal kongpu lɪl sicak-həssə
yo?Ne, (Hankuk mal kongpu lɪl) pelsse
sicak-həssimnita.

6. Onil i Suyoil iye yo?

Ne, (Onil i) pelsse Suyoil imnita.

7. Pak Sənsəng in il-hale kassə yo?

Ne, (Pak Sənsəng in) pelsse il-hale
kassimnita.

8. Sənsəng in hyuka lɪl patəssə yo?

Ne, pelsse (hyuka lɪl) patəssimnita.

9. Com swiessə yo?

Ne, pelsse swiessimnita.

10. Kicha ka cəngkəcang e tahassə yo?

Ne, pelsse (cəngkəcang e)
tahassimnita.

V. Response Drill (Answer the question using /acik/ in the proper place.)

Tutor: Kim Sənsəng i pelsse
ttənassimnikka?

'Has Mr. Kim left already?'

Student: Aniyo, (Kim Sənsəng i) acik
ttənaci anhəssə yo?

'No, he's not left yet.'

1. Hakkyo ka pelsse kkith-nassimnikka?

Aniyo, (hakkyo ka) acik kkith-naci
anhəssə yo.2. Yənge sənsəng il pelsse
mannassimnikka?Aniyo, (Yənge sənsəng il) acik
mannaci anhəssə yo.

3. Pelsse sam nyən i tweəssimnikka?

Aniyo, acik (sam nyən i) tweci
anhəssə yo.4. Hankuk mal kongpu lɪl pelsse sicak-
həssimnikka?Aniyo, (Hankuk mal kongpu lɪl) aci
sicak-həci anhəssə yo.

5. Pak Sənsəng iñ pəlsse il-hale kassimnikka? Aniyo, (Pak Sənsəng iñ) acik (il-hale) kaci anhəsse yo.
6. Sənsəng iñ pəlsse hyuka lil patəssimnikka? Aniyo, (Acik hyuka lil) patci anhəsse yo.
7. Kicha ka pəlsse cəngkəcang e tahassimnikka? Aniyo, (kicha ka) acik (cəngkəcang e) tahci anhəsse yo.
8. Pihaŋki ka pəlsse ttənassimnikka? Aniyo, (pihaŋki ka) acik ttənaci anhəsse yo.
9. Ki il il pəlsse kkith-nəssimnikka? Aniyo, (ki il il) acik kkith-nəsci anhəsse yo.
10. Kim Sənsəng i pəlsse yəngsa ka tweessimnikka? Aniyo, (Kim Sənsəng i) acik yəngsa ka tweci anhəsse yo.

EXERCISES

1. Tell the following story to Mr. Park that:
- (a) You are attending school these days to study Korean. Learning Korean is not so easy but it is interesting. Foreign languages are necessary for you. You can speak German a little but cannot read it well. Korean is more difficult to study than German.
 - (b) Mr. Lee is a little busy these days. He didn't tell you before, but he is employed at the Bando Company, where he does ordinary office work. And, he has lots of work everyday. He has been with the Company for about three months now. He likes his job very much.
2. James wants to know what Mr. Kim, your friend, is. Tell him that Mr. Kim has become a(n):
- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| a. soldier | i. President of a company |
| b. ambassador | j. Consul |
| c. the President | k. clerk |
| d. professor | l. scholar |
| e. journalist | m. interpreter |
| f. (medical) doctor | n. information officer |
| g. lawyer | o. secretary |
| h. college professor | p. police(men) |
| | q. civil servant |

3. Ask Mr. James in Korean:

- a. Which (one) is more difficult to study, Korean or German.
- b. Which (one) is more expensive, an English-Korean dictionary or a Korean-English dictionary.
- c. Which is larger, Seoul or Pusan.
- d. Which is nearer (or farther) from America, Japan or Korea.
- e. Which is faster, an airplane or a train.
- f. Which is needed more, a Korean-English dictionary or an English-Korean dictionary.
- g. Which one he likes better, a pencil or a fountain pen.
- h. Who speaks English better, Mr. Kim or Mr. James.
- i. Which language is more complicated, French or German.
- j. Which is more interesting to learn, speaking or reading.
- k. Which is less interesting, teaching or learning.
- l. Which is simpler, to write or to read.

4. Pak sensæng asks:

- | | |
|--|--|
| a. if Mr. Lee can write Hankil. | <u>You</u> answer:
'No, he can't.' |
| b. if everybody knows English. | 'Yes, everybody does.' |
| c. if you intend to leave tomorrow. | 'No, I'm going to leave the day after tomorrow.' |
| d. if you go to the market place every Saturday. | 'Yes, I do (go every Saturday).' |
| e. if you are employed by the Bank of America. | 'No, I work for the Government.' |
| f. if every ambassador speaks good English. | 'No, not every ambassador does.' |
| g. if teaching Korean is not easy. | 'No, it's not that easy, but it's all right.' |
| h. how long you have worked for the Government. | 'About three and a half years.' |
| i. how is it learning Korean. | 'Oh, it's not so difficult.' |
| j. what kind of work you do mainly. | 'Now I do consular work.' |
| k. if you have had a vacation. | 'Not yet, but I'm going to get one next week.' |
| l. if the school already is over. | 'No, it's not over yet.' |

5. Make short statements in which the following expressions are included:

- a. cuil mata
- b. kili
- c. tə
- d. culo
- e. pothong
- f. olæ (tongan)
- g. kilehke
- h. cikim puthe
- i. næil kkaci
- k. pəsse
- k. acik

제 9 과 영화 구경

(대화 A)

영화

1. 미쓰 촌 : 오늘 저녁에 영화 보러 안 가겠어요?

참

좋은 생각

2. 미쓰 부탁운 : 아, 그것, 참 좋은 생각입니다. 어디에 좋은 영화가 있어요?

국제

국제극장

(영화를) 상영합니다

상영하고 있읍니다

3. 미쓰 촌 : 국제극장에서 미국 영화를 상영하고 있읍니다.

보고 싶습니다

4. 미쓰 부탁운 : 나는 한국 영화를 보고 싶습니다.

5. 미쓰 촌 : 한국 영화를 좋아하세요?

가끔

6. 미쓰 부탁운 : 예, 가끔 보러 가지요.

다

듣습니다, 들읍니다

알어 듣습니다

7. 미쓰 촌 : 한국 말을 다 알어 듣습니까?

UNIT 9. Going to the Movies

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

(Miss Choi and Miss Brown work in the same office.)

Miss Choi

- yənghwa [the] movies
 1. Onil cənyək e yənghwa pole Wouldn't you like to go to see a
 an kakesse yo? movie tonight?

Miss Brown

- cham really; very
 cohin səngkak good idea; good thought
 2. A, ki kəs, cham cohin səngkak Oh, that's a very good idea. Is
 imnita. əti e cohin yənghwa ka there a good movie on? ('Is there
 isse yo? a good movie somewhere?')

Miss Choi

- kukce international
 Kukce Kikcang International Theatre
 (yənghwa lɪl) sangyəng-hamnita [they] show movies
 sangyəng-hako issimnita movies are being shown
 3. Kukce Kikcang ese Mikuk yənghwa lɪl [They] are showing an American
 sangyəng-hako issimnita. movie at the Interantional
 Theatre.

Miss Brown

- poko siphsimnita/sipssimnita/ I want to see; I'd like to see
 4. Na nɪn Hankuk yənghwa lɪl poko I want to see a Korean movie.
 siphsimnita.

Miss Choi

5. Hankuk yənghwa lɪl cohahase yo? Do you like Korean movies?

Miss Brown

- kakkim sometimes
 6. Ne, kakkim pole kaci yo. Yes, I go to see [them] sometimes.

아이 듣지 못 합니다

그렇지만

연습

연습합니다

8. 미쓰 부탁운 : 아니요, 다 아이 듣지 못 합니다. 그렇지만,
좋은 연습입니다.

(대화 B)

틈

9. RA : 틈이 있습니까?

바쁨니다

10. RE : 왜요? 좀 바쁨니다.

무슨 일로

그렇게

느

11. RA : 무슨 일로 그렇게 느 바뻐요?

할 일

뻐

맙습니다

12. RB : 오늘은 할 일이 빠 많습니다.

그래서

나하고

구경

구경갑니다, 구경합니다

Miss Choi

ta
titsimnita}
tilimnita

ale titsimnikka

all

[I] hear; [I] listen to
do you comprehend?; do you
understand?

7. Hankuk mal il ta ale titsimnikka? Do you understand Korean (language) thoroughly?

Miss Brown

ale titci mot hamnita

kilechi man

yensip

yensip-hamnita

I don't understand; I can't
understand

however; nevertheless

practice

[I] practice

8. Aniyo, ta ale titci mot hamnita. No, I don't understand it all. But
Kilehci man, cohin yensip imnita.

Dialogue BRoommate A

thim

free time; spare time

9. Thim } 1 issimnikka?
Sikan

Are you free now? ('Do you have
spare time?')

Roommate B

pappimnita

[I]'m busy

10. Wæ yo? Com pappimnita.

I'm a little busy, why?

Roommate A

musin il lo

why ('with what kind of business')

kilehke

so; that way; in such a way

nil

all the time; always

11. Musin il lo kilehke nil pappe
yo?

How come you are so busy all the
time? ('With what business you
are always busy?')

13. RA: 그래서, 나하고 구경 안 가겠어요?

미안하지만

나 갑니다

나 갈 수 없읍니다

14. RB: 미안하지만, 오늘은 나 갈 수 없읍니다.

15. RA: 그럼, 내일은 나와 같이 나 갈 수 있겠어요?

16. RB: 예, 내일은 바쁘지 않겠읍니다. 내일
같이 나 갑시다.

17. RA: 그러면, 내일까지 기다리겠어요.

Roommate B

hal il	work to do; something to do
phèk	very; quite
manhsimnita	[there]'re many; [there]'re plenty

12. Onil in hal il i phèk manhsimnita. I have a lot of things to do today.

Roommate A

kilæ se	therefore; so
na hako	with me
kukyèng	show; sightseeing
kukyèng kamnita,	[I] go to a show; [I] go sightseeing; [I] look around

13. Kilæ se, na hako kukyèng an kakessè yo? Then, you won't go to a show with me?

Roommate B

mianhaci man	I'm sorry but...
na kamnita	[I] go out
na kal su epsimnita	[I] cannot go out
14. Mianhaci man, onil in na kal su epsimnita.	I'm sorry but I can't go out today.

Roommate A

15. Kilèm, næil in na wa kathi na kal su isskessè yo? Will you be able to go out with me tomorrow, then?

Roommate B

16. Ne, næil il pappici anhkessimnita. Yes, I will not be busy tomorrow.
Næil kathi na kapsita. Let's go out together tomorrow.

Roommate A

- kitalikessè yo [I]'ll wait
17. Kilèmyèn, næil kkaci kitalikessè yo. Well, then, I'll wait until tomorrow.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogues.)

2. Cham 'really', 'very' is an adverb which occurs without pause before description verbs or other adverbs. It denotes intensification of the qualities of the following expression. Cham followed by a pause also occurs as a sentence adverb which means 'by the way'.
7. Ta 'all', 'in all', 'thoroughly' is an adverb which occurs before inflected expressions (mostly verbals or sentences) to denote either completion or entirety. Alə til- ~ alə til- 'to understand', 'to comprehend' is a verb phrase which implies that someone listens and understands through ears. The second verb in the verb phrase occurs in an alternative form tit- or til- which means 'listen to-' as an independent verb. In standard Korean, tit- occurs only in the following inflected forms: titsimnita/titsimnikka and titkessimnita/titkessimnikka; til- occurs elsewhere. Note that there are a few verb stems which are called the t-l alternative stems to which tit- ~ til- belongs. The inflections of this class of verbs are the same as tit- ~ til-.
8. Yensip 'practice' is a noun. Its verb form yensip-ha- 'to practice' occurs as a transitive verb.
9. Thim 'spare time', 'free time' is a free noun.
11. Nil 'always' is synonymous with hangsang 'all the time', ənce na 'all the time', ənce tinci 'all the time' and hangsi 'always'.
12. Phək 'quite', 'considerably', 'comparatively' is an adverb which occurs only before description verbs or other adverbs. It is used to imply that the degree of the following expression is more than the speaker's expectation.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -ko

The verb ending -ko may be added to a verb stem, or to a stem plus other suffixes. However, if either the verb iss- or siph- succeeds without pause immediately after it, tense suffixes do not occur before the -ko ending. Since the inflected form ending in -ko (or simply the ko form) occurs always before other inflected expressions it is often called the Korean Gerund. The ko form occurs in the following three constructions:

(a) -ko + iss- 'be ---ing'

An action verb ending in -ko + iss-, denotes that the action of the verb in the ko form is in the process of occurring, or in the state of being. Tenses and/or levels of speech may be generated in iss- but not in the ko form. Examples:

Cə nin ki yəca lɪl salang-hako
isſe yo.

'I am in love with her.' ('As for me, I'm in the process of loving that woman.')

Hankuk mal ɪl pəuko issimnita.

'[I] am studying Korean (now).'

ki ttæ e Səul eſə salko
isſesſe yo.

'[I] was living in Seoul at that time.'

(b) -ko + siph- and -ko siphə ha- 'want to-' and 'wants to-'

The verb siph- occurs only after the ko form. The construction -ko + siph- denotes the desire or hope of the sentence subject or topic for the action of the verb in the ko form. If the subject or topic in the sentence is other than the speaker or addressee -ko + siphə ha- is used. The tenses and/or levels of speech may be generated in the verb siph- or siphə ha-. Examples:

Cə nin yənghwa lɪl pokə
siphsimnita.

'I want to see a movie.'

Chinku lɪl mannako siphə yo?

'Do you want to meet a friend?'

Ceimsi ka Yəngə lɪl kalichiko
siphə hamnita.

'James wants to teach English.'

(c) -ko + verbs other than iss- or siph-

The ko form which may be followed by a pause also occurs before another inflected expression. The honorific and tense suffixes may be added to the ko form, but if the subject or topic is the same for both verbs, tense suffixes occur only in the final verb. This construction (i.e. -ko followed by another verb) denotes that two actions and/or descriptions are expressed one after another with the one in the ko form occurring or being stated first. Examples:

Hankuk mal i elyepko, Yengə nin
swipsimnita. 'Korean is difficult and English
is easy.'

Kim Sensəng in tesa ka tweessko,
na nin kyosu ka tweessə yo. 'Mr. Kim became an ambassador, and
I became a professor.'

Cə nin mal il pəuko, wekuk e
kako siphsimnita. 'I want to study the language and
then go to a foreign country.'

2. -ci man !...but!

Man is a particle which, preceded by a nominal or an adverbial, means simply 'only', i.e. N + man 'only N'. The ci form + man which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression to denote that some contradictory further explanation or remark will follow in the following inflected expression. Examples:

Kakkyo ka məlci man, sikan i
kili manhi kəllici anhsimnita. 'The school is far, but it doesn't
take much time.'

Cə nin Hankuk mal il pəuci man,
ce chinku nin Ilpon mal il
kalichie yo. 'I am studying Korean, but my friend
is teaching Japanese.'

3. -l/ll

We called the inflected form ending in -n/in/nin before a nominal the Present Noun-Modifier Word. (See Unit 5, Grammar Note 1.) The inflected form ending in -(i)l also occurs as a modifier of the following nominal, to denote the future action or description of, or for, the nominal. We shall call such an inflected form the Prospective Noun-Modifier Word, and the ending -(i)l the Prospective Modifier Ending. -ll is added to a consonant stem and -l to a vowel stem. The future tense suffix -kess- does not occur before -(i)l. Examples:

Ttənal kicha ka issimnita.

{'There is a train which will leave.'
'There is a train to leave.'

Næ ka ilkil chæk i əpsə yo.

'There is no book which I will read.'

Onil mammal salam i nuku ici yo?

'Who is the man that [you] will meet today?'

Hal il i manhsimnita.

'[I] have a lot work to do.'

4. Particle hako 'with', 'as', 'and'

Hako is an one-shape particle which can be substituted for the particle wa/kwa. (See Grammar Note 4, Unit 4.) Like wa/kwa, hako occurs in two constructions:

- (a) Nominal + hako 'with Nominal', 'as Nominal', 'with Nominal'
Nominal + hako, which may occur before an inflected expression, is an adverbial expression.

Kim Sønsæng hako (kathi)

'I'll go with Kim.'

kakesse yo.

Chinku hako mal-hæsse yo.

'I talked with a friend.'

i kəs hako kathin chæk

'a book the same as this' ('the same book as this')

- (b) Nominal 1 + hako + Nominal 2 = 'N1 and N2'
chæk hako yənphil 'a book and a pencil'
onil hako næil 'today and tomorrow'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1. Onil cenyek e yenghwa pole an kakesse yo?
Wouldn't you like to go to see movies this evening?
- *2. Onil cenyek e mulken sale an kakesse yo?
Wouldn't you like to go for shopping ('to buy goods') this evening?
3. Onil cenyek e kukyeng-hale an kakesse yo?
Wouldn't you like to go to see a show this evening?
4. Onil cenyek e chinku mannal an kakesse yo?
Wouldn't you like to go to meet friends this evening?
5. Onil cenyek e Hankuk mal paeule an kakesse yo?
Wouldn't you like to go to study Korean this evening?
6. Onil cenyek e Hankuk mal yensip-hale an kakesse yo?
Wouldn't you like to go to practice Korean this evening?
- *7. Onil cenyek e untong-hale an kakesse yo?
Wouldn't you like to go for exercise this evening?
- *8. Onil cenyek e sanpo-hale an kakesse yo?
Wouldn't you like to take a walk this evening?
9. Onil cenyek e sinse kukyeng-hale an kakesse yo?
Wouldn't you like to go sightseeing downtown this evening?
- *10. Onil cenyek e chum chule an kakesse yo?
Wouldn't you like to go for dancing this evening?
- *11. Onil cenyek e sicang pole an kakesse yo?
Wouldn't you like to go for food shopping this evening?

B. Subsitution Drill

1. Kukce Kikcang ese Mikuk yenghwa lil sangyeng-hako issimnita.
American movies are being shown at the International Theatre.
2. Kukce Kikcang ese Hankuk yenghwa lil sangyeng-hako issimnita.
Korean movies are being shown at the International Theatre.
3. Kukce Kikcang ese Ilpon yenghwa lil sangyeng-hako issimnita.
Japanese movies are being shown at the International Theatre.
4. Kukce Kikcang ese Tokil yenghwa lil sangeng-hako issimnita.
German movies are being shown at the International Theatre.

5. Kukce Kikcang ese Ithæli yængħwa
lil sangyæng-hako issimnita.
6. Kukce Kikcang ese Pullansæ yængħwa
lil sangyæng-hako issimnita.
7. Kukce Kikcang ese wekuk yængħwa
lil sangyæng-hako issimnita.
8. Kukce Kikcang ese Yængkuk yængħwa
lil sangyæng-hako issimnita.
9. Seul Kikcang ese Yængkuk yængħwa
lil sangyæng-hako issimnita.
10. Sinæ Kikcang ese Yængkuk yængħwa
lil sangyæng-hako issimnita.
- Italian movies are being shown at the International Theatre.
- French movies are being shown at the International Theatre.
- Foreign movies are being shown at the International Theatre.
- British movies are being shown at the International Theatre.
- British movies are being shown at the Seoul Theatre.
- British movies are being shown at a theatre downtown.

C. Substitution Drill

1. Na nin Hankuk yængħwa lil pok
siphsimnita.
2. Na nin Seul sinæ lil pok
siphsimnita.
3. Na nin wekuk yangpok il pok
siphsimnita.
4. Na nin Han-Yæng sacæn il pok
siphsimnita.
5. Na nin Kukce Kikcang il pok
siphsimnita.
6. Na nin yælæ kaci lil pok
siphsimnita.
7. Na nin Mikuk Tæsa lil pok
siphsimnita.
8. Na nin Tokil kunin il pok
siphsimnita.
9. Na nin hwesa sacang il pok
siphsimnita.
10. Na nin yængsa pisæ lil pok
siphsimnita.
- I want to see Korean movies.
- I want to see downtown Seoul.
- I want to see foreign (made) suits.
- I want to see a Korean-English dictionary.
- I want to see the International Theatre.
- I want to see many kinds.
- I want to see the American Ambassador.
- I want to see German soldiers.
- I want to see the president of the company.
- I want to see the secretary to the consul.

D. Substitution Drill

1. Na nin yenghwa lil poko siphe yo. I want to see a movie.
2. Na nin Hankuk e kako siphe yo. I want to go to Korea.
3. Na nin i chæk il sako siphe yo. I want to buy this book.
4. Na nin Yèngè lil kalichiko siphe yo I want to teach English.
- *5. Na nin Hankuk yèksa lil ilkko siphe yo. I want to read Korean history.
6. Na nin catongcha lil phalko siphe yo. I want to sell [my] car.
7. Na nin yèca chinku lil mannako siphe yo. I want to meet my girl friend.
8. Na nin tapang e tilliko siphe yo. I want to stop by a tearoom.
9. Na nin sinæ lil kukyèng-hako siphe yo. I want to look around downtown.

E. Substitution Drill

1. Kakkim yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo. Sometimes I go to see the movies.
2. Nil yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo. I always go to (see) the movies.
- *3. Hangsang yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo. I go to (see) the movies all the time.
- *4. Ttæ ttæ lo yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo. I go to (see) the movies occasionally.
5. Pam mata yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo. I go to (see) the movies every night.
6. Cuìl mata yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo. I go to (see) the movies every week.
7. Han cuìl e han pèn yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo. I go to (see) the movies once a week.
8. Han tal e tu pèn yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo. I go to (see) the movies twice a month.
9. Il nyèn e se pèn yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo. I go to (see) the movies three times a year.
- *10. Cacu yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo. I go to (see) the movies frequently.

- *11. Cumal mata yənghwa (lil) pole kaci yo. I go to (see) the movies every week-end.
- *12. Mæil yənghwa (lil) pole kaci yo. I go to (see) the movies everyday.
- *13. Mæcu(il) yənghwa (lil) pole kaci yo. I go to (see) the movies every week.
- *14. Mæwel yənghwa (lil) pole kaci yo. I go to (see) the movies every month.
- *15. Mænyen yənghwa (lil) pole kaci yo. I go to (see) the movies every year.

F. Substitution Drill

1. Onil in hal il i manhsimnita. I have a lot of things to do today.
2. Onil in ilkil chæk (i) manhsimnita. I have a lot of books to read today.
3. Onil in mannal salam (i) manhsimnita. I have a lot of people to meet today.
4. Onil in ol salam (i) manhsimnita. There are a lot of people to come today.
5. Onil in kitalil salam (i) manhsimnita. There are a lot of people to wait for today.
6. Onil in ttənal pæ (ka) manhsimnita. There are a lot of ships which will leave today.
7. Onil il sal mulkən (i) manhsimnita. There are a lot of things to buy today.
8. Onil in kalichil hakseong (i) manhsimnita. There are a lot of students to teach today.
9. Onil in mule pol mal (i) manhsimnita. I have a lot of things to ask about today.
10. Onil in tillil sangcəm (i) manhsimnita. There are many stores to stop by today.
11. Onil in sicak-hal il (i) manhsimnita. I have a lot of work to begin today.
- *12. Onil in ssil phyənci (ka) manhsimnita. I have a lot of letters to write today.

G. Substitution Drill

1. Mianhaci man, cikim nal kal su
epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot go out now.
2. Mianhaci man, cikim hal su
epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot do [it] now.
3. Mianhaci man, cikim kitalil su
epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot wait for
[you] now.
4. Mianhaci man, cikim ttənal su
epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot leave now.
5. Mianhaci man, cikim (Hankuk mal
il) kalichil su epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot teach (Korean)
now.
6. Mianhaci man, cikim kathi kal su
epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot go with [you]
now.
7. Mianhaci man, cikim (tangsin cip
e) tillil su epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot stop by
(your house) now.
8. Mianhaci man, cikim il il sicak-hal
su epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot start work
now.
9. Mianhaci man, cikim kukyəng kal
su epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot go sight-
seeing now.
10. Mianhaci man, cikim cip e issil
su epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot be at home
now.
11. Mianhaci man, cikim tola kal su
epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot go back
now.
- *12. Mianhaci man, cikim tola ol su
epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot come back
now.
- *13. Mianhaci man, cikim tile ol su
epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot come in
now.
- *14. Mianhaci man, cikim tile kal su
epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot go in now.
- *15. Mianhaci man, cikim na ol su
epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot come out
now.
- *16. Mianhaci man, cikim na kal su
epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot go out
now.
- *17. Mianhaci man, cikim olla ol su
epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot come up now.
- *18. Mianhaci man, cikim olla kal su
epsimnita. I'm sorry but I cannot go up now.

H. Substitution Drill

1. Hankuk mal i cæmi issimnita. Korean is interesting.
2. Yønge (ka) cæmi issimnita. English is interesting.
3. Chæk (11) i(l)kki (ka) issimnita. Reading books is interesting.
4. Søul e salki (ka) cæmi issimnita. Living in Seoul is interesting.
5. Mal pæuki (ka) cæmi issimnita. Learning a language is interesting.
6. Il-haki (ka) cæmi issimnita. Working is interesting.
7. Kalichiki (ka) cæmi issimnita. Teaching is interesting.
8. Hakkyo e taniki (ka) cæmi issimnita. Attending school is interesting.
9. Inæng e kinmu-haki (ka) cæmi issimnita. Working in a bank is interesting.
10. Thipi pokí (ka) cæmi issimnita. Watching TV is interesting.

I. Substitution Drill

1. Na wa kathi kakessë yo? Will you go with me?
2. Chinku (wa) kathi okessë yo? Will you come with a friend?
3. Sønsæng (kwa) kathi møkkessë yo? Will you eat with [your] teacher?
4. Cø yøca (wa) kathi na kakessë yo? Will you go out with that girl?
5. Puin (kwa) kathi tillikessë yo? Will you stop by with your wife?
6. Pisø (wa) kathi mal-hakessë yo? Will you talk with your secretary?
- *7. Mikuk Tæsa (wa) kathi insa-hakessë yo? Will you greet with the American Ambassador?
8. Kunin (kwa) kathi nolkessë yo? Will you play with a soldier?
9. Yøngsa (wa) kathi ttønakessë yo? Will you leave with the consul?
10. Yøca chinku (wa) kathi kukyøng kakessë yo? Will you go sightseeing with your girl friend?
11. Uli (wa) kathi okessë yo? Will you come with us?
12. Yøhaksæng (kwa) kathi na kakessë yo? Will you go out with a girl student?
13. ømøni (wa) kathi tola kakessë yo? Will you go back with your mother?
14. Tæthongyøng (kwa) kathi tola okessë yo? Will you come back with the President?

J. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sənsəng kwa kathi mal- Please talk with Mr. Kim.
hasipsiyo.
2. Kim Sənsəng kwa kathi kongpu- Please study with Mr. Kim.
hasipsiyo.
3. Kim Sənsəng kwa kathi yəki ese Please wait here with Mr. Kim.
kitalisipsiyo.
4. Kim Sənsəng kwa kathi ki kəs il Please read it with Mr. Kim.
ilkisipsiyo.
5. Kim Sənsəng kwa kathi il-hasipsiyo. Please work with Mr. Kim.
6. Kim Sənsəng kwa kathi sicak- Please start with Mr. Kim.
hasipsiyo.
7. Kim Sənsəng kwa kathi pəusipsiyo. Please study with Mr. Kim.

K. Transformation Drill

- Tutor: Uli nin Hankuk mal il kongpu- 'We study Korean.'
hamnita.
- Student: Uli nin Hankuk mal il kongpu- 'We're studying Korean now.'
hako issimnita.
1. Cikim hakkyo e kamnita. Cikim hakkyo e kako issimnita.
('[I]'m on [my] way to school now.)
2. Kikcang ese Mikuk Yənghwa lil Kiicang ese Mikuk Yənghwa lil
sangyəng-hamnita. sangyəng-hako issimnita.
3. Ai ka thipi lil pomnita. Ai ka thipi lil pokō issimnita.
4. Sənsəng i kalichimnita. Sənsəng i kalichiko issimnita.
5. Nal mata Hankuk mal il pəumnita. Nal mata Hankuk mal il pəuko
issimnita.
6. Cohin sacən il wənhamnita. Cohin sacən il wənhako issimnita.
7. Kim Sənsəng in wekuk salam il Kim Sənsəng in wekuk salam il
mannamnita. mannako issimnita.
8. Na nin Kim Sənsəng cip il Na nin Kim Sənsəng cip il chacko
chacsimnita. issimnita.
9. Ceimsi Sənsəng in Mikuk təsakwan Ceimsi Sənsəng in Mikuk təsakwan
ese il-hamnita. ese il-hako issimnita.

L. Response Drill

- Tutor: Pak Sənsəng in Hankuk mal il kalichyə yo? 'Does Mr. Park teach Korean?'
- Student: Ne, cikim kalichiko issimnita. 'Yes, he's teaching [it] now.'
1. Ceimsi Sənsəng i təsakwan esə il-hə yo? Ne, cikim təsakwan esə il-hako issimnita.
2. Kicha ka ttəna yo? Ne, cikim ttənako issimnita.
3. Salam til i pihəngki lil tha yo? Ne, cikim thako issimnita.
4. Mikuk təsa ka pihəngki esə nælyə yo? Ne, cikim næliko issimnita.
5. Tangsin in hakkyo e tanyə yo? Ne, cikim taniko issimnita.
6. Chinku lili kitalyə yo? Ne, cikim kitaliko issimnita.
7. Səul yək e kanin kil il ale yo? Ne, cikim alko issimnita.
('Yes, I'm aware of it now.')
8. Hankuk mal il manhi pəwə yo? Ne, cikim manhi pəuko issimnita.
9. Kim Sənsəng il chace yo? Ne, cikim chacko issimnita.
10. Kikcang esə Mikuk yənghwa lili sangyəng-hə yo? Ne, cikim sangyəng-hako issimnita.
11. Hankuk mal il yənsip-hə yo? Ne, cikim yənsip-hako issimnita.

M. Response Drill

- Tutor: Ki ttə e Hankuk mal il kongpu-hako issessimnikka? 'Were you studying Korean at that time?'
- Student: Ne, ni ttə e Hankuk mal il kongpu-hako issesse yo. 'Yes, I was studying Korean at that time.'
1. Ki ttə e hakkyo e kako issessimnikka? Ne, ki ttə e hakkyo e kako issesse yo.
2. Ki ttə e Mikuk yənghwa lili sangyəng-hako issessimnikka? Ne, ki ttə e Mikuk yənghwa lili sangyəng-hako issesse yo.
3. Ki ttə e Yəngə lili kalichiko issessimnikka? Ne, ki ttə e Yəngə lili kalichiko issesse yo.
4. Ki ttə e wekuk salam il mannako issessimnikka? Ne, ki ttə e wekuk salam il mannako issesse yo.
5. Ki ttə e Kim Sənsəng cip il chacko issessimnikka? Ne, ki ttə e Kim Sənsəng cip il chacko issesse yo.

6. Ki ttæ e Mikuk tæsakwan ese il-hako issessimnikka?
Ne, ki ttæ e Mikuk tæsakwan ese il-hako issesssə yo.
7. Ki ttæ e yenghwa lil poko issessimnikka?
Ne, ki ttæ e yenghwa lil poko issesssə yo.
8. Ki ttæ e Mikuk ese hakkyo e taniko issessimnikka?
Ne, ki ttæ e Mikuk ese hakkyo e taniko issesssə yo.
9. Ki ttæ e chinku lil kitaliko issessimnikka?
Ne, ki ttæ e chinku lil kitaliko issesssə yo.
10. Ki ttæ e kicha ese næliko issessimnikka?
Ne, ki ttæ e kicha ese næliko issesssə yo.

N. Response Drill

Tutor: Muəs il salyəko hamnikka?
/moca/

'What are you going to buy?' /hat/

Student: Moca lil sako siphsimnita.

'I want } to buy a hat.'
'I'd like'

1. Nuku lil mannalyeko hamnikka?
/Ceimsi Sənsəng/

Ceimsi Sənsəng il mannako siphsimnita.

2. əti ese il-halyəko hamnikka?
/Mikuk Tæsakwan/

Mikuk Tæsakwan ese il-hako siphsimnita.

3. ənce Wəsingthon il ttənalyəko hamnikka? /taim tal/

Taim tal e ttənako siphsimnita.

4. Musin yoil e sicang e kalyəko hamnikka? /Thoyoil/

Thoyoil e kako siphsimnita.

5. əlma tongan Hankuk mal il pəulyəko hamnikka? /yəl tal/

Yəl tal tongan pəuko siphsimnita.

6. Musin yənghwa lil polyəko hamnikka?
/Hankuk yənghwa/

Hankuk yənghwa lil poko siphsimnita.

7. Onil əte issilyəko hamnikka? /cip/

Cip e issko siphsimnita.

8. əti e tillilyəko hamnikka? /chinku samusil/

Chinku samusil e tilliko siphsimnita.

9. əni tal e hyuka lil patilyəko hamnikka? /Phal-wəl/

Phal-wəl e (hyuka lil) patko siphsimnita.

10. əti ese nælilyəko hamnikka?
/sichəng aph/

Sicheng aph ese næliko siphsimnita.

11. Muəs ilo Hankuk e kalyəko hamnikka? Pihaengki lo kako siphsimnita.
 /pihaengki/
 12. ənce ccim Mikuk e tola kalyəko hamnikka? /i nyən hu/ I nyən hu e tola kako siphsimnita.

0. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Ceimsi nin Səul esə sal(1)yəko hamnita. 'James intends to live in Seoul.'

Student: Cemisi nin Səul esə salko siphə həe yo. 'James wants to live in Seoul.'

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Kim Sənsəeng in onil yənghwa lil polyəko hamnita. | Kim Sənsəeng in onil yənghwa lil pokō siphə həe yo. |
| 2. Hankuk haksəng i Mikuk hakkyo e tanilyəko hamnita. | Hankuk haksəng i Mikuk hakkyo e taniko siphə həe yo. |
| 3. Chwe Sənsəeng in Səul e halu tongan issilyəko hamnita. | Chwe Sənsəeng in Səul e halu tongan issko siphə həe yo. |
| 4. Haksəng in næil sinə e na kalyəko hamnita. | Haksəng in næil sinə e na kako siphə həe yo. |
| 5. Salam til in wekuk il kukyəng-halyəko hamnita. | Salam til in wekuk il kukyəng-hako siphə həe yo. |
| 6. Pak Sənsəeng in Yəngə lil kalichilyəko hamnita. | Pak Sənsəeng in Yəngə lil kalichiko siphə həe yo. |
| 7. Ki salam in Hankuk inhəeng esə il-halyəko hamnita. | Ki salam in Hankuk inhəeng esə il-hako siphə həe yo. |
| 8. Cə e chinku nin hyuka lil patilyəko hamnita. | Cə e chinku nin hyuka lil patko siphə həe yo. |

P. Response Drill

Tutor: Kim Sənsəng in Yəngə lil
pəuko siphə hæ yo?

'Does Mr. Kim want to study English?'

Student: Ne, phək pəuko siphə hamnita.

'Yes, [he] wants to study [it] very
much.'

1. Ki chinku nin hyuka lil patko
siphə hæ yo?
2. Ki salam in Hankuk inhæng e kinmu-
hako siphə hæ yo?
3. Pak Sənsəng in Hankuk mal il
kalichiko siphə hæ yo?
4. Chwe Sənsəng in khəphi lil masiko
siphə hæ yo?
5. Kim Sənsəng in tampə lil phiuko
siphə hæ yo?
6. Hankuk haksəng i Mikuk hakkyo e
taniko siphə hæ yo?
7. Haksəng i Hankuk mal il yənsip-
hako siphə hæ yo?
8. Cə ai ka lætiyo lil titko siphə
hæ yo?

Ne, phək patko siphə hamnita.

Ne, (Hankuk inhæng e) phək kinmu-
hako siphə hamnita.

Ne, phək kalichiko siphə hamnita.

Ne, phək masiko siphə hamnita.

Ne, phək phiuko siphə hamnita.

Ne, phək taniko siphə hamnita.

Ne, phək yənsip-hako siphə hamnita.

Ne, phək titko siphə hamnita.

Q. Response Drill

Tutor: Kim Sənsəng in Yəngə lil
kalichiko siphə hamnikka?

'Does Mr. Kim want to teach English?'

Student: Aniyo, kalichiko siphə haci
anhə yo.

'No, he doesn't (want to teach).'

1. Ki yəca ka kikcang e kako siphə
hamnikka?
2. Ki chinku ka hyuka lil patko
siphə hamnikka?
3. Chwe Sənsəng in khəphi lil masiko
siphə hamnikka?
4. Hankuk haksəng til i Mikuk hakkyo
e taniko siphə hamnikka?

Aniyo, kako siphə haci anhə yo.

Aniyo, patko siphə haci anhə yo.

Aniyo, masiko siphə haci anhə yo.

Aniyo, (Mikuk hakkyo e) taniko
siphə haci anhə yo.

5. Ceimsi Sənsəng i Mikuk təesa ka tweko siphe hamnikka?
6. Ki salam i mal il mule pokō siphe hamnikka?
7. Mikuk yəngsa ka Mikuk e tola kako siphe hamnikka?
8. Cə ai ka Yəngə chæk il ilkko siphe hamnikka?

Aniyo, (Mikuk təesa ka) tweko siphe
haci anhə yo.
Aniyo, mule pokō siphe haci anhə
yo.
Aniyo, tola kako siphe haci anhə
yo.
Aniyo, ilkko siphe haci anhə yo.

R. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal i əlyəpsimnita.
Kiləchi man, cəmi issimnita.

Student: Hankuk mal i əlyəpcı man,
cəmi issimnita.

1. Hankuk mal il pəəumnita. Kiləhci man, swipci anhsimnita.
2. Na nin pə̄ lo kamnita. Kiləhci man, Kim Sənsəng in kicha lo kamnita.
3. Pihaengki ka ttənamnita. Kiləhci man, ppə̄si nin tahsimnita.
4. Cə nin pappimnita. Kiləhci man, talin salam in pappici anhsimnita.
5. Hankuk mal il ale titsimnita. Kiləhci man, ilkci mot hamnita.
6. I kilim il cohahamnita. Kiləhci man, phə̄k pißamnita.
7. Haksəng i manhsimnita. Kiləhci man, sənsəng in əpsimnita.
8. Nal mata ki yəca lil kitalimnita. Kiləhci man, ki yəca nin oci anhsimnita.
9. Pak Sənsəng in Hankuk inhaeng e kinmu-hamnita. Kiləhci man, puncuhaci anhsimnita.

'Korean is difficult. However, it's interesting.'

'Korean is difficult but it is interesting.'

Hankuk mal il pəəuci man, swipci anhsimnita.

Na nin pə̄ lo kaci man, Kim Sənsəng in kicha lo kamnita.

Pihaengki ka ttənaci man, ppə̄si nin tahsimnita.

Cə nin pappici man, talin salam in pappici anhsimnita.

Hankuk mal il ale titci man, ilkci mot hamnita.

I kilim il cohahaci man, phə̄k pißamnita.

Haksəng i manhci man, sənsəng in əpsimnita.

Nal mata ki yəca lil kitalici man, ki yəca nin oci anhsimnita.

Pak Sənsəng in Hankuk inhaeng e kinmu-haci man, puncuhaci anhsimnita.

10. Il e cəmi ka issimnita. Kiləhei
man, hal il i phək manhsimnita.

Il e cəmi ka issci man, hal il i
phək manhsimnita.

S. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Kicha ka ohu e ttənamnita.

Student: Ohu e ttənal kicha ka
issimnita.

'A train is leaving in the afternoon.'

'There's a train which will leave
in the afternoon.'

1. Onil haksəng i omnita.
2. Ohu e chinku lil mannamnita.
3. Chæk il samnita.
4. Il il sicak-hamnita.
5. Ppəsi lili thamnita.
6. Hakkyo e tanimnita.
7. Hankuk mal chæk il ilksimnita.
8. Cip esə yəca lili kitalimnita.
9. Han-si e kicha ka tahsimnita.

Onil ol haksəng i issimnita.

Ohu e mannal chinku ka issimnita.

Sal chæk i issimnita.

Sicak-hal il i issimnita.

Thal ppəsi ka issimnita.

Tanil hakkyo ka issimnita.

Ilkil Hankuk mal chæk i issimnita.

Cip esə kitalil yəca ka issimnita.

Han-si e tahil kicha ka issimnita.

T. Completion Exercise

Tutor: Hankuk mal il əlyəpcı man,

Student: Hankuk mal il əlyəpcı man,
cəmi issimnita.

'Korean is difficult but...!'

'Korean is difficult but it's
interesting.'

1. Yənghwa lili cohahaci man,
2. Sikan i əpscı man,
3. Hankuk mal il pəuci man,
4. Kicha ka ttənaci man,
5. Pihaengki nin tahci man,
6. Ki yəca lili mannaci man,
7. Hakkyo e tanici man,
8. Yocim com puncuhaci man,
9. Hankuk mal il ale titci man,
10. Onil hal il i issci man,
11. Cikim chinku lili kitalici man,
12. Mikuk esə salko sipci man,
13. Hankil il ilkci mot hacı man,

14. Na nin Mikuk salam ici man,
15. Onil mom i com aphici man,

U. Combination Drill

Tutor: Kicha nin ttēnasse yo. Ppēsi
nin tahasse yo.

Student: Kicha nin ttēnassko, ppēsi
nin tahasse yo.

1. Cē nin Yēngē līl pēwē yo. Ceimsi
nin Hankuk mal il kongpu-hē yo.
2. ēce Hankuk imsik il mēkessē yo.
Onil in Cungkuk imsik il mēkessē
yo.
3. Na nin Hankuk yēnghwa līl cohahāe
yo. Miss Chwe nin Ilpon
yēnghwa līl pokō siphē hē yo.
4. Na nin puncuhāe yo. Ce chinku nin
sikan i manhi issē yo.
5. Tēhak pyēngwēn in kakkawē yo.
(The University hospital is near.)
Cungang Tosekwān in com mēlē
yo.
(The Central Library is a
little far.)

'The train has left. The bus has
arrived.'

'The train has left and the bus has
arrived.'

Cē nin Yēngē līl pēuko, Ceimsi nin
Hankuk mal il kongpu-hē yo.
ēce Hankuk imsik il mēkessko, onil
in Cungkuk imsik il mēkessē yo.

Na nin Hankuk yēnghwa līl cohahako,
Miss Chwe nin Ilpon yēnghwa līl
pokō siphē hē yo.

Na nin puncuhako, ce chinku nin
sikan i manhi issē yo.
Tēhak pyēngwēn in kakkapko, Cungang
Tosekwān in com mēlē yo.

EXERCISES

1. Tell Miss Choe: (Once in Formal Polite and once in Informal Polite Speech)
 - a. that you want to see Korean movies.
 - b. that you are practicing Korean now.
 - c. that you are not free now.
 - d. that you don't understand Korean well.
 - e. that you have lots of things to do.
 - f. that you are busy all the time.
 - g. that you have a friend to meet this afternoon.
 - h. that you can't go out tonight.
 - i. that you were waiting for Miss Brown at that time.
 - j. that learning a language is not interesting.
 - k. that you have many letters to write.
 - l. that you cannot finish the work by 4 o'clock.
 - m. that you go to see the Korean movies occasionally.
 - n. that American movies are shown at the International Theatre twice a month.
 - o. that you don't want to go out frequently.
 - p. that your girl friend doesn't want to take a walk.
 - q. that the students were eating in the dining hall.
 - r. that you cannot come out now.
 - s. that the children cannot come in the room now.
 - t. that you cannot go into the military (service).
 - u. that your wife cannot go up the building on foot.
 - v. that you are coming up the street.
 - w. that there are many students but not many teachers.
 - x. that German is easy and Korean is hard.
 - y. that you want to go out to see movies but you don't have time.
 - z. that the housing is expensive and is not good.
- z1. You cannot go back to School now.
- z2. Your Korean friend came back from the U.S.

2. You ask Miss Brown:

- a. what she wants to see.
- b. what she would like to do today.
- c. where the American movies are being shown.
- d. how she likes (or how it is) living in Seoul.
- e. how long she is going to stay in Korea (or in Washington).
- f. if she can go out with you tonight.
- g. if she wouldn't go dancing on the coming Saturday.
- h. if she goes for food shopping everyday.
- i. if she likes sports.
- j. if she doesn't want to sightsee downtown.
- k. if she can't wait for you.

Miss Brown answers:

- 'I'd like to see your new car.'
- 'I want to stay home.'
- 'They are being shown at the Central Theatre.'
- 'Not too bad.'
- 'About three or four years.'
- 'I'd like to but I cannot go out tonight.'
- 'I'm sorry but I'll be busy that day.'
- 'No, twice a week.'
- 'Yes, I do very much.'
- 'I have already done some sightseeing downtown.'
- 'Why not. I'll wait for you.'

제 10 과 시내 구경

먼저

가고 싶습니까

1. 김 : 어디에 먼저 가고 싶습니까?

2. 스미스 : 다방에 먼저 들릅시다.

누구

(누구) 만날 사람

3. 김 : 누구 만날 사람이 있습니까?

커피 한 잔

마시면

마셨으면 좋겠습니다

4. 스미스 : 커피 한 잔 마셨으면 좋겠습니다.

가면

5. 김 : 먼저 시내로 갑시다. 시내에 가면 좋은
다방이 많이 있읍니다.

이 부근

6. 스미스 : 이 부근에는 다방이 없어요?

있어도

그리 좋지 않습니다

7. 김 : 이 부근에 다방이 있어도 그리 좋지 않습니다.

UNIT 10. Going Around the Town

BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

Kim

- mənce first; above all
 kako siphsimnikka do you want to go
 1. eti e mənce kako siphsimnikka? Where do you want to go first?

Smith

2. Tapang e mənce tillipsita. Let's stop by a tearoom first.

Kim

- nuku anybody; somebody; who?
 (nuku) mammal salam somebody to meet
 3. Nuku mammal salam i issimnikka? Are you meeting anyone? ('Do you have anyone to meet?')

Smith

- khəphi han can a cup of coffee
 masimyən if [I] drink
 masyəssimyən cohkessimnita (if [I] drank, [it]'ll be nice)
 4. Khəphi han can masyəssimyən I'd like to have a cup of coffee.
 cohkessimnita. ('If I drank a cup of coffee, it would be nice.')

Kim

- kamyən if [we] go
 5. Mənce sinə lo kapsita. Sinə e Let's go downtown first. There are
 kamyən, cohin tapang i manhi good tearooms downtown. ('If
 issimnita. [we] go downtown there are a lot
 of tearooms.')

Smith

- i pukin this area; this vicinity
 6. I pukin e nin tapang i əpsə yo? Aren't there any tearooms in this
 area?

엄마나
엄마나 럽니까
시내까지

8. 스미스 : 여기에서 시내까지 엄마나 럽니까?

아주
걸어서

9. 김 : 아주 가깝습니다. 걸어서 십 오 분 쯤
걸립니다.

버스나 전차
다닙니다

10. 스미스 : 버스나 전차는 다니지 않습니까?

합승

11. 김 : 왜요? 버스, 전차, 택시, 그리고 합승도
있읍니다.

그것들
그(것들) 중에서
어느 편
제일
편리
편리합니다
제일 편리합니다

12. 스미스 : 그(것들) 중에서 어느 편이 제일 편리니까?

Kim

- isse to even though there are; there
are but...
- kili cohci anhsimnita [it] is not so good
7. I pukin e tapang i isse to, kili [Yes], there are [some], but they
cohci anhsimnita. are not very good.

Smith

- elma na how; how much
- elma na məmnikka how far is [it]?
- sinə kkaci as far as downtown
8. Yəki ese sinə kkaci elma na How far is downtown from here?
məmnikka?

Kim

- acu really; very; extremely
- kələ se on foot
9. Acu kakkapsimnita. Kələ se It is very close. It only takes
sip-o pun ccim kəllimnita. about fifteen minutes to walk.

Smith

- ppəsi na cəncha bus or streetcar
- tanimnita ('[I] go and come regularly.')
10. Ppəsi na cəncha nən tanici Aren't there any buses or streetcars
anhsimnukka? running?

Kim

- hapsing jitney
11. Wə yo? Ppəsi, cəncha, thækssi, Yes, there are. ('Why?') There
kiliko hapsing to issimnita. are buses, streetcars, taxes and
even jitneys.

빠릅니다

가장 빠릅니다

빠르고 편리합니다

13. 김 : 합승이 가장 빠르고 (가장) 편리합니다.

자주

얼마나 자주

다니는가요

14. 스미스 : 예, 그렇습니까? 합승은 얼마나 자주
다니는가요?

십 오 분에 한 번

번잡합니다

15. 김 : 대개 십 오 분에 한 번 있지만, 아침과
저녁에는 좀 번잡합니다.

Smith

ki kəs til

they; those (things)

ki (kəs til) cung ese

among them; among those

əni phyen

which side; which way

ceil

number one

phyelli

convenience

phyelli-hamnita

[it]'s convenient

ceil phyelli-hamnita

[it]'s most convenient

12. Ki (kəs til) cung ese əni phyen
i ceil phyelli-hamnikka?

Which is the most convenient (among them)? ('Among those things which one is the most convenient?')

Kim

ppalimnita

[it]'s fast ; [it]'s quick

kacang ppalimnita

[it]'s fastest

ppaliko phyelli-hamnita

[it]'s fast and convenient

13. Hapsing i kacang ppaliko, (kacang)
phyelli-hamnita.

A jitney is the fastest and the most convenient.

Smith

cacu

frequently; often

əlma na cacu

how often?

taninin ka yo

does [it] run?

14. Ne, kilehsimnikka? Hapsing in
əlma na cacu taninin ka yo?

Is that right? How often do the jitneys run?

Kim

sip-o pun e han pən

every fifteen minutes ('once at 15 minutes')

pencap-hamnita

[it]'s crowded

15. Təkəsip-o pun e han pən issci
man, achim kwa cənyək e nin
com pəncap-hamnita.

They usually run every fifteen minutes but they are rather crowded in the morning and in the evening.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogue.)

1. Mənce 'first', 'ahead', is an adverb which occurs before verbs and denotes priority for the following inflected expressions. Mənce followed by a pause also occurs as a sentence adverb, meaning 'in the first place', 'above all'.
3. Nuku mannal salam i issimnikka? 'Are you meeting somebody?' ('Is there anybody to meet?') ends in a rising intonation with a stress on the first syllable of mannah.
4. Khəphi han can masyessimyən cohkessimnita. ('If [I] drank a cup of coffee, [it] will be good.') occurs with or without a pause after the -(i)myən form. The pattern -(a, ə)ssimyən cohkessimnita, which is the -(i)myən form with the past tense suffix plus the verb coh- in the future tense, is used to express the desire of the speaker or the addressee (See Grammar Note 1).
6. Pukin 'vicinity' is a post-noun which, together with the preceding noun, makes a noun phrase:

<u>i pukin</u>	'this area', 'this vicinity'
<u>hakkyo pukin</u>	'the vicinity of the school'
9. Acu 'very', 'extremely' is an adverb which occurs before description verbs or other adverbs, and denotes the extreme degree of the following inflected expressions. Kələ sə 'on foot' is an adverbial phrase. Kələ is the infinitive of the verb kəl- 'to walk'; sə is a particle. (We will learn more about the particle sə later.) Kələ sə here should be memorized as it is as the Korean equivalent of the English phrase 'on foot'.
12. Til is a post-noun which occurs after a countable nominal and denotes plurality. Til does not occur after a numeral expression and/or a numeral + counter. In other words, if the nominal is specified by number, til is not used. Cung is a post-noun which occurs in the following types of adverbial phrases.

(a) Name of time + cung + e {during}
in + the name of time'

Il-wel cung e {in January
during January'

onil cung e 'within today'

kimnyen cung e {in this year
within this year'

(b) Countable Noun + cung + ese 'among + Countable Noun'

hakkyo til cung ese 'among the schools'

nala cung ese 'among the countries'

15. Pencap-ha-ta 'is crowded' is an intransitive verb which may be preceded by a place name or a mode of transportation as the subject or topic of the sentence.

Kil i pencap-hamnita. 'The street is crowded.'

Kikcang i pencap-hae yo? 'Is the theatre crowded?'

Kyothong i pencap-hamnita. 'There is a traffic jam.'

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -myen/imyen 'if (when) X does something', 'if (when) X is such and such'

The inflected form ending in -(1)myen (or simply the -(1)myen form) which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression. The honorific and/or tense suffixes may occur in the -(1)myen form; -myen is added to a stem ending in a vowel and -imyen to a stem ending in a consonant. The -(1)myen form indicates that the condition or time of the action or description takes place for the following inflected expression. Examples:

Pi ka omyen, cip e isskessae yo. 'If it rains, I will be home.'

Hankuk e kamyen, S'eul ese kinmu-
hako siphsimnita. 'If I go to Korea } I'd like to
'When I go to Korea } work in Seoul.'

W'esington e omyen, ce cip e to
ose yo. 'If you come to Washington, come to
my house, too.'

Remember that the pattern -(a,e)ssimyen cohkessimnita. ('If [I] did..., [it] will be good.') is used to express the speaker's wish or desire.

2. Infinitive + to 'even though _____, ' 'although _____, '

In Unit 5 we learned that the particle to after a nominal means 'also', 'too', 'even'. To occurs not only after nominals but also after a small number of inflected forms. Most Korean particles occur after nominals, but note that there also is a small class of particles which occur after other classes of words (e.g. inflected words). The construction Infinitive + to, followed by a pause occurring before another inflected expression, denotes concession to the following inflection expression. The tense suffixes may occur in the Infinitive which precedes to. Compare Infinitive + to with the construction -ci man 'but' for its meaning. Note that the pattern Infinitive + to + cohsimnikka?/ Inf. + to + kwænchanhsimnikka? ('Even if [I] do..., is it o.k.?) is used to get permission or consent from the addressee. In English the pattern 'May I...?' is usually used as the equivalent of the above Korean pattern. The usual 'yes' response to Infinitive + to + cohsimnikka? is Ne, Infinitive + to + cohsimnita. 'Yes, you man...'. 'No' response is either -ci masipsiyo or -ci anhin kës i cohkessimnita. (See Grammar Notes, Unit 11.) Examples:

Sinæ e tapang i issæ to, kili cohci anhsimmita.	'Even though there are tearooms, [they) are not very good.'
Pi ka wa to, hakkyo e kakessæ yo.	'Even if it rains, I will go to school.'
Cæ yæca lïl han pæn mannasse to, ilim il molimmita.	'Although I met her once I don't know [her] name.'
Hwesa ka com mælæ to, kælæ sæ il-hælæ tanimmita.	'My office is a little far, but I go to work on foot.'
Kyosil esæ khæphi lïl masiæ to cohsimnikka?	'May I drink coffee in the class-room?'

3. Ceil Kacang } 'the most ___'

The adverb ceil (or its equivalent kacang) occurs before a verbal, noun-modifier word or another adverb, and denotes the superlative degree of the following expression. Compare:

- (a) Hapsing i phyəlli-hamnita. 'Jitney is convenient.'
Hapsing i tə phyəlli-hamnita. 'Jitney is more convenient.'
Hapsing i {kacang} phyəlli-
ceil
hamnita. 'Jitney is most convenient.'

4. Particle na/ina

Na occurs after a nominal ending in a vowel; ina after a nominal ending in a consonant. Na/ina occurs in the following constructions:

- (a) Nominal 1 + na/ina + Nominal 2 'N 1 or N 2', 'either N 1 or N 2'
Between two nominals na/ina denotes selection of one of the two, N 1 or N 2.

- | | |
|--|---|
| Yənphil ina mannyənphil il
kusipsiyo. | 'Give me a pencil or pen.' |
| Onil ina næil i cohsimnita. | 'Either today or tomorrow is O.K.' |
| Wəlyoil ina Hwayoil e tola
osipsiyo. | 'Please come back either Monday or
Tuesday.' |

- (b) Question Nominal + na/ina = adverbial phrases

muəs ina	{ 'anything' 'whatever [it] may be'
nuku na	{ 'anybody' 'whoever [he] may be'
ənce na	{ 'anytime' 'whenever [it] may be'
əti na	{ 'anywhere' 'no matter where [it] may be'
əlma na	{ 'how much' 'how long'
əlma na cacu	'how often'

(c) Nominal + na/ina, followed by an inflected expression, denotes choice of the nominal among others for the following inflected expression.

Onil in yenghwa na pole
kapsita. 'Let's go to see, say, movies.'

Khəphi ka əpsimyən, hongcha
na hal kka yo? 'If they don't have coffee, shall
we have, say, black tea?'

Ca, onil in kukyəng ina kaci
yo. 'Say, how about going to a show
today.'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1. Mənce tapang e tillipsita. Let's stop by a tearoom first.
2. Mənce næ samusil e tillipsita. Let's stop by my office first.
3. Mənce Kukuce Uphyənkuk e tillipsita. Let's stop by the International Post Office first.
4. Mənce hakkyo chækpang e tillipsita. Let's stop by the campus bookstore first.
- *5. Mənce Cungkuk imsikcəm e tillipsita. Let's stop by a Chinese restaurant first.
- *6. Mənce Səul Təhakkyo e tillipsita. Let's stop by Seoul University first.
- *7. Mənce pakmulkwan e tillipsita. Let's stop by the museum first.
- *8. Mənce kyəngchalse e tillipsita. Let's stop by the police station first.
- *9. Mənce Səul Koting Hakkyo e tillipsita. Let's stop by the Seoul High School first.
- *10. Mənce pyəngwən e tillipsita. Let's stop by the hospital first.
- *11. Mənce tosekwən e tillipsita. Let's stop by the library first.
- *12. Mənce yakpang e tillipsita. Let's stop by the drugstore first.
- *13. Mənce tongmul-wən e tillipsita. Let's stop by the zoo first.
- *14. Mənce kyohwe e tillipsita. Let's stop by the church first.

B. Substitution Drill

1. Mannal salam i issimnikka?
2. Hal il (i) issimnikka?
3. Pol yənghwa (ka) issimnikka?
4. Tillil tapang (i) issimnikka?
5. Sal kəs (i) issimnikka?
6. Ilkil chæk (i) issimnikka?
7. Masil khəphi (ka) issimnikka?
8. Tanil hakkyo (ka) issimnikka?
9. Kitalil salam (i) issimnikka?
- *10. Kukyəng-hal te (ka) issimnikka?

- Are you meeting anyone? ('Do you have anyone to meet?')
- Do you have any work to do?
- Are there any movies to see?
- Is there a tearoom to stop by?
- Is there anything to buy?
- Do you have a book to read?
- Is there any coffee to drink?
- Is there a school for you to attend?
- Are you waiting for anyone? ('Do you have anyone to wait for?')
- Is there any place for sightseeing?

C. Substitution Drill

1. Kyøphi han can masyøssimyøn cohkessimnita. I'd like to have a cup of coffee. ('[It]'ll be nice if [I] drank coffee.')
2. Hakkyo e kassimyøn cohkessimnita. I'd like to go to school.
3. Ceimsi lil mannassimyøn cohkessimnita. I'd like to meet James.
4. Tapang e tillessimyøn cohkessimnita. I'd like to stop by a tearoom.
5. Yønghwa lil pwassimyøn chokessimnita. I'd like to see a movie.
6. Tapang i issøssimyøn cohkessimnita. I wish there were tearooms.
7. Kim Sensøng i wassimyøn cohkessimnita. I wish Mr. Kim came.
8. Onil ttønassimyøn cohkessimnita. I'd like to leave today.
9. Søul Tøhakkyo e taniessimyøn cohkessimnita. I'd like to attend Seoul University.
10. Pullansø mal il pøwøssimyøn cohkessimnita. I'd like to study French.
11. Hankuk il kukyøng-høssimyøn cohkessimnita. I'd like to see Korea.
12. Cip i kakkawøssimyøn cohkessimnita. I wish my house were near.
13. Cip kaps i ssassimyøn cohkessimnita. I wish the rent were cheap.

D. Substitution Drill

1. Sinø e cohin tapang i manhi isse yo. There are many nice tearooms downtown.
2. Søul e cohin hakkyo ka manhi isse yo. There are many good schools in Seoul.
3. Hankuk e cohin pøkhwacøm i manhi isse yo. There are many good department stores in Korea.
4. Nyuyok e cohin kikcang i manhi isse yo. There are many good theatres in New York.
5. Wøsingthon e cohin tosekwøn i manhi isse yo. There are many good libraries in Washington.
6. Yøki e cohin pakmulkwan i manhi isse yo. There are many good museums here.
7. Køki e cohin imsikcøm i manhi isse yo. There are many good restaurants there.

8. I pukin e cohin yakpang i manhi
isſe yo.
9. Səul pukin e cohin kotin hakkyo ka
manhi isſe yo.
10. Nyuyok pukin e cohin pyəngwən i
manhi isſe yo.
11. Pusan pukin e cohin təhakkyo ka
manhi isſe yo.
- *12. Təku pukin e cohin cunghakkyo
ka manhi isſe yo.
- *13. Səul Təhak pukin e cohin sohakkyo
ka manhi isſe yo.
- There are many good drug stores in
this vicinity.
- There are many good high schools in
Seoul area.
- There are many good hospitals in
New York area.
- There are many good universities in
Pusan area.
- There are many good junior high
Schools in Taeku area.
- There are many good elementary
schools in the vicinity of Seoul
College.

E. Substitution Drill

1. I pukin e tapang i əpsə yo?
2. Təsakwan pukin e imsikcəm i əpsə
yo?
3. Cəngkəcang pukin e kyohwe ka
əpsə yo?
4. Yakpang pukin e pyəngwən i əpsə
yo?
- *5. Kyəngchalsə pukin e cəphanso ka
əpsə yo?
6. Səul Təhakkyo pukin e pakmulkwən
i əpsə yo?
7. Tosekwən pukin e cunghakkyo ka
əpsə yo?
8. Pakmulkwən pukin e kotin hakkyo
ka əpsə yo?
9. Pyəngwən pukin e sohakkyo ka əpsə
yo?
- Aren't there any tearooms in this
area?
- Aren't there any restaurants around
the Embassy?
- Aren't there any churches around
the station?
- Aren't there any clinics around
the drug store?
- Aren't there any courts around the
police station?
- Aren't there any museums around
Seoul University?
- Aren't there any middle schools
around the library?
- Aren't there any high schools
around the museum?
- Aren't there any elementary schools
around the hospital?

F. Substitution Drill

1. Hakkyo pukin e nin tapang i əpsimnita. There are no tearooms around the school.
2. Pyəngwən pukin e nin yakpang i əpsimnita. There are no drug stores around the hospital.
3. Səul Təhakkyo pukin e nin chækpang i əpsimnita. There are no bookstores around Seoul University.
4. Hwesa pukin e nin imsikcəm i əpsimnita. There are no restaurants around the company.
5. Koting hakkyo pukin e nin sohakkyo ka əpsimnita. There are no elementary schools around the high school.
6. Sohakkyo pukin e nin cunghakkyo ka əpsimnita. There are no middle schools around the elementary schools.
7. Pakmulkwan pukin e nin kongwən i əpsimnita. There are no parks around the museum.
8. Mikuk Təsakwan pukin e nin sangcəm i əpsimnita. There are no stores around the U.S. Embassy.
9. Mikuk Yəngsakwan pukin e nin inhæng i əpsimnita. There are no banks around the U.S. Consulate.
10. Mikuk Kongpowən pukin e nin uphyənkuk i əpsimnita. There is no post office around USIS.
- *11. Upphyənkuk pukin e nin cəphanso ka əpsimnita. There are no courts around the post office.

G. Substitution Drill

1. Sinəe kkaci əlma na məmnikka? How far is downtown [from here]?
2. Seul yək kkaci əlma na məmnikka? How far is it to Seoul Station?
3. Cungkuk imsikcəm kkaci əlma na məmnikka? How far is it to a Chinese restaurant?
4. Hankuk inhæng kkaci əlma na məmnikka? How far is it to the Bank of Korea?
5. Panto Kwesa kkaci əlma na məmnikka? How far is it to the Bando Company?
6. Kukce Kikcang kkaci əlma na məmnikka? How far is it to the International Theatre?

7. Səul Təhakkyo tosəkwən kkaci əlma
na mənnikka? How far is it to the Seoul University library?
8. Təhak Pyəngwən kənmul kkaci əlma
na mənnikka? How far is it to the University Hospital building?
9. Ceil kakkaun kongwən kkaci əlma na
mənnikka? How far is it to the nearest park?

H. Substitution Drill

1. Hakkyo ka əlma na mənnikka? How far is the school?
2. Cip i əlma na kakkapsimnikka? How near is the house?
3. Pihəngki ka əlma na ppalimnikka? How fast is the airplane?
4. Cəncha ka əlma na nillimnikka? How slow is the streetcar?
5. Hapsing i əlma na phyəlli-hamnikka? How convenient is the jitney?
6. Kil i əlma na pəncap-hamnikka? How crowded is the street?
- *7. Munce ka əlma na kantan-hamnikka? How simple is the problem?
- *8. Munpəp i əlma na pokcap-hamnikka? How complicated is the grammar?
- *9. Iyca ka əlma na phyənhamnikka? How comfortable is the chair?
- *10. Kyothong i əlma na pulphyən-hamnikka? How inconvenient is the transportation (or traffic)?
- *11. San i əlma na nophsimnikka? How high is the mountain?
- *12. Kənmul i əlma na nacimnikka? How low is the building?
- *13. Tali ka əlma na ki(l)mnikka? How long (length) is the bridge?
- *14. Mul i əlma na kiphsimnikka? How deep is the water?
- *15. Hakki ka əlma na cca(l)psimnikka? How short is the semester?
- *16. Muke ka əlma na mukəpsimnikka? How heavy is the weight?
- *17. Chəksang i əlma na kapyepsimnikka? How light (weight) is the table?
- *18. Pang i əlma na pa(l)ksimnikka? How light is the room?
- *19. Kyosil i əlma na ətupsimnikka? How dark is the classroom?
- *20. Tosi ka əlma na nəlpsimnikka? How large is the city?

I. Substitution Drill

1. Sinæ kkaci kèle së sip-o pun ccim këllimnita.
It takes about 15 minutes to walk downtown.
2. Sinæ kkaci catongcha lo sip-o pun ccim këllimnita.
It takes about 15 minutes to go downtown by car.
- *3. Siwe kkaci catongcha lo sip-o pun ccim këllimnita.
It takes about 15 minutes to go to the suburb by car.
4. Siwe kkaci catongcha lo i-sip-o pun ccim këllimnita.
It takes about 25 minutes to go to the suburb by car.
5. Siwe kkaci cencha lo i-sip-o pun ccim këllimnita.
It takes about 25 minutes by streetcar to go to the suburb.
6. Sinmunsa kkaci cencha lo i-sip-o ccim këllimnita.
It takes about 25 minutes by streetcar to go to the newspaper publishing company.
7. Sinmunsa kkaci cencha lo pan sikan ccim këllimnita.
It takes about half an hour by streetcar to go to the newspaper publishing company.
8. Sinmunsa kkaci kèle së pan sikan ccim këllimnita.
It takes about half an hour on foot to go to the newspaper publisher.
9. Mikuk Kongpowen tosekwani kkaci kèle së pan sikan ccim këllimnita.
It takes about half an hour on foot to go to the USIS library.
10. Mikuk Kongpowen tosekwan kkaci kèle së pan sikan ccim twemnita.
It's about half an hour (walk) to the USIS library.
11. Mikuk Kongpowen tosekwan kkaci kèle së pan sikan ccim kamnita.
You [have to] go about half an hour on foot to get to the USIS library.

J. Substitution Drill

1. Ppesi na cencha nin tanici anhsimnikka?
Aren't there any buses or streetcars running?
2. Hapsing ina thækssi nin tanici anhsimnikka?
Aren't there any jitneys or taxis running?
3. Pæ na pihængki nin tanici anhsimnikka?
Aren't there any ships or airplanes running?
4. Kicha na catongcha nin tanici anhsimnikka?
Aren't there any trains or automobiles running?
- *5. Catongcha na hwamulcha nin tanici anhsimnikka?
Aren't there any cars or cargo trains running?

- *6. Hwamulcha na hwamulsen in tanici anhsimnikka?
Aren't there any cargo trains or cargo ships running?
- *7. Hwamulsen ina kisen in tanici anhsimnikka?
Aren't there any cargo ships or steamships running?
- *8. Kisen ina kæksen in tanici anhsimnikka?
Aren't there any steamships or passenger ships running?
- *9. Hwamulcha na hwamul catongoha nin tanici anhsimnikka?
Aren't there any cargo trains or trucks running?
- *10. Kæksen ina kækcha nin tanici anhsimnikka?
Aren't there any passenger ships or passenger trains running?
- *11. Kiphæng (cha) na Wanhæng (cha) nin tanici anhsimnikka?
Aren't there any express (trains) or local (trains) running?

K. Substitution Drill

1. Hapsing i cacu tanimnita.
Jitneys run frequently.
2. Hapsing i kakkim tanimnita.
Jitneys run sometimes.
3. Hapsing i nil tanimnita.
Jitneys run all the time.
4. Hapsing i hangsang tanimnita.
Jitneys run all the time.
5. Hapsing i ənce na tanimnita.
Jitneys run {any time.
 all the time.
6. Hapsing i manhi tanimnita.
Jitneys run a lot.
- *7. Hapsing i ttæ ttæ lo tanimnita.
Jitneys run {occasionally.
 from time to time.
- *8. Hapsing i ittakim tanimnita.
Jitneys run {off and on.
 once in a while.
9. Hapsing i han sikan e han pən tanimnita.
Jitneys run every hour.
10. Hapsing i halu e tu pən tanimnita.
Jitneys run twice a day.

L. Substitution Drill

1. əlma na cacu hapsing i tanimnikka?
How often do the jitneys run?
2. əlma na cacu tapang e kamnikka?
How often do you go to a tearoom?
3. əlma na cacu pækhwacem e tillimnikka?
How often do you stop by the department store?
4. əlma na cacu yəca chinku lil
mannamnikka?
How often do you meet your girl friend?
5. əlma na cacu ppəsi lil thamnikka?
How often do you take the bus?
6. əlma na cacu mom i aphimnikka?
How often are you sick?
7. əlma na cacu hyuka lil patsimnikka?
How often do you take leave?
8. əlma na cacu cip ese swimnikka?
How often do you stay home ('rest home')?
9. əlma na cacu yənghwa lil pomnikka?
How often do you see movies?
10. əlma na cacu yənghwa pole
kamnikka?
How often do you go to see movies?
11. əlma na cacu Mikuk yənghwa lil
sangyəng-hamnikka?
How often do [they] show American movies?
- *12. əlma na cacu sæ waisyassi ka
philyo-hamnikka?
How often do you need new (dress) shirt?
13. əlma na cacu yangpok il samnikka?
How often do you buy suits?

M. Substitution Drill

1. Ppəsi (ka) Pəncap-hamnita.
Buses are crowded.
2. Cəncha (ka) pəncap-hamnita.
Streetcars are crowded.
3. Kikcang (i) pəncap-hamnita.
Theatres are crowded.
4. Kicha (ka) pəncap-hamnita.
Trains are crowded.
5. Tapang (i) pəncap-hamnita.
Tearooms are crowded.
6. Siktang (i) pəncap-hamnita.
Restaurants are crowded.
7. Cəngkəcang (i) pəncap-hamnita.
The station is crowded.
8. Kil (i) pəncap-hamnita.
The streets are crowded.
- *9. Kyothong (i) pəncap-hamnita.
Traffic is heavy.
There is a traffic jam.
- *10. Kyothong (i) pokcap-hamnita.
Transportation is complicated.
There is a traffic jam.
- *11. Munce (ka) pokcap-hamnita.
The problem is complicated.
- *12. Munpəp i pokcap-hamnita.
The grammar is complicated.

N. Combination Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

- Tutor: Hankuk e kamnita. Səul ese il-hakessimnita. 'I go to Korea.' 'I'll work in Seoul.'
- Student: Hankuk e kamyən, Səul ese il-hakessimnita. 'When' } 'If' } I go to Korea I'll work in Seoul.'
1. Kim Sənsəng il mannamnita. Kilehke mal-hakessimnita. Kim Sənsəng il mannamyən, kilehke mal-hakessimnita.
2. Sikan i issimnita. Kikcang e kakessimnita. Sikan i issimyən, kikcang e kakessimnita.
3. Sinə e kamnita. Khəphi lil masikessimnita. Sinə e kamyən, khəphi lil masikessimnita.
4. Tapang i əpsimnita. Təsakwan ese mannakessimnita. Tapang i əpsimyən, təsakwan ese mannakessimnita.
5. I pukin e tapang i issimnita. Tillikessimnita. I pukin e tapang i issimyən, tillikessimnita.
6. Kicha ka phyənhamnita. Kicha lo Səul e kakessimnita. Kicha ka phyənhamyən, kicha lo Səul e kakessimnita.
7. Hakkyo ka kakkapsimnita. Kələ sə kakessimnita. Hakkyo ka kakkaumyən, kələ sə kakessimnita.
8. Sinə ka məmnia. Hapsing il thakessimnita. Sinə ka məlmyən, hapsing il thakessimnita.
9. Səul e tto omnita. Səul Təhakkyo e tanikessimnita. Səul e tto omyən, Səul Təhakkyo e tanikessimnita.
10. Ppəsi ka phyəlli-hamnita. Ppəsi lo ttənakessimnita. Ppəsi ka phyəlli-hamyən, ppəsi lo ttənakessimnita.
11. Cəncha e salam i manhsimnita. Thəksi lo okessimnita. Cəncha e salam i manhimyən, thəksi lo okessimnita.

0. Completion Exercise

Tutor: Hankuk e kamyən,

'When I go to Korea}
'If I go to Korea } ,...Student: Hankuk e kamyən, Səul esə
il-hakessimnita.'When } I go to Korea I'll work in
'If } Seoul.'

1. Sikan i issimyən,
2. Sinæ e kamyən,
3. Tapang e tillimyən,
4. Tapang i issimyən,
5. Chinku lɪl mannamyən,
6. Hakkyo ka əpsimyən,
7. Kicha lɪl thamyən,
8. Onil yəki esə ttənamyən,
9. Nal i cohimyən,
10. Səul e cip kaps i pissamyən,
11. Sinæ ka məlmyən,
12. Ki yəca ka yeppimyən,
13. Cohin Hankuk mal sənsəng il chacimyən,
14. Yəng-Han sacən il samyən,
15. Hankuk mal il pəumyən,
16. Ilpon mal i swiumyən,
17. Yəngə ka əlyəumyən,
18. Hankuk mal i cəmi issimyən,
19. Tokil mal il hal su issimyən,
20. Hankuk e kaci anhimyən,
21. Khəphi lɪl masiko siphimyən,
22. Nəsil an pappimyən,
23. Hankuk mal il ale tilimyən,
24. Hankuk mal il ale titci mot hamyən,

P. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Hankuk mal i əlyəpcı man, cəmi issimnita.

Student: Hankuk mal i əlyəwə to, cəmi issə yo.

1. Sinə e tapang i issci man, cohci anhsimnita.
2. Nal mata hakkyo e kaci man, kongpu-haci anhsimnita.
3. Com pappici man, sinə e kakessimnita.
4. Hankuk mal il ale titci man, mal-haci mot hamnita.
5. Ki salam il kitalici man, oci anhsimnita.
6. Cə yəca lil mannassci man, ilim il molimnita.
7. Sənsəng in əpsəssci man, haksəng in manhəssimnita.
8. Hwesa ka mələssci man, kələ sə taniəssimnita.
9. Pihəngki ka phəlli-həssci man, com pissassimnita.
10. Kim Sənsəng in Yəngə lil mal-həssci man, ssici mot həssimnita.
11. Hankuk mal il pəuko siphci man, sikan i əpsimnita.
12. Səul e kalyəko hacı man, Hankuk mal il molimnita.

'Korean is difficult but it's interesting.'

'Even though Korean is difficult, it's interesting.'

Sinə e tapang i issə to, cohci anhə yo.

Nal mata hakkyo e ka to, kongpu-haci anhə yo.

Com pappə to, sinə e kakessə yo.
Hankuk mal il ale tilə to, mal-haci mot hə yo.

Ki salam il kitalyə to, oci anhə yo.

Cə yəca lil mannasse to, ilim il molla yo.

Sənsəng in əpsəsse to, haksəng in manhəsse yo.

Hwesa ka mələsse to, kələ sə taniəsse yo.

Pihəngki ka phəlli-həsse to, com pissasse yo.

Kim Sənsəng in Yəngə lil mal-həsse to, ssici mot həsse yo.

Hankuk mal il pəuko siphə to, sikan i əpsə yo.

Səul e kalyəko hə to, Hankuk mal il molla yo.

Q. Completion Exercise (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: I pukin e tapang i issə to,

'Even though there are tearooms in this area, ...'

Student: I pukin e tapang issə to,
cohci anhsimnita.

'Even though there are tearooms in this area, they're not good.'

1. Hankuk mal i əlyəwə to,
2. Nal mata Hankuk mal il pəwə to,
3. Yəngə lil ale tilə to,
4. Pihængki ka phyəlli-hæ to,
5. Sənsəng in əpsə to,
6. Cə yəca lil mannasse to,
7. Hakkyo ka mələ to,
8. Hankuk mal il pəuko siphə to,
9. Səul e kalyəko hæ to,

R. Response Drill

Tutor: Cip e ka to cohsimnikka?

'May I go home? ('Is it all right even if I go home?')

Student: Ne, ka to cohsimnita.

'Yes, you may (go).'

1. I chæk il ilkə to cohsimnikka?
2. Sənsəng cip e tillə to cohsimnikka?
3. Sənsəng e cha lil tha to cohsimnikka?
4. Cə kılım il pwa to cohsimnikka?
5. Yəki ese tangsin il kitaliə to cohsimnikka?
6. Onil ttəna to cohsimnikka?
7. Kyosil ese khəphi lil masyə to cohsimnikka?
8. Onil cip ese swiə to cohsimnikka?
9. Mikuk yənghwa lil pwa to cohsimnikka?
10. Hankuk mal lo mal-hæ to cohsimnikka?

Ne, ilkə to cohsimnita.

Ne, tillə to cohsimnita.

Ne, tha to cohsimnita.

Ne, pwa to cohsimnita.

Ne, yəki ese kitaliə to cohsimnita.

Ne, onil ttəna to cohsimnita.

Ne, masyə to cochimnita.

Ne, swiə to cohsimnita.

Ne, pwa to cohsimnita.

Ne, Hankuk mal lo mal-hæ to cohsimnita.

S. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: I chæk i pissamnikka?

'Is this book expensive?'

Student: Ne, i chæk ceil pissamnita.

'Yes, this (book) is the most expensive.'

1. Hankuk mal i əlyəpsimnikka?
2. Hapsing i phyelli-hamnikka?
3. Kim Sənsəng i (Hankuk mal il) cal kalichimnikka?
4. Pihaengki ka ppalimnikka?
5. Cəncha ka nilimnikka?
6. Hapsing i cacu tanimnikka?
7. Səul i khin tosi imnikka?
8. Cə yəca lil cohahamnikka?
9. Yəng-Han sacən i philyo-hamnikka?

Ne, Hankuk mal i ceil əlyəpsimnita.
 Ne, hapsing i ceil phyəlli-hamnita.
 Ne, Kim Sənsəng i (Hankuk mal il)
 ceil cal kalichimnita.
 Ne, pihaengki ka ceil ppalimnita.
 Ne, cəncha ka ceil nilimnita.
 Ne, hapsing i ceil cacu tanimnita.
 Ne, Səul i ceil khin tosi imnita.
 Ne, cə yəca lil ceil cohahamnita.
 Ne, Yəng-Han sacən.i ceil philyo-
 hamnita.

T. Response Drill

Tutor: Muəs i ceil phyelli-hamnikka?
 /hapsing/

'What is most convenient?' /jitney/

Student: Hapsing i kacang phyelli-
 hamnita.

'A jitney is the most convenient.'

1. Nuka ceil Yəngə lili cal hamnikka?
 /Kim Sənsəng/
2. əni mal i ceil əlyəpsimnikka?
 /Ssolyən mal/
3. Mikuk esə əni tosi ka ceil
 khimnikka? /Nyuyok/
4. Musin catongcha ka ceil pissamnikka?
 /khyatalək/
5. Hankuk esə eti e Mikuk salam i
 ceil manhi samnikka? /Səul
 pukin/
6. Muəs i ceil ppalimnikka? /kicha/
7. əni phyən i ceil nilimnikka?
 /cəncha/

Kim Sənsəng i Yəngə lili kacang cal
 hamnita.
 Ssolyən mal i kacang əlyəpsimnita.
 Nyuyok i kacang khimnita.
 Khyatalək i kacang pissamnita.
 Səul pukin e kacang manhi samnita.
 Kicha ka kacang ppalimnita.
 Cəncha phən i kacang nilimnita.

8. eti l'il ceil mənce kukyəng-hako
siphsimnikka? /sineo kongwən/
9. əni phyən i ceil cacu tanimnikka?
/hapsing/

Sineo kongwən il kacang mənce
kukyəng-hako siphsimnikka.
Hapsing (phyən) i kacang cacu
tanimnikka.

U. Expansion Drill

Tutor: I chæk i pissamnita. /Yəng-Han
sacən/

'This book is expensive.' /English-
Korean dicationary/

Student: Yəng-Han sacən cung esə i
chæk i kacang pissamnita.

'Of the English-Korean dictionaries
this book is the most expensive.'

1. Mikuk i cohsimnita. /nala til/
2. Mikuk catongcha ka phyənhamnita.
/yələ nala cha/
3. Səul i khin tosi imnita. /Hankuk
e yələ tosi/
4. Kicha ka ppalimnita. /catongcha
wa ppəsi wa kicha/
5. Cungkuk imsik il cohahamnita.
/yələ kaci imsik/
6. Hankuk mal i əlyəpsimnita. /mal
til/
7. Cho Sənsəng i cal kalichimnita.
/sənsəng til/

Nala til cung esə Mikuk i kacang
cohsimnita.
Yələ nala cha cung esə Mikuk catongcha
ka kacang phyənhamnita.
Hankuk e yələ tosi cung esə Səul i
kacang khin tosi imnita.
Catongcha wa ppəsi wa kicha cung
esə kicha ka kacang ppalimnita.
Yələ kaci imsik cung esə Cungkuk
imsik il kacang cohahamnita.
Mal til cung esə Hankuk mal i kacang
əlyəpsimnita.
Sənsəng til cung esə Cho Sənsəng i
kacang cal kalichimnita.

EXERCISES

1. Kim Sənsəng asks you what you want to see first. Propose that you go together to see the following places:
- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| a. Seoul University | H. a museum |
| b. Seoul High School | i. a drug store |
| c. a girls' middle school | j. the central police station |
| d. the nearest elementary school | k. the British consulate |
| e. a library | l. a church |
| f. a hospital | m. the International Post Office |
| g. the zoo | n. the dormitory |

2. Mr. James asks:

- a. how far the school is from your house.
'It's about three miles.'
- b. how long your car is.
'It's 5 and a half meters (long).'
- c. how long it takes to come to work.
'It usually takes 25 minutes by car.'
- d. how high the mountain is.
'It is low but is about 850 feet high.'
- e. which is slower, the bus or the train.
'The bus is a little slower than the train.'
- f. which way is the most convenient of them all.
'The airplane is the most convenient of them all.'
- g. if Korean is complicated.
'No, it's not so complicated and the writing is simple.'
- h. if you came to school early /ilcciki/.
'No, I came a little late /nicke/.'
- i. if the chair is very heavy.
'It's quite heavy but it is lighter than a table.'
- j. if the chair is comfortable.
'It's not bad.'
- k. if the room is dark.
'No, it's quite light.'
- l. if the Han bridge is longer than the other one.
'No, it's shorter.'
- m. if the street is always crowded.
'No, not always. Only in the morning and afternoon.'
- n. if the Korean grammar is simple.
'No, it's very complicated.'
- o. if you want to study Korean.
'I have no time even though I would like to.'
- p. if he may get off in front of the building.
'Yes, you may.'
- q. if he may use your car.
'I'm sorry but you can't.'
- r. if he may ask you a question.
'Yes, please do.'
- s. if he may drink coffee in the classroom.
'Yes, please if you want to.'

3. Find out the following information at the travel bureau:

- a. if there are any passenger ships running between Inchon and Pusan.
- b. if so, whether they are steamships.
- c. if any cargo ships go to Tokyo.
- d. if it is more expensive to ship /puchi-ta/ things by airplane.
- e. how often express trains are running between Seoul and Pusan, and how much is a round-trip ticket /wangpok phyo/.
- f. how much longer it takes to go to Suwon by a local train.

제 11 과 시내 구경 (계속)

(대화 A)

타고 갑시다

1. 스미스 : 시내까지 합승을 타고 갑시다.

타지 맙시다

2. 김 : 버스나 합승은 타지 맙시다. 지금은 합승에도 사람이 많습니다.

걸어 갑시다

3. 스미스 : 그럼, 걸어 갈까요?

택시를 탑시다.

여보세요! 택시!

가 드립니까요

5. 운전수 : 어서 탑십시오. 어디로 가 드립니까요?

중앙

중앙 우편국

가 주십시오

6. 김 : 서울 중앙 우편국으로 가 주십시오.

거의

다

거의 다

내립니다

UNIT 11. Going Around the Town (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

Smith

- thako kapsita
 1. Sinæ kkaci hapsing il thako
 kapsita.
- ('let's ride and go')
 Let's take a jitney downtown.

Kim

- thaci mapsita
 2. Ppæsi na hapsing in thaci mapsita.
 Cikim in hapsing e to salam i
 manhsimnita.
- let's not ride
 Let's not take the bus or a jitney.
 Jitneys are (also) crowded at
 this time (of day).

Smith

- kælæ kamnita
 3. Kilæm, kælæ kal kka yo?
- [I] walk; [I] go on foot
 Shall we walk, then?

Kim

4. Thækssi lil thapsita.
- Let's take a taxi.

(... to a taxi)

Yøpose yo! Thækssi!

Hey! Taxi!

Driver

- ka tilil kka yo
 5. øse thatasipsiyo. øti lo ka
 tilil kka yo?
- (shall I go (for you)?)
 Please get in. Where shall I take
 you? ('Where shall I go for you?')

Kim

- cungang
 Cungang Upphyænkuk
 ka cusipsiyo
 6. Søul Cungang Upphyænkuk ilo ka
 cusipsiyo.
- center; central
 Central Post Office
 please for (for me)
 Please go to the Seoul Central Post
 Office.

7. 운전수 : 중앙 우편국에 거의 다 왔습니다.
어디에서 내리시겠습니까?

화문
가까이에서
내려 주십시오

8. 김 : 화문 가까이에서 내려 주십시오.

(대화 B)

잠간
들을 일

9. 김 : 저는 잠간 우편국에 들을 일이 있습니다.
선생은 먼저 다방으로 가시겠어요?

10. 스미스 : 무슨 일이 있습니까?

편지
부릅니다
부쳐야
부쳐야 합니다

11. 김 : 예, 편지 한 장 부쳐야 하겠습니다.

12. 스미스 : 저도 같이 갈까요?

- 기다리는 것
기다리는 것이 좋겠습니다
선생은 다방에서 기다리는 것이 좋겠습니다.

(... a little later)

Driver

- kəi almost; nearly
 kəi ta most; almost; almost all;
 nəlimnita almost everyone
 7. Cungang Uphyənkuk e kəi ta [I] get off; [it] falls down
 wassimnita. eti ese We've almost come to the Central Post
 nəlisikessimnikka? Office. Where would you like to
 get off?

Kim

- aph mun/ammun/ the front door
 kakkai ese near; at the near place
 nəlyə cusipsiyo drop [me] off
 8. Aph mun kakkai ese nəlyə Please drop [us] off at the front
 cusipsiyo. door.

(...They got off the taxi.)

Kim

- camkan a little while
 tillil il/tilyilyil/ something to stop by for
 9. Cə nin camkan uphyənkuk e tillil I have some business at the post
 il i issimnita. Sənsəng in mənce office for a moment. Would you
 tapang ilo kasikessə yo? [like to] go to the tearoom first?

Smith

10. Musin il i issimnikka? What do you have [to do]?

Kim

- phyənci letter
 puchimnita [I] mail
 puchiə ya ('only if [I] mail'); ('only
 when [I] mail')
 puchiə ya hamnita [I] have to mail; [I] must mail
 11. Ne, phyənci han cang puchiə ya Well, I have to mail a letter.
 hakessimnita.

아마

시간이 걸릴 것입니다

14. 아마, 시간이 좀 걸릴 것입니다.

너무

늦습니다, 늦읍니다

늦지 마십시오

15. 스미스 : 그럼, 너무 늦지 마십시오.

골

돌아옵니다

16. 김 : 아니요, 골 돌아 오겠습니다.

이따

17. 스미스 : 그럼, 이따 만납시다.

Smith

12. Cə to kathi kal kka yo?

Shall I also go with you?

Kim

kitalinin kəs

('the waiting thing')

kitalinin kəs i cohkessimnita

you'd better wait ('that you
wait will be good')13. Sənsəng in tapang ese kitalinin
kəs i cohkessimnita.

You'd better wait in the tearoom.

ama

perhaps; probably

sikan i kəllil kəs imnita

it will take time

14. Ama, sikan i com kəllil kəs
imnita.It may take a little time. ('Pro-
bably time will take a little.')Smith

nəmu

too

nicsimnita}
nicimnita }

[it]'s late; [it] delays

nicci masipsiyo

don't be late; don't be long

15. Kiləm, nəmu nicci masipsiyo.

Don't be too long, then.

Kim

kot

soon; immediately

tola omnita

[I] come back

16. Aniyo, kot tola okesse yo.

No, I'll be soon back.

Smith

itta

later; after a while

17. Kiləm, itta mannapsita.

See you in a few minutes, then.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers)

1. 3. Thako kapsita. ('Let's ride and go.') is a fixed expression used in contrast to Kele (sə) kapsita 'Let's go on foot.' Thako ka- with or without specifying a mode of transportation before it (as an object) is used to denote going by some means of transportation (e.g. car, taxi, bus, street-car, etc.)
5. eti lo ka t̄ilil kka yo? ('Where shall I go for you?') is the politer equivalent of eti lo ka cul kka yo?. The verb cu- or its politer equivalent tili- is used as an auxiliary verb. (See Grammar Note 2.)
6. Cungang 'central', 'center' occurs either as a determinative or a free-noun. As a determinative it forms a noun phrase with the following noun; as a free-noun it denotes geographical location. Compare (a) and (t):

(a) Cungang Kikcang	'Central Theatre'
Cungang Cəngkəcang	'Central Station'
(b) Sinə cungang e samnita.	[I] live in the center of the city.
7. Kəi 'almost', 'most of them' and kei ta 'almost (all)', 'most of all' both occur either nominals or adverbials. Kei ta is a two-word phrase. As a nominal, either one of them occurs in the subject, topic or object position in a sentence.
8. Nəli- 'to get off', 'to descend' is an intransitive verb which may precede a place or transportation name + ese. Tha- 'to ride', 'to get on' is antonymous with nəli- (See Notes on Dialogues 14, Unit 7.) The verb phrase nəliə cu- 'to drop somebody off' occurs as a transitive verb phrase which may precede a direct object with or without a place or transportation name + ese. The antonymous verb for nəliə cu- is either thəu- or thəwə cu-, both of which mean 'to give someone a ride' or 'to load'. Kakkai 'near', 'at the near place', 'the near place' occurs either as an adverb or a noun. The antonym for the adverb kakkai is məlli 'far away'.

14. Ama 'perhaps', 'probably' occurs as a sentence adverb which is usually followed by either an inflected form with the suffix -kess- in it or the construction -(i)l kəs i-. It denotes the speaker's presumption for the probable action or description of the subject or topic in the sentence.
15. Nəmu 'too' is an adverb which, without being followed by a pause immediately before verbals, noun-modifier words, or other adverbs, denotes excessive degree of the following descriptive expressions.
16. Kot 'soon', 'right away', 'immediately' which may be followed by a pause occurs as a sentence adverb. It denotes immediate time for the following inflected expression.
17. Itta 'later', 'after a while' which may be followed by a pause, occurs as a sentence adverb, and denotes later point of time on the same day for the following inflected expression. The antonym of itta is akka 'a little while ago' which is also a sentence adverb.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -ci + ma(1)-

We learned in Unit 4 that the ci form plus the verb anh- was used to negate the verb in the ci form in a statement or question sentence. Remember that anh- does not occur alone but is always preceded by the ci form without a pause. Like anh-, the verb ma(1)- does not occur without being preceded by the ci form. -ci + ma(1)- is used to indicate negation of the verb in the ci form in either proposititive or imperative sentences. Note that in the construction -ci + anh- tenses and/or levels of speech may be generated in the verb anh-, but in the construction -ci + ma(1)-, tense suffixes do not occur in the inflected form of the stem ma(1)-: the verb ma(1) takes only -(i)psita and -(i)sipsiyo endings in Formal Polite Speech, and the infinitive form of ma(1)- is male, making the informal polite speech present form male yo. Compare:

GROUP 1

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| a. Hankukə lo (mal-)hapsita. | 'Let's speak in Korean.' |
| Hankukə lo (mal-)haci mapsita. | 'Let's not speak in Korean.' |
| b. Kələ kapsita. | 'Let's go on foot.' |
| Kələ kaci mapsita. | 'Let's not go on foot.' |

- c. Kyosil ese tampæ (lil) phiupsita.
 Kyosil ese tampæ (lil) phiuci
 mapsita.

'Let's smoke in the classroom.'
 'Let's not smoke in the classroom.'

GROUP 2

- a. I chæk il ilkisipsiyo.
 I chæk il ilkci masipsiyo.
- b. Hankuk mal lo mal-hasipsiyo.
 Hankuk mal lo mal-haci masipsiyo.
- c. Kimchi lil mëkisipsiyo.
 Kimchi lil mëkci masipsiyo.

'Read this book.'
 'Don't read this book.'

'Speak in Korean.'

'Don't speak in Korean.'

'Eat Kimchi.'

'Don't eat Kimchi.'

2. Infinitive + cu-

In Unit 7, we were introduced to a verb phrases (i.e. infinitive + auxiliary verb). The verb cu- preceded by an infinitive without a pause occurs as an auxiliary verb. As an independent verb cu- means 'to give', and the construction Infinitive + cu- which may be preceded by a Personal Nominal + {eke hanthe} 'to + {hanthe}'

Personal Nominal' means literary something like 'do and give to someone'. But the auxiliary verb cu- is generally used either to denote 'rendering service to someone' by the subject or topic, or simply to mean nothing but to make the speech politer in an imperative sentence. The politer or honorific equivalent of cu- is an irregular form tili- which occurs also either as an independent verb or as an auxiliary verb. Observe the following examples:

1. a. Chæk il ilkisipsiyo. 'Read the book.'
 b. Chæk il ilke cusipsiyo. {'Please read the book.'
 {'Please read me the book.'}
 c. Chæk il na eke ilke cusipsiyo. {'Please read me the book.'
 {'Please read the book {for to} me.'}
2. a. Kim Sënsëng i khëphi lil sassimnita. 'Mr. Kim bought coffee.'
 b. Kim Sënsëng i khëphi lil sa cuëssimnita. 'Mr. Kim bought [me] coffee.'
 c. Kim Sënsëng i cë eke khëphi lil sa cuëssimnita. {'Mr. Kim bought me coffee.'
 {'Mr. Kim bought coffee for me.'}

3. a. Cə yəca ka Yəngə lɪl 'That woman taught English.'
 kalichiessimnita.
- b. Cə yəca ka Yəngə lɪl kalichie 'That woman taught [me] English.'
 cuessimnita.
- c. Cə yəca ka na hanthe Yənge lɪl 'That woman taught me English.'
 kalichie cuessimnita.
4. a. Sənsəng kwa kathi kal kka yo? 'Shall I go with you?'
- b. Sənsəng kwa kathi ka tilil kka 'Shall I go with you (for you)?'
 yo?
 { 'Shall I accompany you?'
 { 'Would you like me to go with you?'
- c. Ne, na wa kathi ka cusiøsiyo. 'Yes, please go with me.'

3. Particle ya

Ya belongs to a small class of particles which occur without a pause immediately after inflected forms (e.g. Infinitives). Infinitive + ya occurs in the following two constructions:

- a. Infinitive + ya + ha- 'must...', 'have (or has) to__'

Infinitive + ya followed by the verb ha- without a pause is used to denote obligation of the action or description of the verb in the infinitive for the subject or topic in the sentence. In this construction the tenses and/or levels of speech is generated only in ha-. Examples:

Wekyokwan in wekuk mal il ale ya 'Diplomats must know foreign
 hamnita. languages.'

Cə to Hankuk mal il pəwə ya hæ yo. 'I have to study Korean, too.'

Chinku lɪl manna ya hakessə yo? 'Do [you] have to meet a friend?'

Hakkyo e ka ya hæssimnita. 'I had to go to school.'

Note that the pattern -ci ahhimyən an twemnita. ('If [one] doesn't do... [it] doesn't become.') is often interchangeably used with Infinitive + ya ha-. Thus, the Yes response to either Infinitive + ya hamnikka? or -ci anhimyən an twemnita? is either Ne, Infinitive + ya hamnita. or Ne, -ci anhimyən an twemnita. The most usual No response to either of the above questions is Aniyo, -ci anhə to { cohsimnita. { kwənchansimnita. } 'No, [you] don't have to...' ('Even if [one] does not do... [it]'s O.K.')

- b. Infinitive + ya + verbs other than ha- 'only when, .!', 'only if..!', 'must...to...!'

Infinitive + ya, which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression, occurs to denote obligatory condition of action or description of the subject or topic for the following inflected expression. In this construction, the tense suffixes may also occur in the infinitive form which precedes ya, while tenses and/or levels of speech are generated in the following inflected expression. Examples:

Hankuk mal il ale ya, il-haki
swipsimnita.

Ton i isse ya, cha lil sal su
issimnita.

Chæk kaps i ssa ya, sakesse yo.

Pam e cal ca ya, kongpu cal hal su
issimnita.

Ki ttæ e Seoul e issesse ya, ki kës
il pol su issessil kës imnita.

- 'It is easy to work only when [you] know Korean.'
'You have to know Korean to make it easy to work.'
'Only if [i] have money, I can buy a car.'
'[I] have to have money to buy a car.'
'Only if the book is cheap, I will buy it.'
'[You] have to have a goodnight sleep to study well.'
'Only when [you] sleep well, you can study well.'
'Only if [you] had been in Seoul at that time [you] could have seen it.'
'[You] should have been in Seoul at that time to have seen it.'

4. -n/in/nin + kës

Remember that the Nominalized verb (i.e. the ki form) occurs in a nominal position in a sentence, e.g. subject, topic, object (See Unit 8). Just like the ki form, the phrase -n/in/nin + kës (which is the present noun-modifier word plus the post-noun kës) often occurs in the nominal positions. Any English verbal expression which occurs in nominal positions can be compared with the above Korean construction. Observe the following examples:

Wekuk mal il pæunin kës in swipci
anhsimnita.

Ceimsi ka Yengæ lil kalichinin
kës il amnita.

Kim Sænsæng i hakkyo e kanin kës
il pwasse yo.

'Learning foreign languages is not easy.'

'[I] know that James is teaching English.'

'I saw that Mr. Kim was going to school.'

Thækssi lil thanin kès i

'How would you like to take a taxi?'

ettëhsimnikka?

Sœul ese sanin kès i cohahamnikka?

'Do you like to live in Seoul?'

Note, however, that the expression -n/in/nin kès i coh(kess)simnita '[You] had better do...' ('It (will) be good to do such-and-such' or 'That [you] do... will be good.') occurs as a fixed expression to indicate the speaker's recommendation, suggestion or wishes.

5. -(i)l kès i-

We learned about the inflected forms which include the suffix -kess- (Grammar Note 2, Unit 3). Like the inflected forms including -kess-, the construction -(i)l kès i- is also used to indicate either the future action or description, or the speaker's presumption, about the subject or the topic in the sentence. Study the following formula:

<u>Subject/Topic</u>	<u>Form</u>	<u>Denotation</u>
a. Speaker	-kess-	Speaker's positive intention for the future
b. Addressee (in a question sentence)	-kess-	Addressee's positive intention for the future
c. Other than speaker or addressee (in a question sentence)	-kess-	Addressee's opinion or presumption for the future
d. Other than speaker or addressee (in a statement sentence)	-kess-	Speaker's presumption
e. Speaker	-(i)l kès i-	Speaker's passive future
f. Addressee (in a question sentence)	-(i)l kès i-	Addressee's passive future
g. Addressee (in a statement sentence)	-(i)l kès i-	Speaker's presumption for the future
h. Other than the speaker or addressee (in a statement sentence)	-(i)l kès i-	Speaker's belief or knowledge for the future
i. Other than the speaker or addressee (in a question sentence)	-(i)l kès i-	Addressee's opinion, presumption or knowledge for the future

Note that if the subject/topic in the sentence is other than the speaker or addressee, and if the speaker simply states his knowledge about the action or description of the subject/topic for the future, the construction -(i)l kès i-

is usually used instead of the -kess- form. However, -(i)l kès i- is also used occasionally to denote the speaker's presumption about the subject/topic. Compare the following pairs:

a. Onil pi ka okessimnita.

Onil pi ka ol kès imnita.

'It is going to rain today (I suppose).'

'It will rain today.'

b. Ki cha ka pissakessimnita.

Ki cha ka pissal kès imnita.

'That car must be expensive.'

'That car will be expensive.'

c. Onil Thoyoil ini kka, haksæng

til i hakkyo e əpskessimnita.

Onil Thoyoil ini kka, haksæng

til i hakkyo e əpsil kès imnita.

'Because today is Saturday, I presume there are not students at school.'

'Because today is Saturday, there (will) be no students at school.'

'Probably there (will) be no students at school because today is Saturday.'

d. Pak Sənsæng i onil ttənakessimnita.

Pak Sənsæng i onil ttənal kès
imnita.

'I believe Mr. Park will leave today.'

'Mr. Park will leave today.'

6. Further Notes on Honorifics

In Unit 3, we noticed that when the subject, topic or the person acted upon in a sentence is honored, the honorific suffix -(i)si- is added to the verb stem. While most Korean verb stems take -(i)si- to form honorifics there is a small class of verb stems of which honorifics have irregular shapes. Examples:

Stem

Honorific or Humble form

ca-

cumusi-

'to sleep'

iss-

kyesi-

'to exist'

mək-

capsusi-

'to eat'

cu-

tili(si)-

'to give'

cuk-

tola kasi-

'to die', 'to pass away (H)'

Remember that the speaker does not honor himself regardless of age, status or other factors. That is, the honorific suffix -(i)si- should not occur in the verb in a sentence where the speaker himself is the subject, topic or the person acted upon.

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1. Sinæ kkaci hapsing il thako kapsita. Let's take a jitney as far as the downtown area.
2. Səul Yək kkaci cəncha lil thako kapsita. Let's take a streetcar as far as Seoul Station.
3. Cungang Uphyənkuk kkaci ppəsi lil thako kapsita. Let's take a bus as far as the Central Post Office.
4. Hankuk inhaəng kkaci catongcha lil thako kapsita. Let's take a car as far as the Bank of Korea.
5. Təsakwan aph kkaci thaekssi lil thako kapsita. Let's take a taxi as far as the front of U.S. Embassy.
6. Kukce Kikcang kkaci hapsing il thako kapsita. Let's take a jitney as far as the International Theatre.
7. Cungkuk imsikcəm kkaci cha lil thako kapsita. Let's take a car as far as the Chinese restaurant.
8. Yəngsakwan pukin kkaci hapsing il thako kapsita. Let's take a jitney as far as the vicinity of the consulate.
- *9. Pihəngcang kkaci kələ kapsita. Let's walk as far as the airport.

B. Substitution Drill

1. Cungang Uphyənkuk ilo ka cusipsiyo. Please go to the Central Post Office.
2. Cungang Sicang ilo ka cusipsiyo. Please go to the Central Market.
3. Cungang Kikcang ilo ka cusipsiyo. Please go to the Central Theatre.
4. Cungang Tosekwən ilo ka cusipsiyo. Please go to the Central Library.
5. Cungang Kyəngchalse lo ka cusipsiyo. Please go to the Central Police Station.
6. Cungang Kongwən ilo ka cusipsiyo. Please go to the Central Park.
7. Cungang Pakmulkwan ilo ka cusipsiyo. Please go to the Central Museum.
8. Səul Sinmunsa lo ka cusipsiyo. Please go to the Seoul Newspaper Co.
9. Pihəngcang ilo ka cusipsiyo. Please go to the airport.
10. Pyəngwən ilo ka cusipsiyo. Please go to the hospital.
- *11. Mun ilo ka cusipsiyo. Please go to the door.
- *12. Cali lo ka cusipsiyo. Please go to the seat.

C. Substitution Drill

1. Mun kakkai ese nælie cusipsiyo. Please drop [me] off near the door.
2. Mun yeph ese nælie cusipsiyo. Please drop [me] off beside the door.
3. Inhæng aph ese nælie cusipsiyo. Please drop [me] in front of the bank.
4. Tosekwан twi ese nælie cusipsiyo. Please drop [me] behind the library.
5. Ce kənmul kakkai ese nælie cusipsiyo. Please drop [me] near that building.
6. Pækhwacəm olin ccok ese nælie cusipsiyo. Please drop [me] on the right side of the department store.
- *7. Sopangse wen ccok ese nælie cusipsiyo. Please drop [me] on the left side of the fire station.
8. Kyəngchalsə yeph ese nælie cusipsiyo. Please drop [me] next to the police station.
9. Munpangkucəm aph ese nælie cusipsiyo. Please drop [me] in front of the stationery shop.
10. Cungkuk siktang twi ese nælie cusipsiyo. Please drop [me] behind the Chinese restaurant.
- *11. Cungkuk siktang twi ese məmchue cusipsiyo. Please stop behind the Chinese restaurant.
- *12. Cungkuk siktang twi ese se cusipsiyo. Please stop (or stand) behind the Chinese restaurant.
- *13. Cungkuk siktang twi ese sewə cusipsiyo. Please park behind the Chinese restaurant.

D. Substitution Drill

1. Uphyenuk ilo ka cusimyən, I would appreciate it if you'd go to the post office for me.
2. Hankuk mal il kalichie cusimyən, I would appreciate it if you would teach [me] Korean.
3. Ce lil kitalyə cusimyən, I would appreciate it if you would wait for me.
4. Yəki ese nælie cusimyən, I would appreciate it if you would drop me off here.
5. Ki sacən il poyə cusimyən, I would appreciate it if you would show me the dictionary.

- *6. Mun il tate cusimyən,
kamsahakessimnita.
I would appreciate it if you would close the door.
- *7. Mun il yele cusimyən,
kamsahakessimnita.
I would appreciate it if you would open the door.
- *8. Ki chæk il pillye cusimyən,
kamsahakessimnita.
I would appreciate it if you would lend me that book.
- *9. Calie ance cusimyən,
kamsahakessimnita.
I would appreciate it if you would take a seat.
- *10. Catongcha lil ponə cusimyən,
kamsahakessimnita.
I would appreciate it if you would send [me] a car.
- *11. Mun aph ese se cusimyən,
kamsahakessimnita.
I would appreciate it if you would stop in front of the door.

E. Substitution Drill

1. Camkan uphyənkuk e tillil il i issimnita.
I have to stop by the post office for a few minutes. ('I have something to stop by the post office for.')
2. Camkan chækpang e tillil il i issimnita.
I have to stop by a bookstore for a few minutes.
3. Camkan yakpang e tillil il i issimnita.
I have to stop by the drugstore for a few minutes.
4. Camkan pyəngwən e tillil il i issimnita.
I have to stop by the hospital for a few minutes.
5. Camkan kyəngchalse e tillil il i issimnita.
I have to stop by the police station for a few minutes.
- *6. Camkan pangsongkuk e tillil il i issimnita.
I have to stop by the radio station for a few minutes.
7. Camkan kyohwe e tillil il i issimnita.
I have to stop by the church for a few minutes.
8. Camkan hwesa e tillil il i issimnita.
I have to stop by the office for a few minutes.
9. Camkan hwesa e kal il i issimnita.
I have to go ('something to go for') to the office for a few minutes.
10. Camkan hwesa e hal il i issimnita.
I have something to do at the office for a few minutes.
- *11. Camkan hwesa e pol il i issimnita.
I have some business at the office for a few minutes.

F. Substitution Drill

1. Sənsəng in tapang ese kitalinin
kəs i cohkessimnita. You'd better wait at the tearoom.
2. Sənsəng in hakkyo e kanin kəs i
cohkessimnita. You'd better go to school.
3. Sənsəng in Yəngə lɪl kalichinin
kəs i cohkessimnita. You'd better teach English.
4. Sənsəng in cip e issnin kəs i
cohkessimnita. You'd better stay home.
5. Sənsəng in hyuka lɪl patnin kəs
i cohkessimnita. You'd better take a vacation.
6. Sənsəng in com swinin kəs i
cohkessimnita. You'd better take a little rest.
7. Sənsəng in ki yəca lɪl mannanin
kəs i cohkessimnita. You'd better meet her.
8. Sənsəng in Ceimsi eke mule ponin
kəs i cohkessimnita. You'd better ask James.
- *9. Sənsəng in kimantunin kəs i
cohkessimnita. You'd better stop doing [it].
10. Sənsəng in təhak il kith-nənin
kəs i cohkessimnita. You'd better finish college.
11. Sənsəng in mencə ttənanin kəs i
cohkessimnita. You'd better leave first (before me).
12. Sənsəng in yəki ese nəlinin kəs
i cohkessimnita. You'd better get off here.
13. Sənsəng in yəki e cha lɪl seunin
kəs i cohkessimnita. You'd better park [your] car here.

G. Substitution Drill

1. (Sənsəng in) hakkyo e kaci anhnin
kəs i cohkessimnita. [You]'d better not go to school.
2. (Sənsəng in) Yəngə lo mal-haci
anhnin kəs i cohkessimnita. [You]'d better not speak in English.
3. (Sənsəng in) ki salam il kitalici
anhnin kəs i cohkessimnita. [You]'d better not wait for him.

4. (Sənsəng in) ki yənghwa lɪl poci
anhniñ kəs i cohkessimnita. [You]'d better not see the movie.
5. (Sənsəng in) i catongcha lɪl saci
anhniñ kəs i cohkessimnita. [You]'d better not buy this automobile.
6. (Sənsəng in) onil tola oci anhnin
kəs i cohkessimnita. [You]'d better not go back today.
7. (Sənsəng in) yəki ese nəlici anhnin
kəs i cohkessimnita. [You]'d better not get off here.
8. (Sənsəng in) yəki e cha lɪl seuci
anhniñ kəs i cohkessimnita. [You]'d better not park the car here.
- *9. (Sənsəng in) i phyənci lɪl ponəci
anhniñ kəs i cohkessimnita. [You]'d better not send this letter.

H. Response Drill

Tutor: Hapsing il thal kka yo?

Student: Aniyo, thaci mapsita.

1. Kələ kal kka yo?
 'Shall we walk?'
2. Mun aph ese nəlil kka yo?
3. Hankuk yənghwa lɪl pol kka yo?
4. Onil cip e issil kka yo?
5. Cənghkəcang ese ki pun il kitalil kka yo?
6. I phyənci lɪl puchil kka yo?
7. Kathi tapang e tillil kka yo?
8. Uli kot tola ol kka yo?
9. Itta mannal kka yo?
10. Ki yəca eke i kīlim il poyə cul kka yo?
11. Cikim il il sicak-hal kka yo?
12. Cokim swil kka yo?

'Shall we take a jitney?'

'No, let's not (take).'

Aniyo, kələ kaci mapsita.

'No, let's not (walk).'

Aniyo, mun aph ese nəlici mapsita.

Aniyo, (Hankuk yənghwa lɪl) poci mapsita.

Aniyo, cip e issci mapsita.

Aniyo, (cənghkəcang ese) kitalici mapsita.

Aniyo, puchici mapsita.

Aniyo, (tapang e) tillici mapsita.

Aniyo, kot tola oci mapsita.

Aniyo, (itta) mannaci mapsita.

Aniyo, poyə cuci mapsita.

Aniyo, cikim sicak-haci mapsita.

Aniyo, swici mapsita.

I. Response Drill

Tutor: Hapsing il thal kka yo?

'Shall we take a jitney?'

Student: Aniyo, hapsing il thaci anhnin
kès i cohkessimnita.

'No, we'd better not take a jitney.'

1. Tapang e tillil kka yo?

Aniyo, (tapang e) tillici anhnin
kès i cohkessimnita.

2. Ki yeca lil kitalil kka yo?

Aniyo, (ki yeca lil) kitalici anhnin
kès i cohkessimnita.

3. Səul e tola kal kka yo?

Aniyo, (Səul e) tola kaci anhnin
kès i cohkessimnita.

4. Ppəsi lil thako kal kka yo?

Aniyo, (ppəsi lil) thako kaci anhnin
kès i cohkessimnita.

5. Taim cuil e hyuka lil patil kka
yo?

Aniyo, taim cuil e (hyuka lil) patci
anhnin kès i cohkessimnita.

6. Lətiyo lil titil kka yo?

Aniyo, (lətiyo lil) titci anhnin
kès i cohkessimnita.

7. Hankuk mal il pəul kka yo?

Aniyo, (Hankuk mal il) pəuci anh in
kès i cohkessimnita.

J. Response Drill

Tutor: Cikim hakkyo e ka to cohsimnikka?

'May I go to school now?'

Student: Aniyo, kaci masipsiyo.

'No, please don't go.'

1. Phyənci lil puchyə to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, puchici masipsiyo.

2. Hapsing il thako ka to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, thako kaci masipsiyo.

3. Sənsəng e samusil e tillə to
cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, tillici masipsiyo.

4. Sichəng aph esə næliə to
cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, (sichəng aph esə) nælici
masipsiyo.

5. Sənsəng il tapang esə kitaliə to
cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, (na lil) kitalici masipsiyo.

6. Cip e tola ka to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, tola kaci masipsiyo.

7. Cokim swiə to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, swici masipsiyo.

8. Cikim ttəna to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim ttənaci masipsiyo.

9. Hankuk mal lo mal-hæ to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, Hankuk mal lo mal-haci
masipsiyo.

10. Kyosil ese khəphi lil masiə to cohsimnikka? Aniyo, (kyosil ese khəphi lil)
masici masipsiyo.
11. Malssim com mule pwa to cohsimnikka? Aniyo, mule poci masipsiyo.

K. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Na nin phyənci lil puchikessimnita. 'I'll mail a letter.'

Student: Na to phyənci lil puchiə ya hæ yo. 'I have to mail a letter, too.'

1. Na nin kicha lil thakessimnita.
Na to kicha lil tha ya hæ yo.
2. Na nin Mikuk Təsakwan e tillikessimnita.
Na to Mikuk Təsakwan e tillə ya hæ yo.
3. Na nin cohin təhakkyo e tanikessimnita.
Na to cohin təhakkyo e tannie ya hæ yo.
4. Na nin Ceimsi lil kitalikessimnita.
Na to Ceimsi lil kitaliə ya hæ yo.
5. Na nin næil Səul il ttənakessimnita.
Na to næil Səul il ttəna ya hæ yo.
6. Na nin nal mata Hankuk mal il yənsip-hakessimnita.
Na to nal mata Hankuk mal il yənsip-hæ ya hæ yo.
7. Na nin cənyək e cip e isskessimnita.
Na to cənyək e cip e issə ya hæ yo.
8. Na nin khəphi lil masikessimnita.
Na to khəphi lil masiə ya hæ yo.
9. Na nin wekyokwan i twekessimnita.
Na to wekyokwan i tweə ya hæ yo.
10. Na nin taim cuil e Səul e tola wa okessimnita.
Na to taim cuil e Səul e tola wa ya hæ yo.

L. Response Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal il pəwəsse yo?

'Have you studied Korean?'

Student: Ne, (Hankuk mal il) pəwə ya həssə yo.

'Yes, I had to (study Korean).'

1. Phyənci lil puchiəsse yo?
Ne, phyənci lil puchiə ya həssə yo.
2. Kicha lil thako kasse yo?
Ne, kicha lil thako ka ya həssə yo.
3. Cohin təhakkyo e taniəsse yo?
Ne, cohin təhakkyo e tannie ya həssə yo.
4. Mun aph ese næliəsse yo?
Ne, mun aph ese næliə ya həssə yo.

5. Kim Sənsəng in Səul il ttənasse yo?
Ne, (Kim Sənsəng in Səul il) ttəna ya həssə yo.
6. Tosekwən esə Ceimsi lɪl kitaliəsse yo?
Ne, (tosekwən esə Ceimsi lɪl) kitaliə ya həssə yo.
7. əce Pusan esə tola wasse yo?
Ne, (əce Pusan esə) tola wa ya həssə yo.
8. Ki pun in hakkyo sənsəng i tweəsse yo?
Ne, (ki pun in) hakkyo sənsəng i tweə ya həssə yo.
9. Ki il il əce kkaci kkith-nəssə yo?
Ne, (ki il il) əce kkaci kkith-nəssə yo.
10. Pəlsəsə hyuka lɪl patəsse yo?
Ne, pəlsəsə hyuka lɪl pate ya həssə yo.

M. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Sinə lo kal kka yo?

{ 'Shall I go downtown?'
'Do you want me to go downtown?'

Student: Sinə lo ka tilil kka yo?

{ 'Shall I go downtown (for you)?'
'Would you like me to go downtown (for you)?'

- Chək il ilkil kka yo?
- Tapang esə kitalil kka yo?
- Khəphi lɪl sal kka yo?
- I cha lɪl phal kka yo?
- Hankuk mal il kalichil kka yo?
- Kathi cip e issil kka yo?
- Kil il mule pol kka yo?
- Ki chək il chacil kka yo?
- Yəki esə nəllil kka yo?
- Kim Sənsəng il mannal kka yo?

- Chək il ilke tilil kka yo?
- Tapang esə kitaliə tilil kka yo?
- Khəphi lɪl sa tilil kka yo?
- I cha lɪl phala tilil kka yo?
- Hankuk mal il kalichie tilil kka yo?
- Kathi cip e issə tilil kka yo?
- Kil il mule pwa tilil kka yo?
- Ki chək il chace tilil kka yo?
- Yəki esə nəllie tilil kka yo?
- Kim Sənsəng il manna tilil kka yo?

N. Response Drill

- Tutor: Chæk il ilke tilikesse yo. 'I will read the book for you.'
- Student: Ne, (chæk il) ilke cusipsiyo. 'Yes, please read it for me.'
1. Tapang ese kitalie tilikesse yo. Ne, tapang ese kitalie cusipsiyo.
2. Khøphi lil sa tilikesse yo. Ne, khøphi lil sa cusipsiyo.
3. Kil il mule pwa tilikesse yo. Ne, kil il mule pwa cusipsiyo.
4. Ki chæk il chace tilikesse yo. Ne, ki chæk il chace cusipsiyo.
5. Cip e {isskesse yo. Ne, cip e issse cusipsiyo.
- {issse tilikesse yo.
6. Hankuk mal il kalichie tilikesse yo. Ne, (Hankuk mal il) kalichie cusipsiyo.
7. Wen ccok ilo ka tilikesse yo. Ne, wen ccok ilo ka cusipsiyo.
8. Mikuk Yøngsakwan ese nælie tilikesse yo. Ne, Mikuk Yøngsakwan ese nælie cusipsiyo.
9. Onil ohu e samusil e tillø tilikesse yo. Ne, onil ohu e samusil e tillø cusipsiyo.

O. Response Drill

- Tutor: eti lo ka tilil kka yo? 'Where shall I go?' /the direction of the City Hall/
- /sichøng ccok/
- Student: Sichøng ccok ilo ka cusipsiyo. 'Please go to (the direction of) the City Hall.'
1. eti ese nælie tilil kka yo? Paekhwacøm mun ese nælie cusipsiyo.
- /paekhwacøm mun/
2. Muøs il sa tilil kka yo? /khøphi/ Khøphi lil sa cusipsiyo.
3. ønce sønsøng e cip e tillil kka yo? /Suyoil/ Suyoil e tillø cusipsiyo.
4. eti ese sønsøng il kitalil kka yo? /tosekwøn aph/ Tosøkwøn aph ese (na lil) kitalie cusipsiyo.
5. øni sinmun il ilke tilil kka yo? /Søul Sinmun/ Søul Sinmun il ilke cusipsiyo.
6. ønce kkaci i il il kkith-næ tilil kka yo? /mole kkaci/ Mole kkaci i il il kkith-næ cusipsiyo.
7. øni mal il kalichie tilil kka yo? /Cungkuk Mal/ Cungkuk Mal il kalichie cusipsiyo.
8. Myøch-si e tasi wa tilil kka yo? /tasøs-si/ Tasøs-si e tasi wa cusipsiyo.

P. Expansion Drill (Use /kəi ta/ in the proper place.)

Tutor: Uphyenuk e wassimnita.

'[We] have come to the post office.'

Student: Uphyenuk e kəi ta wassimnita.

'[We] have come to the post office
almost.'

1. Haksæng til i Səul ese ttənassimnita.
2. Onil il i kkith-nassimnita.
3. Hakkyo kal sikan i tweəssimnita.
4. Hankuk mal sənsæng til il
mannassimnita.
5. Salam til i kicha e thassimnita.
6. Ceimsi Sənsæng in Hankuk mal il
alə titsimnita.
7. Uli nin Səul il kukyəng-hæssimnita.
8. Ai til i cip e tola wassimnita.

Haksæng til i Səul ese kəi ta
ttənassimnita.Onil il i kəi ta kkith-nassimnita.
Hakkyo kal sikan i kəi ta
tweəssimnita.Hankuk mal Sənsæng til il kəi ta
mannassimnita.Salam til i kicha e kəi ta
thassimnita.Ceimsi Sənsæng in Hankuk mal il kəi
ta alə titsimnita.Uli nin Səul il kəi ta kukyəng-
hæssimnita.Ai til i cip e kəi ta tola
wassimnita.

Q. Response Drill

Tutor: Sinə lo ka tilil kka yo?

'Shall I go downtown (for you)?'

Student: Ne, sinə lo ka cuse yo.

'Yes, please (go downtown for me).'

1. I chæk il ilkə tilil kka yo?
2. Khəphi ləl sa tilil kka yo?
3. Hankuk mal il kalichyə tilil kka
yo?
4. Kil il mule pwa tilil kka yo?
5. Yəki ese nælyə tilil kka yo?
6. Sənsæng e cip e tillə tilil kka
yo?
7. Sənsæng il kitalyə tilil kka yo?
8. Ki chæk il chace tilil kka yo?

Ne, ilkə cuse yo.

Ne, sa cuse yo.

Ne, kalichyə cuse yo.

Ne, mule pwa cuse yo.

Ne, yəki ese nælyə cuse yo.

Ne, tillə cuse yo.

Ne, kitalyə cuse yo.

Ne, chace cuse yo.

R. Response Drill

Tutor: Khəphi lɪl sa tilil kka yo?

Student: (Ne), sa cusimyən
komapkessimnita.

'Shall I buy you coffee?'

'I would appreciate [it] if you buy
me [coffee].'

1. I chæk il ilkə tilil kka yo?

Ne, ilkə cusimyən komapkessimnita.

2. Hankuk mal il kalichie tilil kka
yo?

Ne, kalichie cusimyən komapkessimnita.

3. Sənsəng e cip e tille tilil kka
yo?

Ne, tille cusimyən komapkessimnita.

4. Tangsin il kitalie tilil kka yo?

Ne, kitalie cusimyən komapkessimnita.

5. Yənphil il chace tilil kka yo?

Ne, chace cusimyən komapkessimnita.

6. Kil il mule pwa tilil kka yo?

Ne, mule pwa cusimyən komapkessimnita.

7. Cəngkəcəng e kathi ka tilil kka
yo?

Ne, kathi ka cusimyən komapkessimnita.

8. Mun il tate tilil kka yo?

Ne, tate cusimyən komapkessimnita.

9. Mun il yələ tilil kka yo?

Ne, yələ cusimyən komapkessimnita.

S. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: Hankuk mal il ale ya hamnita.

'I have to know Korean.'

Student: Hankuk mal il alci anhimyən
an twemnita.

'I have to know Korean. ('If I don't
know Korean, it does not become.')

1. Kicha lɪl thako ka ya hamnita.

Kicha lɪl thako kaci anhimyən an
twemnita.

2. Yəki ese nəlici ya hamnita.

Yəki ese nəlici anhimyən an
twemnita.

3. Mikuk təsa lɪl kitalici ya hamnita.

Mukuk təsa lɪl kitalici anhimyən
an twemnita.

4. Mun aph ese məmchue ya hamnita.

Mun aph ese məmchuci anhimyən an
twemnita.

5. Mun il tate ya hamnita.

Mun il tateci anhimyən an twemnita.

6. Catongcha mun il yəlci ya hamnita.

Catongcha mun il yəlci anhimyən an
twemnita.

7. Cali e anccı ya hamnita.

Cali e anccı anhimyən an twemnita.

8. Phyənci lɪl ponəci ya hamnita.

Phyənci lɪl ponəci anhimyən an
twemnita.

T. Response Drill

Tutor: (Sənsəng in) Ceimsi lil kitalie
ya hæ yo?

'Do you have to wait for James?'

Student: Ne, Ceimsi lil kitalici
anhimyən an twe yo.

'Yes, I have to wait for James.'

1. (Sənsəng in) wekuk mal il cal hæ
ya hæ yo?

Ne, wekuk mal il cal haci anhimyən
an twe yo.

2. (Sənsəng in) kot tola wa ya hæ yo?

Ne, kot tola oci anhimyən an twe yo.

3. Catongcha mun il tate ya hæ yo?

Ne, (catongcha mun il) tatci anhimyən
an twe yo.

4. Ki sacən i coha ya hæ yo?

Ne, ki sacən i cohci anhimyən an
twe yo.

5. Yəki esə Sənsəng il kitalie ya hæ
yo?

Ne, yəki esə (na lil) kitalici
anhimyən an twe yo.

6. Næil achim e ttəna ya hæ yo?

Ne, næil achim e ttənaci anhimyən
an twe yo.

7. Cha lil kil yəph e sewə ya hæ yo?

Ne, (cha lil kil yəph e) seuci
anhimyən an twe yo.

U. Response Drill

Tutor: Onil hakkyo e kaci anhimyən
an twemnikka?

'Do you have to go to school today?'

Student: Aniyo, (onil hakkyo e) kaci
anhə to kwænchanhə yo.

'No, I don't have to go (to school
today).!' ('Even though I don't go
to school, it is O.K.')

1. Yəki esə thaci anhimyən an twemnikka?

Aniyo, yəki esə thaci anhə to
kwænchanhə yo.

2. Pyəngwən e tillici anhimyən an
twemnikka?

Aniyo, tillici anhə to kwænchanhə
yo.

3. Kiləhke mal-haci anhimyən an
twemnikka?

Aniyo, kiləhke mal-haci anhə to
kwænchanhə yo.

4. Iyca e ancci anhimyən an twemnikka?

Aniyo, iyca e ancci anhə to
kwænchanhə yo.

5. Inchən kkaci kələ kaci anhimyən an
twemnikka?

Aniyo, kələ kaci anhə to kwænchanhə
yo.

6. Təhak kyosu ka tweci anhimyən an
twemnikka?

Aniyo, təhak kyosu ka tweci anhə to
kwænchanhə yo.

V. Combination Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal il ale ya hamnita.
Chinku lil mantil su issimnita.

Student: Hankuk mal il ale ya, chinku
lil mantil su issimnita.

1. Səul e sale ya hamnita. Yelə kaci
lil kukyəng-hal su isse yo.
2. Sikan i isse ya hamnita. Sinə e na
kakessə yo.
3. Cal swiə ya hamnita. Taim nal il-
hal su isse yo.
4. Ppəsi ka əpsə ya hamnita. Kələ sə
il-hale ka yo.
5. Ton i isse ya hamnita. Cha lil
saci yo.
6. Yəngə lil ale tilə ya hamnita. Mal
i cəmi isse yo.

'[You] have to know Korean. ! '[You]
can make friends in Korea. !

'[You] have to know Korean to make
friends. ! ('Only when you know
Korean you can make friends in
Korea. !)

- Səul e sale ya, yelə kaci lil kukyəng-
hal su isse yo.
- Sikan i isse ya, sinə e na kakessə
yo.
- Cal swiə ya, taim nal il-hal su
isse yo.
- Ppəsi ka əpsə ya, kələ sə il-hale
ka yo.
- Ton i isse ya, cha lil saci yo.
- Yəngə lil ale tilə ya, mal i cəmi
isse yo.

W. Response Drill (the use of nəmu)

Tutor: Səul e kil i pencap-haci yo?

Student: Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu pencap-hə
yo.

1. Sənsəng in yosə puncuhaci yo?
2. I kyosil i com copci yo?
3. Hankuk mal i əlyəun mal ici yo?
4. Kim Sənsəng i Səul pukin il-
alci yo?
5. Onil achim cəncha ka nilici yo?
6. Səul esə Inchən kkaci kicha ka cacu
tanici yo?
7. Sənsəng in achim e niceessci yo?
8. Yosə nən sikan i ppalli kaci yo?

'The streets in Seoul are crowded,
aren't they? !

'That's right. [They] are too
crowded. !

- Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu puncuhə yo.
- Ne, kilə yo. Com nəmu copa yo.
- Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu əlyəun mal iye
yo.
- Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu cal ale yo.
- Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu niliə yo.
- Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu cacu tanie yo.
- Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu nicesse yo.
- Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu ppalli ka yo.

X. Response Drill (the use of itta)

Tutor: Cikim ka to cohsimnikka?

'May I go now?'

Student: Aniyo, cikim kaci masipsiyo.
Com itta kase yo.'No, don't go now. [You'd better]
go a little later.'

1. Cikim puchie to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim puchici masipsiyo.

Com itta puchise yo.

2. Cikim sicak-hæ to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim sicak-haci masipsiyo.

Com itta sicak-hase yo.

3. Cikim tola wa to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim tola oci masipsiyo.

Com itta tola ose yo.

4. Cikim nælie to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim nælici masipsiyo. Com
itta nælide yo.5. Cikim yeki ese Sənsəng il kitalie
to cohsimnikka?Aniyo, cikim (na li) kitalici
masipsiyo. Com itta kitalise yo.

6. Cikim cha e tha to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim thaci masipsiyo. Com
itta thase yo.

7. Cikim mun il yelæ to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim yelci masipsiyo. Com
itta yel(l)se yo.

8. Cikim mun il tate to cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim tatci masipsiyo. Com
itta tatise yo.9. Cikim yeki ese nælie tiliæ to
cohsimnikka?Aniyo, cikim nælie cuci masipsiyo.
Com itta nælie cuse yo.Y. Grammar Drill (the use of kot)

Tutor: Tola osipsiyo.

'Come back.'

Student: Kot tola osipsiyo.

'Come back soon.'

1. Cə nin ttənalyəko hamnita.

Cə nin kot ttənalyəko hamnita.

2. Sicak-hanın kəs i cohkessimnita.

Kot sicak-hanın kəs i cohkessimnita.

3. Il il kimantusipsiyo.

Il il kot kimantusipsiyo.

4. Hal su issimyən, ce cip e
tillisipsiyo.Hal su issimyən, kot ce cip e
tillisipsiyo.

5. I catongcha nin phalci anhkessə yo.

I catongcha nin kot phalci anhkessə
yo.6. Hankuk mal kongpu lıl
kimantuəssimnita.Hankuk mal kongpu lıl kot
kimantuəssimnita.

7. Ki il il kkith-næl su əpsimnita.
 8. Kukce Kikcang esə Mikuk yənghwa
 lil sangyəng-hal kəs imnita.

Ki il il kot kkith-næl su əpsimnita.
 Kukce Kikcang esə Mikuk yənghwa lil
 kot sangyəng-hal kəs imnita.

Z. Response Drill

Tutor: Kim Sənsəng i onil ttənal kka
 yo?

'Will Mr. Kim leave today (do you
 think)?'

Student: Ne, ama onil ttənal kəs
 imnita.

'Yes, probably [he]'ll leave today.'

Aniyo, ama onil ttənaci anhil
 kəs imnita.

'No, probably [he]'ll not leave
 today.'

1. Pak Sənsəng i cip e issil kka yo?

Ne, ama (cip e) {issil } kəs imnita.
 {kyesil}

Aniyo, ama (cip e) {əpsil
 {an kyesil
 kyesici anhil
 kəs imnita.

2. Hakkyo ka məl kka yo?

Ne, ama məl kəs imnita.

3. Nəsil nal i cohil kka yo?

Aniyo, ama məlci anhil kəs imnita.

Ne, ama cohil kəs imnita.

4. Ceimsi ka kot təsa ka twel kka
 yo?

Aniyo, ama cohci anhil kəs imnita.
 Ne, ama kot (təsa ka) twel kəs
 imnita.

5. Onil ki il i kəi ta kkith-nal
 kka yo?

Ne, ama kəi ta kkith-nal kəs imnita.
 Aniyo, ama kəi ta kkith-naci anhil
 kəs imnita.

6. Ki salam i kill e cha lil seul
 kka yo?

Ne, ama seul kəs imnita.

Aniyo, ama seuci anhil kəs imnita.

7. Miss Brown i Hankuk mal il ta
 alə tilil kka yo?

Ne, ama ta alə tilil kəs imnita.
 Aniyo, ama ta alə titci ahhil kəs
 imnita.

8. Sikan i manhi kəllil kka yo?

Ne, ama (sikan i) manhi kəllil kəs
 imnita.

Aniyo, ama (sikan i) manhi kəllici
 anhil kəs imnita.

EXERCISES

1. You are in the taxi. Ask the taxi driver to:
 - a. go to the airport.
 - b. hurry to the International Broadcasting Station.
 - c. go a little faster.
 - d. go a little slowly /chənchənhi/.
 - e. close the window /chang-mun/ on his left.
 - f. turn /tol-ta/ left at the next corner /kolmok/.
 - g. turn right at the second crossroad /ne-kəli/.
 - h. tell you when you come to the downtown area.
 - i. let you know /allye cu-ta/ if he sees the fire station.
 - j. park the car across the street /kil kənnə/.
 - k. stop the car at the gate /təmən/ of the playground /utongcang/.
 - l. wait for you for a little while.
 - m. not go too fast.
 - n. not take on other passengers.
 - o. not stop on the street.
 - p. not park on the street.
2. Make short dialogues so that the second party uses the following expressions in his speech:

a. kələ sə	b. thako kamyən
c. com tə ppalli	d. kakkai ese
e. camkan man	f. pol il
g. tillil il	h. itta
i. kot	j. nəmu
k. ama	l. kəi ta
m. palssə	n. acik
3. Tell Mr. Smith that you would appreciate it if he would:
 - a. show you the dictionary.
 - b. teach you Korean.
 - c. give you a ride.
 - d. drop you off at the door.
 - e. buy you a cup of coffee.
 - f. stop the car.
 - g. park his car straight.
 - h. wait for you.
 - i. mail this letter for you.
 - j. correct /kochi-ta/ your Korean.
 - k. loan you some money.
 - l. send you a book.
 - m. let you know the time.
 - n. come a little early /ilccik/.
 - o. go a little slowly.

4. Tell the following stories to Pak Sənsəng that:

- (a) Messrs. Smith and Kim are going downtown. Mr. Smith wants to stop by a tearoom first. He is not going to meet anyone there, but he'd like to have a cup of coffee. Mr. Kim wants to go downtown first and stop by a tearoom. There are lots of nice tearooms downtown. Even though there are tearooms in this area, they are not so good.
- (b) Messrs. Kim and Smith took a taxi and went to the Central Post Office first. They got off near the front door. Mr. Kim had some business to take care of for a while. He had to mail a letter. And it took him a little time. So, Mr. Smith went to the tearoom first and waited there. Mr. Kim came to the tearoom a little later but was not too late.

제 12 과 음식

(대화 A)

배

배가 고품니다

1. 부탁운 : 나는 좀 배가 고품니다.

점심

먹으려

점심 먹으려 안 가겠습니까?

점심 시간

되어옵니까

시간이 되었습니까

2. 이 : 벌써 점심 시간이 다 되었습니까?

3. 부탁운 : 예, 점심 먹을 시간입니다. 점심 먹으려
(나) 갑시다.

잡수십니까

4. 이 : 오늘 점심은 무엇을 잡수시겠어요?

한식, 한국 음식

먹어 볼까요

5. 부탁운 : 오늘은 한식을 먹어 볼까요?

아무 것이나

음식점

UNIT 12. Eating and Drinking
 BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue ABrown

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| pœ | stomach |
| pœ ka kophimnita | I'm hungry |
| 1. Na nin com pœ ka kophimnita. | I'm a little hungry. |
| cœmsim | lunch |
| mœkile | to eat |
| Cœmsim mœkile an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go to eat
(lunch)?! |

Lee

- | | |
|---|---|
| cœmsim sikan | lunch hour |
| sikan i tweessimnikka | time is up ('time became') |
| 2. Pœlsse cœmsim sikan i ta
tweessimnikka? | Is it already lunch time? ('Has the
lunch hour already become?') |

Brown

- | | |
|--|---|
| 3. Ne, cœmsim mœkil sikan imnita.
Cœmsim mœkile (na) kapsita. | Yes, it is (lunch time). ('It's time
to eat lunch.) Let's go (out) for
lunch. |
|--|---|

Lee

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| capsusimnikka | do [you] eat (honored)? |
| 4. Onil cœmsim in mues il capsusikesse
yo? | What will you have for lunch today? |

Brown

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| Hankuk imsik }
Hansik | Korean food |
| mœkœ pol kka yo | shall we try eating? |
| 5. Onil in Hansik il mœkœ pol kka
yo? | Shall we try Korean food today? |

6. 이 : 저는 아무 것이나 좋습니다. 어디에 좋은 음식점이 있어요?

가까운 곳, 가까운 데
한식점

7. 부탁운 : 예, 여기에서 가까운 곳에 한식점이 하나
있읍니다.

음식

8. 김 : 거기 음식은 어떻습니까?

잘 합니다, 잘 만듭니다

9. 부탁운 : 예, 거기 음식을 잘 합니다.

싸니까

언제든지

10. 그리고, 음식 값도 싸니까, 언제든지
사람이 많습니다.

(대화 B)

주문

들겠읍니까, 드시겠읍니까

11. 웨이트 테스 : 아주 주문 안 하셨읍니까?
무엇을 드시겠어요?

메뉴

12. 이 : 메뉴를 좀 보여 주세요. 한식은 무엇이 있어요?

Lee

amu kès (ina)

imsikcém

6. Cè nin amu kès ina cohsimnita.
eti e cohin imsikcém i issé yo?

anything; whatever it may be
restaurantAnything is O.K. Do you know of a
good restaurant? ('Is there a good
restaurant somewhere?')Brownkakkaun te }
kakkaun kos}

Hansikcém

7. Ne, yéki esé kakkaun kos e
Hansikcém i hana issimnita.

some place near

Korean restaurant

Yes, there is a Korean restaurant
near here. ('At the nearby place
from here, there's one Korean
restaurant.')Lee

imsik

8. Kéki imsik in ettéhsimnikka?

food (cooked)

How is the food there?

Browncal hamnita
cal manti(lí)mnita

9. Ne, kéki imsik il cal hamnita.

([they] do well)
([they] make well)

Oh, the food is good.

ssani kka

ence tinci

10. Kiliko, imsik kaps to ssani kka,
ence tinci salam i manhsimnita.

because [it]'s cheap
anytime; all the timeAnd because it ('food price') is
cheap, it is always crowded.Dialogue B

(..in the restaurant..)

Waitress

cumun

order

tilkessimnikka

[I] lift; [I] have ('eat;
drink!')tilkessimnikka }
ti(lí)sikessimnikka}

will you have ('eat; drink')?

11. Acik cumun an hasyessimnikka?
Muës il tilisikesse yo?

Haven't you ordered, yet? What
would you like to have, sir?

잡수 시력면

불고기

곰탕

냉면 등

13. 웨이트리스: 여터 가지가 있읍니다. 한식을 잡수 시력면 불고기와 곰탕, 그리고 냉면 등이 있읍니다.

14. 이 : 선생은 무엇을 하시겠어요?

불고기하고 밥

15. 부탁운 : 나는 불고기하고 밥을 먹겠읍니다.

해 보겠읍니다

16. 이 : 저는 곰탕을 해 보겠읍니다.

또

가져 옵니다

17. 웨이트리스: 다른 것은 또 무엇을 가져 올까요?

목

마릅니다

목이 마릅니다

마실 것

18. 이 : 아, 나는 목이 마릅니다. 마실 것은 무엇이 있지요?

맥주

사이다

Lee

menu

12. Menyu (lil) com poye cuse yo.
Hansik in mues i isse yo?

menu

Please let me see the menu. What kinds of Korean food do you have?

Waitress

capsusilyemyen

Pul-koki

Komthan

Nængmyen ting

13. Yele kaci ka issimnita. Hansik il capsusilyemyen, Pul-koki wa Komthang, kiliko, Nængmyen ting i issimnita.

if you are going to eat

(a kind of barbecue beef)
('fire-meat!')

(soup with rice and meat)

(cold noodle) and so on

We have several kinds. If you're going to have Korean food, there are Pul-koki, Komthang, Nængmyen and other things.

Lee

14. Sønsæng in mues il hasikesse yo?

What will you have?

Brown

pap

Pul-koki hako pap

15. Na nin Pul-koki hako pap il mækkessimnita.

(cooked) rice; meal

Pul-koki and rice

I'll have Pul-koki and rice.

Lee

16. Cø nin Komthang il haæ pokessimnita. I'll try Komthang.

Waitress

tto

kace omnita

17. Talin kæs (in) tto mues (il)
kace ol kka yo?

also; besides; again

[I] bring (thing)

Would you like anything else?
('What other things shall I also bring?')

19. 웨이트리스: 맥주 와 사이다가 있읍니다.

안주

병

병만

콩

20. 이 : 그림, 맥주 두 병과 안주로 콩을 좀 가져 오세요.

Lee

- | | |
|---|--|
| mok | neck; throat |
| malimnita | [it] dries |
| mok i malimnita | [I]'m thirsty ('throat dries') |
| masil kës | something to drink |
| 18. A, na nin mok i malimnita. Masil
kës in muës i issci yo? | Oh, I'm thirsty. What do you have
to drink? |

Waitress

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| mækcu | beer |
| Saita | (a kind of soft drink) |
| 19. Mækcu wa Saita ka issimnita. | We have beer and Saita. |

Lee

- | | |
|--|---|
| ancu | relish [taken with wine];
snacks |
| pyëng | bottle |
| pyëng man | bottle only; just bottle |
| khong | beans |
| 20. Kilëm, mækcu tu pyëng kwa ancu
lo khong il com kace ose yo. | Well, bring us just two bottles of
beer and some beans for snacks. |

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. Pæ ka kophimnita. ('Stomach is empty.') is the Korean equivalent of 'I'm hungry'. The intransitive verb kophi- may be preceded by pæ 'stomach' as its subject or topic, but never by other nominals.
2. Sikan i (ta) tweessimnita. ('Time (all) became.') is a fixed expression which is used as the equivalent of 'time is up'. The intransitive verb twe-, occurring usually in the past tense form /tweessimnita/ after a point in time, denotes arriving at a certain point in time, and after a period of time denotes elapsing of a certain period of time. Compare:

Han-si ka tweessimnita.	'It is one o'clock now.'
Han sikan i tweessimnita.	'It has been an hour.'
4. Capsusi- is the honorific or polite equivalent of mek- 'to eat'.
6. Amu 'any-' is a determinative which occurs before (a nominal +) na/ina, making an adverbial phrase: amu kəs ina 'anything', amu salam ina 'anybody', amu imsik ina 'any food', amu ttə na 'any time', amu nal ina 'any day', amu cip ina 'any house', amu na 'anyone'. The construction amu + Nominal + na/ina = Question Nominal + na/ina (See Grammar Note 4, Unit 10). -cəm is a bound form which occurs as a part of certain place nouns, meaning 'store' or 'shop': sangcəm 'store', pəkhwacəm 'department store', imsikcəm 'restaurant', Hansikcəm 'Korean restaurant', etc.
7. Both te 'place' and kos 'place' are synonyms and both are post-nouns. However, te occurs only after noun-modifier words, whereas kos occurs after either determinatives or noun-modifier words. Compare Group 1 with Group 2:

GROUP 1

cohin te	'a good place'
pissan te	'an expensive place'
kongpu-hanin te	'the place of studying'
sanin te	'a living place'

GROUP 2

əni kos	'which place'
i kos	'this place'
cə kos	'that place'
kakkaun kos	'the place which is near'
mən kos	'the faraway place'

9. In Kək1 imsik il cal hamnita. ('There [they] do food well.'), cal hamnita is the substitute for cal mant(il)imnita. ('[They] make well.').
11. Ti(l)- 'to lift', 'to hold' is either a transitive or an intransitive verb. When the situation is clear, with or without being preceded by the name of food and/or beverage, ti(l)- is used as a substitute for mək- 'to eat', or masi- 'to drink'.
13. Ting 'and so forth', 'etc.' is a post-noun which occurs after two or more nominals. It singles out the preceding nominals to be the subject, the topic or the object for the following inflected expression.
14. (Sənsəng in) mues il hasikesse yo? ('What will you do?') in an eating and/or drinking situation is used as a substitute for Mues il məkkesse yo? 'What will you eat?' or Mues il masikesse yo? 'What will you drink?'. This is like the English expression, What will you have? Ha- and ti(l)- are interchangeably used in such a situation.
17. The principal verb stem kaci- in the phrase kace o- 'to bring' means 'to possess', 'to have', 'to hold', or 'to take'. Observe the following verb phrases:

kacə o-	=	kaciko o-	'to bring [something]' ('to have and come!')
kacə ka-	=	kaciko ka-	'to take away [something]'
talie o-	=	taliko o-	'to bring [someone]'
talie ka-	=	taliko ka-	'to take [someone]'

18. Mok i malimnita. ('Throat is dry.') is the Korean equivalent of 'I'm thirsty'. The noun mok means either 'throat' or 'neck'. The verb mal- is either an action verb or a description verb, meaning 'to dry' and 'to be dry' respectively.
19. Saita is a kind of soft drink which is commonly used in Korea during warm seasons. The taste of it is similar to that of Seven-ups.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -(i)ni kka 'because...', 'since...'

The inflected form ending in -(i)ni plus kka which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression. The ending -(i)ni is added to a verb stem, or to a verb stem plus other suffixes: -ni to a stem ending in a vowel and -ini to a stem ending in a consonant. The construction -(i)ni kka denotes the cause or basis of the action or description of the verb in the (i)ni form for the succeeding inflected expressions. Examples:

Cip i kakkauni kka, kèle sè il-hale
omnita.

'I come to work on foot because my
home is near.'

Ton i əpsini kka, na kaci anhkessə
yo.

'Because I don't have money, I
won't go out.'

Hankuk mal il mal-hani kka, Hankuk
ese sè il-haki phyəlli-hamnita.

'Because I speak Korean, it is very
convenient to work in Korea.'

Note: In the above construction kka may be dropped with the same meaning.

2. -(i)lyəmyən 'if [you] are going to...', 'if [you] intend to...'

The inflected form ending in -(i)lyəmyən which may be followed by a pause denotes the conditional desire or intention of the subject for the future for the following inflected expression. The ending -(i)lyəmyən may be added to a verb stem with or without the honorific suffix, but with no tense suffixes. Examples:

Wekyokwan i twelyəmyən, wekuk
mal il cal hæ ya hamnita.

'If [you] intend to be a diplomat,
[you] have to speak foreign
languages.'

Hankuk mal il cal halyəmyən,
Yəngə lɪl ssici anhnin kəs i
cohkessimnita.

'If [you]'re going to speak Korean
well, [you]'d better not use
English.'

Mikuk yənghwa lɪl polyəmyən,
Kukce Kikcang ilo kapsita.

'If you {want } to see American
{intend}
movies, let's go to the International
Theatre.'

Note: -lyəmen is added to a vowel stem and -llyəmen to a consonant stem.

3. Infinitive + po-

The verb po- preceded by an infinitive without a pause occurs as an auxiliary verb. The construction Infinitive + po- literally means something like 'does something and see!', but the denotation of the auxiliary po- is 'try doing something to see the result'. Some verb phrases of this construction have unique meanings and the two verbs (i.e. principal and auxiliary verbs) are inseparable from each other. Thus, each verb phrase of this kind should be memorized as a unit. Examples:

mule po-ta	'inquires'
tola po-ta	'looks back'
hilkiə po-ta	'steers'
pala po-ta	'looks over' (from the distance)
he po-ta	'tries (doing)'
manna po-ta	'tries meeting'
ale po-ta	'finds out'
chiəta po-ta	'looks up to', 'beholds'
ipe po-ta	'tries on (clothes)'
mekə po-ta	'tries (eating) food'
tile ka po-ta	'goes in to see'

4. Particle tinci/itinci

Tinci occurs after a nominal ending in a consonant; itinci after a nominal ending in a vowel. The particle tinci/itinci which is synonymous with na/na can be interchangeable only in the following two constructions (See (a) and (b) of Grammar Note 4, Unit 10).

- (a) Nominal 1 + tinci/itinci + Nominal 2 = 'N1 or N2', 'either N1 or N2'

hakkyo tinci cip	'either school or house'
Yənghwa tinci Tokile	'either English or German'
onil itinci næil	'either today or tomorrow'
- (b) Question Nominal + tinci/itinci = adverbial phrase

muəs itinci	'anything'
əti tinci	'anywhere'
ənce tinci	'any time'

nuku tinci	'anybody'
myəchil itinci	'any date'

5. Particle man 'only'

In Unit 9, we noticed the construction -ci man (i.e. the ci form + the Particle man) means '!-but!.

A nominal X + man occurs as an adverbial phrase for the following inflected expressions, meaning 'only X' or 'just X'. Examples:

Mækcu tu pyəng man kacə ose yo.

'Bring [us] just two bottles of beer.'

Na nin k1 yəca man salang-hamnita.

'I love only her.'

Kim Sənsəng in nal mata Yəngə man mal-hæ yo.

'Mr. Kim speaks only English everyday.'

K1 nal, Kim in əpsəssko, na man Tæthongyəng il mannasse yo.

'Kim was not [there] that day, and only I met Mr. President.'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Cəmsim məkile</u> an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go to eat lunch? |
| 2. <u>Sinə kukyəng-halə</u> an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go to see around downtown? |
| 3. <u>Capci ilkile</u> an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go to read magazines? |
| *4. <u>Sanpo-halə</u> an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go to take a walk? |
| 5. <u>Məekcu masile</u> an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go for beer? |
| *6. <u>Sicang pole</u> an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go for food shopping? |
| 7. <u>Yənghwa pole</u> an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go to see a movie? |
| *8. <u>Chum chule</u> an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go for dancing? |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. * <u>Cəmsim məkil</u> sikan i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time for lunch now. ('Lunch time is all up!') |
| 2. <u>Hakkyo kal sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to go to school now. |
| 3. <u>Kongpu-hal sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time for studying now. |
| 4. <u>Kicha thal sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to get on the train now. |
| 5. <u>Ttənal sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to leave now. |
| 6. <u>Sicak-hal sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to begin now. |
| 7. <u>Ppəsi ka tahil sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time for bus to arrive now. |
| 8. <u>Swil sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to take a break ('rest') now. |
| 9. <u>(Cam) cal sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to go to bed now. |
| 10. <u>Kimantul sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to quit [it] now. |
| *11. <u>Ilənal sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to get up now. |
| *12. <u>Il i kkith-hal sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to end the work. |
| *13. <u>Sicang pole kal sikan</u> i ta tweəssimnita. | It's time to go for food shopping. |

C. Substitution Drill

1. Cəmsim in muəs il capsusikessə yo?
What will you have for lunch?
- *2. Achim in muəs il capsusikessə yo?
What will you have for breakfast?
- *3. Cənyək in muəs il capsusikessə yo?
What will you have for supper?
- *4. Achim siksa nin muəs il capsusikessə yo?
What will you have for breakfast ('morning meal')?
- *5. Cəyək siksa nin muəs il capsusikessə yo?
What will you have for dinner ('evening meal')?
6. Onil cəmsim in muəs il capsusikessə yo?
What will you have for lunch today?
7. Onil cəmsim in musin imsik il capsusikessə yo?
What kind of food will you have for lunch today?
8. Onil cəmsin in Cungkuk imsik il capsusikessə yo?
Will you have Chinese food for lunch today?
- *9. Onil cəmsim in Yangsik il capsusikessə yo?
Will you have Western food for lunch today?
- *10. Onil cəmsim in Wəsik il capsusikessə yo?
Will you have Japanese food for lunch today?
11. Onil cəmsim in Hansik il capsusikessə yo?
Will you have Korean food for lunch today?

D. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: Hansik il məkil kka yo?

'Shall we eat Korean food?'

Student: Hansik il məkə pol kka yo?

'Shall we try (eating) Korean food?'

1. Hakkyo e kal kka yo?
Hakkyo e ka pol kka yo?
2. Il il sicak-hal kka yo?
Il il sicak-hæ pol kka yo?
3. Wekuk mal il pəul kka yo?
Wekuk mal il pəwə pol kka yo?
4. Kicha lil thal kka yo?
Kicha lil tha pol kka yo?
5. Məekcu lil masil kka yo?
Məekcu lil masiə pol kka yo?
6. Samusil e tillə pol kka yo?
Samusil e tillə pol kka yo?
7. Komthang il hal kka yo?
Komthang il hæ pol kka yo?
8. Hankuk mal il yənsip-hal kka yo?
Hankuk mal il yənsip-hæ pol kka yo?
9. Mun aph esə nəllil kka yo?
Mun aph esə nəliə pol kka yo?
10. Tapang esə ki salam il kitalil kka yo?
Tapang esə ki salam il kitaliə pol kka yo?

E. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: Hansik il mèkè pol kka yo?

'Shall we try Korean food?'

Student: Ne, Hansik il mèkè popsita.

'Yes, let's try (Korean food).'

1. Hakkyo e tillè pol kka yo?

Ne, hakkyo e tillè popsita.

2. Kyosil e tilè ka pol kka yo?

Ne, kyosil e tilè ka popsita.

3. Cikim sicak-hæ pol kka yo?

Ne, cikim sicak-hæ popsita.

4. Yèki esè Kim Sønsøng il kitaliè
pol kka yo?

Ne, Yèki esè kitaliè popsita.

5. Mun aph esè næliè pol kka yo?

Ne, mun aph esè næliè popsita.

6. Hankuk mal lo mal-hæ pol kka yo?

Ne, Hankuk mal lo mal-hæ popsita.

7. Hankuk mækcu lìl masiè pol kka yo?

Ne, Hankuk mækcu lìl masiè popsita.

F. Subsitusutuion Drill

1. Amu kès ina cohsimnita.

Anything is O.K.

2. Muès ina cohsimnita.

Anything is O.K.

3. Amu salam ina cohsimnita.

Anyone is O.K.

4. etì na cohsimnita.

Any place is O.K.

5. Nuku na cohsimnita.

Anybody is O.K.

6. Amu haksæng ina cohsimnita.

Any student is O.K.

7. Amu {te na} cohsimnita.
kos ina

Any place is O.K.

8. Amu kikcang ina cohsimnita.

Any theatre is O.K.

*9. Amu ttæ na cohsimnita.

Any time is O.K.

10. ençe na cohsimnita.

Any time is O.K.

11. enì nal ina cohsimnita.

Any day is O.K.

12. Musin yoil ina cohsimnita.

Any day of the week is O.K.

13. Amu imsik ina cohsimnita.

Any kind of food is O.K.

*14. enì cumal ina cohsimnita.

Any weekend is O.K.

G. Subsitution Drill

1. Menyu (lil) com poyə cusipsiyo. Please show me the menu.
2. Ki kilim (il) com poyə cusipsiyo. Please show me that picture.
3. Nolan syassi (lil) com poyə cusipsiyo. Please show me a yellow shirt.
4. Kkaman yangpok (il) com poyə cusipsiyo. Please show me the black suit.
5. Phalan sukən (il) com poyə cusipsiyo. Please show me a blue towel.
6. Hayan congi (lil) com poyə cusipsiyo. Please show me the white paper.
7. Han-Yəng sacən (il) com poyə cusipsiyo. Please show me a Korean-English dictionary.
8. Menyu (lil) com poyə cusipsiyo. Please show me the menu.
9. Menyu (lil) com kacə osipsiyo. Please bring [me] the menu.
10. Menyu (lil) com kacə kasipsiyo. Please take (away) the menu.

H. Substitution Drill

1. Na nin mækcu lil masiko siphsimnita. I'd like to drink beer.
2. Na nin saita lil masiko siphsimnita. I'd like to drink saita.
3. Na nin mul il masiko siphsimnita. I'd like to drink water.
4. Na nin khəphi lil masiko siphsimnita. I'd like (to drink) coffee.
5. Na nin khokhoa lil masiko siphsimnita. I'd like (to drink) cocoa.
6. Na nin cha lil masiko siphsimnita. I'd like (to drink) tea (green).
- *7. Na nin hongcha lil masiko siphsimnita. I'd like (to drink) tea (black).
- *8. Na nin chan mul il masiko siphsimnita. I'd like (to drink) cold water.
- *9. Na nin əlim mul il masiko siphsimnita. I'd like to drink ice water.
- *10. Na nin khokhakholla lil masiko siphsimnita. I'd like to drink coca cola.
- *11. Na nin uyu lil masiko siphsimnita. I'd like to drink milk.
- *12. Na nin sul il masiko siphsimnita. I'd like to have (some) {wine liquor} .

I. Grammar Drill (Make one sentence out of two as in the example.)

- Tutor: Hakkyo ka məmnita. Catongcha
lo kamnita. 'The school is far. I go by car.'
- Student: Hakkyo ka məni kka, catongcha
lo kamnita. 'Because the school is far, I go by car.'
1. I siktang e nin imsik kaps i ssamnita. Salam i manhsimnita.
I siktang e nin imsik kaps i ssani kka, salam i manhsimnita.
2. Hankuk e kamnita. Hankuk mal il pəwə ya hamnita.
Hankuk e kani kka, Hankuk mal il pəwə ya hamnita.
3. Yəki e siktang i əpsimnita. Sinə kkaci kamnita.
Yəki e siktang i əpsini kka, sinə kkaci kamnita.
4. Mok i malimnita. Məkcu lil masikessimnita.
Mok i malini kka, məkcu lil masikessimnita.
5. Cəmsim sikan i ta twemnita. Na nin pə ka kophimnita.
Cəmsim sikan i ta tweni kka, na nin pə ka kophimnita.
6. Na nin Hansik il cohahamnita.
Hansikcəm e kakessimnita.
7. Ppəsi ka manhci anhsimnita. Nil salam i manhsimnita.
Ppəsi ka manhci anhini kka, nil salam i manhsimnita.
8. Samusil i cip esə kakkapsimnita.
Kim Sənsəng in kələ sə tanimnita.
9. Hankuk mal il amnita. Hankuk salam kwa il-haki cəmi issimnita.
Hankuk mal il ani kka, Hankuk salam kwa il-haki cəmi issimnita.

J. Response Drill

- Tutor: Wə catongcha lo kamnikka?
/Hakkyo ka məmnita./ 'Why do you go by car? /School is far./'
- Student: Hakkyo ka məni kka, catongcha
lo kamnita. 'Because the school's far, I go by car.'
1. Wə Hankuk mal il pəumnikka? /Hankuk
e kamnita./ Hankuk e kani kka, Hankuk mal il pəumnikka.
2. Wə nal mata Səul Təhakkyo e na
kamnikka? /Yəngə ləl kalichini kka, nal mata
Səul Təhakkyo e na kamnita./ Yəngə ləl kalichimnita.

3. Wæ yøtølp-si pan kkaci samusil e
wa ya hamnikka. /Yøtølp-si pan
e il i sicak-hamnita./
4. Wæ øce nin swiøssimnikka? /Mom i
aphøssimnikka./
5. Wæ Hankuk mal kongpu-haki e kilehke
sikan i køllimnikka? /Hankuk mal
i ølyøpsimnikka./
6. Wæ kølø se hakkyo e tanimnikka?
/Cip esø mølci anhøssimnikka./
7. Wæ kilehke pøe ka kophimnikka?
/Achim il møkci anhøssimnikka./
8. Wæ kilehke pøe ka kophimnikka?
/Achim il møkci anhøssimnikka./
9. Wæ ki salam cip e tillø ya hamnikka?
/Na lìl kitaliko issini kka, ki
salam cip e tillø ya hamnikka./
- Yøtølp-si pan e il i sicak-hani
kka, yøtølp-si pan kkaci wa ya
hamnita.
- Mom i aphøssini kka, øce nin
swiøssimnikka.
- Hankuk mal i ølyøuni kka,
kongpu-haki e kilehke sikan
køllimnikka.
- Cip esø mølci anhøssini kka, kølø se
hakkyo e tanimnikka.
- Yosø nin hal il i manhøssini kka,
kilehke pøe ka kophimnikka.
- Achim il møkci anhøssini kka,
kilehke pøe ka kophimnikka.
- Na lìl kitaliko issini kka, ki
salam cip e tillø ya hamnikka.

K. Completion Exercise (Complete the sentence using the given expression based on your own experiences.)

Tutor: Na nin Hankuk e kani kka,...

Student: Na nin Hankuk e kani kka,
Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita.

'Because I go to Korea...'

'Because I go to Korea I'm studying
Korean.'

1. Hankuk mal in Yøngø wa talini kka,
2. Hankuk mal il cal mal-haci mot
hani kka,
3. Na nin mok i malini kka,
4. Cømsim sikan i tweøssini kka,
5. Hakkyo kal sikan i nicøssini kka,
6. Hapsing i ceil phyøllihani kka,
7. Na nin Yøngø lìl ale tilil su issini kka,
8. Na nin mom i aphøssini kka,
9. Søul il kukyøng-hako siphini kka,
10. Taim tal e Mikuk e tola kani kka,

L. Response Exercise (Answer the questions based on the reality.)

Tutor: Wæ Hankuk mal il kongpu-hase 'Why do you study Korean?'
yo?

Student: Hankuk e kani kka, Hankuk mal 'Because I go to Korea, (I'm study-
il Kongpu-hæ yo. ing Korean)'.

1. Wæ kælæ sæ hakkyo e tanise yo?
2. Wæ Hankuk mal i kilehke elyæwæ yo?
3. Wæ yosæ kilekhe pappise yo?
4. Wæ Hankuk yænghwa lïl pokø siphise yo?
5. Wæ Mikuk Tæsakwan e tillæ ya hæ yo?
6. Wæ Thoyoil mata sicang e kase yo?
7. Wæ cip eæ hakkyo kkaci sikan i manhi kællyæ yo?
8. Wæ eæcæ nïn cip eæ swiæsse yo?
9. Wæ Hankuk mal i philyo-hase yo?

M. Completion Exercise

Tutor: Hankuk e kalyæmyæn,

Student: Hankuk e kalyæmyæn, Hankuk
mal il pæwæ ya hamnita.

'If [you]'re going to go to Korea,..'

'If [you]'re going to go to Korea,
[you] have to learn Korean.'

1. Hansik il capsusilyæmyæn,
2. Cæ lïl kitalilyæmyæn,
3. Catongcha lïl phallyæmyæn,
4. Mikuk yænghwa lïl polyæmyæn,
5. Hakkyo e ppæsæ lo kalyæmyæn,
6. Kil il mule polyæmyæn,
7. Mækcu lïl masillyæmyæn,
8. Chinku lïl mannalyæmyæn,
9. Hankuk e olæ tongan issilyæmyæn,
10. Mikuk e tola kalyæmyæn,

N. Expansion Drill

Tutor: Pul-koki wa Komthang, Nængmyen
i issimnita.

Student: Pul-koki wa Komthang, kiliko,
Nængmyen ting i issimnita.

1. Yëngë wa Pullanë mal, Tokil mal
il kalichimnita.
2. Yëki esë moça wa kutu, yangpok il
phamnita.
3. Ppësi wa cëncha, hapsing i tanimnita.
4. Hansikcëm kwa Yangsikcëm, Cungkuk
siktang il pol su issimnita.
5. Pækhwacëm kwa pakmulkwan, sicang il
kukyënghako siphsimnita.
6. Mannyënphil kwa congì, khal il
sassimnita.
7. Cip kaps kwa mulkën kaps, imsik kaps
il ale ya hakessimnita.

'We have Pul-koki, Komthang and
Nængmyen.'

'We have Pul-koki, Komthang and
Nængmyen and others (so forth).'

Yëngë wa Pullanë mal, kiliko, Tokil
mal ting il kalichimnita.

Yëki esë moça wa kutu, kiliko,
yangpok ting il phamnita.

Ppësi wa cëncha, kiliko, hapsing
ting i tanimnita.

Hansikcëm kwa Yangsikcëm, kiliko,
Cungkuk siktang ting il pol su
issimnita.

Pækhwacëm kwa pakmulkwan, kiliko,
sicang ting il kukyëng-hako
siphsimnita.

Mannyënphil kwa congì, kiliko, khal
ting il sassimnita.

Cip kaps kwa mulkën kaps, kiliko,
imsik kaps ting il ale ya
hakessimnita.

O. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal il pæuko siphimyen,
hakkyo e tanisipsiyo.

Student: Hankuk mal il pæulyëmyen,
hakkyo e tanisipsiyo.

1. Hansik il mëkko siphimyen, Hansikcëm
e kasipsiyo.
2. Mikuk moça lil sako siphimyen,
pækhwacëm e tillisipsiyo.
3. Hankuk sinmun il ilkko siphimyen,
il nyen tongan ilkki lil pæwë ya
hamnita.

'If you want to learn Korean,
(please) go to school.'

'If you're going to learn Korean
(please) go to school.'

Hansik il mëkilyëmhëm, Hansikcëm
e kasipsiyo.

Mikuk moça lil salyëmyen, pækhwacëm
e tillisipsiyo.

Hankuk sinmun il ilkilyëmyen, il
nyen tongan ilkki lil pæwë ya
hamnita.

4. Səul kanin kicha lɪl thako siphimyən, han-si kkaci yək e kasipsiyo.
5. Təesakwan aph esə nəliko siphimyən, məncə mal-hasipsiyo.
6. Catongcha lɪl phalko siphimyən, cə eke com poyə cusipsiyo.
7. Hyuka lɪl patko siphimyən, taim tal e patisipsiyo.
8. Təhak kyosu ka tweko siphimyən, kongpu lɪl manhi hə ya hamnita.
9. Kil ɪl mule poko siphimyən, catongcha esə nəlisipsiyo.
10. Na lɪl kitaliko siphimyən, tapang e issisipsiyo.
- Səul kanin kicha lɪl thalyəmyən, han-si kkaci yək e kasipsiyo.
- Təesakwan aph esə nəlilyəmyən, məncə mal-hasipsiyo.
- Catongcha lɪl phallyəmyən, cə eke com poyə cusipsiyo.
- Hyuka lɪl patilyəmyən, taim tal e patisipsiyo.
- Təhak kyosu ka twelyəmyən, kongpu lɪl manhi pə ya hamnita.
- Kil ɪl mule polyəmyən, catongcha esə nəlisipsiyo.
- Na lɪl kitalilyəmyən, tapang e issisipsiyo.

P. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal ɪl pəukessə yo?
Hakkyo e tanisipsiyo.

Student: Hankuk mal ɪl pəulyəmyən,
hakkyo e tanisipsiyo.

1. Hansik ɪl capsusikessə yo?
Pul-koki ka issimnita.
2. Hankuk e kakessə yo? Mal ɪl pəwə ya hamnita.
3. Tapang e tıllıkessə yo? Na wa kathi kapsita.
4. Yənghwa lɪl pokessə yo? Kukce Kikcang i cohsimnita.
5. Məekcu lɪl masikessə yo? Tapang e kaci masipsiyo.
6. Wekyokwan i twekessə yo? Yələ nala mal ɪl pəwə ya hamnita.
7. Kil ɪl mule pokessə yo? Catongcha esə nəlisipsiyo.
8. Mikuk yangpok ɪl sakessə yo?
Pəkhwacəm e manhi issə yo.

'Will you study Korean? Go to (or attend) school.'

'If you intend (or are going) to study Korean, go to school.'

Hansik ɪl capsusilyəmyən, Pul-koki ka issimnita.

Hankuk e kalyəmyən, mal ɪl pəwə ya hamnita.

Tapang e tıllilyəmyən, na wa kathi kapsita.

Yənghwa lɪl polyəmyən, Kukce Kikcang i cohsimnita.

Məekcu lɪl masilyəmyən, tapang e kaci masipsiyo.

Wekyokwan i twelyəmyən, yələ nala mal ɪl pəwə ya hamnita.

Kil ɪl mule polyəmyən, catongcha esə nəlisipsiyo.

Mikuk yangpok ɪl salyəmyən, pəkhiaçəm e manhi issə yo.

EXERCISES

A. Tell Mr. Lee that:

1. You are hungry.
2. It is time to eat lunch; time to go to bed; time to get up.
3. It has already been two hours.
4. Any food is O.K. with you.
5. You would like to try Chinese food.
6. You are thirsty.
7. The food at the nearby restaurant is very good.
8. They serve Pul-koki, Nængmyæn, Komthang, and so forth.
9. You have not ordered (food) yet.
10. You haven't had breakfast (or supper) yet.
11. It's time to go for food shopping.

B. Order from the waitress the following:

1. two bottles of beer
2. Pulkoki for two people /tu salam pun/
3. three cups of coffee afterward
4. one glass of cold water and one ice tea
5. milk for the baby
6. Chinese food
7. Japanese food
8. Komthang for only one person /han salam pun man/

C. Make short dialogues so that the second party responds using the following phrases:

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. mues itinci | 'anything' | 7. amu yoil itinci | 'any day of the week' |
| 2. eti tinci | 'any place' | 8. eni cumal itinci | 'any weekend' |
| 3. ence tinci | 'any time' | 9. amu kos itinci | 'any place' |
| 4. nuku tinci | 'anybody' | 10. amu nal itinci | 'any day' |
| 5. myæchil itinci | 'any date' | 11. amu ttæ tinci | 'any time' |
| 6. amu imsik itinci | 'any food' | 12. amu te tinci | 'any place' |

D. Jones Sənsəng explains the reasons when you ask him:

1. Why he is studying Korean.
2. Why he hasn't had breakfast yet.
3. Why the nearby restaurant is always crowded.
4. Why he is busy all the time.
5. Why he didn't come to school yesterday.
6. Why he has to speak Korean.
7. Why he's going to sell his car.
8. Why the traffic is so thick.
9. Why he joined the foreign service.
10. Why he wants to take a vacation.
11. Why he intends to walk.
12. Why he doesn't take the bus.
13. Why he doesn't take his wife to the movies.
14. Why he tries to find out Mr. Kim's telephone number /cənhwa pənho/.
15. Why he doesn't want to try Korean food.

제 13 과 음식 (계속)

자

1. 부탁운 : 자, 어서 드십시오.

시작하십시오

2. 의 : 예, 같이 시작하십시오.

소금

고추

고추 가루

저에게

3. 부탁운 : 거기 소금과 고추 가루 좀 저에게 주시겠습니까?

4. 의 : 예, 여기 있읍니다. 나도 소금이 좀 필요합니다.

맛

5. 부탁운 : 곰탕 맛이 어땠습니까?

6. 의 : 맛(이) 있읍니다. 선생의 불고기는요?

맛은 좋으나

고기가 질깁니다

7. 부탁운 : 맛은 좋으나, 고기가 좀 질깁니다.

맵습니다

매운 음식

8. 의 : 선생은 매운 음식이 좋습니까?

UNIT 13. Eating and Drinking (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

Brown

- ca well; now
 1. Ca, ese ti(lí)sippsiyo. (Now) Please help yourself.

Lee

- sicak-hapsita let's start
 2. Ne, kathi sicak-hapsita. Thank you. ('Let's begin together.')

Brown

- sokim salt
 kochu red pepper
 kochu kalu (pepper powder)
 cë eke to me
 3. Këki sokim kwa kochu kalu com May I have the salt and pepper,
 cë eke cusikessimnikka? please? ('Will you give me the
 salt and red pepper there?')

Lee

4. Ne, yëki issimnita. Na to sokim Here you are! I need a little salt,
 i com philyo-hamnita. too.

Brown

- mas taste
 5. Komthang mas i ettehsimnikka? How does the Komthang taste?

Lee

6. Mas i issimnita. Sensæng e It tastes good. ('Taste exists.')
- Pul-koki nin yo? And how about your Pul-koki?

Brown

- cohina [it]'s good but...
 mas in cohina it's tasty but...
 koki ka cilkimnita the meat is tough
 7. Mas in cohina, koki ka com It's tasty but the meat is a little
 cilkimnita. tough.

싫어합니다

9. 부탁운 : 예, 그티 싫어하지 않습니다.

먹은 일, 먹어 본 일, 먹어 본 적
먹어 본 일(적)이 있읍니다

10. 이 : 선생은 중국 음식을 먹어 본 적이 있읍니까?

11. 부탁운 : 예, 여터 번 먹어 본 적이 있읍니다.

12. 이 : 아, 그래요? 어디에서요?

13. 부탁운 : 미국에도 중국 음식점이 많읍니다.

양식

별로

별로 먹지 않았읍니다

14. 이 : 나도 중국 음식은 많이 먹었지만, 양식은 별로
많이 먹지 않았읍니다.

양식 집

15. 부탁운 : 그럼, 내일은 양식 집에 갑시다.

있는지

있는지 아십니까

16. 이 : 그것, 좋습니다. 양식점이 어디에 있는지
아십니까?

Lee

mæpsimnita

(food) is spicy

mæun imsik

spicy (hot) food

8. Sənsəng in mæun imsik i cohsimnikka? Do you like spicy food? ('Is spicy food good for you?')

Brown

silhəhamnita

[I] dislike

9. Ne, killi silhəhaci anhsimnita. It's all right. ('I don't dislike it so much.')

Lee
 məkən il
 məkə pon il }
 məkə pon cək

('the experience of eating')

məkə pon il i issimnita

[I] have an experience of eating

10. Sənsəng in Cungkuk imsik il Have you ever eaten Chinese food?
məkə pon il i issimnikka?

Brown

11. Ne, yələ pən məkə pon cək i Yes, I have (eaten) many times.
issimnita.

Lee

12. A, kilə yo? eti esə yo?

Oh, you have? Where?

Brown

13. Mikuk e to Cungkuk imsikcəm i manhsimnita.

There are many Chinese restaurants in the U.S., too.

Lee

Yangsik

Western food

pyəllo

not particularly; not so much

pyəllo məkci anhəssimnita

[I] didn't eat so much

14. Na to Cungkuk imsik in manhi məkəssci man, Yangsik in pyəllo manhi məkci anhəssimnita.

I also have eaten Chinese food a lot but I haven't had much Western food.

17. 부탁운 : 예, 암니다.

어느 곳

몰라드

이 부근에

18. 어느 곳이 더 좋은지 몰라드, 이 부근에
두 개 있읍니다.

Brown

15. Kilem, næil in Yangsik cip e
kapsita.
- Let's go to a Western restaurant tomorrow, then.

Lee

- issnин ci/inninci/
issnин ci asimnikka
eti e issnин ci asimnikka
16. Ki kес, cohsimnita. Yangsikcем i
eti e issnин ci asimnikka?
- if there is; that there is
do [you] know if there is?
do [you] know where [it] is?
Fine. Do you know where there is a
Western restaurant?

Brown

17. Ne, amnita.
- əni kos
molla to
i pukin e
18. əni kos i tæ cohin ci molla to,
i pukin e tu kæ issimnita.
- which place
even though [I] do not know
in this vicinity
- There are two in this area but I
don't know which one is better.
('Even though I don't know which
place is better, there are two in
this vicinity.')

ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY AND PHRASES

1. a. Mom i aphimnita.
b. əlkul i aphimnita.
c. Nun i aphimnita.
d. Ppyam i aphimnita.
e. Son i aphimnita.
f. Son-kalak i aphimnita.
g. Pal i aphimnita.
h. Pal-kalak i aphimnita.
i. Tali ka aphimnita.
j. Phal i aphimnita.
k. əkkæ ka aphimnita.
l. Ip i aphimnita.
m. Mok i aphimnita.
n. Thek i aphimnita.
- I'm sick. ('Body hurts.')
- My face hurts.
- My eyes hurt.
- My cheek hurts.
- My hand hurts.
- My finger aches.
- My foot hurts.
- My toes are aching.
- My leg hurts.
- My arm hurts.
- My shoulder hurts.
- My mouth is sore.
- I have a sore throat.
- My chin hurts.

Additional Vocabulary and Phrases

- A.
1. 몸이 아픕니다.
 2. 얼굴이 아픕니다.
 3. 눈이 아픕니다.
 4. 뺨이 아픕니다.
 5. 손이 아픕니다.
 6. 손가락이 아픕니다.
 7. 발이 아픕니다.
 8. 발가락이 아픕니다.
 9. 다리가 아픕니다.
 10. 팔이 아픕니다.
 11. 어깨가 아픕니다.
 12. 입이 아픕니다.
 13. 목이 아픕니다.
 14. 턱이 아픕니다.
 15. 머리가 아픕니다.
 16. 가슴이 아픕니다.
 17. 귀가 아픕니다.
 18. 코가 아픕니다.
 19. 이(비)가/이 아픕니다.
 20. 등이 아픕니다.
 21. 허리가 아픕니다.

- B.
1. 소금이 좀 피요합니다.
 2. 설탕이 좀 피요합니다.
 3. (간)장이 좀 피요합니다.
 4. 양념이 좀 피요합니다.
 5. 물이 좀 피요합니다.

- o. Meli ka aphimnita. I have a headache.
 p. Kasim i aphimnita. I have a pain on my chest.
 q. Kwi ka aphimnita. My ear aches.
 r. Kho ka aphimnita. My nose hurts.
 s. I ka } aphimnita. My teeth ache.
 Ippal i }
 t. Ting i aphimnita. I have a backache.
 u. Heli ka aphimnita. My waist aches.
2. a. Sokim i com philyo-hamnita. I need some salt.
 b. Selthang i com philyo-hamnita. I need some sugar.
 c. (Kan)cang i com philyo-hamnita. I need some soy sauce.
 d. Yangyem/yangnyem/ i com philyo-hamnita. I need some seasoning.
 e. Mul i com philyo-hamnita. I need some water.
 f. Kilis i com philyo-hamnita.. I need some containers.
 g. Koppu ka com philyo-hamnita. I need some {cups.
 Glasses.
 h. Cho ka com philyo-hamnita. I need some vinegar.
 i. Huchu kalu ka com philyo-hamnita. I need some black pepper (powder).
 j. Sut-kalak i com philyo-hamnita. I need a spoon.
 k. Ces-kalak i com philyo-hamnita. I need chopsticks.
3. a. (Hong)cha lil hakessimnita. I'll have tea.
 b. Khephil lil hakessimnita. I'll have coffee.
 c. Sul il hakessimnita. I'll have {wine.
 Liquor.
 d. Ppilu lil hakessimnita. I'll have beer.
 e. Maecku lil hakessimnita. I'll have beer.
 f. Yache lil hakessimnita. I'll have vegetables.
 g. Chae lil hakessimnita. I'll have vegetables.
 h. Kwail il hakessimnita. I'll have fruits.
 i. Kwasil il hakessimnita. I'll have fruits.
 j. Silkwa lil hakessimnita. I'll have fruits.
 k. Koki lil hakessimnita. I'll have [some] meat.
 l. Sengsen il hakessimnita. I'll have fish.
 m. So koki lil hakessimnita. I'll have beef ('cow meat').

6. 그릇이 좀 필요합니다.
7. 고ぶり가 좀 필요합니다.
8. 초가 좀 필요합니다.
9. 후추 가루가 좀 필요합니다.
10. 술 가락이 좀 필요합니다.
11. 젓가락이 좀 필요합니다.

- C.
1. (통) 차를 하겠습니다.
 2. 커피를 하겠습니다.
 3. 술을 하겠습니다.
 4. 맥주를 하겠습니다.
 5. 야채를 하겠습니다.
 6. 채소를 하겠습니다.
 7. 과일을 하겠습니다.
 8. 과실을 하겠습니다.
 9. 고기를 하겠습니다.
 10. 생선을 하겠습니다.
 11. 소고기를 하겠습니다.
 12. 닭고기를 하겠습니다.
 13. 돼지 고기를 하겠습니다.
 14. 도야지 고기를 하겠습니다.
 15. 겨단을 하겠습니다.
 16. 단감을 하겠습니다.
 17. 국을 하겠습니다.

- D.
1. 잡이 옵니다.
 2. 잡을 잡니다.
 3. 좀 피곤합니다.
 4. 좀 고단합니다.
 5. 좀 피로합니다.

- n. Ta(l)k koki lil hakessimnita. I'll have chicken ('chicken meat').
- o. Tweci koki lil hakessimnita. I'll have pork ('pig meat').
- p. Toyaci koki lil hakessimnita. I'll have pork.
- q. Kyəlan il hakessimnita. I'll have eggs.
- r. Talkyal il hakessimnita. I'll have eggs.
- s. Kuk il hakessimnita. I'll have soup.
-
4. a. imsik i nəmu ccamnita. [This] food is too salty.
- b. imsik i nəmu tamnita. [This] food is too sweet.
- c. imsik i nəmu singkepsimnita. [This] food is too bland.
- d. imsik i nəmu mæpsimnita. [This] food is too hot (spicy).
- e. imsik i nəmu chamnita. [This] food is too cold.
- f. imsik i nəmu simnita. [This] food is too sour.
- g. imsik i nəmu ttikəpsimnita. [This] food is too hot (temperature).
- h. imsik i nəmu tepsimnita. [This] food is too hot (temperature).
- i. imsik i nəmu ssimnita. [This] food is too bitter.
-
5. a. (imsik) mas i cohsimnita. It tastes good. ('(Food) taste is good.')
- b. (imsik) mas i issimnita. It's delicious.
- c. (imsik) mas i epsimnita. It's tasty; It tastes good.
- d. (imsik) mas i kwənchanhsimnita. It's tasteless.
- e. (imsik) mas i hullyunghamnita. It tastes all right.
- It tastes very good. ('Taste is excellent.')
-
6. a. Kipun i cohsimnita. I feel well. ('Feeling is good.')
- b. Kipun i com nappimnita. I don't feel very well. ('Feeling is a little bad.')
- c. Kipun i ettəhsimnikka? How are you feeling?
-
7. a. Pæ ka kophimnita. I'm hungry. ('Stomach is empty.')
- b. Pæ ka pulimnita. I'm full.
- c. Pæ ka aphimnita. I have a stomach-ache.
- d. Pæ ka pulphyənhamnita. My stomach is uncomfortable.
-
8. a. Cam i omnita. I'm sleepy. ('Sleep comes.')
- b. (Cam il) camnita. I'm sleep(ing).
- c. (com) phikonhamnita. I'm (a little) tired.

6. 목이 아픕니다.
7. 음식이 끄떡합니다.
8. 음식이 충분합니다.
9. 음식이 부족합니다.
10. 음식이 모자랍니다.
11. 음식이 맛습니다.

- E.
1. 음식이 너무 짭니다.
 2. 음식이 너무 달니다.
 3. 음식이 너무 신겁습니다.
 4. 음식이 너무 맵습니다.
 5. 음식이 너무 쓰습니다.
 6. 음식이 너무 싱겁습니다.
 7. 음식이 너무 뜨겁습니다.
 8. 음식이 너무 덥습니다.
 9. 음식이 너무 씹습니다.

- F.
1. (음식) 맛이 좋습니다.
 2. (음식) 맛이 있읍니다.
 3. (음식) 맛이 없읍니다.
 4. (음식) 맛이 괜찮습니다.
 5. (음식) 맛이 훌륭합니다.

- G.
1. 기분이 좋습니다.
 2. 기분이 좀 나쁩니다.
 3. 기분이 어떻습니까?

- H.
1. 배가 고풍니다.
 2. 배가 부릅니다.
 3. 배가 아픕니다.
 4. 배가 불편합니다.

- d. (com) kotanhannita. I'm (a little) tired.
e. (com) philohannita. I'm (rather) fatigued.
f. Mok i malimnita. I'm thirsty. ('Throat dries.')
9. a. imsik i {nəknəkhamnita
/nəngnəkhamnita/.} The food is sufficient.
b. imsik i chungpun-hannita. The food is enough.
c. imsik i pucok-hannita. The food is not enough.
d. imsik i mocalamnita. {The food is not enough.
We are short of food.
e. imsik i manhsimnita. The food is plenty.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

- 1.2. Ca, ese ti(lí)sipsiyo. ('Well, lift [it] please!', 'Well, please have [it]') is a fixed expression in the eating or drinking situation to have your guest or company start eating or drinking. The usual response to Ca, ese ti(lí)sipsiyo. is Ne, kathi sicak-hapsita. ('Yes, let's begin together!').
6. Mas i iss-ta. ('Taste exists!') and Mas i coh-ta. ('Taste is good!') are the two common fixed expressions; both of which are used as the Korean equivalents of 'It's tasty.' or 'It's delicious.'
10. Məkə pon il (or məkə pon cək) ('The experience of having eaten') and məkin il (or məkin cək) can be interchangeably used (See Grammar Note 3.)
12. In Kilæ yo? ('Is that so?') kilæ is the infinitive form of the verb kiləh- 'to be so'. Thus, Kilæ yo? is the informal polite equivalent of the formal polite Kilehsimnikka?; Kilæ yo. of the formal polite Kilehsimnita.
13. Cungkuk imsikcəm 'Chinese restaurant' is often substituted by Cungkuk cip ('Chinese house'). In Korea, Cungkuk cip is usually referred to Cungkuk imsikcəm.
14. Pyəllo '(not) particularly', is an adverb which occurs before an negative inflected expression, and denotes mildness or less being positive in negating the following expression.
15. Yangsik cip ('Western food house.') is a substitute for Yangsikcəm.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -(i)na

The inflected form ending in -(i)na (or simply the -(i)na form) which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression. The honorific and/or tense suffixes may occur in the -(i)na form: -na is added to a vowel stem; -ina to a consonant stem. The -(i)na form denotes that some contradictory further explanation or remark will follow in the following inflected expression. (Compare the -(i)na form with -ci + man, Grammar Note 2, Unit 9.) Examples:

Mas in cohina, koki ka com cilkimmnita. 'It's tasty, but the meat is a little tough.'

Hankuk mal i elyeuna, cæmi isse yo. 'Korean is difficult but is interesting.'

Kim Pyænhosa e ælkul in molina, ilim in tilessimnita. 'I don't know Lawyer Kim's face, but I've heard of his name.'

2. -n/in Infinitive + pon } + { ^{il} _{cæk} } i + iss- 'has an experience of having done something'

The construction -n/in il i issimnita is used to mean 'have, sometime up to the present, done so-and-so'. The question form, -n/in il i issimnikka?, is the Korean equivalent of 'Have [you] ever done so-and-so?'. In the above construction il meaning 'work' or 'act' or 'experience' is synonymous with cæk and they are interchangeable with each other. The first word in the construction ending in -n/in (-n is added to a vowel stem; -in to a consonant stem) can be substituted by the verb phrase Infinitive + pon. The negation for the whole expression is made by replacing eps- 'not exit' in place of iss-. Thus, -n/in il i epsimnita means '[Someone] has, some time up to the present, never done so-and-so.' and -n/in il i epsimnikka? 'Haven't [you] ever done so-and-so?'. Examples:

Cunguk imsik il mækin il i issimnikka? 'Have you ever eaten Chinese food?'

Hankuk e kasin cæk i issna yo? 'Have you ever been ('gone') to Korea?'

Cæ nin Nyuyok ese cihachælto lil than il i issci yo. 'I have an experience of riding a subway in New York.'

Cæn e catongcha lil uncænhæ pon il i issci man, cikim in uncæhanin kæs il ice pæliessimnita. 'I drove an automobile before, but I have forgotten how to drive (now).'

Ne, Hankuk e olæ cən e kan cək i
issimnita.

'Yes, I've gone to Korea long time
ago.'

Note that the ending -n/in is distinguished from the present noun-modifier ending -n/in/nin since -n/in which is added only to an action verb stem indicates the past action of the following nominal. We shall call the ending -n/in Past Noun-Modifier Ending. We will learn more about the ending -n/in as well as the description verb past noun-modifier forms in the further units. For the time being, observe the following examples:

- | | |
|---|--|
| a. kanin salam
kan salam } | 'the person who (is) go(ing).'
'the person who has gone' |
| b. næ ka mannanin yəca
næ ka mannan yəca } | 'the woman (or girl) whom I'(m)
meet(ing)'
'the woman whom I've met' |
| c. atil i sanin chæk
atil i san chæk } | 'the book that my son is buying'
'the book that my son bought' |
| d. məknin imsik
mekin imsik } | 'the food that [we] eat'
'the food that [we] ate' |

3. Interrogative + -n/in/nin ci

An interrogative (i.e. what, who, where, why, etc.) followed by a present noun-modifier word + ci, occurs as a nominal expression with or without a particle after it before another inflected expression, and denotes the present action or description of the verb for the subject or topic in the same nominal expression. When the phrase interrogative + -n/in/nin ci is followed by the verb a(l)- 'know' or mol- 'not know', it is always the object of the verb.

Examples:

- | | |
|---|--|
| Cə salam i nuku in ci ale yo. | '[I] know <u>who that man is.</u> ' |
| I chæk i əlma in ci alko siphe yo? | 'Do you want to know <u>how much this book is?</u> ' |
| Kim Sənsəng i əti e sanin ci
asici yo? | 'You know <u>where Mr. Kim lives</u> , don't you?' |
| Sənsəng i muəs il wənhanin ci
molimnita. | 'I don't know <u>what you want.</u> ' |

Note that the present noun-modifier word in the same construction may be replaced by the form -(a,e)ssnин for the past and the form -(i)l for the future, if the equivalent English noun clause is in the past or future tense respectively.

Observe the following:

GROUP 1

Ki salam i eti e kassnín ci
amnita.

'[I] know where he went.'

Hakkyo ka ence sicak-hæssnín ci
molla yo.

'[I] don't know when the school
began.'

Næ ka Yëngë lïl ettehke pæwessnín
ci ase yo?

'Do you know how I have learned
English?'

GROUP 2

Sip nyen hu e muës il hal ci
acik molimnita.

'[I] don't know what [I] will do
after ten years from now.'

Sikan i elma na këllil ci alki
elyëpsimnita.

'It's difficult to know how long it
will take.'

Ki i ka elma tongan Seúl ese
kinmu-hal ci molla yo?

'Don't you know how long he will
work in Seoul?'

4. Particles eke 'to' and ekesë 'from'

A personal nominal + eke and a personal nominal + ekesë before an inflected expression mean 'to + P.N.' and 'from + P.N.' respectively. Remember that the particles e and ese preceded by a place name before an inflected expression mean also 'to' and 'from' respectively (Units 2 and 3). Do not use e and ese after a personal nominal to mean the same. Examples:

GROUP 1 (eke)

I chæk il Kim Sënsæng eke tilisipsiyo. 'Please give this book to Mr. Kim.'

Halapëci eke mule pwassci man,
mollasse yo. 'I asked (to) my grandfather but
he didn't know.'

Onil in chinku eke phyënci lïl sse
ya hakessë yo. '[I think] I've got to write a
letter to my friend today.'

GROUP 2 (ekesë)

Pak Sënsæng ekesë ki mal il
titko, nollassimnita.

'I was surprised to hear that
from Mr. Park. ('I heard that
word from Mr. Park and was sur-
prised.')

emëni ekesë sëngil sënmul il
patëssimnita.

'I have received a birthday present
from my mother.'

5. Dependent Nouns

There is a small class of Korean nouns which occur only as bound forms in certain constructions but are neither Determinatives nor Post-Nouns (Unit 3). We shall call the words of this class Dependent Nouns. Remember that a determinative is a word which occurs before another noun (free or bound), and that a post-noun occurs either after other nouns or after modifier categories of inflected words. In both cases, they form nominal phrases. However, a dependent noun also occurs after the modifier categories of inflected words, but is followed by a certain expression to form a phrase. Thus, it is not necessary to learn the meaning of an individual dependent noun separately. Instead, you should learn the meaning of the whole phrase where such a dependent noun is included as if it were one word. For example, in Kal kka yo? 'Shall [we] go?', Ttənal kka hamnita. '[I] I'm thinking of leaving.', Anin ka yo? 'Do [you] know?', Kal su issimnita. '[I] can go.', Muəs in ci amnita. '[I] know what [it] is.', əti e sanin ci molimnita. 'I don't know where [he] lives.', Pi ka ol tit hamnita. 'It looks like rain.', Kəki kan cək i isse yo? 'Have you ever been there?', kka, ka, su, ci, tit, cək, etc. are Dependent Nouns.

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Cə nin <u>pə</u> ka kophimnita. | I'm hungry. |
| 2. Cə nin <u>pə</u> ka pulimnita. | I'm full. |
| 3. Cə nin <u>mok</u> i malimnita. | I'm thirsty. |
| 4. Cə nin <u>(com)</u> phikonhamnita. | I'm (a little) tired. |
| 5. Cə nin <u>(com)</u> kotanhamnita. | I'm (rather) fatigued. |
| 6. Cə nin <u>cam</u> i omnita. | I'm sleepy. |
| 7. Cə nin <u>mom</u> i aphimnita. | I'm sick. |
| 8. Cə nin <u>kipun</u> i cohsimnita. | I'm feeling well. |
| 9. Cə nin <u>kipun</u> i nappimnita. | I'm not feeling well. |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Na nin mom i com aphimnita. | I'm a little sick. ('My body aches a little.') |
| 2. Na nin <u>məli</u> ka com aphimnita. | I have a little headache. |
| 3. Na nin <u>tali</u> ka com aphimnita. | My leg hurts a little. |
| 4. Na nin <u>nun</u> i com aphimnita. | My eyes hurt a little. |
| 5. Na nin <u>pal</u> i com aphimnita. | My foot hurts a little. |
| 6. Na nin <u>son</u> i com aphimnita. | My hand hurts a little. |
| 7. Na nin <u>i</u> ka com aphimnita. | My tooth aches a little. |
| 8. Na nin <u>ip</u> i com aphimnita. | My mouth is a little sore. |
| 9. Na nin <u>əkkə</u> ka com aphimnita. | My shoulder hurts a little. |
| 10. Na nin <u>mok</u> i com aphimnita. | I have a little sore throat. ('My throat is a little sore.') |

C. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Kəki sokim com (cə eke)
cusikessimnikka? | Please pass me the salt. ('Will you give me the salt there?') |
| 2. Kəki <u>səlthang</u> com (cə eke)
cusikessimnikka? | Please pass me the sugar. |
| 3. Kəki <u>kochu</u> <u>kalu</u> com (cə eke)
cusikessimnikka? | Please pass me the pepper. ('red-pepper powder') |
| 4. Kəki <u>huchu</u> <u>kalu</u> com (cə eke)
cusikessimnikka? | Please pass me the pepper. ('black-pepper powder') |

5. Keki (kan)cang com (ce eke)
kusikessimnikka? Please pass me the soy sauce.
- *6. Keki ccam com (ce eke)
kusikessimnikka? Please pass me the jam.
- *7. Keki ppata com (ce eke)
kusikessimnikka? Please pass me the butter.
- *8. Keki ppang com (ce eke)
kusikessimnikka? Please pass me the bread.
- *9. Keki Kimchi com (ce eke)
kusikessimnikka? Please pass me Kimchi.
- *10. Keki naphikhin com (ce eke)
kusikessimnikka? Please pass me the napkins.

D. Substitution Drill

1. Ki chæk il na eke cusipsiyo. Give me that book.
2. Ki chæk il Kim Sənsəng eke cusipsiyo. Give that book to Mr. Kim.
3. Ki chæk il Ceimsi eke cusipsiyo. Give that book to James.
4. Ki chæk il apəci eke cusipsiyo. Give that book to your father.
5. Ki chæk il ce haksəng eke cusipsiyo. Give that book to the student.
6. Ki chæk il Mikuk chinku eke cusipsiyo. Give that book to your American friend.
7. Ki chæk il Kim Sənsəng puin eke cusipsiyo. Give that book to Mrs. Kim.

E. Substitution Drill

1. Chinku ekesə sikye lɪl patəssimnita. I received a watch from a friend.
2. Ceimsi ekesə moca lɪl patəssimnita. I received a hat from James.
3. Kim Sənsəng ekesə kapang lɪl patəssimnita. I received a briefcase from Mr. Kim.
- *4. əməni ekesə phyənci lɪl patəssimnita. I received a letter from my mother.
- *5. Təsa ekesə cənhwa lɪl patəssimnita. I received a telephone call from the ambassador.

- *6. Apəci ekesə sənmul il patəssimnita. I received a present from my father.
- *7. Hankuke kangsa ekesə Yəng-Han sacən il patəssimnita. I received an English-Korean dictionary from the Korean instructor.
- *8. Yəngsa ekesə cenpo lil patəssimnita. I received a {telegram} from the {cable} consul.
- *9. Sangkwan ekesə myəngnyəng il patəssimnita. I received an order from [my] {boss.} {supervisor.}
- *10. Sonnim ekesə cumun il patəssimnita. I received an order from [my] {customer.} {guest.}
- *11. Təthongyəng ekesə chotəe lil patəssimnita. I received an invitation from the President.
- *12. Haksəng til ekesə cilmun il patəssimnita. I received questions from the students.
- *13. Tongyo ekesə puthak il patəssimnita. I was asked of a favor from a colleague.
- *14. Sacang ekesə singkip il patəssimnita. I received a promotion from the president (of the company).
- *15. Insakwacang ekesə pongkip il patəssimnita. I've got my pay from the personnel officer.

F. Substitution Drill

1. Sənsəng in məun imsik i cohsimnikka? Do you like hot (spicy) food?
2. Sənsəng in Cungkuk imsik i cohsimnikka? Do you like Chinese food?
3. Sənsəng in Yangsik i cohsimnikka? Do you like Western food?
4. Sənsəng in Wəsik i cohsimnikka? Do you like Japanese food?
5. Sənsəng in Hankuk məkcu ka cohsimnikka? Do you like Korean beer?
6. Sənsəng in musin imsik i cohsimnikka? What kind of food do you like?
7. Sənsəng in əni siktang i cohsimnikka? Which restaurant do you like?
8. Sənsəng in əni sensəng i cohsimnikka? Which teacher do you prefer?

G. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I imsik in com <u>mæpsimnita</u> . | This food is a little spicy. |
| 2. I imsik in com <u>ccamnita</u> . | This food is a little salty. |
| 3. I imsik in com <u>chamnita</u> . | This food is a little cold. |
| 4. I imsik in com <u>təpsimnita</u> . | This food is a little warm. |
| 5. I imsik in com <u>simnita</u> . | This food is a little sour. |
| 6. I imsik in com <u>tamnita</u> . | This food is a little sweet. |
| 7. I imsik in com <u>ssimnita</u> . | This food is a little bitter. |

H. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. I koki nin com cilkimnita. | This meat is a little tough. |
| 2. I <u>Pul-koki</u> nin com cilkimnita. | This Pul-koki is a little tough. |
| 3. I <u>sængsen</u> in com cilkimnita. | This fish is a little tough. |
| 4. I <u>ta(l)k koki</u> nin com cilkimnita. | This chicken is a little tough. |
| 5. I <u>so koki</u> nin com cilkimnita. | This beef is a little tough. |
| 6. I <u>toyaci koki</u> nin com cilkimnita. | This pork is a little tough. |
| 7. I <u>tweci koki</u> nin com cilkimnita. | This pork is a little tough. |
| *8. I tweci koki nin <u>putilepsimnita</u> . | This pork is { tender.
soft. |
| *9. I tweci koki nin <u>yənhamnita</u> . | This pork is tender (for meat). |

I. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Yangsikcəm i əti e issnin ci
asimnikka? | Do you know where a restaurant for
Western food is. |
| 2. <u>Hansikcəm</u> i əti e issnin ci
asimnikka? | Do you know where a Korean restaurant
is? |
| 3. <u>Wəsikcəm</u> i əti e issnin ci
asimnikka? | Do you know where a Japanese restau-
rant is? |
| 4. <u>Cungkuk imsikcəm</u> i əti e issnin
ci asimnikka? | Do you know where a Cinese restaurant
is? |
| 5. <u>Pakmulkwan</u> i əti e issnin ci
asimnikka? | Do you know where the museum is? |
| *6. <u>Tongmulwən</u> i əti e issnin ci
asimnikka? | Do you know where the zoo is? |

- *7. Kukhwe ka əti e issnin ci asimnikka? Do you know where the
 {National Assembly} {Congress} is?
- *8. Wemupu ka əti e issnin ci asimnikka? Do you know where the Ministry of
 Foreign Affairs is?
- *9. Sopangse ka əti e issnin ci asimnikka? Do you know where the fire station is?
- *10. Kukmusəng i əti e issnin ci asimnikka? Do you know where the State Department is?
- *11. Kukpangpu ka əti e issnin ci asimnikka? Do you know where the Ministry of Defense is?
- *12. Kukpansəng i əti e issnin ci asimnikka? Do you know where the Defense Department is?
- *13. Kisuksa ka əti e issnin ci asimnikka? Do you know where the dormitory is?

J. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Sənsəng in cən e Hankuk e kassimnikka?

'Did you go to Korea before?'

Student: Sənsəng in cən e Hankuk e kan il i issimnikka?

'Have you ever been to Korea before?'

1. Sənsəng in cən e Ilpon mal il pəwassimnikka?
2. Sənsəng in cən e Yəngə lil kalichiessimnikka?
3. Sənsəng in cən e wekuk təhakkyo e taniessimnikka?
4. Sənsəng in cən e Mikuk təsa lil mannassimnikka?
5. Sənsəng in cən e Səul esə il-həssimnikka?
6. Sənsəng in cən e pihəngki lil thassimnikka?
7. Sənsəng in cən e Hankuk esə phyənci lil patəssimnikka?
8. Sənsəng in cən e Mikuk chinku eke sacən il puchiessimnikka?

Sənsəng in cən e Ilpon mal il pəun il i issimnikka?

Sənsəng in cən e Yəngə lil kalichin il i issimnikka?

Sənsəng in cən e wekuk təhakkyo e tanin il i issimnikka?

Sənsəng in cən e Mikuk təsa lil mannan il i issimnikka?

Sənsəng in cən e Səul esə il-han il i issimnikka?

Sənsəng in cən e pihəngki lil than il i issimnikka?

Sənsəng in cən e Hankuk esə phyənci lil patin il i issimnikka?

Sənsəng in cən e Mikuk chinku eke sacən il puchin il i issimnikka?

9. Sənsəeng in cən e Hankuk imsik il məkəssimnikka?
10. Sənsəeng in cən e ki yəca lıl kitaliəssimnikka?

- Sənsəeng in cən e Hankuk imsik il məkin il i issimnikka?
- Sənsəeng in cən ki yəca lıl kitalin il i issimnikka?

K. Response Drill

Tutor: Cən e Hankuk imsik il məkin il i issimnikka?

'Have you ever eaten Korean food before?'

Student: Ne, məkə pon cək i issimnita.

'Yes, I have (eaten).'

1. Cən e Ilpon mal il pəun il i issimnikka?

Ne, pəwə pon cək i issimnita.

2. Cən e Yəngə lıl kalichin il i issimnikka?

Ne, kalichie pon cək i issimnita.

3. Cən e Hankuk məkcu lıl masin il i issimnikka?

Ne, masyə pon cək i issimnita.

4. Cən e kuntə e kan il i issimnikka?

Ne, ka pon cək i issimnita.

5. Talin salam eke i chək il poyə cun il i issimnikka?

Ne, poyə cuə pon cək i issimnita.

6. Cən e mok i aphın il i issimnikka?

Ne, aphə pon cək i issimnita.

7. Hankuk salam chinku ekesə phyənci lıl patın il i issimnita.

Ne, pate pon cək i issimnita.

8. Wəlyoill e cip eṣə swin il i issimnikka?

Ne, (Wəlyoil e) swiə pon cək i issimnita.

9. Cip eṣə hakkyo kkaci tu sikan i kəllin il i issimnikka?

Ne, tu sikan i kəllie pon cək i issimnikka?

L. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Siktang i eti e issimnikka?
 Student: Siktang i eti e issnин ci asimnikka?

1. Kim Sensæng i mues il hamnikka?
2. Ki sikye ka elma imnikka?
3. Ce Mikuk yeca ka nuku imnikka?
4. Hakkyo ka myech-si e sicak-hanin ci asimnikka?
5. Cungkuk mal i elma na elyepsimnikka?
6. Onil i myechil imnikka?
7. I catongcha lil elma e phamnikka?
8. ence ppesi ka ttènamnikka?
9. Ce Mikuk kunin i mues il wènhamnikka?
10. Ceimsi Sensæng i musin yoil e hyuka lil patsimnikka?

'Where is the restaurant?'
 'Do you know where the restaurant is?'
 Kim Sensæng i mues il hanin ci asimnikka?
 Ki sikye ka elma in ci asimnikka?
 Ce Mikuk yeca ka nuku in ci asimnikka?
 Hakkyo ka myech-si e sicak-hanin ci asimnikka?
 Cungkuk mal i elma na elyèun ci asimnikka?
 Onil i myechil in ci asimnikka?
 I catongcha lil elma e pha(lì)nin ci asimnikka?
 ence ppesi ka ttènanin ci asimnikka?
 Ce Mikuk kunin i mues il wènhanin ci asimnikka?
 Ceimsi Sensæng i musin yoil e hyuka lil patnin ci asimnikka?

M. Response Drill

Tutor: Siktang i eti e issnин ci asimnikka?

Student: Ne, (siktang i) eti e issnин ci ale yo.

1. I catongcha ka elma in ci asimnikka?
2. Simisi Sensæng i eti ese il-hanin ci asimnikka?
3. Kicha ka myech-si e ttènanin ci asimnikka?
4. ence Hankuk ilo kanin ci asimnikka?

'Do you know where the restaurant is?'

'Yes, I know where it is.'

Ne, (i catongcah ka) elma in ci ale yo.
 Ne, (Simisi Sensæng i) eti ese il-hanin ci ale yo.
 Ne, (kicha ka) myech-si e ttènanin ci ale yo.
 Ne, ence (Hankuk ilo) kanin ci ale yo.

5. Cə salam i əlma na Hankuk mal il cal hal su issnин ci asimnikka?
Ne, (cə salam i) əlma na (Hankuk mal il) cal hal su issnин ci ale yo.
6. Ppəsi ka ənce ttənassnин ci asimnikka?
Ne, (ppəsi ka) ənce ttənassnин ci ale yo.
7. Ceimsi Sənsəng i myəch sal e Hankuk e wassnин ci asimnikka?
Ne, (Ceimsi Sənsəng i) myəch sal e Hankuk e wassnин ci ale yo.
8. Næ ka təhakkyo esə muəs il kongpu-həssnин ci asimnikka?
Ne, (tangsin i təhakkyo esə) muəs il kongpu-həssnин ci ale yo.
9. Cip esə cəngkəcang kkaci əlma na mən ci asimnikka?
Ne, (cip esə cəngkəcang kkaci) əlma na mən ci ale yo.
10. Səul e mulkən kaps i əlma na pißan ci asimnikka?
Ne, (Səul e mulkən kaps i) əlma na pißan ci ale yo.
11. Næ ka nuku lil mannako siphin ci asimnikka?
Ne, (sənsəng i) nuku lil mannako siphin ci ale yo.
12. Mikuk esə Hankuk kkaci myəchil i kəllinən ci asimnikka?
Ne, (Mikuk esə Hankuk kkaci) myəchil i kəllinən ci ale yo.

N. Response Drill

Tutor: I kəs i muəs in ci ase yo?

'Do you know what this is?'

Student: Aniyo, (muəs in ci) molimnita.

'No, I don't know (what is it).'

1. Pak Sənsəng i musin imsik il cohahanin ci ase yo?

Aniyo, (musin imsik il cohahanin ci) molimnita.

2. Hwesa samu ka myəch-si e sicak-hanin ci ase yo?

Aniyo, (myəch-si e sicak-hanin ci) molimnita.

3. Næ ka hwesa esə han tal e əlma patnən ci ase yo?

Aniyo, (əlma patnən ci) molimnita.

4. əlma tongan Yəngə lil pəwəssnən ci ase yo?

Aniyo, (əlma tongan Yəngə lil pəwəssnən ci) molimnita.

5. Mikuk təssa ka əlma cən e yəki e wassnин ci ase yo?

Aniyo, (əlma cən e yəki e wassnин ci) molimnita.

6. Nuka na eke Hankuk mal il kalichie cuəssnən ci ase yo?

Aniyo, (nuka kalichie cuəssnən ci) molimnita.

7. Kim Sənsəng i myəch-si e samusil e tola onin ci ase yo?

Aniyo, (myəch-si e tola onin ci) molimnita.

8. Ce yeca ka nuku lil salang-hanin ci ase yo?
9. Seoul e Mikuk salam i myeck salam i issnин ci ase yo?

Aniyo, (nuku lil salang-hanin ci)
molimnita.
Aniyo, (myeck salam i issnин ci)
molimnita.

O. Response Drill

Tutor: Pae ka kophimnikka?

Student: Ne, (pae ka) com kophimnita.

1. Mok i malimnikka?
2. (Mom i) phikon-hamnikka?
3. Cam i omnikkka?
4. Kipun i cohsimnikka?
5. Mom i aphimnikka?
6. Kotanhamnikka?
7. Pae ka pulimnikka?
8. Mas i issimnikka?
9. Koki ka cilkimnikka?

'Are you hungry?'
'Yes, (I'm) a little.'
Ne, (mok i) com malimnita.
Ne, com phikon-hamnita.
Ne, (cam i) com omnita.
Ne, (kipun i) com cohsimnita.
Ne, (mom i) com aphimnita.
Ne, com kotanhamnita.
Ne, (pae ka) com pulimnita.
Ne, (mas i) com issimnita.
Ne, (koki ka) com cilkimnita.

P. Response Drill

Tutor: Pae ka kophimnikka?

Student: Aniyo, kili kophici anhe yo.

1. Mok i malimnikka?
2. Phikon-hamnikka?
3. Cam i omnikkka?
4. Kipun i cohsimnikka?
5. Kipun i nappimnikka?
6. Mom i aphimnikka?
7. Kotanhamnikka?
8. Pae ka pulimnikka?
9. Mas i issimnikka?
10. Mas i cohsimnikka?
11. Koki ka cilkimnikka?

'Are you hungry?'
'No, (I'm) not very much (hungry).'
Aniyo, kili malici anhe yo.
Aniyo, kili phikon-haci anhe yo.
Aniyo, kili oci anhe yo.
Aniyo, kili cohci anhe yo.
Aniyo, kili nappici anhe yo.
Aniyo, kili aphici anhe yo.
Aniyo, kili kotanhaci anhe yo.
Aniyo, kili pulici anhe yo.
Aniyo, kili issci anhe yo.
Aniyo, kili cohci anhe yo.
Aniyo, kili cilkici anhe yo?

Q. Response Drill

Tutor: Pœ ka kophimnikka?

'Are you hungry?'

Student: Aniyo, pyøllo kophici
anhsimnita.'No, not particularly. ('I'm not
particularly hungry.')

1. Mom i aphimnikka?
2. Sokim i philyo-hamnita.
3. imsik i ccamnikka?
4. (imsik) mas i issimnikka?
5. Kipun i cohsimnikka?
6. Cam i omnikkka?
7. Mok i malimnikka?
8. Phikon-hamnikka?
9. Kotanhamnikka?
10. Koki ka cilkimnikka?
11. Hankuk mal il cal hamnikka?

Aniyo, pyøllo aphici anhsimnita.

Aniyo, phøllo philyo-haci anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyøllo ccaci anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyøllo issci anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyøllo cohci anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyøllo oci anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyøllo malici anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyøllo phikon-haci anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyøllo kotanhaci anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyøllo cilkici anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyøllo cal haci anhsimnita.

EXERCISES

A. Ask Kim Sensæng the following questions: (Mr. Kim answers beginning once with Ne, and once with Aniyo, both in Informal Polite Speech.)

1. if he is hungry.
2. if he is tired.
3. if he is sleepy.
4. if he is sick.
5. if he is feeling well.
6. if he is not feeling well.
7. if his stomach is uncomfortable.
8. if the meat is too tough.
9. if the pork is tender.
10. if the chicken is delicious.
11. if the food is spicy (hot).
12. if the soup is too salty.
13. if the coffee is too sweet (sugary).
14. if he needs salt and pepper.
15. if he has ever eaten Chinese food.
16. if he has ever taught Korean before.
17. if he knows what time the school ends.
18. if he knows who taught you Korean.
19. if he knows how you have studied Korean.
20. if he doesn't like Chinese food.
21. if the food is enough.
22. if the food is insufficient
23. if the food is plenty.

B. Tell the waitress to bring the following:

1. two bottles of O.B. beer
2. wine (or liquor)
3. vegetables
4. fruits
5. fish
6. seasoning
7. salt and pepper

8. spoon and chop sticks
9. soy sauce and a bowl
10. bread, butter and jam.
11. chicken and eggs.
12. three bowls of beef soup.
13. Pul-koki for two people.

C. Ask Pak Sensæng whether he likes the following kinds of food:

1. salty food
2. sweet food
3. bland food
4. spicy (hot) food
5. cold food
6. sour food
7. bitter food
8. dry food
9. western food
10. hot (in temperature) food

D. Make a short simple statement using each of the following words:

- | | |
|-----------|---------------------------|
| 1. face | 13. shoulder |
| 2. head | 14. arm |
| 3. neck | 15. hand |
| 4. throat | 16. finger |
| 5. eye | 17. foot |
| 6. nose | 18. toe |
| 7. cheek | 19. leg |
| 8. chin | 20. <u>knee/mulip/</u> |
| 9. mouth | 21. waist |
| 10. tooth | 22. chest |
| 11. hair | 23. back |
| 12. ear | 24. <u>wrist/son-mok/</u> |

E. Pak Sənsəng wants to know what have happened to you; answer as follows:

1. that you received a letter from your mother.
2. that you received questions from the student.
3. that you received a promotion from your boss.
4. that you received your pay from the personnel officer /insa kwacang/.
5. that your bookstore received an order from the customers.
6. that your colleague asked a favor of you.
7. that you have received an order from the Ambassador.
8. that you've received a dinner invitation from the (company) president.
9. that you've received a birthday present from your girl friend.
10. that you received a telephone call from your father.

제 14 과 개인의 일상과 가족 이야기

고향

1. 제임스 : 박 선생은 고향이 어디이세요?

원래

거의

2. 박 : 제 고향은 원래 인천이었으나 거의 서울에서 살았습니다.

어립니다

어린 때에, 어렸을 때에

3. 제임스 : 그럼, 어렸을 때에 서울로 왔습니까?

세 살

세 살 때에

이사

이사왔습니다

4. 박 : 예, 그렇습니다. 제가 세 살 때에 우리 가족이 서울로 이사왔습니다.

계십니까

5. 제임스 : 지금, 가족은 몇 분이나 계십니까?

결혼

결혼했습니다

결혼해서

아내, 처

아이들

UNIT 14. Talking About One's Life and Family

BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

James

kohyang

native place; home town

1. Pak Sənsəng in, kohyang i eti
ise yo?

Where do you come from, Mr. Park?

Park

wəlləe

originally; formerly

kəi

almost; mostly

2. Ce kohyang in wəlləe Inchən iəssina,
kəi Səul ese salessimnita.

I am originally from Inchon but I
have lived mostly in Seoul.James

əlimnita

[I]'m young

əlil ttəe (e) }
elyəssil ttəe (e) }when [I] was young ('at the
time of being young')

3. Kiləm, əlyəssil ttəe e Səul lo
wassimnikka?

Then, did you come to Seoul when
you were young?Park

se sal

three years old

se sal ttəe e

at the age of three

uli kacok

my family ('our family')

isa

moving (house, office, etc.)

isa-həssimnita

[we] moved

4. Ne, kiləhsimnita. Ce ka se sal
ttəe e uli kacok i Səul lo
isa-həssimnita.

That's right. When I was three
years old, my family moved to
Seoul.James

kyesimnikka

do you have?; are there? (H)

5. Cikim, kacok in myəch pun ina
kyesimnikka?

How many are there in your family
now?

6. 박 : 지금은 결혼해서 아내와 아이들이 둘 있읍니다.

아들

7. 제임스 : 아이들은 다 아들인가요?

큰 아이

딸

8. 박 : 아닙니다. 큰 아이는 딸이고 둘 째 아이가 아들입니다.

부모, 부모님

살아 계십니다

9. 제임스 : 부모님도 살아 계십니까?

아버지

어머니

형님, 형

돌아 가셨읍니다

댁

10. 박 : 아버지는 돌아 가셨고, 어머니는 형님 댁에서 삽니다.

형제

모두, 전부

11. 제임스 : 형제는 모두 몇 분이나 됩니까?

형님 외에

누 이 (동생)

Park

kyəlhon	marriage
kyəlhon-hæssimnita	[I]'m married; [I] got married
kyəlhon-hæ sə	[I]'m married and..; [I] got married and...
anæ	wife
ai til	children; babies
6. Cikim in kyəlhon-hæ sə, anæ wa ai til i tul issimnita.	I'm married now and have a wife and two children.

James

atil	son
7. Ai til in ta atil in ka yo?	Are your children both sons?

Park

khin a1	the eldest child ('big child')
ttal	daughter
8. An imnita. Khin ai nin ttal iko, tul ccæ ai ka atil imnita.	No. The elder child is a daughter, and the second is a son.

James

pumo pumo nim}	parents
sala issimnita } sala kyesimnita}	[he] is alive; [he] is living
9. Pumo nim to sala kyesimnikka?	Are your parents still living?

Park

apəci	father
əməni	mother
hyəng } hyəng nim}	(man's) older brother
tola kasyəssimnita	[they] passed away ('went back')
tæk	house; home (H)
10. Apəci nin tola kasyəssko, əməni nin hyəng nim tæk ese samnita.	My father is dead but my mother lives at my older brother's home.

(남) 동생

하나 쑥

12. 박 : 형님 한 분 외에 누이 동생과 남 동생이
하나 쑥 있읍니다.

다 들

13. 제임스 : 다 들 결혼했나요?

얼마 전에

혼자

14. 박 : 누이 동생은 얼마 전에 결혼했지만, 남 동생은
아직 혼자입니다.

몇 살

15. 제임스 : 남 동생은 몇 살입니까?

나이

나이가 많습니다

나이가 작습니다

16. 박 : 아주 나이가 그렇게 많지 않습니다. 예
금년에 스무 살입니다.

17. 제임스 : 학교에 다니는 가요?

고등학교

대학

대학교

졸업

졸업하고

삼 학년

James

hyəngce

brothers and sisters; siblings

motu }
cənpu}

in all; all together

11. Hyəngce nin motu myəch pun ina
twemnikka?

How many brothers and sisters do you
have in all? ('As for your siblings
how many persons do they become
in all?')

Park

hyəng nim we e/weye/

beside an older brother

nui (tongsəng)

(younger) sister

(nam) tongsəng

younger brother

hana ssik

one each; one at one time

12. Hyəng nim han pun we e, nui
tongsəng kwa nam tongsəng i
hana ssik issimnita.

Besides an older brother, I have a
younger sister and a younger
brother.

James

ta til

all; everybody

kyəlhon-həssna yo/kyəlhonhənnayo/

did [he] get married?

13. Ta til kyəlhon-həssna yo?

Are they all married? ('Did they all
get married?')

Park

əlma cən e

sometime ago

honca

single; alone

14. Nui tongsəng in əlma cən e
kyəlhon-həssci man, nam tongsəng
in acik honca imnita.

My younger sister got married some-
time ago, but my younger brother
is still single.

James

myəch sal/myəssal/

how old?; what age?

15. Nam tongsəng in myəch sal imnikka?

How old is your younger brother?

18. 박 : 예, 삼 년 전에 고등 학교를 졸업하고,
지금은 서울 대학교 삼 학년에 다니고
있읍니다.

Park

- nai
 nai ka manhsimnita
 nai ka cəksimnita
 16. Acik nai ka kilehke manhci
 anhsimnita. Kimnyən e simu
 sal imnita.
- age
 [he] is old ('age is much')
 [he] is young ('age is little')
 He is still quite young. He is
 twenty years old (this year).

James

17. Hakkyo e taninın ka yo?
- Does he go to school?

Park

- koting hakkyo
 təhakkyo
 colep
 colep-hako
 sam haknyən/hangnyən/
 18. Ne, sam nyən cən e koting hakkyo
 lıl colep-hako, cikim in Səul
 Təhakkyo sam haknyən e taniko
 issimnita.
- high school
 university
 graduation
 [he] graduated and...
 3rd grade
 Yes, he finished high school three
 years ago and is attending Seoul
 University in the junior class.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. (Sənsəng in) kohang i eti i(si)mnikka? ('What place is your native place?') is the fixed expression of which English equivalent is 'Where do you come from?' or 'Where are you from?'. The noun kohyang refers to either 'one's birth-place' or 'the place of his family origin'.
3. əli- 'to be young' is a description verb which usually means someone 'is in or before his boyhood'. It is also used to the grownups in somewhat cynical sense, implying 'immaturity' for the age. Ttæ 'time', 'occasion', 'when', is a noun. (See Grammate Note 1.)
4. isa 'moving' is a noun which refers to only moving one's residence and/or office from one place to another, and isa-ha- 'to move' is its verb. For 'moving something' other than one's residence, the verb o(l)mki- (transitive verb) is used. Uli 'we' which includes the speaker is a personal noun which occurs in the nominal positions: uli ka 'we (as subject)', uli lil 'us (as object)', uli eke 'to us', uli e 'our', uli nin 'we (as topic)', etc. However, before certain nouns uli occurs without accompanying any particle to make up noun phrases: uli kacok 'my family', uli əməni 'my mother', uli apeci 'my father', uli nala 'my country', uli cip 'my home', uli hakkyo 'our school', uli cip salam 'my wife ('our house person')', etc.
5. Kacok means either 'family' or 'a family member'. So, Kacok i manhsimnita. means '[I] have a large family.' but not '[I] have many families.'
6. Kyəlhon means either 'marriage' or 'wedding'; Kyəlhon-hæssimnikka? means either 'Are [you] married?' or 'Did [you] get married?'
8. Khin atil ('big son') refers to 'the first son', and khin ttal 'the first daughter'. Mat atil and khin atil are synonymous, so are mat ttal and khin ttal. Regardless of sex, the last child is called mangnæ. Mangnæ + atil (or ttal) = the last child who is a son (or daughter). An imnita. ('No, [it]'s not.') is synonymous with aniyo.

9. Pumo refers always to 'both parents'. Nim is either a free noun or a post-noun. As a free noun it is a poetic word, meaning 'sweetheart' or 'lover'. As a post-noun occurring after a title or kindship name, nim makes up a noun phrase: Title (or kinship name) + nim = Title or kinship name (honored). Examples:

<u>Regular</u>	<u>Honored</u>	
sənsæng	sənsæng	{ 'teacher' 'you'
Pak Sənsæng	Pak Sənsæng nim	'Mr. Park'
pumo	pumo nim	'parents'
hyəng	hyəng nim	'older brother'
tæsa	tæsa nim	{ 'Mr. Ambassador' 'ambassador'
sacang	sacang nim	'the president of the company'
apəci	apənim	'father'
əməni	əmənim	'mother'
nui	nunim	'older sister'
atil	atnim	'your son'
ttal	ttanim	'your daughter'

Note: apənim, əmənim, nunim, atnim, ttanim are irregular one-word expressions.

10. Tola ka(sie)ssimnita. ('[They] went back.', '[They] returned.') is a Korean euphemism for 'died'. Tæk is the polite equivalent of cip 'house', 'home'. Used directly to the addressee tæk also means 'your home' or sometimes 'you'.
11. Motu and its synonym cənpu 'in all', 'all' occurs either as an adverb or as a noun.
12. Nui means 'female sibling' which is used by a male sibling. Nunim is one-word term specifically for 'older sister' and nui tongsæng is a noun phrase which means 'younger sister'. Tongsæng is used for any 'younger sibling' of either sex. Nui, nunim, nui tongsæng are words for males only.
14. Honca 'single', 'alone' occurs either as a noun or as an adverb. As a noun it denotes 'a single person with no family' which is often the synonym of toksin 'an unmarried single person.'

16. Nai ka manh-ta. ('Age is plenty.') and Nai ka cək-ta. ('Age is little.') are most commonly used for the single verb expressions nilkəss-ta 'is aged'; cə(l)məss-ta 'is young', 'is youthful'. The stems of nilkəss-ta and cəlməss-ta, both of which occur usually in the past tense to describe the present state, are nilk- and cəlm- respectively. Sal ('the age counter') never occurs with the numerals of Chinese character origin, but always preceded by the numerals of Korean origin.
18. Haknyən/hangnyən/ ('learning year') is a counter which occurs only after the numerals of Chinese character origin, and means either 'grader' or 'school grade':

il haknyən	'1st grader' or '1st grade'
i haknyən	'2nd grader' or '2nd grade'
sam haknyən	'3rd grader' or '3rd grade'

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. tte 'time', 'occasion', 'when'

The noun tte bound to other forms occurs in the following constructions:

(a.1.) A (certain) nominal + tte = a nominal phrase 'such-and-such time'

Examples:

hakkyo tte	'the school days'
cəmsim tte	'the lunch time'
se sal tte	'the age of three'
kuntə tte	'the time of military service'
ai tte	'childhood'

(a.2.) A nominal + tte + e = an adverbial phrase

hakkyo tte e	'in the school days'
cəmsim tte e	'during the lunch time'
ai tte e	'in [my] childhood', 'when I was child'
se sal tte e	'at the age of three'

(b.1.) -(i)l + ttæ = a nominal phrase 'the time of doing so-and-so'

The honorific and/or the past tense suffixes may occur in the -(i)l form. Examples:

Cal ttæ lil kitalimnita.	'[I]'m waiting for the bed-time ('sleeping time').'
Selo ssaul ttæ ka issimnita.	'There are times of fighting each other.'
Thipi lil pol ttæ ka ceil cæmi issnин sikan ici yo.	'When I watch TV is the most interesting time.' ('The time of watching TV is the most interesting time.')

(b.2.) -(i)l + ttæ + e = an adverbial phrase 'at the time of doing so-and so', 'when [someone] does so-and-so'

The construction -(i)l ttæ e which may be followed by a pause occurs as a time adverbial expression before another inflected expression to indicate that the second action/description takes place at the time of the first action/description. Examples:

Hakkyo e kal ttæ e, tækkæ ttwæ kamnita.	'When [we] go to school, [we] usually run.'
Tæhak e tanil ttæ e, cikim anæ wa kyælhon-hæssi yo.	'When [I] was in college, [I] married my present wife.'
Achim e ilenassil ttæ e, pi ka oko issessimnita.	'When [I] got up in the morning, it was raining.'
Cheim Hankuk e wassil ttæ e, ce nin chongkak iessæ yo.	'When [I] first came to Korea, I was a bachelor.'

2. Infinitive + sæ, 'and...', 'and so...'

Sæ like the particles to (Unit 10) and ya (Unit 11), belongs to a small class of particles which occur after inflected words. Infinitive + sæ which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression, and denotes the cause, reason or sequence of the first action or description for which the following inflected expression follows. Examples:

Cikim in kyælhon-hæ sæ, anæ wa ai til i tul issimnita.	'Now, I'm married, <u>and</u> have a wife and two children.'
ece nin mom i aphe sæ, il-hale kaci anhæsse yo.	'I was sick yesterday, <u>so</u> I didn't go to work.'
Pi ka wa sæ, kil i nappikun yo.	' <u>Because</u> it rained, the roads are bad.'

Tosekwан e ka sə, tases sikan tongan
kongpu-hæssimnita.

'I went to the library and studied
for five hours.'

3. A nominal + $\{\underline{\text{we}} \underline{\text{pakk}}\} \text{ e}$ 'beside + the nominal', 'except the nominal'

We ('outside') is a noun which with the preceding nominal makes up a nominal phrase. A nominal + we + e which may be followed by a pause occurs as an adverbial phrase for the following inflected affirmative expression, meaning 'beside the nominal' or 'except the nominal'.

We and pakk are synonymous and are interchangeable each other. Examples:

Hyeng nim han salam we e, nui
tongsæng i isse yo.

'Beside one older brother, [I] have
a sister.'

Soul we e Pusan ese to kinmu-hæsse
yo.

'Not only in Seoul, [I] also worked
in Pusan.'

Note that a nominal $\{\underline{\text{we}} \underline{\text{pakk}}\} \text{ e}$ + negative inflected expression means either 'only the nominal + affirmative inflected expression' or 'except the nominal + negative expression'. Observe the following:

Na nin Hankuk mal pakk e molimnita.

'I know only Korean.' ('Except Korean, I don't know.')

Yenge pakk e pæuci anhessimnita.

'I learned only English.' ('Except English, I didn't learn.')

Phyo lil tu cang pakk e saci mot
hæsse yo.

'I could buy only two tickets.'
('Except two tickets, I couldn't buy.')

Also note that k1 we e, (or k1 pakk e) 'Besides', 'Beside that' followed by a pause at the beginning of a sentence occurs as a sentence adverbial.

4. ssik 'each', 'at one time'

A numeral expression + ssik occurs as an adverbial phrase for the following inflected expression, denoting distribution for each separate action. Examples:

Nunim kwa nui tongsæng i hana
ssik isse yo.

'I have one older sister and one
younger sister each.'

Tu salam ssik tile osipsiyo.

'Please come in, two at a time.'

Hankuk imsik il han kaci ssik mæke
pokesse yo.

'I will try (eating) Korean food
one by one.'

Han tal e han pen ssik eməni eke
phyənci-haci yo.

'I write my mother once a month.'

5. Infinitive + iss-

The verb iss- preceded by a small class of action verbs in the infinitive form, occurs as an auxiliary verb.. It denotes the state of being. Compare the following:

sal-	'to live'	{ salə issimnita salə kyesimnita	'is alive'; 'is living'
anc-	'to sit'	ance issimnita	'is seated'
kac-	'to possess'	kace issimnita	'has'; 'possess'
se-	'to stand'	se issimnita	'is standing'
seu-	{'to erect' 'to park'	sewə issimnita	'is being erected'; 'is being parked'
tu-	{'to put' 'to place'	tue issimnita	'is being placed'
noh-	{'to put' 'to place'	noha issimnita	'is being left'; 'is being placed'
yelli-	'to be open'	yellie issimnita	'is being open'; 'is left open'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1. Pak Sənsəng in kohyang i əti ise yo?
Where is Mr. Park from?
Where do you come from, Mr. Park?
2. Ceimsi Sənsəng in kohyang i əti ise yo?
Where's Mr. James from?
3. Sənsəng puin in kohyang i əti ise yo?
Where's your wife from?
4. Sənsəng əməni nin kohyang i əti ise yo?
Where was your mother born?
5. Mikuk təsa nin kohyang i əti ise yo?
Where's the U.S. Ambassador from?
6. Hankuk mal sənsəng in kohyang i əti ise yo?
Where's the Korean teacher from?
7. Yəngə sənsəng in kohyang i əti ise yo?
Where's the English teacher from?
8. Yəngə sənsəng in kohyang i əti isimnikka?
Where's the English teacher from?
9. Yəngə sənsəng in kohyang i əti imnikka?
Where's the English teacher from?
10. Yəngə sənsəng in kohyang i əti iye yo?
Where's the English teacher from?

B. Substitution Drill

1. Ce ka se sal ttə Səul lo isahəssimnita.
[We] moved to Seoul when I was 3 years old.
2. Ce ka se sal ttə (e) Səul lo wassimnita.
[We] camed to Seoul when I was 3 years old.
3. Ce ka tasəs sal ttə (e) Səul lo wassimnita.
[We] came to Seoul when I was 5 years old.
4. Ce ka ilkop sal ttə (e) Səul lo wassimnita.
[We] came to Seoul when I was 7 years old.
5. Ce ka ahop sal ttə (e) Səul lo wassimnita.
[We] came to Seoul when I was 9 years old.

6. Ce ka yəl sal ttæ (e) Səul lo
wassimnita. [We] came to Seoul when I was 10 years old.
7. Ce ka yəl han sal ttæ (e) Səul lo
wassimnita. [We] came to Seoul when I was 11 years old.
8. Ce ka simul tu sal ttæ (e) Səul lo
wassimnita. [We] came to Seoul when I was 22 years old.
9. Ce ka selhin se sal ttæ (e) Səul
lo wassimnita. [We] came to Seoul when I was 33 years old.
10. Ce ka mahin ne sal ttæ (e) Səul
lo wassimnita. [We] came to Seoul when I was 44 years old.

C. Substitution Drill

1. Cə nin kəi Səul esə salessimnita. I have lived mostly in Seoul.
2. Cə nin kəi Səul esə il-həssimnita. I have worked mostly in Seoul.
3. Cə nin kəi Səul esə kongpu-həssimnita. I have studied mostly in Seoul.
4. Cə nin kəi Səul esə hakkyo e
taniessimnita. I attended school mostly in Seoul.
5. Cə nin kəi Səul esə issəssimnita. I have stayed mostly in Seoul.
- *6. Cə nin kəi Səul esə hakkyo il
na wassimnita. I finished most of schools in Seoul.
7. Cə nin kəi Səul esə hakkyo il
colep-həssimnita. I graduated most of schools in Seoul.
- *8. Cə nin kəi Səul esə calassimnita. I have grown up mostly in Seoul.
9. Cə nin kəi Səul esə Hankuk mal il
pəwəssimnita. I have learned Korean mostly in Seoul.

D. Substitution Drill

1. Hyəng nim i kyesimnikka? Do you have an older brother?
(to male)
- *2. Nunim i kyesimnikka? Do you have an older sister? (to male)
- *3. Oppa ka kyesimnikka? Do you have an older brother? (to female)
- *4. enni ka kyesimnikka? Do you have an older sister? (to female)

- *5. Acessi ka kyesimnikka?
 *6. Acuməni ka kyesimnikka?
 *7. Ttanim i kyesimnikka?
 *8. Chinchək i kyesimnikka?
 9. Hyəngce (tıl) i kyesimnikka?
 10. Puin i kyesimnikka?
 *11. Cangmo (nim) i kyesimnikka?
 *12. Cangin i kyesimnikka?
 *13. Sipumo (nim) i kyesimnikka?
- Do you have an uncle?
 Do you have an aunt?
 Do you have a daughter (H)?
 Do you have relatives?
 Do you have brothers and sisters?
 Do you have a wife?
 Do you have mother-in-law ('wife's mother)?
 Do you have father-in-law ('wife's father')?
 Do you have your husband's parents?

E. Substitution Drill

1. Cə e anə nin Mikuk e issimnita.
 2. Cə e kacok in Mikuk e issimnita.
 3. Cə e atıl in Mikuk e issimnita.
 4. Cə e ttal in Mikuk e issimnita.
 5. Cə e (nam) tongsəng in Mikuk e issimnita.
 *6. Cə e sachon in Mikuk e issimnita.
 *7. Cə e cokha nin Mikuk e issimnita.
 *8. Cə e cokha ttal in Mikuk e issimnita.
 *9. Cə e chinchək in Mikuk e issimnita.
 *10. Uli cuin in Mikuk e issimnita.
 *11. Cə e namphən in Mikuk e issimnita.
 *12. Uli sawi nin Mikuk e issimnita.
 *13. Uli myənuli nin Mikuk e issimnita.
- My wife is in America.
 My family is in America.
 My son is in America.
 My daughter is in America.
 My younger brother is in America.
 My cousin is in America.
 My nephew is in America.
 My niece is in America.
 My relatives are in America.
 My husband ('our master') is in America.
 My husband is in America (to older people).
 My son-in-law is in America.
 My daughter-in-law is in America.

F. Substitution Drill

1. Pumo nim i sala kyesimnikka?
 2. Apəci ka sala kyesimnikka?
 3. əməni ka sala kyesimnikka?
 *4. Halapəci ka sala kyesimnikka?
- Are [your] parents living?
 Is [your] father living?
 Is [your] mother living?
 Is [your] grandfather living?

- *5. Halmení ka sala kyesimnikka? Is [your] grandmother living?
6. Acessí ka sala kyesimnikka? Is [your] uncle living?
7. Acumení ka sala kyesimnikka? Is [your] aunt living?
8. Nunim i sala kyesimnikka? Is [your] older sister living? (to male)
9. Cangmo (nim) i sala kyesimnikka? Is [your] mother-in-law ('wife's mother') living?
10. Cangin i sala kyesimnikka? Is [your] father-in-law ('wife's father') living?

G. Substitution Drill

1. Uli kacok i Səul lo isa-həssimnita. My family moved to Seoul.
2. Uli kacok i Səul lo kassimnita. My family went to Seoul.
3. Uli kacok i Səul lo ttenassimnita. My family left for Seoul.
4. Uli kacok i Səul lo wassimnita. My family came to Seoul.
5. Uli kacok i Səul lo olla wassimnita. My family came up to Seoul.
6. Uli kacok i Səul lo olla
kassimnita. My family went up to Seoul.
7. Uli kacok i Səul lo nəlyə
kassimnita. My family went down to Seoul.
8. Uli kacok i Səul lo kələ
kassimnita. My family walked to Seoul.
9. Uli kacok i Səul lo thako kassimnita. My family rode to Seoul.

H. Substitution Drill

1. Kacok in myəch pun ina kyesimnikka? How many are there in your family?
2. Sənsəng in myəch pun ina kyesimnikka? How many teachers are there?
3. Hyəng nim in myəch pun ina kyesimnikka? How many older brothers do you have? (to male)
4. Nunim in myəch pun ina kyesimnikka? How many older sisters do you have? (to male)
5. Acessí nin myəch pun ina kyesimnikka? How many uncles do you have?
6. Acumení nin myəch pun ina kyesimnikka? How many aunts do you have?

7. Mikuk chinku nin myəch pun ina kyesimnikka? How many American friends do you have?
8. Hyəngce nin myəch pun ina kyesimnikka? How many brothers and sisters do you have?
9. Ttanim in myəch pun ina kyesimnikka? How many daughters do you have?
10. enni nin myəch pun ina kyesimnikka? How many older sisters do you have? (to female)
11. Oppa nin myəch pun ina kyesimnikka? How many older brothers do you have? (to female)
12. Oppa nin myəch pun ina twesimnikka? How many older brothers do you have? ('As for your older brothers, how many do they become?')

I. Substitution Drill

1. Apəci nin tola kasyəssimnita. My father passed away.
2. eməni nin tola kasyəssimnita. My mother passed away.
3. Halapəci nin tola kasyəssimnita. My grandfather passed away.
4. Halməni nin tola kasyəssimnita. My grandmother passed away.
5. Acessi nin tola kasyəssimnita. My uncle passed away.
6. Acuməni nin tola kasyəssimnita. My aunt passed away.
- *7. Khin hyəng nim in tola kasyəssimnita. My oldest brother passed away.
- *8. Khin nunim in tola kasyəssimnita. My oldest sister passed away.
- *9. Khin nunim in cukəssimnita. My oldest sister is dead.
{died.
10. Khin nunim in kyəlhon-həssimnita. My oldest sister is married.
11. Khin nunim in honca imnita. My oldest sister is single.
12. Khin nunim in honca samnita. My oldest sister lives alone.
13. Khin nunim in nai ka manhsimnita. My oldest sister is old.
14. Khin nunim in nai ka cəksimnita. My oldest sister is young.

J. Substitution Drill

1. eməni nin hyəng nim tək ese samnita. [My] mother lives at my older brother's home.
2. Ceimsi nin Kim Sənsəng tək ese samnita. James lives at Mr. Kim's home.

3. Apeci nin Mikuk ese samnita. [My] father lives in America.
 4. Halapeci nin kohyang ese samnita. [My] grandfather lives in the home town.
 5. Acessi nin Kulapha ese samnita. [My] uncle lives in Europe.
 6. Hyeng nim in Inch'en pukin ese samnita. [My] older brother lives in the vicinity of Inchon.
 7. Nunim in Pusan sinæ ese samnita. [My] older sister lives in downtown Pusan.
 8. Cangin kwa cangmo nin sikol ese samnita. [My] wife's father and mother live in the country.
 9. Siapeci wa siemeni nin kohyang ese samnita. [My] husband's father and mother live in the home town.

K. Substitution Drill

1. Ai ka tul issimnita. I have two children.
 2. Atil i hana issimnita. I have one son.
 3. Ttal i ses issimnita. I have three daughters.
 *4. Sonca ka tul issimnita. I have two grandsons.
 *5. Sonnye ka nes issimnita. I have four granddaughters.
 6. Hyeng nim i ne(s) (salam) issimnita. I have four older brothers.
 7. Nunim i tases (salam) issimnita. I (male) have five older sisters.
 8. Acessi ka yəsəs pun issimnita. I have six uncles.
 9. Acuməni ka ilkop pun issimnita. I have seven aunts.
 10. Oppa ka han pun issimnita. I (female) have one older brother.
 11. Yətongsəng i tul issimnita. I have two younger sisters.
 *12. Chənam i yələs issimnita. I have several brothers-in-law ('wife's brothers').
 *13. Chəce ka myəch issimnita. I have some wife's younger sisters.
 *14. Chəhyəng i tu-sə-nes issimnita. I have a couple of wife's older sisters.

L. Substitution Drill

1. Tongsəng in myəch sal imnikka? How old is your younger brother?
 2. Sənsəng in myəch sal imnikka? How old is the teacher?
 3. Punin in myəch sal imnikka? How old is your wife?
 4. Nunim in myəch sal imnikka? How old is your older sister?

- | | |
|---|---|
| 5. <u>Hyøng nim</u> in myøch sal imnikka? | How old is your older brother?
(to male) |
| 6. <u>Ttanim</u> in myøch sal imnikka? | How old is your daughter? |
| 7. <u>Atil</u> in myøch sal imnikka? | How old is your son? |
| 8. <u>Khin ai</u> nin myøch sal imnikka? | How old is your first child? |
| 9. <u>Chøs ccø atil</u> in myøch sal imnikka? | How old is your first son? |
| 10. <u>Chønam</u> in myøch sal imnikka? | How old is your wife's brother? |
| 11. <u>Chøce</u> in myøch sal imnikka? | How old is your wife's younger sister? |
| 12. <u>Sitongsøng</u> in myøch sal imnikka? | How old is your husband's younger brother? |

M. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Hyøng nim</u> we e nunim to issimnita. | I have an older sister as well as an older brother. |
| 2. <u>Namtongsøng</u> we e <u>yøtongsøng</u> to issimnita. | I have a younger sister as well as a younger brother. |
| 3. <u>Seul Tøhakkyo</u> we e <u>Kolyø Tøhakkyo</u> to issimnita. | There is Korea University as well as Seoul University. |
| 4. <u>Panto Hothel</u> we e <u>Cosen Hothel</u> to issimnita. | There is Chosen Hotel as well as Bando Hotel. |
| 5. <u>Mikuk Tøesakwan</u> we e <u>Yøngkuk Yøngsakwan</u> to issimnita. | There is British Consulate as well as American Embassy. |
| 6. <u>Ilpon chinku</u> we e <u>Cungkuk chinku</u> to issimnita. | I have a Chinese friend as well as a Japanese friend. |
| 7. <u>Atil hana</u> we e <u>ttal tul</u> to issimnita. | I have two daughters as well as a son. |
| 8. <u>Kicha wa ppesi</u> we e <u>pihøngki wa pø</u> to issimnita. | There are airplanes and ships as well as trains and buses. |
| 9. <u>Kukce Kikcang</u> we e <u>Cungang Kikcang</u> to issimnita. | There is Central Theatre as well as International Theatre. |

N. Expansion Drill

Tutor: Hyèng nim i issimnita. /nunim/

'I have an older brother.' /older sister/

Student: Hyèng nim we e nunim to issimnita.

'Beside an older brother I also have an older sister.'

1. Pullanse mal il pæwessimnita. /Tokil mal/

Pullanse mal we e Tokil mal to pæwessimnita.

2. Na nin Søul esø salassimnita. /Pusan/

Na nin Søul we e Pusan esø to salassimnita.

3. Uli hakkyo esø Hankuk mal il kalichimnita. /Ssolyøn mal/

Uli hakkyo esø Hankuk mal we e Ssolyøn mal to kalichimnita.

4. Søul sinæ lil kukyøng-hæssimnita. /Cungang Pakmulkwan/

Søul sinæ we e Cungang Pakmulkawan to kukyøng-hæssimnita.

5. Kicha wa ppøsi lo kal su issimnita. /pihøngki/

Kicha wa ppøsi we e pihøngki lo to kal su issimnita.

6. Ki yøca wa kathi kako siphsimnita. /Kim Kisú/

Ki yøca we e Kim Kisú wa to kathi kako siphsimnita.

7. Søul pukin il kukyøng-halyøko hamnita. /Pusan/

Søul pukin we e Pusan to kukyøng-halyøko hamnita.

8. Kacok til il pwa ya hakessimnita. /yøle chinku/

Kacok til we e yøle chinku to pwa ya hakessimnita.

9. Hankuk inhøng e kal il i issimnita. /Cungang Sicang/

Hankuk inhøng we e Cungang Sicang e to kal il i issimnita.

O. Substitution Drill

1. Cø nin cangnyøn e koting hakkyo lil colep-hæssimnita.

I graduated from the high school last year.

2. Cø nin cangnyøn e cunghakkyo lil colep-hæssimnita.

I graduated from the junior high school ('middle school') last year.

3. Cø nin cangnyøn e tæhakkyo lil colep-hæssimnita.

I graduated from the university last year.

4. Cø nin cangnyøn e sohakkyo lil colep-hæssimnita.

I graduated from the elementary school last year.

5. Cø nin cangnyøn e Søul Tæhak il colep-hæssimnita.

I graduated from Seoul University last year.

6. Cè nin cangnyen e Sèul Tèhak il
na wassimnita. I graduated from Seoul University last year.
7. Cè nin cangnyen e Sèul Tèhak il
taniessimnita. I attended Seoul University last year.
- *8. Cè nin cangnyen e Sèul Tèhak il
tile kassimnita. I entered Seoul University last year.
- *9. Cè nin cangnyen e Sèul Tèhak il
kkith-machiessimnita. I finished Seoul University last year.
10. Cè nin cangnyen Sèul Tèhak il
kimantuessimnita. I quit Seoul University last year.
11. Cè nin cangnyen e Sèoul Tèhak il
sicak-hæssimnita. I began Seoul University last year.

P. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo e kamnita. Ppèsi lìl thamnita.

'[I] go to school. [I] take the bus.'

Student: Hakkyo e kal ttæ (e), ppèsi lìl thamnita.

'When I go to school I take the bus.'

1. Mok i malimnita. Mul il masimnita.

Mok i malil ttæ (e), mul il masimnita.

2. Pæ ka kophimnita. Cèmsim il mèksimnita.

Pæ ka kophil ttæ (e), cèmsim il mèksimnita.

3. Catongcha lìl samnita. Ton i philyo-hamnita.

Catongcha lìl sal ttæ (e), ton i philyo-hamnita.

4. Phyènci lìl puchimnita. Uphyènkuk e ka ya hamnita.

Phyènci lìl puchil ttæ (e), uphyènkuk e ka ya hamnita.

5. Hankuk yènghwa lìl sangyènghamnita. Hangsang pole kamnita.

Hankuk yènghwa lìl sangyènghal ttæ (e), hangsang pole kamnita.

6. Sèul ese il-hamnita. Kukyèng-hakessimnita.

Sèul ese il-hal ttæ (e), kukyèng-hakessimnita.

7. Kèlè sè hwesa e kamnita. Kim Sènsæng cip e tillikessimnita.

Kèlè sè hwesa e kal ttæ (e), Kim Sènsæng cip e tillikessimnita.

8. Isa-hamnita. Sæ cha lìl sakessimnita.

Isa-hal ttæ (e), sæ cha lìl sakessimnita.

9. Na nin pappimnita. Mèkile na kal su əpsimnita.

Na nin pappil ttæ (e), mèkile na kal su əpsimnita.

11. Tæhak e taniëssimnita. Hankuk mal il pæwëssimnita.
12. Hankuk mal il sicak-hæssimnita. Chéim e nin əlyewëssimnita.
13. Ki yëca ekesë phyënci lil patëssimnita. Na to kot ssëssimnita.
14. Tæhak il kkith-machiëssimnita. Cikim anæ lil mannassimnita.
15. Ppësi esë næliëssimnita. Anæ ka kitaliko issëssimnita.
- Tæhak e taniëssil ttæ (e), Hankuk mal il pæwëssimnita.
- Hankuk mal il sicak-hæssil ttæ (e), chéim e nin əlyewëssimnita.
- Ki yëca ekesë phyënci lil patëssil ttæ (e), na to kot ssëssimnita.
- Tæhak il kkith-machiëssil ttæ (e), cikim anæ lil mannassimnita.
- Ppësi esë næliëssil ttæ (e), anæ ka kitaliko issëssimnita.

Q. Grammar Drill

Tutor: ənce ppësi lil thamnikka?
/Hakkyo e kamnita./

Student: Hakkyo e kal ttæ (e), ppësi lil thamnita.

1. ənce phyënci lil ssëmmikka?
/Sikan i issimnita./
2. ənce mækcu lil masimnikka? /Mok i malimnita./
3. ənce hapsing il thamnikka? /Salam i manhci anhsimnita./
4. ənce Yëngë lil kalichikessimnikka?
/Yëngë sëngsæng i əpsimnita./
5. ənce tæk e kyesikessimnikka? /Cenyëk il mëksimnita./
6. ənce kyëlhon-hakessimnikka?
/Cohahanin yëca lil mannamnita./
7. ənce halapëci ka tola kasyëssimnikka?
/Næ ka yël sal tweëssimnita./
8. ənce kkaci honca salessimnikka?
/Tæhak il colep-hæssimnita./
9. ənce Yëngë lil pæwëssimnikka?
/Cunghakkyo e taniëssimnita./

'When do you take the bus?' /[I] go to school./

'When I go to school, I take the bus.'

- Sikan i issil ttæ (e), phyënci lil ssimnita.
- Mok i malil ttæ (e), mækcu lil masimnita.
- Salam i manhci anhil ttæ (e), hapsing il thamnita.
- Yëngë sëngsæng i əpsil ttæ (e), yëngë lil kalichikessimnita.
- Cenyëk il mëkil ttæ (e), cip e isskessimnita.
- Cohahanin yëca lil mannal ttæ (e), kyëlhon-hakessimnita.
- Næ ka yël sal tweëssil ttæ (e), halapëci ka tola kasyëssimnita.
- Tæhak il colep-hæssil ttæ kkaci, honca salessimnita.
- Cunghakkyo e taniëssil ttæ (e), Yëngë lil pæwëssimnita.

R. Response Exercise

Tutor: Hakkyo e kal ttæ (e), muës
ilo kase yo?

'What do you ride when you go to
school?'

Student: Hakkyo e kal ttæ e, ppësi
lo kamnita.

'I take the bus when I go to school.'

1. Cëmsim il mëkil ttæ e, nuku wa kathi kase yo?
2. Cip e issil ttæ e, muës il hase yo?
3. Sikan i issil ttæ e, tækæ muës (il) hase yo?
4. Hankuk il ttënal ttæ e, muës illo okesse yo?
5. Sëul esë salessil ttæ e, musin cip e salësse yo?
6. Mom i aphil ttæ e, muës il capsuse yo?
7. Tëhakkyo e taniëssil ttæ e, muës il kongpu-hësse yo?
8. Koting hakkyo lil colep-hëssil ttæ e, myëch sal iyësse yo?
9. Khëphi lil masiko siphil ttæ e, eti e kase yo?
10. Mok i malil ttæ e, muës il masise yo?
11. Mikuk e tola kal ttæ e, nuku wa kathi kakesse yo?
12. Phyënci lil puchil ttæ e, muës i philyo-hë yo?

EXERCISES

A. Tell the following story to the class that:

You are originally from Inchon but you have lived most of your life in Seoul. When you were three years old, your family moved to Seoul, and you began elementary school there at six. You went to junior high, senior high and college, all in Seoul. You are employed by a big company. You are married and have a wife and two children. Your first child is a daughter but the second one is a son. Your parents are not with your family. Your mother is still living but your father passed away a few years ago, and your mother lives at your brother's home. Besides one older brother, you have one (each) younger sister and one younger brother but you don't have any older sisters. Your sister got married sometime ago, but your younger brother is still single. He is now 20 years old and is still too young to get married. After finishing high school 3 years ago, he entered Seoul University. Since he is a junior this year he will be graduated in a year and a half, but probably he will have to go into military service for two years after that.

B. Prepare a short biography of yourself and tell the class. The information in your autobiography may include your home town, your schools, your immediate family, your parents, brothers and sisters if any; what they are doing; their ages; their marital status, and so forth.

C. Make a short statement or question using each of the following kinship terms:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. grandfather | 20. your husband |
| 2. grandmother | 21. your daughter |
| 3. parents | 22. relatives |
| 4. father | 23. parents-in-law ('husband's parents') |
| 5. mother | 24. father-in-law ('husband's father') |
| 6. uncle | 25. mother-in-law ('husband's mother') |
| 7. aunt | 26. father-in-law ('wife's father') |
| 8. older sister (for male and female) | 27. mother-in-law ('wife's mother') |
| 9. older brother (for male and female) | 28. sister-in-law ('wife's older sister') |
| 10. daughter | 29. sister-in-law ('wife's younger sister') |
| 11. son | 30. sister(s)-in-law ('husband's sister(s)') |
| 12. cousin (male, female) | 31. brother(s)-in-law ('wife's brother(s)') /chənam/ |
| 13. nephew | 32. son-in-law /sawi/ |
| 14. niece | 33. daughter-in-law |
| 15. grandson | 34. brother-in-law ('male's sister's husband') /məpu/ |
| 16. granddaughter | 35. brother-in-law ('female's older sister's husband') /hyəngpu/ |
| 17. my wife | |
| 18. my husband | |
| 19. your wife | |

제 15 과 개인의 일상과 가족 이야기 (가족)

1. 이 : 제임스 선생은 미국 어디에서 오셨습니까?

뉴욕 주
 낳았습니다
 아이를 낳았습니다
 아이가 낳았습니다
 자랐습니다

2. 제임스 : 저의 집은 시카고에 있습니다. 그러나, 저는
 뉴욕 주에서 낳아서 거기에서 자랐습니다.

3. 이 : 그럼, 학교도 뉴욕 주에서 다녔습니까?

대학

4. 제임스 : 대학 말입니까? 대학은 보스턴에서
 다녔습니다.

나 왔습니다

5. 이 : 언제 대학은 나 왔습니까?

팔 년 전에

6. 제임스 : 팔 년 전에 나 왔습니다.

그 후에

7. 이 : 그 후에는 무엇을 했습니까?

졸업합니다
 졸업한 후에

UNIT 15. Talking About One's Life and Family (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue ALee

1. Ceimsi Sənsəng in Mikuk əti ese
osyessimnikka? Where in America are you from, Mr.
James?

James

- Nyuyok Cu New York State
nahassimnita [I] was born
ai lɪl nahassimnita [she] gave birth to a child
ai ka nahassimnita a child was born
calassimnita [I] grew up
2. Cə e cip in Sikhako e issimnita.
Kiləna, cə nin Nyuyok Cu ese
naha sə kəki ese calassimnita. My home is in Chicago. But I was
born in New York State and grew
up there.

Lee

3. Kiləm, hakkyo to Nyuyok Cu ese
tanyessimnikka? Well, did you go to school in New
York State, too?

James

- təshak college
4. Təshak mal imnikka? Təshak in
Posithon ese tanyessimnita. You mean college? I went to
college in Boston.

Lee

- na wassimnikka ('did you come out?')
5. ənce təshak in na wassimnikka? When did you graduate from college?

James

- phal nyən cən e 8 years ago
6. Han phal nyən cən e na wassimnita. I graduated about eight years ago.

얼마 동안

어느 회사에서

8. 제임스 : 대학을 졸업한 후에 얼마 동안 어느 회사에서 일했읍니다.

언제부터

외교관이 되었어요

9. 이 : 그럼, 언제부터 외교관이 되었어요?

들어 옵니다

들어 온지

국무성

꼭

10. 제임스 : 국무성에 들어 온지 꼭 육 년 되었읍니다.

오기 전에

여러 나라에서

11. 이 : 한국에 오기 전에 여러 나라에서 일했나요?

12. 제임스 : 예, 서울에 오기 전에(는) 구 타파 여러 나라에서 한 사 년 동안 근무했었읍니다.

있는 동안

구 타파에 있는 동안

여행

여행(을) 했읍니까

13. 이 : 구 타파에 있는 동안 여행 많이 했읍니까?

Lee

ki hu e

after that

7. Ki hu e nin muəs il hæssimnikka?

What did you do after that?

James

colep

graduation

colep-hamnita

[I] graduate

colephan hu e

after graduating

əlma tongan

for some time

əni hwesa

a certain firm

8. Tæhak il colep-han hu e, əlma
tongan əni hwesa esə il-hæssimnita.After I graduated from college, I
worked with a business firm for
some time.Lee

ənce puthe

since when

wekyokwan i tweəssə yo

have [you] become a diplomat?

9. Kiləm, ənce puthe wekyokwan i
tweəssə yo?Then, when did you join the foreign
service? ('Since when have you
become a diplomat?')James

tile omnita

('I come in'); [I] join

tile on ci

since I joined

Kukmusəng/kungmusəng/

State Department

kkok

just; without fail; exactly

10. Kukmusəng e tile on ci, kkok yuk
nyən tweəssimnita.It has been exactly six years since
I came into the State Department.Dialogue BLee

oki cən e

before coming

yələ nala esə

in many countries

11. Hankuk e oki cən e, yələ nala
esə il-hæssna/ilhænna/ yo?Have you worked in many countries
before coming to Korea?

14. 제임스 : 예, 많이 (여행) 했읍니다.

기후

비슷합니까

15. 이 : 거기에 기후는 한국과 비슷합니까?

생각합니다

16. 제임스 : 예, 그렇게 생각합니다.

기후에 대해(서)

말씀 해 주십시오

17. 이 : 그 곳, 기후에 대해서 좀 말씀 해 주십시오.

봄

날씨

따뜻 하지만

비

비가 옵니다

여름

덥지 않습니다

18. 제임스 : 봄 날씨는 따뜻 하지만, 비가 좀 많이 오지요.

여름에는 그ти 딥지 않어요.

가을

겨울

같습니다

19. 이 : 가을과 겨울 날씨도 한국과 같습니다?

James

12. Ne, Səul e oki cən e (nɪn),
 Kulapha yələ nala ese han sa
 nyən tongan kɪnmu-həssəssimnita.

Yes, I worked in several countries
 in Europe for about four years
 before I came to Seoul.

Lee

- issnɪn/innɪn/ tongan
 Kulapha e issnɪn tongan
 yəhəng
 yəhəng (ɪl) həssimnikka
13. Kulapha e issnɪn tongan, yəhəng
 manhi həssimnikka?
- Did you travel a lot while in Europe?

while [I] stay; while [I] was
 (there)
 while [you] were in Europe
 travelling; trip
 have you travelled?

James

14. Ne, manhi (yəhəng-)həssimnita.

Yes, I travelled a lot.

Lee

- kihu
 pisithamnikka
15. Kəki e kihu nin Hankuk kwa
 pisithəssimnikka?
- Was the weather there similar to
 that of Korea?

climate; weather
 is [it] similar?

16. Ne, kiləhke səngkak-hamnita.

[I] think
 Yes, I think so.

Lee

- kihu e təhə (sə)
 malssim-həc usipsiyo
17. Ki kos kihu e təhə (sə) com
 malssim-həc usipsiyo.

about the weather; concerning
 the weather
 please tell me
 Please tell me a little about the
 climate there.

James

- pom
 nalssi
 ttattithaci man

spring
 weather
 [it]'s warm but

눈

눈이 오고

바람

바람이 불니다

20. 제이스 : 예, 대개 가을 날씨는 맑습니다. 그러나,
겨울에는 한국보다 눈이 많이 오고, 바람이
많이 불니다.

- pi rain
 pi ka omnita it rains ('rain comes')
 yəlim summer
 təpcı anhsimnita [it]'s not hot
18. Pom nalssi nin ttattithaci man,
 pi ka com manhi oci yo. Yəlim
 e nin kili təpcı anhə yo. Spring weather is warm but it rains
 a lot. It's not so hot in the
 summer.

- Lee
- kail autumn; fall
 kyəul winter
 kathsimnikka/kassimnikka/ is [it] the same?
19. Kail kwa kyəul nalssi to Hankuk
 kwa kathsimnikka? Is the weather in the autumn and
 winter the same as in Korea?

- James
- nun snow
 nun i oko it snows and ('snow comes and..')
 palam wind
 palam i pu(li)mnita it's windy; wind blows
20. Ne, tækə kail nalssi nin kathsimnita.
 Kiləna, kyəul e nin Hankuk pota
 nun i mahhi oko, palam i manhi
 pumnita. Yes, the weather in the fall is about
 the same, but in the winter it is
 more snowy and windy than in Korea.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

5. (Hakkyo lil) na o- ('to come out (of school)') is more colloquial than colep-ha- 'to graduate'
8. əni hwesa and əlma tongan in the statement sentences mean 'a (certain) company' and 'for some time' respectively. Some of the interrogative expressions in the sentences other than question sentences mean 'certain--' or 'some--': əni hakkyo 'some school', nuku 'somebody', əti 'some place', əni nal 'one-day' or 'someday', ənce 'sometime', myəch pən 'several times', myəchil tongan 'for some days', etc. (See Grammar Note 4b, Unit 10.)
10. Kkok 'exactly', 'just', 'without fail' is an adverb which occurs either before another adverbial expression or before an inflected expression. When it occurs before another adverbial expression kkok means 'exactly' or 'just'; before an inflected expression it means 'without fail'. Compare the following:

GROUP 1 'exactly'

<u>Kkok han-si</u> e ttənakessimnita.	'I will leave <u>at 1 o'clock sharp.</u> ' ('I will leave exactly at 1 o'clock.')
<u>Kkok kilehke</u> hasipsiyo.	'Do [it] <u>exactly like that.</u> ' ('Do exactly so.')
Na nin <u>kkok han tal tongan</u> Hankukē <u>lil pəwessimnita.</u>	'I have studied Korean <u>just (for)</u> <u>a month.</u> '

GROUP 2 'without fail'

Onil pam e <u>kkok tola osipsiyo.</u>	'Be <u>sure to come back tonight.</u> ' ('Come back tonight without fail.')
Ki il il <u>kkok kkith-nækessimnita.</u>	'I will finish the work <u>without fail.</u> '
<u>Kkok yumyəng-han salam i tweə ya</u> <u>hamnita.</u>	'[You] have to become a famous man <u>by all means.</u> '

15. Kihu 'weather', 'climate' and nalssi are synonymous.
16. Səengkak is a noun which means 'thought' or 'idea'. Səengkak-ha- is a transitive verb. Thus, N + il/lil + səengkak-ha- means 'to think of N'.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. hu (or taim) 'after', 'the later time', 'next'

Hu occurred previously as a noun. Hu e 'later', 'afterward', 'at a later time'; ki hu e 'after that'; a point in time + hu e 'after' + the point in time'; a period of time + hu e 'the period of time + later', also occurred as adverbial phrases (See Unit 7).

The construction -n/in hu e, (i.e. the inflected form of an action verb ending in -n/in plus hu + e) which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression, means 'after having done so-and-so' or 'after doing so-and-so'. Hu and taim are synonymous and are interchangeable in all the above phrase constructions. Examples:

Tæhak il colep-han hu e, əni hwesa e
kinmu-hæssimnita.

Kuntæ ese na on hu e, tæhakwən kongpu
lil sicak-hæssimnita.

Ki hwesa lil kimantun hu e, wekyokwan
sihəm il pwasse yo.

Tul ccə ai lil nahin hu e, səe cip il
sassimnita.

Hankuk mal il pæun hu e, Səul e kalyəko
hamnita.

'After I graduated from college, I
worked with a business firm.'

'After [I] got out of the Army, [I]
began my graduate studies.'

'I took the foreign service exam-
ination after I had quit the
company.'

'After the second child was born,
[we] bought a new house.'

'I intend to go to Korea after I
(have) studied Korean.'

2. cən 'before' 'the previous time'

Cən is a noun. Cən e 'previously', ki cən e 'before that', a point in time + cən e 'before + the point in time', a period of time + cən e 'the period of time + ago' occurred previously as adverbial phrases (See Unit 7).

The construction -ki cən e (i.e. the ki form + cən e) which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression means 'before doing so-and-so' or 'before [someone] having done so-and-so'. Examples:

Hankuk e oki cən e, Tong Kulapha
lil yəhəng-hæsse yo.

Sənsəng in Kukmusəng e tɪlə oki cən
e, muəs il hæsse yo?

Nalssi ka chupki cən e, kyeul cunpi lil
hæ ya hamnita.

'Before [I] came to Korea, [I]
travelled in East Europe.'

'What did you do before you joined
the State Department?'

'Before the weather gets cold, I
have to prepare for the winter.'

3. -n/in ci + (period of time) + {twe-} {cina-} 'It has been...(period of time) since...!'

We noticed that the intransitive verb twe-, occurring after 'a period of time', denotes 'elapsing of a period of time', and after 'a point in time' denotes 'arriving at a point in time' (Units 8 and 12). Observe (a) and (b):

- (a)
- Pelsse {sam nyen (i)} tweessimnita. 'It's been already three years.'
{se ha (ka)}
- Panto-hwesa esə han tases tal (i) '[I]ve been with Bando Company
 tweesse yo. about five months now.'
- (b)
- Yel-tu-si ka tveye sə, cəmsim məkile 'It was 12 o'clock, so [we] went
 kassimnita. to eat lunch.'
- Tases-si ka twemyen, ttənakessə yo. 'When it is 5 o'clock, I'll leave.'
- The construction -n/in ci + a period of time + twe- denotes that a period of time has elapsed since the action of the verb in -n/in form took place. In the above construction twe- and cina- can be interchangeably used. Examples:
- Kukmusəng e tile on ci yuk nyen 'It has been six years since [I] came into the State Department.'
 tweessimnita.
- Ce ka kyəlhon-han ci sa nyen pan 'I have been married four and a half years.'
- Kim Sənsəng il an ci phək olə 'I have known Mr. Kim quite a long time now.'
- Hankuk e osin ci əlma na tweessna yo? 'How long have you been in Korea?'
 ('How long has it been since you came to Korea?').
- Nəeil lo Hankuk mal kongpu sicak-han 'It will be exactly 4 months by tomorrow since [I] began the Korean language studies.'
- ci kkok nək tal i tweekessimnita.

4. -nin + tongan, 'while doing so-and-so'

Tongan 'for', 'during' previously occurred as a post-noun which, preceded by a time expression, forms an adverbial phrase (Unit 6). The -nin form (i.e. the present Noun-Modifier word of an action verb) + tongan, which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression, means 'while doing so-and-so' or 'while [someone] having done so-and-so'. Examples:

- Kulapha e issnin tongan, yəhəng manhi 'Did you travel a lot while [you were] in Europe?'
 haessimnikka?

Næ ka cip e əpsnɪn tongan, ai ka pyəŋ
i nassimnita.

Təhak e taninın tongan, kisuksa eṣe
saləssimnita.

Cə nɪn Səul eṣe il-hanın tongan, Hankuk
phungsok il pəuko siphsimnita.

'In my absence from home, the child
has got sick.'

('While I was not home, the child
has got sickness.')

'While I was attending college, I
lived in the dormitory.'

'I'd like to learn Korean customs
while I work in Seoul.'

5. A nominal e + {təhəə } sə 'concerning + the nominal', 'about + the nominal'

The verb təha- 'to face' or 'to confront' is an transitive verb. However, its infinitive form təhəə (or təhayə) + the particle sə occurs immediately after a nominal + e before an inflected expression to mean 'concerning the nominal' or 'about the nominal'. Examples:

Hankuk phungsok e təhəə sə com mal-həə
cusipsiyo.

Sənsəeng e təhəə sə (iyaki) tilin il i
issimnita.

Mikuk yəksa e təhəə sə amu kəs to
molimnikka?

Ceimsi ka na eke Hankuk sosik e təhəə
sə mule pwasse yo.

'Please tell me a little about
Korean customs.'

'I have heard about you (before).'

'Don't [you] know anything about
American history?'

'James asked me about news from
Korea.'

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1. Cè nin Nyuyok Cu esè nahassimnita. I was born in New York State.
2. Cè e hyèng nim in Sikhako esè nahassimnita. My older brother was born in Chicago.
3. Cè e anæ nin Kulapha esè nahassimnita. My wife was born in Europe.
4. Cè e tongsæng in Puk-Han esè nahassimnita. My younger brother was born in North Korea.
5. Cè e ənni nin Inchæn esè nahassimnita. My older sister was born in Inchon.
6. Cè e oppa nin Wæsingthon Cu esè nahassimnita. My older brother was born in Washington State.
7. Uli khin atil in pyængwæn esè nahassimnita. Our oldest son was born in the hospital.
8. Cè e nui tongsæng in wekuk esè nahassimnita. My younger sister was born abroad.
- *9. Cè e ttal in hæwe esè nahassimnita. My daughter was born abroad.
10. Cè e ttal in hæwe esè calassimnita. My daughter grew up abroad.
11. Cè e ttal in hæwe esè salassimnita. My daughter has lived abroad.
12. Cè e ttal in hæwe esè hakkyo e tanyæssimnita. My daughter went to school abroad.
- *13. Cè e ttal in hæwe esè khessimnita. My daughter grew up abroad.

B. Substitution Drill

1. Cè nin Nyuyok esè naha sè kèki esè calassimnita. I was born in New York and grew up there.
2. Cè nin Inchæn esè naha sè Seul esè calassimnita. I was born in Inchon and grew up in Seoul.
3. Cè nin Puk-Han esè naha sè Nam-Han esè calassimnita. I was born in North Korea and grew up in South Korea.
4. Cè nin Kulapha esè naha sè Mikuk esè calassimnita. I was born in Europe and grew up in the United States.
- *5. Cè nin Sikhako esè naha sè Tongpu esè calassimnita. I was born in Chicago and grew up in the East.

- *6. Cə nin Tongpu ese naha sə Seₙpu ese
calassimnita. I was born in the East and grew up
in the West.
- *7. Cə nin Seₙpu ese naha sə Nampu ese
calassimnita. I was born in the West and grew up
in the South.
- *8. Cə nin Mikuk Nampu ese naha sə
Nammi ese calassimnita. I was born in the Southern part of
the U.S. and grew up in South
America.
- *9. Cə nin Hawai ese naha sə (Mikuk)
pontho ese calassimnita. I was born in Hawaii and grew up
on the mainland (of the U.S.).
- *10. Cə nin səm ese naha sə yukci ese
calassimnita. I was born on an island and grew
up on the mainland.
- *11. Cə nin sikol ese naha sə tosi ese
calassimnita. I was born in a village and grew
up in the city.
- *12. Cə nin chon ese naha sə tohweci
ese calassimnita. I was born in a village and grew
up in a metropolitan area.

C. Substitution Drill

1. Təshak in Nyuyok Cu ese tanyessimnita. [I] went to college in New York
State.
2. Təshak in Nyuyok Cu ese na wassimnita. I finished college in New York State.
3. Təshak in Nyuyok Cu ese tile
kassimnita. I was admitted to ('entered')
college in New York State.
4. Təshak in Nyuyok Cu ese colep-
həssimnita. I graduated from college in New
York State.
5. Təshak in Nyuyok Cu ese sicak-
həssimnita. I began college in New York State.
6. Təshak in Nyuyok Cu ese kkith-
machinessimnita. I finished college in New York State.
7. Təshak in Nyuyok Cu ese taniko
siphəssimnita. I wanted to attend college in New
York State.
8. Təshak in Nyuyok Cu ese tanilyeko
həssimnita. I intended to go to college in New
York State.
9. Təshak in Nyuyok Cu ese tanici
mot həssimnita. I could not attend college in New
York State.
10. Təshak in Nyuyok Cu ese tanie ya
həssimnita. I had to attend college in New York
State.

D. Substitution Drill

1. Hakkyo lil colep-han hu e,
hwesa ese il-hæssimnita.
I worked for a company after
graduating from school.
2. Hakkyo lil colep-han hu e,
Kukmusæng e tile wassimnita.
I joined the State Department after
graduating from school.
3. Hakkyo lil colep-han hu e,
wekyokwan i tweyæssimnita.
I joined the foreign service after
graduating from school.
4. Hakkyo lil colep-han hu e,
Kulapha lil yehæng-hæssimnita.
I travelled in Europe after
graduating from school.
5. Hakkyo lil colep-han hu e,
kyælhon-hæssimnita.
I got married after graduating from
school.
6. Hakkyo lil colep-han hu e,
kuntæ e tile kalyæko hæssimnita.
I intended to join the (military)
service after graduating from school.
7. Hakkyo lil colep-han hu e,
ches ccæ ai lil nahassimnita.
We had our first child after I
graduated from school.
8. Hakkyo lil colep-han hu e,
cængpu e kinmu-hæssimnita.
I worked for the government after
graduating from school.
9. Hakkyo lil colep-han hu e,
kilæhke sængkak-hæssimnita.
I thought so after I graduated from
school.

E. Substitution Drill

1. Mikuk Kongpowæn e tile on ci
sam nyæn tweæssimnita.
It's been three years since I joined
USIS.
2. I il (il) sicak-han ci sam nyæn
tweæssimnita.
It's been three years since I began
this job.
3. Kyælhon-han ci sam nyæn tweæssimnita.
I have been married for three years.
4. Wekyokwan i twen ci sam nyæn
tweæssimnita.
It's been three years since I joined
the foreign service.
5. I hwesa ese il-han ci sam nyæn
tweæssimnita.
I have worked at this company for
three years now.
6. Tæhak il colep-han ci sam nyæn
tweæssimnita.
It's been three years since I
graduated from college.
7. Hankuk ese san ci sam nyæn
tweæssimnita.
I have lived in Korea for three
years now.

8. Ceimsi Sensæng il an ci sam nyen
tweəssimnita.
9. Anæ lill cheim mannan ci sam nyen
tweəssimnita.
- I have known Mr. James for three years now.
- It's been three years since I first met my wife.

F. Substitution Drill

1. Seoul e oki cən e, Kulapha ese il-hæssimnita.
2. Seoul e oki cən e, tæhak il na wassimnita.
3. Seoul e oki cən e, Hankuk mal il pæwessimnita.
4. Seoul e oki cən e, Kukmusæng e kinmu-hæssimnita.
5. Seoul e oki cən e, kyelhon-hæssimnita.
6. Seoul e oki cən e, kuntæ ese na wassimnita.
7. Seoul e oki cən e, Ilpon il kukyæng-hæssimnita.
8. Seoul e oki cən e, uli ai ka nahassimnita.
9. Seoul e oki cən e, apəci ka tola kasiessimnita.
10. Seoul e oki cən e, yelə nala lill yehæng-hæssimnita.
- *11. Seoul e oki cən e, ai ka cukessimnita.
- Before I came to Seoul I worked in Europe.
- I graduated from college before I came to Seoul.
- I studied Korean before I came to Seoul.
- I worked at the State Department before I came to Seoul.
- I got married before I came to Seoul.
- I got out of the army before I came to Seoul.
- I went sightseeing in Japan before I came to Seoul.
- Our child was born before we came to Seoul.
- My father passed away before I came to Seoul.
- I travelled in many countries before I came to Seoul.
- [Our] child died before [we] came to Seoul.

G. Combination Drill

Tutor: Tæhak il colep-hæssimnita.
əni hwesa ese il-hæssimnita.

Student: Tæhak il colep-han hu e,
əni hwesa ese il-hæssimnita.

1. Wekyokwan i tweəssimnita. Yelə nala ese saləssimnita.

'[I] graduated from college. [I] worked for a (certain) company.'

'[I] worked for a company after graduating from college.'

Wekyokwan i twen hu e, yelə nala ese saləssimnita.

2. Cengpu e tile wassimnita. Sam nyen tweessimnita. Cengpu e tile on hu e, sam nyen tweessimnita.
3. Kuntæ ese na wassimnita. Tæhak il sicak-hæssimnita. Kuntæ ese na on hu e, tæhak il sicak-hæssimnita.
4. Anæ ka ai lil nahassimnita. Anæ ka ai lil nahin hu e, mom i aphessimnita.
5. Na nin kyelhon-hæssimnita. Na nin kyelhon-han hu e, Seul e kassimnita.
6. I nyen tongan eni hwesa ese il-hæssimnita. Cengpu e tile wassimnita. I nyen tongan eni hwesa ese il-han hu e, cengpu e tile wassimnita.
7. Apæci ka tola kasiessimnita. Apæci ka tola kasin hu e, emeni ka hyeng nim tæk e samnita.
8. Pihængki ka ttænassimnita. Pihængki ka ttænan hu e, kicha ka tahassimnita.
9. Ki yæca lil han pen pwassimnita. Ki yæca lil cohahæssimnita. Ki yæca lil han pen pon hu e, ki yæca lil cohahæssimnita.
10. Ki yæca lil mannassimnita. Ki yæca lil mannan hu e, il nyen hu e kyelhon-hæssimnita.

H. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo lil colep-hako kuntæ e kakessæ yo.

'[I]'ll graduate from school and go to the army.'

Student: Hakkyo lil colep-han hu e, kuntæ e kakessæ yo.

'After graduating from college [I]'ll go to the army.'

1. Hankuk mal il mæncæ pæuko, Hankuk e kalyæko hæ yo.
2. Cæmsim il mækko, Mikuk Tæsakwan e tillikessæ yo.
3. Wekuk ese manhi kukyæng-hako, nænyen ccim e tola okessæ yo.
4. Uphyænkuk ese phyænci lil puchiko, kot tapang ilo okessæ yo.
5. Wekyokwan i tweko, kyelhon-hakessæ yo.

Hankuk mal il mæncæ pæun hu e, Hankuk e kalyæko hæ yo.

Cæmsim il mækin hu e, Mikuk Tæsakwan e tillikessæ yo.

Wekuk ese manhi kukyæng-han hu e, nænyen ccim e tola okessæ yo.

Uphyænkuk ese phyænci lil puchin hu e, kot tapang ilo okessæ yo.

Wekyokwan i twen hu e, kyelhon-hakessæ yo.

6. Catongcha lîl phalko, wekuk illo ttènakessë yo.
7. Chinku eke i chæk il cuko, talin chæk il patkessë yo.
8. Sœul lo isa-hako, cip il sakessë yo.
9. I il il kkith-næko, talin il il sicak-hakessë yo.
10. Com tæ sængkak-hako, mal-hakessë yo.
- Catongcha lîl phan hu e, wekuk illo ttènakessë yo.
- Chinku eke i chæk il cun hu e, talin chæk il patkessë yo.
- Sœul lo isa-han hu e, cip il sakessë yo.
- I il il kkith-næn hu e, talin il il sicak-hakessë yo.
- Com tæ sængkak-han hu e, mal-hakessë yo.

I. Grammar Drill (Use kkok in the proper place.)

Tutor: Sam nyen tweessimnita.

'It has been three years.'

Student: Kkok sam nyen tweessimnita.

'It has been exactly three years.'

1. Cikim han-si imnita.
2. Cæ nin kimnyen e sèlhîn sal imnita.
3. Onil pam e uli cip e osipsiyo.
4. Kim Sænsæng eke kilehke mal-hasipsiyo.
5. Manhi capsusipsiyo.
6. Pak Sænsæng eke mulæ posipsiyo.
7. I chæk i cohsimnita.
8. Han-Yæng sacen in sakessimnita.
9. Næil kkaci tola okessimnita.
10. Ki il il kkith-næ ya hamnita.
11. Khøphi lîl masiko siphsimnita.
- Cikim kkok han-si imnita.
- Cæ nin kimnyen e kkok sèlhîn sal imnita.
- Onil pam e uli cip e kkok osipsiyo.
- Kim Sænsæng eke kkok kilehke mal-hasipsiyo.
- Kkok manhi capsusipsiyo.
- Pak Sænsæng eke kkok mulæ posipsiyo.
- I chæk i kkok cohsimnita.
- Han-Yæng sacen in kkok sakessimnita.
- Næil kkaci kkok tola okessimnita.
- Ki il il kkok kkith-næ ya hamnita.
- Khøphi lîl kkok masiko siphsimnita.

J. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Han tal cæn e Sœul e wassimnita.

'I came to Seoul one month ago.'

Student: Sœul e on ci, han tal tweessimnita.

'It's been one month since I came to Seoul.'

1. Sam nyen cæn e tæhakkyo lîl colephæssimnita.

Tæhakkyo lîl colephæssimnita, sam nyen tweessimnita.

2. O nyen cən e kyəlhon-həssimnita.
 3. Tu tal cən e Kim Sənsəng i yəki
 lil ttənassimnita.
 4. Sam-sip pun cən e hakkyo e
 wassimnita.
 5. Il nyen cən e Ceimsi Sənsəng il
 aləssimnita.
 6. Ne cuil cən e Hankuk mal kongpu
 lil sicak-həssimnita.
 7. Tassə cən e Mikuk e tahassimnita.
 8. Yəlhil cən e Səul lo isa-həssimnita.
 9. Myəch tal cən e i sikye lil
 sassimnita.
 10. Yələ həc cən e Mikuk il
 ttənassimnita.
- Kyəlhon-han ci, o nyen tweəssimnita.
 Kim Sənsəng i yəki lil ttənan ci,
 tu tal tweəssimnita.
 Hakkyo e on ci, sam-sip pun
 tweəssimnita.
 Ceimsi Sənsəng il an ci, il nyen
 tweəssimnita.
 Hankuk mal kongpu lil sicak-han ci,
 ne cuil tweəssimnita.
 Mikuk e tahin ci, tassə tweəssimnita.
 Səul lo isa-han ci, yəlhil
 tweəssimnita.
 I sikye lil san ci, myəch tal
 tweəssimnita.
 Mikuk il ttənan ci, yələ hə
 tweəssimnita.

K. Response Drill

Tutor: ənce Hankuk e wassimnikka?
 /tasəs tal/

Student: Hankuk e on ci, tasəs tal
 tweəssimnita.

1. ənce Hankuk mal kongpu (lil)
 sicak-həssimnikka? /ne cuil/
 2. ənce kyəlhon-həssimnikka?
 /sam nyen/
 3. ənce wekyokwan i tweəssimnikka?
 /il nyen pan/
 4. ənce catongcha lil sassimnikka?
 /myəchil/
 5. ənce təhak il colep-həssimnikka?
 /sa nyen ccim/
 6. ənce hyəng nim ekesə phyənci
 lil patəssimnikka? /il cuil/

'When did you come to Korea?'
 /five months/

'I have been in Korea for five
 months.' ('It's been five months
 since I came to Korea.')

Hankuk mal kongpu (lil) sicak-han ci
 ne cuil tweəssimnita.

Kyəlhon-han ci, sam nyen tweəssimnita.

Wekyokwan i twen ci, il nyen pan
 tweəssimnita.

Catongcha lil san ci, myəchil
 tweəssimnita.

Təhak il colep-han ci, sa nyen
 ccim tweəssimnita.

(Hyəng nim ekesə) phyənci lil
 patin ci, il cuil tweəssimnita.

7. ənce halapəci ka tola kasiəssimnikka? Halapəci ka tola kasiñ ci, olə
/olə/
tweəssimnita.
8. ənce Səul lo isa-həssimnikka? Səul lo isa-han ci, yələ hə
/yələ hə/
tweəssimnita.
9. ənce putħə ki yəca lɪl
aləssimnikka? /myəch nyən/
tweəssimnita.
10. ənce hakkyo lɪl kīmantuəssimnikka? Hakkyo lɪl kīmantun ci, myəch tal
/myəch tal/
tweəssimnita.

L. Response Exercise (Answer the question based on reality.)

Tutor: Hankuk mal il pəun ci, əlma
na tweəssə yo? 'How long have you studied Korean
(by now)?'

Student: Hankuk mal il pəun ci,
tu tal tweəssimnita. 'I have studied Korean two months.'

1. Təhakkyo lɪl na on ci, əlma na tweəssə yo?
2. Wekyokwan i twen ci, myəch nyən ina tweəssə yo?
3. Kyəlhon-han ci, əlma na tweəssə yo?
4. Kohyang il ttənan ci, əlma na tweəssə yo?
5. Puin kwa mannan ci, myəch hə na tweəssə yo?
6. Təhak il colep-han ci, myəch nyən ina tweəssə yo?
7. Cəngpu il e tile on ci, əlma na tweəssə yo?
8. Yəki e san ci, əlma na tweəssə yo?
9. Kuntə lɪl kkith-machin ci, əlma na tweəssə yo?
10. Mikuk Təsakwan e kīnmu-han ci, əlma na tweəssə yo?

M. Response Exercise (Answer the question based on the fact.)

1. Sənsəng in kohyang i eti (i)ci yo?
2. Mikuk əni cu eṣe osyəssci yo?
3. Sənsəng in eti eṣe nahassci yo?
4. Sənsəng in eti eṣe calassci yo?
5. Təhak in musin təhak il taniəssci yo?
6. Təhak in ənce na wassci yo?
7. Kötig hakkyo nín myəch sal e tile kassci yo?
8. Kacok in motu myəch salam ina twesici yo?

9. Ai til in musin hakkyo e tanici yo?
10. Khin ai nin myeoch sal ici yo?

N. Grammar Drill (Use acik in the proper place.)

- | | |
|---|---|
| Tutor: Sikye ka ppalimnita. | 'The watch is fast.' |
| Student: Sikye ka acik ppalimnita. | 'The watch is still fast.' |
| 1. Hankuk mal paeuki ka əlyəpsimnita. | Hankuk mal paeuki ka acik əlyəpsimnita. |
| 2. Ce tongsæng in honca imnita. | Ce tongsæng in acik honca imnita. |
| 3. Kim Sənsæng i samusil esə il-hako issimnita. | Kim Sənsæng i acik samusil esə il-hako issimnita. |
| 4. Na nin cə yəca e ilim il molimnita. | Na nin cə yəca e ilim il acik molimnita. |
| 5. Kikcang e salam i manhsimnita. | Kikcang e acik salam i manhsimnita. |
| 6. Pak Sənsæng in kimchi lil cohahamnita. | Pak Sənsæng in acik kimchi lil cohahamnita. |
| 7. Cə nin cohin il il chacko issimnita. | Cə nin acik cohin il il chacko issimnita. |
| 8. Uli hwesa esə nin yosə to pappimnita. | Uli hwesa esə nin yosə to acik pappimnita. |
| 9. Apəci nin nai ka kili manhci anhsimnita. | Apəci nin nai ka acik kili manhci anhsimnita. |
| 10. Cə e nunim in cikim to yeppimnita. | Cə e nunim in cikim to acik yeppimnita. |

O. Response Drill (Answer the question using acik.)

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| Tutor: Kulapha e ka pon il i issimnikka? | 'Have you ever been in Europe?' |
| Student: Aniyo, acik (ka pon il i) epsimnita. | 'No, not yet.' |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Cəmsim il capsusyəssimnikka? | Aniyo, acik məkci anhəssimnita. |
| 2. Cip e kal sikan i tweəssimnikka? | Aniyo, acik twəci anhəssimnita. |
| 3. Nui tongsæng in kyəlhon-həssimnikka? | Aniyo, acik kyəlhon-haci anhəssimnita. |
| 4. Tongssæng in təhak il coləp-həssimnikka? | Aniyo, acik coləp-haci anhəssimnita. |
| 5. Samu sikan i kkith-nassimnikka? | Aniyo, acik kkith-naci anhəssimnita. |
| 6. Səul kanin kicha ka ttənassimnikka? | Aniyo, acik ttənaci anhəssimnita. |

7. Yəltu-si ppəsi ka pəlsse
tahassimnikka?
Aniyo, acik tahci anhəssimnita.
8. Kulapha lil yəhəng-han il i
issimnikka?
Aniyo, acik yəhəng-han il i
əpsimnita.
9. Səul Cungang Kongwən il
kukyəng-həssimnikka?
Aniyo, acik kukyəng-haci anhəssimnita.
10. Sæ il il chacəssimnikka?
Aniyo, acik chacci anhəssimnita.

P. Response Drill

Tutor: Hankuk e oki cən e, əti ese
il-həssə yo? /Ilpon/

'Where did you work before you came
to Korea? /Japan/

Student: Hankuk e oki cən e, Ilpon
ese il-həssimnita.

'I worked in Japan before I came to
Korea.'

1. Kyəlhon-haki cən e nuku e·cip ese
salassə yo? /pumo nim cip/
Kyəlhon-haki cən e, pumo nim cip ese
salassimnita.
2. Kuntə e kaki cən e, muəs il
həssə yo? /təhak/
Kuntə e kaki cən e, təhak e
taniəssimnita.
3. Cəmsim il məkki cən e, muəs il
masil kka yo? /məkcu/
Cəmsim il məkki cən e, məkcu lil
masipsita.
4. Cikim puin il alki cən e, nuku lil
aləssə yo? /talın yəca/
Cikim anə lil alki cən e, talın
yəca lil aləssimnita.
5. Wekyokwan i tweki cən e, muəs i
tweko siphəssə yo? /təhak kyosu/
Wekyokwan i tweki cən e, təhak kyosu
ka tweko siphəssimnita.
6. Səul Təhakkyo e tilə kaki cən e,
əni hakkyo e taniəssə yo?
/kotıng hakkyo/
Səul Təhakkyo e tilə kaki cən e,
kotıng hakkyo e taniessimnita.
7. Phyənci lil puchiki cən e, muəs
il sassə yo? /uphyo/
Phyənci lil puchiki cən e, uphyo
lil sassimnita.

Q. Response Drill (Give a negative answer using /kilehke/.)

Tutor: Nai ka manhsimnikka?

'Is [he] old?'

Student: Aniyo, kilehke manhcı
anhə yo.

'No, not so old.'

1. Nai ka cəksimnikka?

Aniyo, kilehke cəkci anhə yo.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 2. Nal mata pappimnikka? | Aniyo, kilehke pappici anhə yo. |
| 3. Səul cip kaps i pissamnikka? | Aniyo, kilehke pissaci anhə yo. |
| 4. Ki yəca lil cohahamnikka? | Aniyo, kilehke cohahaci anhə yo. |
| 5. Kim Sənsəng i Yəngə lil cal
hamnikka? | Aniyo, kilehke cal haci anhə yo. |
| 6. Catongcha ka philyo-hamnikka? | Aniyo, kilehke philyo-haci anhə yo. |
| 7. Məli ka aphimnikka? | Aniyo, kilehke aphici anhə yo. |

EXERCISES

- A. Tell the following story about Mr. James to Pak Sənsəng in Korean:

Mr. James' home is in Chicago but he was born in New York State and grew up there. Until he finished high school he lived in his home town with his parents and brothers and sisters, but he went to college in Boston, Massachusetts. He enjoyed his college life/sənghwal/ very much. After he graduated from the college he worked for a while with a business firm but his work was not very enjoyable. He wanted to become a diplomat, so he took examinations/sihəm il pwassimnita/. After that, he was able to join the foreign service right away. It was six years ago. For the first four years he worked in two countries in Europe. While he was in Europe, he could travel in several countries, and saw many interesting places. Since then, Mr. James has been in Korea almost two years now. The weather in Europe is more or less similar to that of Korea. The spring climate in Europe is warm but it rains more than in Korea. The autumn weather there is the same as that of Korea, but in winter it is more snowy and windy. Before he came to Korea, he didn't know much about Korea and the Korean people, but he has been enjoying his work here. He made many Korean friends and learned many Korean customs/phungsok/.

- B. Conduct short conversations so that the following expressions are included in the second partner's responses.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. əni hwesa | 'a (certain company)' |
| 2. əlma tongan | 'for some time' |
| 3. kkok | 'without fail', 'exactly',
'at all cost' |
| 4. Hankuk e { təhə } sə
{ kwanhə } | 'about Korea' |
| 5. təhak e taninən tongan | 'while [I was] attending college' |

6. Seoul e oki cen e 'before [I] came to Seoul'
7. wekyokwan i twen hu e 'since [I] joined the foreign service'

C. Find out from Brown Sønsæng the following information:

1. where he was born.
 2. where he grew up.
 3. what schools he went to.
 4. when he finished college.
 5. where he worked first after he graduated from college.
 6. why he quit the first job.
 7. how long he has been married.
 8. how many years he has been with the government.
 9. what country he served in before he came to Seoul.
 10. how many countries he has travelled in so far.

D. Pak Sønsæng wants to know where you were born and grew up; tell him that you were born at (A) and grew up at (B) :

(A)	(B)
1. farm/nongcang/	city
2. island	mainland
3. country (<u>or</u> village)	metropolitan area
4. the East	the South
5. the Mid-west	the West
6. North America	South America
7. overseas	home country/ponkuk/
8. North Korea	South Korea

E. Prepare a ten-minute narrative autobiography of yourself based on Units 14 and 15 for a fluency drill and tell it to the class, giving such information as your hometown, your schools, some of your experiences, your parents, brothers and sisters, relatives, your immediate family members, their ages, your immediate plans, etc.

제 16 과 전화

(대화 A)

전화

전화 번호

찾는 데

1. 제임스 : 이 선생의 전화 번호를 찾는데 찾을 수(가) 없읍니다.

걸읍니다

전화(를) 걸겠읍니다

2. 김 : 전화를 걸려고 하십니까?

전화 걸 을

3. 제임스 : 예, 좀 전화 걸 을이 있읍니다.

전화 번호 쪽

4. 김 : 전화 번호 쪽에 없읍니까?

보입니다

보이지 않읍니다

혹, 혹시

5. 제임스 : 보이지 않읍니다. 혹시 아세요?

집간만

수첩

적습니다

적어 두었읍니다

UNIT 16. Telephoning

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

James

- | | |
|---|---|
| cənhwa | telephone |
| cənhwa pənho | telephone number |
| chacnín te/channinte/ | [I]'m looking for [it] and... |
| 1. I Sənsəng e cənhwa pənho lɪl
chacnín te, chacil su (ka)
əpsımnita. | I'm looking for Mr. Lee's telephone
number but I cannot find it. |

Kim

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| kə(lı)mnita | ('I] hang [it]!) |
| cənhwa (lɪl) kəlkessimnita | [I]'ll make a telephone call |
| 2. Cənhwa kə(lı)lyəko hasimnikka? | Are you going to make a phone call? |

James

- cənhwa kəl il something to call for
3. Ne, com cənhwa kəl il i issimnita. Yes, I have something to ask him
about.

Kim

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| cənhwa pənho chæk | telephone book |
| 4. Cənhwa pənho chæk e əpsimnikka? | Can't you find it in the telephone book? ('Isn't it in the telephone book?!') |

James

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| poimnita | I see [it] ('it is seen');
[it] is visible |
| poici anhsimnita | I can't see [it]; [it] is not
visible |
| hok } | by any chance? |
| hoksi | |

6. 김 : 잠간만 기다리세요. 내 수첩에 적어 두었습니다.

다행입니다, 다행합니다

7. 제임스 : 아, 다행입니다. 좀 찾어 주십시오.

8. 김 : 예, 여기 이 선생의 회사 번호만 있읍니다.

몇 번

9. 제임스 : 몇 번이지요?

공, 영

10. 김 : 삼의 육 오 공 삼입니다.

(대화 B)

-전화기에서-

11. S : 여보세요.

12. 제임스 : 여보세요. 반드시 회사입니다?

예?

들립니다

안 들립니다

크게

13. S : 예? 잘 안 들립니다. 좀 더 크게 말씀해 주십시오.

Kim

camkan man	just a while; only a short time
suchəp	address book
næ suchəp	my address book
cəksimnita	[I] write [it] down
cəkə tuəssimnita	[I] wrote [it] down (for future use)

- 6.. Camkan man kitalise yo. Næ suchəp
e cəkə tuəssimnita. Just a minute. I wrote it down in
my address book.

James

tahəng imnita }	[it] is fortunate
tahəng-hamnita}	

7. A, tahəng imnita. Com chace
cusipsiyo. Oh, that's lucky. Please look it
up for me.

Kim

8. Ne, yəki I Sənsəng (e) hwesa
pənho man issimnita. I have only his office number, here.

James

myəch pən/myəppən/	what number
9. Myəch pən ici yo?	What is it? ('What number is it?')

9. Myəch pən ici yo?

Kim

zero

10. Sam e yuk o kong sam imnita. It is 3-6503.

Dialogue B
(..on the telephone..)

S

11. Yəpose yo. Hello.

James

12. Yəpose yo. Panto Hwesa imnikka? Hello, is this the Bando Company?

14. 제임스 : 아, 거기 반도 회사이지요?

15. S : 예, 그렇습니다.

바꿉니다

바꿔 주십시오

16. 제임스 : 거기에 이 기수 선생 계시면 좀 바꿔
주십시오.

17. S : 거기는 어때(이)시지요?

18. 제임스 : 미국 대사관의 제임스입니다.

계시는지 보겠습니다

틈이 계시는지 보겠습니다

19. S : 잠깐만 계십시오. 지금 틈이 계시는지
보겠습니다.

20. 제임스 : 고맙습니다.

(대화 C)

-전화기에서-

21. 교환수 : 한국 은행입니다.

외환과

부탁

부탁합니다

S

ne?

(I beg your pardon.)

tillimnita

I hear [it] ('[it] is heard');
[it] is audible

an tillimnita

I can't hear [you]; [it] is not
audible

khike

loudly; to be big

13. Ne? Cal an tillimnita. Com te
khike malssim-hæ cusipsiyo.

I beg your pardon! I can't hear
you very well. Please speak a
little louder.

James

14. A, kəki Panto Hwesa ici yo?

Oh, isn't this the Bando Company?

S

15. Ne, kilehsimnita.

Yes, it is.

James

pakkumnita

[I] exchange; [I] change

pakkwæ cusipsiyo

please let me talk to..
('please change it!')

16. Kəki e Lee Kisu Sənsəng kyesimyən
com pakkwæ cusipsiyo.

May I talk to Mr. Kisu Lee, please?
('If Mr. Kisu Kim is there, please
change it!')

S

17. Kəki nın eti (i)sici yo?

May I ask who is calling, please?
('Where is that place?')

James

18. Mikuk Təsakwan e Ceimsi imnita.

This is James at the American Embassy.

S

kyesinin ci pokessimnita

I'll see if [he] is [in]

thim i kyesinin ci pokessimnita

I'll see if [he] is free

19. Camkan man kyesipsiyo. Cikim
thim i kyesinin ci pokessimnita.

Wait just a moment, please. I'll
see if he's free now.

James

20. Komapsimnita.

Thank you.

22. 이 : 외환과의 최 선생(에게) 좀 부탁합니다.

통화

통화중

통화중입니다

돌립니다

돌려 드리겠습니다

23. 교환수 : 아, 지금 통화중인대요. 잠깐 기다리세요.

곧, 돌려 드리겠습니다. 예, 말씀 하십시오.

24. 이 : 여보세요. 최 준 선생 계십니까?

자리

25. 비서 : 지금 자리에 안 계시는대요. 점심에 나 가셨습니다.

들어옵니다

26. 이 : 몇 시에 들어 올지 아십니까?

돌아옵니다

전합니다

전화 말씀

27. 비서 : 아마, 곧 돌아 올 것인대요. 전화 말씀이 있으시는지요?

28. 이 : 아니요, 괜찮습니다. 이따 다시 걸겠습니다.

Dialogue C
(..on the telephone..)

Kyohwansu ('Operator')

21. Hankuk inhaeng imnita. Bank of Korea.

Lee

Wehwan Kwa	Foreign Currency Department
puthak	a favor to ask
puthak-hamnita	('I ask you for a favor!')

22. Wehwan Kwa e Chwe Sənsəng (eke) May I speak to Mr. Choe of the
com puthak-hamnita. Foreign Currency Department?

Kyohwansu

thonghwa	('telephone talk!')
thonghwa cung	('in the middle of telephone talk!')
thonghwa cung imnita	line is busy
tollimnita	[I] rotate [it]; [I] switch [it]
tollye tilikessimnita	I'll switch it for you
23. A, cikim thonghwa cung in te yo.	The line is busy now. Just a moment.
Camkan kitalise yo. Kot tolye	I'll connect you right away.
tilikessimnita. Ne, malssim-	O.K., go ahead, please.
hasipsiyo.	

Lee

24. Yəpose yo. Chwe Cun Sənsəng Hello, is Mr. Jhoon Choe there?
kyesimnikka?

Pise

25. Cikim cali e an kyesinin te yo.	He is not in his office now. He
Cəmsim e na kasyessimnita.	went out for lunch.

Lee

26. Myəch-si e tile ol ci asimnikka?	[he] comes in
	Do you know what time he will be
	back?

Pise

tola omnita

[he] comes back

cənhannita

[I] deliver

cənhal malssim

message to leave ('words to
deliver')

27. Ama, kot tola ol kəs imnita.

He will probably be back soon.

Cənhal malssim i issisinin ci yo?

Would you like to leave a message
for him?Lee

28. Aniyo, kwənchanhsimnita.

No, that's all right, thank you.

Itta tasi kəlkessimnita.

I'll call later.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. Kel- is a transitive verb which occurs after a certain object, and has various meanings depending on the object: cənhwa il kəl- 'to make a phone call' or 'to telephone'; os il kəl- 'to hang up clothes'; ssaum il kəl- 'to pick a quarrel' or 'to challenge (to someone)'; ton il kəl- 'to bet (money)' or 'to make a deposit'; səngmyəng il kəl- 'to risk life', etc.
5. Hok or hoksi 'by any chance', 'do [you] happen to...?' occurs as an adverb in question sentences or in conditional clauses. Poi- 'to be visible' or 'to be seen' is an intransitive verb, whereas po- 'to look at' is a transitive verb.
6. Camkan man ('only a short while') occurs as a time adverbial.
7. Tahəng imnita. ('[It] is a fortunate thing.') is a fixed expression which is used as the Korean equivalent of 'That's fortunate.'
9. Myəch pən/myəppən/ means either 'what number?' or 'how many times?' in question sentences; 'several times' or '(on) several occasions' in other types of sentences.
13. Ne? which is pronounced with a sharp rising intonation means 'Beg your pardon!' or 'Pardon me!' when you didn't understand someone well; ne? with a prolonged mild rising intonation means 'Oh, is that right?' (Unit 18).
13. The inflected word khike 'loudly', 'to be big' occurs as an adverbial before another inflected expression (See G. N. 3). Tilli- 'to be audible' or 'to be heard' is an intransitive verb, whereas tit-~til- 'to listen to' or 'to hear' is a transitive verb.
22. Puthak is a noun which means 'a favor to ask'. (Sənsəng eke) puthak i issimnita. means 'I have a favor to ask of you.' Puthak-hamnita. is used to mean, among the more common English equivalents, 'Would you please do it?'; 'Please do it for me.'; 'Yes, please.'; 'Please take care of things.', etc. In telephoning, So-and-so eke com puthak-hamnita. is a fixed expression used something like 'May I speak to so-and-so?' or '(Mr.) so-and-so, please.'

28. Itta 'later' refers to 'the later time on the same day'.

Akka 'a little while ago' is its one-word antonym.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -n/in/nin te 'while...', 'such is the case', 'in view of the fact that...', 'and then...', 'but...'

Remember that the post-noun te 'place' preceded by an inflected modifier word of an action verb occurred previously in the nominal positions (See Note 7 on Basic Dialogues, Unit 12). The selection of -n, -in or -nin is the same as the present noun-modifier ending (Unit 5). Remember, however, -n/in/nin te, -n/in te and -l/il te should be distinguished. Examples:

(a) il-hanin te }	'the place where [I] work'
meknin te }	'the eating place'
(b) kan te }	'the place where [I] went'
calan te }	'the place where [I] grew up'
(c) tillil te }	'the place to stop by'
sal te }	'the place where [I] shall live'

Note that the construction -n/in/nin te which may be followed by a pause may also occur before another inflected expression to signify some further explanation or remark in relation to or on the basis of the first action or description follows in the following inflected expression. The honorific and/or tense suffixes may occur in the -nin form of which inflected forms are the same in shapes for both action and description verbs: -(a,ə)ssnин te, for the past; -kessnин te, for the future. Observe the following examples:

Hankuk mal il paeunin te, sikan i manhi
kellimnita.

'When (or In) studying Korean it
takes a lot of time.'
'[I]m studying Korean and it takes
a lot of time.'

Catongcha lil sanin te, ton i philyo-
hamnita.

'When buying a car [you] need money.'

I Sensæng il chac(1)nin te, chacil su
(ka) epsimnita.

'[I]m looking for Mr. Lee, but [I]
cannot find him.'

Cø nin pæ ka kophin te, sensæng in
pæ ka kophici anhø yo?

'I am hungry; are you not?'

Ce sachon in cocongsa in te, ton il
manhi pèle yo.

Cən e Ilpon mal il pəwessnín te,
cikim in ta icəssimnita.

Ki yəca ka hakkyo ttæ e phek yeppessnín
te, acik to kilehci yo?

Næil nalssi ka cohkessnín te, eti e
kal kka yo?

-n/in/nin te + yo may occur to end a sentence which, in this case, is a kind of informal polite statement sentence. The sentence final -n/in/nin te yo occurs when the speaker shows slight surprise or hesitation.

Cham, cə pihængki ka ppalin te yo.

Ceimsi Sənsəng i Hankuk mal il cal
hanin te yo.

Aniyo, cal molikessnín te yo.

'My cousin is a pilot, and he makes
('earns') a lot of money?'

'I studied Japanese before but I
have forgotten [it] all now.'

'She was very pretty in her school
days; she must be still pretty,
isn't she?'

'(It seems) the weather will be
nice tomorrow; shall we go some-
place?'

'O, that airplane is really fast.'

'Mr. James speaks good Korean.'

'No, I don't know [it] well.'

2. Infinitive + {tu- noh-}

As an independant verb, tu- or its synonym noh- means 'to put [something] (somewhere)' or 'to place [something] (somewhere)'.

However, tu- (or noh-) preceded by the infinitive of an action verb also occurs as an auxiliary verb. The verb phrase Infinitive + tu- which literally means something like 'does so-and-so and put [it] somewhere' is usually used to denote 'does so-and-so for future use or benefit' or 'does so-and-so in advance', or 'does so-and-so for the time being'. Compare the following pairs:

a. Han-Yəng sacən il sassimnita.

'I bought a Korean-English dictionary.'

Han-Yəng sacən il sa tuəssimnita.

'I have bought a Korean-English dictionary (for future use).'

b. Næil in hal il i manhkessini kka,
onil i il il ta kkith-nækessimnita.

'Since I'll have many things to do
tomorrow, I will finish all this
work today.'

Næil in hal il i manhkessini kka, onil
i il il ta kkith-næ tukessimnita.

'Since I'll have many things to do
tomorrow, I will finish up all
this work today (in advance).'

c. Sukce lɪl hæ ya hamnita.

'[I] have to do homework.'

Sukce lɪl hæ tue ya hamnita.

'[I] have to do homework now
(in advance).
(for some reason).'

d. Kim Cangkun e cənhwa pənho lɪl ale
pwassimnikka?

'Did you find out General Kim's
telephone number?'

Kim Cangkun e cənhwa pənho lɪl ale
pwa tuəssimnikka?

'Have you found out General Kim's
telephone number (for future use
or in case)?'

3. -ke

The inflected form ending in -ke (or simply the -ke form) occurs before and modifies another inflected expression. Since the -ke form occurs as an adverbial, the ending -ke is called the Adverbializing Ending or simply the Adverbializer. The -ke form occurs in the following constructions:

(a) A description verb inflected in -ke occurs as a modifier before another inflected expression of an action verb.

Alimtapke calamnita. '[It] is growing beautifully.'

Cohke mal-həssə yo. '{'[He] spoke well of [you].'
'[He] spoke nicely.'

Kiləhke haci masipsiyo. 'Don't do it that way.'

Pissake sassimnita. 'I paid much for it.' ('I bought
[it] to be expensive.)

Khike malssim hasipsiyo. 'Please speak loud.'

(b) An action verb inflected in -ke which may occur without a pause immediately before ha- is used with a causative meaning, of which English translations are {have} [someone] do...'. The personal nominal + {eke
{make}
{let}} ha-

may or may not precede the -ke ha- construction.

Kake həssimnita. '[I] had [him] go.'

Ai eke cake hasipsiyo. 'Please have the child go to bed.'

Cəngpu ka na eke wekukə lɪl
pəuke hamnita. 'The government makes me study
foreign languages.'

Note: As for the other construction types where the -ke form occurs (e.g. -ke twe-) we will learn in further units.

4. -n/in/nin ci

We learned that the construction, an interrogative + an inflected modifier word + the dependent noun ci, before an inflected expression occurs as a nominal expression (See Grammar Note 3, Unit 13).

The construction -n/in/nin ci without being preceded by an interrogative may also occur as a nominal expression. If -n/in/nin ci occurs as the object of the following inflected expression, the object particle il/lil is usually omitted. The construction -n/in/nin ci is used as the equivalent of the English nominal clauses which begin with 'if-', 'whether-' or 'that-'. Examples:

Kim Sensæng i kyesinin ci pokessimnita.

'I'll see if Mr. Kim is in.'

Cip kaps i pißan ci alko siphsimnita.

'I want to know whether the rent is high.'

Sikan i manhi kellinin ci ale posipsiyo.

'Please find out if it takes a lot of time.'

Miss Brown i Seoul e sanin ci

'I didn't know whether Miss Brown is living in Seoul.'

mollassimnita.

'I didn't know that Miss Brown is living in Seoul.'

The honorific and/or tense suffixes may occur in the -n/in/nin form in the above construction: -(a,s)ssnin ci for the past, -kessnin (or its substitute -(i)l ci for the future, respectively. Note that an inflected modifier word (e.g.

-n/in/nin + ci + yo? may be used as a kind of informal polite question sentence final form. This form of a question sentence occurs only in a dialogue after a certain context has been established to denote the speaker's doubt or modesty.

Examples:

(Hoksi) cehal malssim i issisinin ci
yo?

'Would you leave a message (by)
any chance)?'
'May I take your message, sir?'

'I wonder if you'd like to leave a
message.'

'(As for there, who are you?)'
'May I ask whom I am speaking to?'

'Who is speaking, please?'

'Well, is Vietnamese easy, then?'

'Well, I'm afraid if you'll like
Kimchi.'

'I wonder if you have met the new
ambassador, sir.'

Keki nin nuku isin ci yo?

Kilem, Wellam mal in swiun ci yo?

Kilsse yo. Tangsin i Kimchi lil
cohahal ci yo?

Hoksi sə təsa lil mannasiessnin ci yo?

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Chæk</u> i poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find the book ('The book is not seen.') |
| 2. <u>Cənhwa pənho</u> ka poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find the telephone number. |
| 3. <u>(Næ) suchəp</u> i poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find my address book. |
| *4. <u>(Næ) cikap</u> i poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find my wallet. |
| 5. <u>(Næ) kapang</u> i poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find my briefcase. |
| 6. <u>Ton</u> i poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find money. |
| *7. <u>Ipku</u> ka poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find the entrance. |
| *8. <u>Pata</u> ka poici anhsimnita. | I cannot see the sea. |
| *9. <u>(Næ) cangkap</u> i poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find my gloves. |

B. Substitution Drill

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Cənhwa pənho</u> lil chacil su (ka) əpsnɪn te yo. | I cannot find the telephone number. |
| 2. <u>Næ suchəp</u> il chacil su (ka) əpsnɪn te yo. | I cannot find my address book. |
| *3. <u>Ki e cuso</u> lil chacil su (ka) əpsnɪn te yo. | I cannot find his address. |
| *4. <u>Il cali</u> lil chacil su (ka) əpsnɪn te yo. | I cannot find a job. |
| *5. <u>Cohin kihwe</u> lil chacil su (ka) əpsnɪn te yo. | I cannot find a good chance. |
| *6. <u>Ton cikap</u> il chacil su (ka) əpsnɪn te yo. | I cannot find the (money) wallet. |
| *7. <u>Sikmo</u> lil chacil su (ka) əpsnɪn te yo. | I cannot find a maid. |
| *8. <u>Chulku</u> lil chacil su (ka) əpsnɪn te yo. | I cannot find the exit. |
| *9. <u>Ipku</u> lil chacil su (ka) əpsnɪn te yo. | I cannot find the entrance. |
| *10. <u>Chulipku</u> lil chacil su (ka) əpsnɪn te yo. | I cannot find the exit-entrance. |

C. Substitution Drill

1. Sənsəng e mal (soli) i/ka cal tillimnita. I [can] hear you well. ('Your speech (sound) is well heard.')
2. Tangsin e mal (soli) i/ka cal tillimnita. I [can] hear you well.
3. Kyosu e mal (soli) i/ka cal tillimnita. I [can] hear the professor well.
4. Sangkwan e mal (soli) i/ka cal tillimnita. I [can] hear well what my boss says.
- *5. Latiyo soli ka cal tillimnita. I [can] hear the radio clearly.
- *6. Pihængki soli ka cal tillimnita. I [can] hear the airplane well.
- *7. Palam soli ka cal tillimnita. I hear the wind (well).
- *8. Kicha soli ka cal tillimnita. I hear the train (well).
- *9. Pal soli ka cal tillimnita. I hear the footsteps (well).
- *10. Mok soli ka cal tillimnita. I [can] hear [your] voice clearly.
- *11. Salam soli ka cal tillimnita. I hear the voices (well).

D. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sənsəng eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo. May I speak to Mr. Kim? ('Exchange [it] to Mr. Kim.')
- *2. Kim Paksa eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo. May I speak to Dr. (Ph.D.) Kim?
- *3. Kim Kyosu eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo. May I speak to Professor Kim?
- *4. Kim Hakcang eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo. May I speak to Dean Kim?
- *5. Kim Chongcang eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo. May I speak to President (of university) Kim?
- *6. Kim Sacang eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo. May I speak to President (of company) Kim?
- *7. Kim Cangkun eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo. May I speak to General Kim?
- *8. Kim Phansa eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo. May I speak to Judge Kim?
- *9. Kim Cangkwan eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo. May I speak to Minister (in the government) Kim?
- *10. Kim Kyocang eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo. May I speak to Principal Kim?
- *11. Kim Moksa eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo. May I speak to Minister (of the church) Kim?

- *12. Kim Kwacang eke com pakkwe
cusipsiyo. May I speak to Mr. ('Section Chief') Kim?
- *13. Kim Kukcang eke com pakkwe
cusipsiyo. May I speak to Mr. ('Bureau Chief') Kim?
- *14. Kim (Kukhwe) iywən eke com pakkwe
cusipsiyo. May I speak to Congressman ('National Assembly Member') Kim?

E. Substitution Drill

1. Com te khike malssim hæ cusipsiyo. Please speak a little louder.
- *2. Com te chenchenhi malssim hæ
cusipsiyo. Please speak a little more slowly.
- *3. Com te ppalli malssim hæ
cusipsiyo. Please speak a little faster.
- *4. Com te cakke malssim hæ cusipsiyo. Please speak a little more softly.
- *5. Com te coyonghi malssim hæ
cusipsiyo. Please speak a little more quietly.
- *6. Com te sokhi malssim hæ cusipsiyo. Please speak a little more quickly.
- *7. Com te khin soli lo malssim hæ
cusipsiyo. Please speak a little louder ('in a big voice').
8. Tasi han pen malssim hæ cusipsiyo. Please say [it] once more ('once again').
- *9. Maim teolo malssim hæ cusipsiyo. {Please say as you like.
{Please say freely.

F. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sensæng i kyesinin ci pokessimnita. I'll see if Mr. Kim is [in].
2. Kim Sensæng i kyesinin ci ale pokessimnita. I'll find out if Mr. Kim is [in].
3. Kim Sensæng i kyesinin ci mule pokessimnita. I'll inquire if Mr. Kim is [in].
4. Kim Sensæng i kyesinin ci chace pokessimnita. I'll try looking for Mr. Kim.
5. Kim Sensæng i kyesinin ci cənhwa-hakessimnita. I'll call [to see] if Mr. Kim is in.

6. Kim Sənsəng i kyesinin ci
molikessimnita. I do not know if Mr. Kim is in.
7. Kim Sənsəng i kyesinin ci
alko siphsimnita. I'd like to know if Mr. Kim is in.
8. Kim Sənsəng i kyesinin ci
allye cusipsiyo. Please let me know if Mr. Kim is in.

G. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sənsəng i kyesinin ci
 alko siphsimnita. I'd like to know if Mr. Kim is [in].
2. Pak Sənsəng i osinin ci
 alko siphsimnita. I'd like to know if Mr. Park comes.
3. Pak Sənsəng i osinin ci molimnita. I don't know if Mr. Park comes.
4. Sikan i manhi kəllinin ci
 molimnita. I don't know if it takes a lot of time.
5. Sikan i manhi kəllinin ci
mule pokessimnita. I'll ask if it takes a lot of time.
- *6. Khiki ka kathin ci mule pokessimnita. I'll ask if the size is the same.
7. Khiki ka kathin ci ale pokessimnita. I'll find out if the size is the same.
8. Ki pun i aphin ci ale pokessimnita. I'll find out if he (honored) is sick.
9. Ki pun i aphin ci cənhwa-hæ pokessimnita. I'll try calling to see if he is sick.

H. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sənsəng i əti e sanin ci
 molimnita. I don't know where Mr. Kim lives.
2. Cə puin i muəs il hanin ci molimnita. I don't know what the lady does.
3. Təthongyəng i myəch sal in ci
 molimnita. I don't know how old the President is.
4. Kim Paksa ka nuku lɪl chacnín ci
 molimnita. I don't know whom Dr. Kim is looking for.
5. Sikmo ka muəs il wənhanin ci
 molimnita. I don't know what the maid wants.
6. Sangkwan i ənce tola onin ci
 molimnita. I don't know when [my] boss is coming back.

7. Sangkwan i ənce tola onin ci amnita. I know when [my] boss is coming back.
8. Sangkwan i ənce tola onin ci
alko siphsimnita. I'd like to know when [my] boss is coming back.
- *9. Sangkwan i ənce tola onin ci
allye cusipsiyo. Please let [me] know when [your] boss is coming.

I. Substitution Drill

1. Chæk il iyca e tuəssimnita. I have put the book on the chair.
2. Ai lil cip e tuəssimnita. I have left the child at home.
3. Kapang il cha e tuəssimnita. I have left the briefcase in the car.
4. Cikap il pang e tuəssimnita. I have left my wallet in the room.
- *5. Cha lil chako e tuəssimnita. I have left the car in the garage.
- *6. Catongcha lil cuchacang e tuəssimnita. I have left the automobile in the parking lot.
- *7. Cacenkə lil untongcang e tuəssimnita. I have left the bicycle in the playground.
- *8. Cha lil pakk e tuəssimnita. I have left the car outside.
- *9. Kong il an e tuəssimnita. I left the ball inside.
- *10. Kong il cəngwən e tuəssimnita. I left the ball in the yard.
- *11. Kilis il puekh e tuəssimnita. I left the dish in the kitchen.

J. Grammar Drill (Use hoksi in the proper place.)

Tutor: Kim Sənsəng e cənhwa pənho
lil ase yo?

'Do you know Mr. Kim's telephone number?'

Student: Kim Sənsəng e cənhwa pənho
lil hoksi ase yo?

{ 'Do you know Mr. Kim's telephone number, by any chance?
'Do you happen to know Mr. Kim's telephone number?'

1. Təəthongyəng il mannasse yo?
2. Cungkuk imsik il məkə pon il i issə yo?
3. Sənsəng in Panto Hwesa e kinmu-hase yo?
4. Cikim thim i kyeše yo?

Təəthongyəng il hoksi mannasse yo?
Cungkuk imsik il hoksi məkə pon il i issə yo?
Sənsəng in hoksi Panto Hwesa e kinmu-hase yo?
Cikim hoksi thim i kyeše yo?

5. Ki pun i myəch-si e tola ol ci ase yo?
6. Ohu e sinə e tillikessə yo?
7. Kim Sənsəng e cuso lil cəkə tuəssə yo?
8. Kimchi lil capsusin cək i issə yo?

5. Ki pun i myəch-si e tola ol ci hoksi ase yo?
6. Hoksi ohu e sinə e tillikessə yo?
7. Hoksi Kim Sənsəng e cuso lil cəkə tuəssə yo?
8. Hoksi kimchi lil capsusin cək i issə yo?

K. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Ki e ilim il cəkessimnita.

Student: Ki e ilim il cəkə tuəssimnita.

1. Ssan kutu lil sasse yo.
2. Cən e Hankuk mal il pəwəssə yo.
3. Inchən kanın kil il mule pwasse yo.
4. Yəl-han-si e cəmsim il məkəssə yo.
5. Kim Sənsəng eke puthak-həssə yo.
6. Kim Sənsəng e cuso lil ałəssə yo.
7. Ton il inhəng e nəhəssə yo.
8. Pam e phyənci lil ssəssə yo.
9. Il il ppalli kkith-machiəssə yo.

'I wrote his name.'

'I wrote his name down (for future use).'

1. Ssan kutu lil sa tuəssə yo.
2. Cən e Hankuk mal il pəwə tuəssə yo.
3. Inchən kanın kil il mule pwa tuəssə yo.
4. Yəl-han-si e cəmsim il məkə tuəssə yo.
5. Kim Sənsəng eke puthak-hə tuəssə yo.
6. Kim Sənsəng e cuso lil ałə tuəssə yo.
7. Ton il inhəng e nəhə tuəssə yo.
8. Pam e phyənci lil ssə tuəssə yo.
9. Il il ppalli kkith-machiə tuəssə yo.

L. Combination Drill (Make one sentence out of two in the pattern as in the example.)

Tutor: Cənhwa pənho lil chacsimnita.
Poici anhsimnita.

Student: Cənhwa pənho lil chacnин te,
poici anhsimnita.

1. Hankuk mal il pəumnita. Acik cal mal-haci mot hamnita.
2. Palam i pumnita. Kili chupci anhsimnita.
3. Cə yəca wa insa-həssimnita.
Ilim il molikessimnita.

'I'm looking for the telephone number.'
'I cannot find it.'

'I'm looking for the telephone number, but I cannot find it.'

1. Hankuk mal il pəunin te, acik cal mal-haci mot hamnita.
2. Palam i punin te, kili chupci anhsimnita.
3. Cə yəca wa insa-həssnин te, ilim il molikessimnita.

4. Cəmsim il məkəssimnita. Tasi pə
ka kophimnita.
5. Catongcha lıl sako siphimnita.
Ton i əpsimnita.
6. Cə nin Səul pukın e samnita. Nal
mata kicha lo il-hale omnita.
7. Pak Sənsəng eke cənhwa lıl
kələssimnita. Amu to patci
anhəssimnita.
8. Cip esə hakkyo ka phək məmnita.
I Sənsəng in kələ sə tanimnita.
9. Onıl kkaci il il kkith-nə ya hamnita.
Sikan i pucok-hamnita.
- Cəmsim il məkəssnín te, tasi pə ka
kophimnita.
- Catongcha lıl sako siphin te, ton i
əpsimnita.
- Cə nin Səul pukın e sanin te, nal
mata kicha lo il-hale omnita.
- Pak Sənsəng eke cənhwa lıl kələssnín
te, amu to patci anhəssimnita.
- Cip esə hakkyo ka phək mən te, I
Sənsəng in kələ sə tanimnita.
- Onıl kkaci il il kkith-nə ya hanin
te, sikan i pucok-hamnita.

M. Completion Exercise

Tutor: Cə nin Hankuk mal il pəunin te,

Student: Cə nin Hankuk mal il pəunin
te, acik cal mal-haci mot
hamnita.'I am studying Korean but (or and)...'I'm studying Korean but I can't
speak it well yet.'

1. Catongcha lıl sako siphin te,
2. Cəmsim il məkəssnín te,
3. Hal il i manhın te,
4. Yəca chinku ka aphın te,
5. Hakkyo ka mən te,
6. Hankuk mal i phək əlyəun te,
7. Cip e cənhwa lıl kələssnín te,
8. Hyəng nim i Səul lo isa-həssnín te,
9. Ton i com philyo-han te,
10. Palam i manhi punin te,

N. Grammar Drill (Use itta in the proper place and repeat after the teacher.)

Tutor: Tasi kəlkessimnita.

'I'll call again.'

Student: Itta tasi kəlkessimnita.

'I'll call again later.'

1. Tola osipsiyo.

Itta tola osipsiyo.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 2. Chənchənhi ttənalyəko hamnita. | Itta chənchənhi ttənalyəko hamnita. |
| 3. Tto pwepkessimnita. | Itta tto pwepkessimnita. |
| 4. Tapang eṣe mannapsita. | Itta tapang eṣe mannapsita. |
| 5. Kim Sənsəng i tillil kəs imnita. | Kim Sənsəng i itta tillil kəs imnita. |
| 6. Kathi kal kka yo? | Itta kathi kal kka yo? |
| 7. Khəphi han can sa cuse'yo. | Itta khəphi han can sa cuse yo. |
| 8. Tto wa to kwənchanhsimnikka? | Itta tto wa to kwənchanhsimnikka? |
| 9. Sikan i issimyən, pwa ya
hakessimnita. | (Itta) sikan i issimyən, (itta) pwa
ya hakessimnita. |

O. Grammar Drill (Use akka in the proper place and repeat after the teacher.)

- | | |
|---|---|
| Tutor: Cə nin cəmsim il məkəssimnita. | 'I ate lunch.' |
| Student: Cə nin akka cəmsim il
məkəssimnita. | 'I ate lunch a little while ago.' |
| 1. Kim Sənsəng in ttənassimnita. | Kim Sənsəng in akka ttənassimnita. |
| 2. Lətio eṣe ki mal il tiləssimnita. | Akka lətio eṣe ki mal il tiləssimnita. |
| 3. I Paksa wa cənhwa lo mal-həssimnita. | I Paksa wa cənhwa lo akka mal-
həssimnita. |
| 4. Il il ta kkıth-machiəssimnita. | Il il akka ta kkıth-machiəssimnita. |
| 5. Pi ka oki sicak-həssimnita. | Pi ka akka oki sicak-həssimnita. |
| 6. Cə nin com swiəssimnita. | Cə nin akka com swiəssimnita. |
| 7. Chinku ekesə cənhwa lıl patəssimnita. | Chinku ekesə akka cənhwa lıl
patəssimnita. |

EXERCISES

A. Read aloud the following telephone numbers:

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 1. 3-7506 | 8. 73-0193 |
| 2. 5-2673 | 9. 567-7065 |
| 3. 4-0407 | 10. 370-8731 |
| 4. 2-9716 | 11. 672-0409 |
| 5. 3-3654 | 12. 490-2089 |
| 6. 22-3402 | 13. 903-4356 |
| 7. 23-9781 | 14. 633-0295 |

B. Make a short statement in Korean for each of the following:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Dr. (Ph.D.) Kim | 14. Senator/Sangwén iywén/ Kennedy |
| 2. Professor Park | 15. Representative ('National Assembly Member') Kim |
| 3. Dean Koh | 16. Mr. Kim's driver |
| 4. President (of a university) Yoon | 17. a maid |
| 5. General Choe | 18. your boss |
| 6. Minister (of the Government) Lee | 19. a banker/inhængka/ |
| 7. Judge Whang | 20. a politician/cengchika/ |
| 8. Principal James | 21. a farmer/nongpu/ |
| 9. Reverand Yoo | 22. a laborer/notongca/ |
| 10. President (of a company) Choe | 23. a businessman/saepka/ |
| 11. Doctor Park | 24. a guest (or visitor)/sonnim/ |
| 12. Mr. (chief of the department) Pae | 25. the owner/cuin/ |
| 13. Mr. (chief of the bureau) Seo | |

C. Telephone rings; answer it and say as follows:

1. 'Hello!'
2. 'I'm sorry but I can't hear you well.'
3. 'Please speak a little louder.'
4. 'One moment, please, the line is busy now.'
5. 'You have the wrong number but I'll connect you to his office in a minute.'
6. 'May I ask who is calling, please?'
7. 'Please wait just one second: he is on the line now.'
8. 'O.K.'

D. Call the Bank of Korea and conduct the following conversation:

- | <u>Secretary</u> | <u>You</u> |
|--|---|
| 1. 'Hello, Bank of Korea!' | 'Hello, may I speak to Mr. Choe of the Foreign Currency Section?' |
| 2. 'I'm sorry but he is not in the office now.' | 'Do you happen to know where he has gone?' |
| 3. 'Yes. He went out for lunch with a friend.' | 'Do you know what time he'll be back?' |
| 4. 'It's been nearly an hour since he left the office, so he'll be back soon. Do you want to leave a message?' | 'No, that's all right. I have something to say to him <u>directly</u> /cikçép/. I'll call again in about a half an hour.' |
| 5. 'O.K., then, please do so.' | 'Thank you.' |

E. Make short dialogues so that the second partner uses the following expressions in his response:

1. maim tælo	'as one pleases'
2. tasi han pən	'once more'
3. cohn kihwe	'a good chance'
4. il cali	'a job'
5. coyonghi	'quietly'
6. com tə khike	'a little more loudly'
7. allye cusipsiyo	'let [someone] know'
8. khiki	'size'
9. (ton) cikap	'wallet'
10. pal soli	'foot-steps'
11. itta	'later'
12. akka	'a little while ago'
13. chenchənhi	'slowly'
14. camkan man	'just a moment'
15. Puthak-hamnita.	'Yes, please.'

F. For each of the following pairs of words make short statements in Korean which include both words:

1. car: garage	6. dishes: kitchen
2. automobile: parking lot	7. kids: yard (<u>or</u> garden)
3. bicycle: playground	8. address book: pocket/(ho)cuməni/
4. children: the outside	9. wallet: briefcase
5. ball: the inside	10. Mr. Kim's address: his telephone number

G. Tell the class that:

1. you've jotted down Mr. Kim's address and telephone number.
2. you've deposited money in the bank.
3. you can hear the airplane well.
4. you've left the car on the street.
5. you don't know whom Dr. Kim is looking for.
6. you can answer any questions from the students.
7. you'll call the doctor a little while later.
8. you heard about the story just a little while ago.

제 17 과 전화 (계속)

(대화 A)

(김 선생 부인은 부엌에 있다.)

엄마

1. 어린 딸 : 엄마! 전화 왔어요.

밥이탁

너

네가

왔니

2. 어머니 : 어디에서 왔니? 네가 밥이탁.

아빠

3. 어린 딸 : 어느 분이 아빠를 찾어요.

4. 어머니 : 그럼, 잠깐만 기다려탁. 골 들어 가겠다.

(대화 B)

-조금 후에-

5. 미씨쓰 김: 여보세요.

댁

6. 치임스: 여보세요. 김 선생 댁입니까?

7. 미씨쓰 김: 예, 그렇습니다.

UNIT 17. Telephoning (Continued)

BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

(..James tries to reach Mr. Kim..)
(Mrs. Kim is in the kitchen.)

Little Daughter

əmma

Mommy

1. əmma! Cənhwa wassə yo. Telephone, Mommy!

Mother

patəla

receive [it]

nə

you (Plain Speech)

ne ka

you (Subject in Plain Speech)

wassni/wanni/

has [it] come?

2. eti ese wassni? Ne ka patəla. Where is it? You get it.

Little Daughter

appa

Daddy

3. eni pun i appa lil chace yo. Somebody wants Daddy.

Mother

4. Kiləm, camkan man kitalyəla. Well, just a minute. I'm coming in
Kot tilə kakessta. right away.

Dialogue B

(..a little later..)

Mrs. Kim

5. Yəpose yo. Hello.

James

tək

home; residence

6. Yəpose yo. Kim Kisu Sənsəng Is this Mr. Kisu Kim's residence?
tək imnikka?

Mrs. Kim

7. Ne, kilehsimnita. Yes, it is.

8. 제임스: 지금, 김 선생 댁에 계세요?

아이구

조금 전에

9. 미씨쓰 김: 아이구! 조금 전에 나 가셨는데요.
누구(이)시지요?

제임스(이)라고 합니다

10. 제임스: 김 선생의 친구입니다. (저는) 제임스(이)라고 합니다.

선생에 대해서, 선생에 관해서

이야기, 얘기

이야기 들었읍니다

11. 미씨쓰 김: 아, 그터세요? 선생에 대해서 이야기 많이 들었읍니다. 저는 미씨쓰 김입니다.

간다고 (말)합니다

12. 제임스: 그터세요? 전화로 시례합니다. 김 선생,
어디에 간다고 (말)했읍니까?

약속

만나 약속이 있읍니다

13. 미씨쓰 김: 친구와 만난 약속이 있다고 (말씀)하셨읍니다.
그리고, 다섯 시까지 집에 오겠다고 했어요.

14. 제임스: 그터면, 다시 걸겠읍니다.

James

8. Cikim, Kim Sənsəng, tək e
kyese yo? Is Mr. Kim at home now?

Mrs. Kim

- aiku Gee!; Oh!
cokim cən e a little while ago
9. Aiku! Cokim cən e na kasyessnín I'm sorry. He went out just a minute
te yo. Nuku (i)sici yo? ago. Who is calling, please?

James

- Ceimsi (i)lako hamnita [they] say that [I]'m James
10. Kim Sənsəng e chinku imnita. I'm Mr. James, a friend of Mr. Kim's.
(Cə nin) Ceimsi (i)lako hamnita.

Mrs. Kim

- sənsəng e {təhəs sə } about you; about teacher;
(kwanhəs sə) concerning you
- yəeki } story
iyaki }
- iyaki tiləssimnita I heard (the story)
11. A, kiləse yo? Sənsəng e təhəs sə Oh, yes? He has told me about you.
iyaki manhi tiləssimnita: ('I heard a lot about you. ')
Cə nin Missisi Kim imnita. I am Mrs. Kim.

James

- kanta ko (mal-)hamnita [they] say that [they] go
12. Kiləse yo! Cənhwa lo sillye-hamnita. Is that so! Pardon me for calling.
Kim Sənsəng, əti e kanta ko Did he say where he was going?
(mal-)həssimnikka?

Mrs. Kim

- yaksok appointment, date
mannal yaksok i issimnita [I] have an appointment to meet
(someone)
13. Chinku wa mannal yaksok i isssta ko He said that he has an appointment to
(malssim-)həsyəssimnita. Kiliko, meet with a friend. And he said
tasəs-si kkaci cip e okessta ko that he'll come home by 5 o'clock.
həssə yo.

전화하라고 (맡)습니다

15. 미씨쓰 김: 선생에게 전화하라고 맡힐까요?

맡씀 해 주십시오

16. 제임스: 그저, 제가 전화해라고 맡씀 해 주십시오.

17. 미씨쓰 김: 예, 알겠습니다. 그렇게 하겠습니다.

18. 제임스: 그럼, 안녕히 계십시오.

19. 미씨쓰 김: 고맙습니다. 안녕히 계세요.

James

14. Kilemyen, tasi kelkessimnita. Well, I will call again.

Mrs. Kim

- cənhwa-hala ko (mal-)hamnita [he] tells [me] to call [him]
15. Sensəng eke cənhwa-hala ko Shall I tell [him] to call you?
mal-hal kka yo?

James

- malssim-hæ cusipsiyo please tell [him]
16. Kice, ce ka cənhwa-hæssta ko Just tell him that I called.
malssim-hæ cusipsiyo.

Mrs. Kim

17. Ne, alkessimnita. Kiləhke Yes, I understand. I'll do so.
hakessimnita.

James

18. Kiləm, annyənghi kyesipsiyo. Goodbye, then.

Mrs. Kim

19. Komapsimnita. Annyənghi kyeſe yo. Thank you. Goodbye.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

- 1.3. emma 'Mommy' and appa 'Daddy' are the words frequently used by children. Girls use them much more than boys.
9. Aiku! 'Gee!!' or 'Oh!!' is a kind of exclamatory expression which indicates the speaker's surprise, delight, disappointment or helplessness, depending on the situation.
11. Iyaki ('story') and its contracted form yəki is used as a synonym of mal in all environments. Iyaki-ha- is equally interchangeable with mal-ha-.
12. Yaksok means either 'a promise' or 'an appointment (to meet someone)'. Its verb yaksok-ha- means 'to promise' or 'to make an appointment'.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Plain Speech: Formal and Informal

So far we have had the Polite Speech (Formal and Informal). As was mentioned in Units 2, 3, 4 the Polite Speech is the speech level spoken to the adults and/or the seniors in rank (e.g. age, school-grade, job, military, social status, etc.) in the hierarchy of the Korean social system. In general, a foreigner is expected to use the Polite Speech no matter who he speaks to, regardless of his age or status. At the same time he is spoken to in the Polite Speech. However, there is another commonly used speech level or style spoken to or among the children, which we shall call Plain Speech. Just like the Polite Speech, the Plain Speech has formal and informal styles, both of which are no different in level but are different only in the inflected forms of verbs at the end of the sentences. The two styles are usually mixed in one's speech. It is not easy to draw a strict line as to who uses the Plain Speech to whom, but it is very important to recognize the relationships of the two people by the speech levels they use each other. The following are the general rules governing how Plain Speech is used:

- (a) The parents to their own children of any age.
- (b) The older siblings in the family to the younger ones, or both another if there is little difference in age.
- (c) The adults to the children of others who are under or around their teen age.
- (d) Among the old and present classmates of all school ages (even in their adult life Plain Speech is often maintained).
- (e) Among the friends of childhood or boyhood.
- (f) The teachers to their students of pre-college ages.
- (g) The senior graders of the same high school to their junior graders (in case of girls, even in college).

The reverse of the above rules is not possible.

- (A). To form the Formal Plain Speech the final verbs in the sentences end in the following endings:

	Statement:	Question:	Imperative:	Propositative:
	<u>-(nɪn/n)ta</u>	<u>-(ɪ)nyi?</u> or <u>-(ɪ)nya?</u>	<u>-(a,ə)la</u>	<u>-ca</u>
1. Action Verb:				
a. Present	(1) <u>-ninta/-nta</u>	(2) <u>-(ɪ)nyi?</u>	(4) <u>-(a,ə)la</u>	<u>-ca</u>
b. Past	<u>-(a,ə)ssta</u>	<u>-(a,ə)ssnyi?</u>	-	-
c. Future	<u>-kessta</u>	<u>-kessnyi?</u>	-	-
2. Description Verb:				
a. Present	<u>-ta</u>	<u>-nyi?</u>	-	-
b. Past	<u>-(a,ə)ssta</u>	<u>-(a,ə)ssnyi?</u>	-	-
c. Future	<u>-kessta</u>	<u>-kessnyi?</u>	-	-
3. Copula:				
a. Present	<u>ita</u>	(3) <u>(ɪ)nyi?</u>	-	-
b. Past	<u>iɛssta</u>	<u>iɛssnyi?</u>	-	-
c. Future	<u>ikessta</u>	<u>ikessnyi?</u>	-	-

Notes:

- (1) -ninta is added to a stem ending in a consonant; -nta to a stem ending in a vowel. Exception: An action verb stem ending in either -ss- or -ps- takes -ta for a statement (in present tense), e.g. iss- → issta/itta/, eps- → epsta/eptta/.

- (2) -nyi? is added to a stem ending in a consonant; -nyi? to a stem ending a vowel.
- (3) After a noun which ends in a vowel the copula stem i- is usually silent.
- (4) The verb element to which -la is added is identical with an infinitive form. There are a few irregular forms for the imperative ending: 'go' o → wala or onala, 'come' ka → kala or kakela.
- (B) The Informal Plain Speech has just one inflected form of a verb regardless of the sentence types, that is, all the four sentence types (statement, question, propositative, imperative) are in the Infinitive with different intonation patterns. When you drop off the particle yo from the Informal Polite Speech, the remaining part with the same intonation pattern is the Informal Plain Speech. Exception: the copula expression in Informal Plain Speech is (i)ya. Compare the following:

<u>Informal Polite</u>	<u>Informal Plain</u>	
Ka yo.	Ka.	'[I] go.'
Ka yo?	Ka?	'Do [you] go?'
Ka yo.	Ka. (in propositative intonation)	'Let's go.'
Ka yo.	Ka. (in imperative intonation)	'Go.'

2. Personal Nouns in the Polite and Plain Speeches

When the speech levels change, not only the final verb forms change but also the other words in the sentence such as personal nouns may require different forms (polite, less polite, humble, blunt, etc.) depending on what speech level the speaker uses. Study the following chart:

Speech Level:	Speaker:	Addressee:
Polite	<u>ce</u> 'I', <u>ce ka</u> 'I (as emphasis subject)', <u>ce</u> or <u>ce e</u> 'my', <u>ce lil</u> 'me', <u>ce eke</u> 'to me', <u>uli</u> or <u>cei</u> or <u>cei til</u> 'we'	<u>sensæng</u> or <u>sensæng nim</u> or <u>tangsin</u> 'you', <u>sensæng til</u> or <u>tangsin til</u> 'you (pl.)', etc.
Plain	<u>na</u> 'I', <u>nae ka</u> 'I (as subject)', <u>na lil</u>	<u>ne</u> 'you', <u>ne ka</u> 'you (as subject)', <u>ne lil</u> 'you'

	'me (as direct object)', <u>næke</u> (or <u>na eke</u>) 'to me', <u>uli</u> 'we'.	(as direct object)', <u>ne</u> or <u>nə e</u> 'your', <u>nə eke</u> 'to you', <u>nəi</u> or <u>nəi til</u> 'you (pl.)', <u>nəi ka</u> or <u>nəi til i</u> 'you (pl.)' (as subject)', etc.
--	--	--

Note that ne 'yes' and aniyo 'no' in the plain speech are replaced by ing or kilæ for ne; ani for aniyo.

3. Particles lako and ko

The particles lako and ko follow quotations and are called the Quotative Particles (or simply the quotatives). Since lako occurs after a direct quotation of the exact words of the original speaker - a word, a phrase, a sentence, an utterance, etc., it is called the Direct Quotative Particle.

Examples:

- (a) Original expression: Məli ka aphimnita. '[I] have a headache.'
Quoted: 'Məli ka aphimnita,' {[He] said, "I have a headache."}
lako mal-hæssimnita. {[He] said that he had a headache.}
- (b) Original expression: Kim Sənsəng (i) tæk e kyese yo? 'Is Mr. Kim at home?'
Quoted: 'Kim Sənsəng i tæk e kyese yo?' lako {[He] asked if Mr. Kim is at home.}
mal-hæsse yo. {[He] said, "Is Mr. Kim at home?", said [he].}
- (c) Original expression: Onil ttənapsita. 'Let's leave today.'
Quoted: 'Onil ttənapsita,' {[He suggested that we (he and I) leave today.]}
lako (ki ka) mal-hæssimnita. {[He] said, "Let's leave today," said he.}
- (d) Original expression: Annyənghı kasipsiyo. 'Good bye.'
Quoted: 'Annyənghı kasipsiyo,' {[She said [to me] a good-bye.]}
lako ki yəca ka mal-hæssimnita. {[She] said, "Good-bye," said he.}

Ko follows a quotation which is said from the point of view of the speaker reporting the quotation. The tenses of the original is retained in the quotations but the forms of the verb are in indirect forms which we shall call the Indirect Quotations. Thus, ko is called the Indirect Quotative Particle. The Indirect Quotative verb forms are almost identical with the Formal Plain Speech verb forms with a few exceptions: in Indirect Quotations, the copula is (i)la: (la after a nominal ending in a vowel and ila after a nominal ending in a consonant); an imperative verb ending is -(i)la: (ila is added to a consonant verb stem and -la to a vowel stem); a question verb ending is always -(ni)nya instead of -(i)nyi. Observe the following chart:

	Indirect Quotation Ending	The Quotative Particle	Verbs which may be followed	Approximate Translations
1. Statement:				
a. Action Verb:				
Present	-ninta/nta			
Past	-(a,e)ssta			
Future	-kessta			
b. Description Verb:				
Present	-ta	+ ko +	(mal-)ha-	'says that..'
Past	-(a,e)ssta		sængkak-ha-	'thinks that..'
Future	-kessta		a(l)-	'understands that..'
c. Copula	(i)la			
2. Question:	-(ni)nya	+ ko +	(mal-)ha- mule po-	'asks (if)..'
3. Imperative:	-(i)la	+ ko +	(mal-)ha-	'tells [some-one] to..'
4. Propositionative:	-ca	+ ko +	(mal-)ha-	'suggests that..'

Examples:

1.

- əti e kanta ko mal-hæssimnikka? 'Did [he] say where [he] is going?'
 Yaksok i issta ko mal-hæsse yo. '[He] said that [he] has an appointment.'
 əməni ka tola kasyessta ko '[He] says that his mother died.'
 mal-hamnita.
 Kim Sənsəeng i Səul esə salkessta 'Mr. Kim says he'll live in Seoul.'
 ko hæ yo.
 Chwe Ssi e atil i phək '[They] say that Mr. Choe's son is
 ttokttokhata ko hamnita. very bright.'
 Kim Paksa nın puca (i)la ko hamnita. '[They] say that Dr. Kim is (a)
 rich(man).'

2.

- Hankil il ilkil su issninya ko '[I] asked (James) if he can read
 (Ceimsi eke) mule pwassimnita.
 Taim kicha ka myəch-si e 'Ask [him] what time the next train
 ttəna(nı)nya ko mule posipsiyo. leaves.'
 Ilim i muəs inya ko kı salam i 'That man asked me what my name is.'
 na eke mal-hæsse yo.
 Pak Sənsəeng i tangsin eke Hankuk 'Did Mr. Park ask you if Korean is
 mal i əlyəpnyə ko mal-hæssimnikka? difficult?'

3.

- Sənsəeng eke cənhwa-hala ko mal-hal 'Shall I tell [him] to call you?'
 kka yo?
 (Ai eke) kongpu-hala ko hæssimnita.
 Nuka sənsəeng eke wekukə lıl pəaula 'I told [my child] to study.'
 ko mal-hæsse yo?
 Sikmo eke cənyək (il) cunpi-hala 'Who told you to learn foreign
 ko mal-hæssimnita. languages?'
 'I told the maid to prepare supper.'

4.

- Cəmsim məkile kaca ko chinku ka '[My] friend suggested that we go
 mal-hæssimnita. (to) eat lunch.'
 Com swica ko (kı eke) mal-hasipsiyo. 'Suggest (to him) that you (pl.) take
 a rest.'
 Wə ki yəca eke kyəlhon-haça ko 'Why don't you propose to her? (Why
 mal-haci anhsimnikka? don't you propose that you [and she]
 get married?)'

DRILLS

A. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

- | | |
|---|--|
| Tutor: Cè nin hakkyo e kamnita. | 'I'm going to school.' (Formal Polite) |
| Student: Na nin hakkyo e kanta. | 'I'm going to school.' (Formal Plain) |
| 1. Cè nin kimchi lìl cohahamnita. | Na nin kimchi lìl cohahanta. |
| 2. Cè nin nal mata cènhwa lìl patsimnita. | Na nin nal mata cènhwa lìl patninta. |
| 3. Cè nin il cali lìl chacsimnita. | Na nin il cali lìl chachinta. |
| 4. Hankuk imsik i mas i issimnita. | Hankuk imsik i mas i issta. |
| 5. Kyøul nalssi ka chupsimnita. | Kyøul nalssi ka chupta. |
| 6. Pihaengki ka ceil ppalimnita. | Pihaengki ka ceil ppalita. |
| 7. Cøi ka pwassimnita. | Uli ka pwassta. |
| 8. Cøi ka Kim Paksa lìl mannassimnita. | Uli ka Kim Paksa lìl mannassta. |
| 9. Cè nin Yøngø lìl molimnita. | Na nin Yøngø lìl molinta. |
| 10. Cikim pi ka oci anhsimnita. | Cikim pi ka oci anhninta. |
| 11. I Kyosu eke nin cènhal mal i epsimnita. | I Kyosu eke nin cènhal mal i əpsta. |
| 12. Acik pø ka kophici anhsimnita. | Acik pø ka kophici anhta. |

B. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

- | | |
|--|---|
| Student 1: Hankuk mal i swipsimnikka? | 'Is Korean easy?' |
| Student 2: Hankuk mal i swipnyi? | 'Is Korean easy?' |
| 1. Sønsøng in Søul salam imnikka? | Nø nin Søul salam inya? |
| 2. Tangsin in Yøngø lìl mal-hamnikka? | Nø nin Yøngø lìl mal-hanyi? |
| 3. Pom e pi ka manhi omnikka? | Pom e pi ka manhi onyi? |
| 4. Kulapha ese yøhøng-hæssimnikka? | Kulapha ese yøhøng-hæssnyi? |
| 5. Pølsøe cømsim il capsusyøssimnikka? | Pølsøe cømsim il mækessnyi? |
| 6. Kim Sønsøng puin kwa cènhwa lo iyaki-hæssimnikka? | Kim Sønsøng puin kwa cènhwa lo iyaki-hæssnyi? |
| 7. Pusan ese salø pon il i issimnikka? | Pusan ese salø pon il i issnyi? |
| 8. Mikuk Tøsakwan e kinmu-hako siphnikka? | Mikuk Tøsakwan e kinmu-hako siphnyi? |
| 9. ølma tongan tapang ese kitaliøssimnikka? | ølma tongan tapang ese kitaliøssnyi? |
| 10. øce muøs hale sinø e tillessimnikka? | øce muøs hale sinø e tillessnyi? |

C. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| Student 1: Hakkyo e kapsita. | 'Let's go to school.' |
| Student 2: Hakkyo e kaca. | 'Let's go to school.' |
| 1. Com swipsita. | Com swica. |
| 2. Cenyek (il) mëkipsita. | Cenyek il mëkca. |
| 3. Onil pam e yëngħwa pole kapsita. | Onil pam e yëngħwa pole kaca. |
| 4. Hankuk mal lo iyaki-hapsita. | Hankuk mal lo iyaki haca. |
| 5. Chëñchëñhi këlë kapsita. | Chëñchëñhi këlë kaca. |
| 6. Onil in cip e issipsita. | Onil in cip e issca. |
| 7. Pul-koki lil mëkë popsita. | Pul-koki lil mëkë poca. |
| 8. Kutu lil saci mapsita. | Kutu lil saci ma(l)ca. |
| 9. Pak Sënsæng eke cënhwa-haci mapsita. | Pak Sënsæng eke cënhwa-haci ma(l)ca. |
| 10. Kyosil esë tampæ lil phiuci mapsita. | Kyosil esë tampæ lil phiuci ma(l)ca. |
| 11. Kilen kës il yaksok-haci mapsita. | Kilen kës il yaksok-haci ma(l)ca. |
| 12. Hakkyo lil kímantuci mapsita. | Hakkyo lil kímantuci ma(l)ca. |

D. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| Student 3: Hankuk mal lo mal-hasipsiyo. | 'Speak (<u>or</u> say) in Korean.' |
| Student 4: Hankuk mal lo mal-hæla. | 'Speak (<u>or</u> say) in Korean.' |
| 1. Ohu e tto osipsiyo. | Ohu e tto{onëla.
wala. |
| 2. Cip e kasipsiyo. | Cip e{kakëla.
kala. |
| 3. esë capsusipsiyo. | esë mëkëla. |
| 4. Com tè khike malssim-hasipsiyo. | Com tè khike mal-hæla. |
| 5. Yëki esë nælisipsiyo. | Yëki esë næliela. |
| 6. Næil tasi cënhwa kësipsiyo. | Næil tasi cënhwa këlëla. |
| 7. Ce cënhwa pënho lil cëkë tusipsiyo. | Næ cënhwa pënho lil cëkë tuëla. |
| 8. I chæk il I Sënsæng eke cënhæsipsiyo. | I chæk il I Sënsæng eke cënhæla. |
| 9. Ki pun eke mal-haci masipsiyo. | Ki pun eke mal-haci malëla. |
| 10. Kilen yaksok in haci masipsiyo. | Kilen yaksok in haci malëla. |

E. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

- Child: Sənsəng in Yəngə lɪl mal-
hasimnikka? 'Do you speak English, sir?'
- Adult: ɪŋ, kilæ, (na nɪn) Yəngə lɪl
mal-hanta. 'Yes, I do.' ('That's right, I
speak English.')
1. Wekuk e ka pon il i issimnikka?
2. Hankuk mal i pokcap-hamnikka?
3. Sæ yangpok il sassimnikka?
4. Sənsəng nim in tampə lɪl phiumnikka?
5. Ce apeci eke cənhal malssim i
issimnikka?
6. Onɪl cənyək e tola osikessimnikka?
7. Ki kəs i tahəng imnikka?
8. Ceimsi e təhəs sə iyaki tiləssimnikka?
9. Hankil il mot ilksimnikka?
10. Sənsəng in ton i əpsimnikka?
- ing, kilæ, wekuk e ka pon il i isssta.
ing, kilæ, (Hankuk mal i) pokcap-hata.
ing, kilæ, sæ yangpok il sassta.
ing, kilæ, tampə (lil) phiuanta.
ing, kilæ, (nə e apeci eke) cənhal
mal i isssta.
ing, kilæ, onɪl cənyək e tola okessta.
ing, kilæ, ki kəs i tahəng ita.
ing, kilæ, (Ceimsi e təhəs sə) iyaki
tiləssta.
ing, kilæ, (Hankil il) mot ilkninta.
ing, kilæ, ton i əpsta.

F. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

- Child: (Uli) hakkyo e kal kka yo?
Adult: Kilæ, (hakkyo e) kaca.
'Shall we go to school?'
'Sure, let's go.'
1. Cəmsim il məkəl kka yo?
2. Cəncha pota ppəsɪ lɪl thako kal
kka yo?
3. Lətio nyussi lɪl tɪlə pol kka yo?
4. Cəngkəcang aph esə nəlil kka yo?
5. Tasi səngkak-hə pol kka yo?
6. Kicha lo Pusan e nəlyə kal kka yo?
7. Ppəsɪ lo Nyuyok e olla kal kka yo?
8. Cənhwa pənho lɪl pakkul kka yo?
9. I sosik il halapəci eke cənhal
kka yo?
- Kilæ, (cəmsim il) məkca.
Kilæ, (cəncha pota) ppəsɪ lɪl thako
kaca.
Kilæ, (lətio nyussi lɪl) tɪlə poca.
Kilæ, cəngkəcang aph esə nəlica.
Kilæ, tasi səngkak-hə poca.
Kilæ, kicha lo (Pusan e) nəlyə kaca.
Kilæ, ppəsɪ lo (Nyuyok e) olla kaca.
Kilæ, (cənhwa pənho lɪl) pakkua.
Kilæ, (i sosik il halapəci eke)
cənhaca.

G. Response Drill

Child: Cikim sicak-hæ to cohsimnikka?	'May I start now?'
Adult: Kilæ, ese sicak-hæla.	'Go right ahead.'
1. Malssim com mulæ pwa to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, ese mulæ pwala.
2. Thipi lil pwa to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, ese pwala.
3. Sənsəng e mannyənphil il ssə to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, ese ssəla.
4. Cə' mun il yələ to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, ese yələla.
5. Mun il tate to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, ese tatəla.
6. Kyosil ese tampə lil phiwə to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, ese phiwəla.
7. Sənsəng eke han kaci puthak-hæ to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, ese puthak-hæla.
8. I chək il ilkə to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, ese ilkəla.
9. Pak Yəngca wa kyəlhon-hæ to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, ese kyəlhon-hæla.

H. Response Drill

Adult: Hankuk mal il pəunyi?	'Are you learning Korean?'
Child: Ne, (Hankuk mal il) pəwə yo.	'Yes, I am (learning Korean,) (sir)
1. Hankuk mal il anyi?	Ne, (Hankuk mal il) ale yo.
2. Hakkyo ka{kakkapnyi? {kakkaunyi?	Ne, (hakkyo ka) kakkawə yo.
3. Cikim pə ka kophinyi?	Ne, pə ka kophə yo.
4. Mom i phikon-hanyi?	Ne, (mom i) phikon-hæ yo.
5. Hakkyo ka kkith-nassnyi?	Ne, (hakkyo ka) kkith-nassə yo.
6. Nal mata Hankuk mal il yənsip-hanyi?	Ne, nal mata (Hankuk mal il) yənsip-hæ yo.
7. Kicha ka pəlsse ttənassnyi?	Ne, pəlsse ttənassə yo.
8. Ppəsi ka pəlsse tahassnyi?	Ne, pəlsse tahassə yo.
9. Onil cənyək e pi ka okessnyi?	Ne, (onil cənyək e) pi ka okessə yo.
10. Kim Sənsəng puin in nai ka manhnyi?	Ne, (Kim Sənsəng puin in) nai ka manhə yo.

I. Substitution Drill

1. I kës il Yëngë lo muës ila ko hamnikka? How do you say this in English?
2. Cë kës il Hankuk mal lo muës ila ko hamnikka? How do you say that in Korean?
3. Yaksok il Tokil mal lo muës ila ko hamnikka? How do you say appointment in German?
4. Cënhal mal il Sepana mal lo muës ila ko hamnikka? How do you say message in Spanish?
5. Puthak il Cungkuk mal lo muës ila ko hamnikka? How do you say a favor to ask in Chinese?
6. 'Yëpose yo.'! lil Ilpon mal lo muës ila ko hamnikka? How do you say 'Hello (there).' in Japanese?
7. 'Tahëng imnita.'! lil Mikuk mal lo muës ila ko hamnikka? How do you say 'That's fortunate.' in American language?
8. 'Camkan man kitalise yo.'! lil Pullansë mal lo muës ila ko hamnikka? How do you say 'Wait a minute.' in French?
9. 'Alkessimnita.'! lil Ssolyen mal muës ila ko hamnikka? How do you say 'I understand.' in Russian?

J. Substitution Drill

1. Sënsëng e tæhæ së iyaki (manhi) tilessimnita. I heard (a lot) about you.
- *2. Ki sosik e tæhæ së iyaki tilessimnita. I heard about that news.
- *3. Ki sinmun kisa e tæhæ së iyaki tilessimnita. I heard about that newspaper article.
- *4. Ki il cali e tæhæ së iyaki tilessimnita. I heard about that job.
- *5. Ki catongcha sako e tæhæ së iyaki tilessimnita. I heard about that automobile accident.
- *6. Ki sakën e tæhæ së iyaki tilessimnita. I heard about that incident.
- *7. Hankuk sëenghwal e tæhæ së iyaki tilessimnita. I heard about the Korean life.

8. Wekyokwan sænghwal e tæhæ sæ iyaki tillessimnita.
I heard about the life of foreign service.
- *9. Hankuk nongpu e hæhæ sæ iyaki tillessimnita.
I heard about the Korean farmers.

K. Substitution Drill

1. Cæ e ilim in Ceimsi la ko hamnita.
My name is James. ('[They] say that my name is James.')
- *2. I kænmul e ilim in Kukce Ssenthe la ko hamnita.
The name of this building is said to be International Center.
- *3. I kæli e ilim in Congno la ko hamnita.
The name of this street is Congno.
- *4. Hankuk Cængpu e ilim in Tæhan Minkuk ila ko hamnita.
The name of the Korean Government is Republic of Korea.
- *5. Pullansæ e sæul in Phali la ko hamnita.
The capital of France is Paris.
- *6. Mikuk e suto nin Wæsingthon ila ko hamnita.
The capital city of the U.S. is Washington.
- *7. I tosi e ilim in Tæku la ko hamnita.
The name of this city is Taegu.
- *8. Cæ tæhakkyo e ilim in Yense Tæhakkyo la ko hamnita.
The name of that university is Yonsei University.
- *9. Cæ yæca e ilim in Pak Yængsuk ila ko hamnita.
That woman's name is Park Young-Sook.

L. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sænsæng i æti e kanta ko (mal-)hæssimnikka?
{ Did Mr. Kim say where he is going?
Did [they] say where Mr. Kim is going?
2. Kim Sænsæng i muæs il kalichinta ko hæssimnikka?
Did Mr. Kim say what he is teaching?
3. Kim Sænsæng i æti e santa ko hæssimnikka?
Did Mr. Kim say where he lives?
4. Kim Sænsæng i muæs il wænhanta ko hæssimnikka?
Did Mr. Kim say what he wants?
5. Kim Sænsæng i ænce onta ko hæssimnikka?
Did Mr. Kim say when he is coming?

6. Kim Sənsəng i myəch-si e tola onta ko həssimnikka?
Did Mr. Kim say what time he is coming back?
7. Kim Sənsəng i nuku lil chachinta ko həssimnikka?
Did Mr. Kim say whom he is looking for?
8. Kim Sənsəng i wæ Hankuk mal il pəunta ko həssimnikka?
Did Mr. Kim say why he is studying Korean?
9. Kim Sənsəng i myəch sikan tongan il-hanta ko həssimnikka?
Did Mr. Kim say how many hours he works?

M. Substitution Drill

1. Pak Sənsəng in hakkyo e kanta ko (mal-)həssimnita.
Mr. Park said that he is going to school.
2. Pak Sənsəng in Hankuk salam ila ko (mal-)həssimnita.
Mr. Park said that he is a Korean.
3. Pak Sənsəng in Hankuk mal il kalichinta ko (mal-)həssimnita.
Mr. Park said that he is teaching Korean.
[He] said that Mr. Park is teaching Korean.
4. Pak Sənsəng in Pul-koki lil məkko siptha ko (mal-)həssimnita.
Mr. Park said that he wants to eat Pul-koki.
5. Pak Sənsəng in sənsəng il anta ko (mal-)həssimnita.
Mr. Park said that he knows you.
6. Pak Sənsəng in nal mata cənhwa lil kənta ko (mal-)həssimnita.
Mr. Park said that he makes phone-calls everyday.
7. Pak Sənsəng in Yənge lil ale ya hanta ko (mal-)həssimnita.
Mr. Park said that [he] has to know English.
8. Pak Sənsəng in nəil ttənalyə ko hanta ko (mal-)həssimnita.
Mr. Park said that he is going to leave tomorrow.
9. Pak Sənsəng in səe cha lil sal kəs illa ko (mal-)həssimnita.
Mr. Park said that he will buy a new car.

N. Substitution Drill

1. Hakkyo ka kakkapta ko Kim Sənsəng i mal-həssə yo.
Mr. Kim said that the school is near.
2. Səul cip kaps i pissata ko Kim Sənsəng i mal-həssə yo.
Mr. Kim said that the housing in Seoul is expensive.

3. Yengə ka swipci anhta ko Kim
Sənsəng i mal-həssə yo.
Mr. Kim said that English is not easy.
4. Cəncha ka pəncap-hata ko Kim
Sənsəng i mal-həssə yo.
Mr. Kim said that streetcars are crowded.
5. Hansik i mas (i) issta ko Kim
Sənsəng i mal-həssə yo.
Mr. Kim said that Korean food is delicious.
6. Məli ka com aphita ko Kim
Sənsəng i mal-həssə yo.
Mr. Kim said that he has a little headache.
7. Munce ka com pokcap-hata ko Kim
Sənsəng i mal-həssə yo.
Mr. Kim said that the problem is rather complicated.
8. Tasi cənhwa kelkessta ko Kim
Sənsəng i mal-həssə yo.
Mr. Kim said that he will call again.
9. Cikim thim i epsta ko Kim
Sənsəng i mal-həssə yo.
Mr. Kim said that he is not free now.

O. Substitution Drill

1. Ki salam eke tasi cənhwa hala ko
mal-hal kka yo?
Shall I tell him to call again?
2. Ki salam eke tasi ola ko mal-hal
kka yo?
Shall I tell him to come again?
3. Ki salam eke kongpu-hala ko
mal-hal kka yo?
Shall I tell him to study?
4. Ki salam eke tilə ola ko
mal-hal kka yo?
Shall I tell him to come in?
5. Ki salam eke ohu e tillila ko
mal-hal kka yo?
Shall I tell him to stop by in the afternoon?
6. Ki salam eke alə pola ko mal-hal
kka yo?
Shall I tell him to find out?
7. Ki salam eke tola kala ko
mal-hal kka yo?
Shall I tell him to go back?
8. Ki salam eke camkan man kyesila ko
mal-hal kka yo?
Shall I tell him to wait a moment?
9. Ki salam eke yənsip-hala ko
mal-hal kka yo?
Shall I tell him to practise?
10. Ki salam eke kaci malla ko
mal-hal kka yo?
Shall I tell him not to go?

P. Substitution Drill

1. Ki salam eke kaci malla ko mal-hasipsiyo. Please tell him not to go.
2. Ki salam eke kaci malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo. Please tell him not to go (for me).
3. Ki salam eke kaci malla ko mal-haci masipsiyo. Please don't tell him not to go.
4. Ki salam eke kaci malla ko mal-hæssimnita. I told him not to go.
5. Ki salam eke kaci malla ko mal-hæssimnikka? Did you tell him not to go?
6. Ki salam eke kaci malla ko mal-hapsita. Let's tell him not to go.
7. Ki salam eke kaci malla ko mal-haci mapsita. Let's not tell him not to go.
8. Ki salam eke kaci malla ko mal-hakessæ yo. I'll tell him not to go.
9. Ki salam eke kaci malla ko mal-haci anhakessæ yo. I'll not tell him not to go.
10. Ki salam eke kaci malla ko mal-hanin kës i cohkessæ yo. { You'd better tell him not to go.
It will be better to tell him not to go.
11. Ki salam eke kaci malla ko mal-hæ to cohsimnita. You may tell him not to go.

Q. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sënsæng i na eke Yëngæ lil pœuca ko mal-hamnita. Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I study English.
2. Kim Sënsæng i na eke Hankuk mal lo mal-haca ko mal-hamnita. Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I speak in Korean.
3. Kim Sënsæng i na eke Cungkuk imsik il mëkca ko mal-hamnita. Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I eat Chinese food.
4. Kim Sënsæng i na eke sinæ lil kukyëng-haca ko mal-hamnita. Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I go around the city.
5. Kim Sënsæng i na eke cal sëngkak-haca ko mal-hamnita. Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I give a second thought.

6. Kim Sənsəng i na eke il il
sicak-haca ko mal-hamnita.
 Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I start the work.
7. Kim Sənsəng i na eke hapsing il
thaca ko mal-hamnita.
 Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I take a jitney.
8. Kim Sənsəng i na eke yəca lɪl
thəuca ko mal-hamnita.
 Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I give a ride to the girl.
9. Kim Sənsəng i na eke il il
kkith-machica ko mal-hamnita.
 Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I finish the work.
10. Kim Sənsəng i na eke yəki ese
nəlīca ko mal-hamnita.
 Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I get off here.

R. Substitution Drill

1. Hankuk mal i əlyəpnya ko Ceimsi
 ka cə eke mule pwassimnita.
 James asked me if Korean is difficult.
2. Ilpon mal i swipnya ko Ceimsi ka
 cə eke mule pwassimnita.
 James asked me if Japanese is easy.
3. Kicha ka phyəlli-hanya ko Ceimsi
 ka cə eke mule pwassimnita.
 James asked me if the train is convenient.
4. Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichi(ni)nya ko
 Ceimsi ka cə eke mule pwassimnita.
 James inquired me who teaches Korean.
5. əti ese sa(ni)nya ko Ceimsi ka cə
 eke mule pwassimnita.
 James asked me where I am living.
6. Myəch-si e hakkyo ka kkith-na(ni)nya
 ko Ceimsi ka cə eke mule
 pwassimnita.
 James asked me what time school is over.
7. Myəch sikan tongan kinmu-ha(ni)nya
 ko Ceimsi ka cə eke mule
 pwassimnita.
 James asked me how many hours [I] work.
8. əlma na mənya ko Ceimsi ka cə eke
 mule pwassimnita.
 James asked me how far [it] is.
9. Onil i myəchil inya ko Ceimsi ka
 cə eke mule pwassimnita.
 James asked me what date it is today.

S. Response Drill

Tutor: Ki i eke cənhwa-hala ko
mal-hal kka yo?

'Shall I tell him to call [you]?'

Student 1: Ne, cənhwa-hala ko mal-hæ
cusipsiyo.

'Yes, please tell him to call [me].'

Student 2: Aniyo, cənhwa-haci malla ko
mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

'No, please tell him not to call [me].'

1. Haksəng eke cip e kala ko mal-hal
kka yo?

Ne, cip e kala ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

2. Ai eke ppəsɪ lil thako kala ko
mal-hal kka yo?

Ne, ppəsɪ lil thako kala ko mal-hæ
cusipsiyo.

3. Uncənsu eke mun aph esə nəliə cula
ko mal-hal kka yo?

Aniyo, ppəsɪ lil thako kaci malla ko
mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

Ne, mun aph esə nəliə cula ko mal-hæ
cusipsiyo.

Aniyo, mun aph esə nəliə cuci malla
ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

4. Ceimsi eke cənhwa pənho lil cəkə
tula ko mal-hal kka yo?

Ne, cənhwa pənho lil cəkə tula ko
mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

5. Pise eke mun il tatila ko mal-hal
kka yo?

Aniyo, cənhwa pənho lil cəkə tuci
malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

Ne, (mun il) tatila ko mal-hæ
cusipsiyo.

6. I Sənsəng eke Kim Sənsəng e cuso
lil ale pola ko mal-hal kka yo?

Aniyo, (Kim Sənsəng e cuso lil) ale
poci malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

Ne, (Kim Sənsəng e cuso lil) ale
poci malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

7. Miss Chwe eke Hankuk mal il
kalichie cula ko mal-hal kka yo?

Ne, Hankuk mal il kalichie cula ko
mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

Aniyo, Hankuk mal il kalichie cuci
malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

8. Pak Sənsəng eke khəphi han can sala
ko mal-hal kka yo?
Ne, (khəphi han can) sala ko mal-hæ
cusipsiyo.
Aniyo, (khəphi han can) saci malla ko
mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

9. Ki yəca eke tangsin il kitalila ko
mal-hal kka yo?
Ne, (cə lɪl) kitalila ko mal-hæ
cusipsiyo.
Aniyo, (cə lɪl) kitalici malla ko
mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

T. Response Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| Tutor: Ai eke cip e kala ko
mal-hæssimnikka? | 'Did you tell the child to go home?' |
| Student 3: Ne, cip e kala ko
mal-hæssimnita. | 'Yes, I did. ('I told [him] to go home. !)' |
| Student 4: Aniyo, cip e kala ko
mal-haci anhæssimnita. | 'No, I didn't. ('I didn't tell [him] to go home. !)' |
| 1. Haksæng til eke cëmsim (il) mëkila
ko mal-hæssimnikka? | Ne, cëmsil (il) mëkila ko mal-
hæssimnita. |
| 2. Puin eke phyënci (lil) puchila ko
mal-hæssimnikka? | Aniyo, cëmsim (il) mëkila ko mal-haci
anhæssimnita. |
| 3. Ai til eke kil esë nolla ko
mal-hæssimnikka? | Ne, phyënci (lil) puchila ko
mal-hæssimnita. |
| 4. Chinku eke tapang esë kitalila ko
mal-hæssimnikka? | Aniyo, phyënci (lil) puchila ko
mal-haci anhæssimnita. |
| 5. Uncënsu eke mun esë nælië cula ko
mal-hæssimnikka? | Ne, kil esë nolla ko mal-hæssimnita. |
| | Aniyo, kil esë nolla ko mal-haci
anhæssimnita. |
| | Ne, tapang esë kitalila ko mal-
hæssimnita. |
| | Aniyo, tapang esë kitalila ko
mal-haci anhæssimnita. |
| | Ne, mun esë nælië cula ko mal-
hæssimnita. |
| | Aniyo, mun esë nælië cula ko
mal-haci anhæssimnita. |

6. Kim Sənsəng eke chæk il ponæla ko mal-hæssimnikka?
Ne, chæk il ponæla ko mal-hæssimnikka.
Aniyo, chæk il ponæla ko mal-haci anhæssimnikka.
7. Atil eke thipi lil pola ko mal-hæssimnikka?
Ne, thipi lil pola ko mal-hæssimnikka.
Aniyo, thipi lil pola ko mal-haci anhæssimnikka.
8. Kukmusəng i sənsəng eke Hankuk mal il pæula ko mal-hæssimnikka?
Ne, Kukmusəng i na eke Hankuk mal il pæula ko mal-hæssimnikka.
Aniyo, Kukmusəng i Hankuk mal il pæula ko mal-haci anhæssimnikka.
9. Iysa ka sənsəng eke khəphi lil masici malla ko mal-hæssimnikka?
Ne, iysa ka khəphi lil masici malla ko mal-hæssimnikka.
Aniyo, iysa ka khəphi lil masici malla ko mal-haci anhæssimnikka.
10. Kim Sənsəng i Səul ese cəncha lil thaci malla ko mal-hæssimnikka?
Ne, Kim Sənsəng i Səul ese cəncha lil thaci malla ko mal-hæssimnikka.
Aniyo, Kim Sənsəng i Səul ese cəncha lil thaci malla ko mal-haci anhæssimnikka.

U. Response Drill

Tutor: Pak Sənsəng i əti e kanta ko mal-hæssimnikka? /tapang/

'Did Mr. Park say where he was going? /tearoom/'

Student: Tapang e kanta ko mal-hæsse yo.

'He said (that) he was going to the tearoom.'

1. I Sənsəng i muəs ilo yəhəng-hanta ko mal-hæssimnikka? /catongcha/

Catongcha lo yəhəng-hanta ko mal-hæsse yo.

2. ənce kkaci ki il il kkith-nænta ko mal-hæssimnikka? /taim cuil/

Taim cuil kkaci kkith-nænta ko mal-hæsse yo.

3. Kim Sənsəng in atıl i əni təhak e taninta ko mal-hæssimnikka?

(Atıl i) Cungang Təhak e taninta ko mal-hæsse yo.

4. Sə Sənsəng i musin imsik il cohahanta ko mal-hæssimnikka?

Yangsik il cohahanta ko mal-hæsse yo.

/yangsik/

5. Ceimsi ka nuku wa kyəlhon-hanta
ko mal-həssimnikka?
/Chwe Sənsəng e ttal/
6. Ceimsi Sənsəng i wə Hankuk mal
il pəunta ko mal-həssimnikka?
/Hankuk e kani kka/
7. Ki i ka əlma tongan Hankuk esə
salkessta ko mal-həssimnikka?
/han sam sa nyən/
8. Pak Sənsəng in muəs il masiko
siphtha ko mal-həssimnikka?
/mækcu/
9. Cəng Sənsəng i musin yoil e
ttənakesssta ko mal-həssimnikka?
/Hwayoil/
10. Chwe Sənsəng in əlma e cha lɪl
sassta ko mal-həssimnikka?
/chən-ku-pæk Pul/
11. Hankuk mal sənsəng i Mikuk e onci
myəch nyən tweəssta ko mal-
həssimnikka? /sam nyən pan/
- Chwe Sənsəng e ttal kwa kyəlhon-
hanta ko mal-həssə yo.
Hankuk e kani kka, (Hankuk mal il)
pəunta ko mal-həssə yo.
Han sam sa nyən (tongan) Hankuk esə
salkessta ko mal-həssə yo.
Mækcu lɪl masiko siphtha ko
mal-həssə yo.
Hwayoil e ttənakesssta ko mal-həssə yo.
Chən-ku-pæk Pul e sassta ko
mal-həssə yo.
(Mikuk e onci) sam nyən pan
tweəssta ko mal-həssə yo.

V. Transformation Drill

Tutor: (Kim Sənsəng i) i kəs i chæk
ila ko mal-həssə yo?

'Did Mr. Kim say that this is a book?'

Student: (Kim Sənsəng i) na eke i
kəs i chæk inya ko mulə
pwassə yo.

'Mr. Kim asked me if this is a book.'

- (Kim Sənsəng i) Hankuk mal il anta
ko mal-həssə yo?
- (Kim Sənsəng i) Yəngə ka əlyəpta
ko mal-həssə yo?
- (Kim Sənsəng i) Səul e cip kaps i
pissata ko mal-həssə yo?

(Kim Sənsəng i) na eke Hankuk mal il
a(ni)nya ko mulə pwassə yo.
(Kim Sənsəng i) na eke Yəngə ka
əlyəpnya ko mulə pwassə yo.
(Kim Sənsəng i) na eke Səul e cip
kaps i pissanya ko mulə pwassə yo.

4. (Kim Sənsəng i) Hansik i mas i
issta ko mal-həssə yo?
 5. (Kim Sənsəng i) Miss Kim in nai ka
manhta ko mal-həssə yo?
 6. (Kim Sənsəng i) nai ka myəch sal
ila ko mal-həssə yo?
 7. (Kim Sənsəng i) yosə̄ muə̄s il hanta
ko mal-həssə yo?
 8. (Kim Sənsəng i) əti e santa ko
mal-həssə yo?
 9. (Kim Sənsəng i) cikim myəch-si la
ko mal-həssə yo?
 10. (Kim Sənsəng i) sikan i əlma na
kəllinta ko mal-həssə yo?
- (Kim Sənsəng i) na eke Hansik i mas
i iss(ni)nya ko mule pwasse yo.
(Kim Sənsəng i) na eke Miss Kim in
nai ka manhnya ko mule pwasse yo.
(Kim Sənsəng i) na eke nai ka myəch
sal inya ko mule pwasse yo.
(Kim Sənsəng i) na eke yosə̄ muə̄s il
ha(ni)nya ko mule pwasse yo.
(Kim Sənsəng i) na eke əti e sa(ni)nya
ko mule pwasse yo.
(Kim Sənsəng i) na eke cikim myəch-
si nya ko mule pwasse yo.
(Kim Sənsəng i) na eke sikan i əlma
na kəlli(ni)nya ko mule pwasse yo.

EXERCISES

(All the following exercises should be done in different speech levels: Formal and Informal Polite; Formal and Informal Plain.)

A. Tell the class that Mr. Park told you that:

1. he is sick.
2. he cannot come to work.
3. he will take a good rest.
4. he visited the doctor.
5. to call him anytime.
6. not to worry/kəkçəng-ha-ta/ about it.
7. not to ask him any questions.
8. to go to the movies with you.
9. not to speak in English while in the class.

B. Tell Pak Sensæng that you think that:

1. they sell American newspapers and magazines at that bookstore.
2. the problem is rather complicated.
3. Mr. Yang will not buy a new car.
4. you've heard about the automobile accident.
5. Korea is called 'Tæhan Minkuk' in Korean.
6. anybody will be able to finish it easily.

C. Ask student A if he's heard:

1. that teaching Korean is easier than an European language.
2. that others also suggested eating Chinese food.
3. that James told the students to go home.
4. that all the students wanted to study Korean.
5. that the Government told James to teach English.

D. Tell Pak Sensæng that:

1. you think that Jones speaks Korean very well.
2. Mr. Kim said that he will be back by 6:30.
3. you understood that Korean is difficult.

4. your Korean teacher told you to memorize/(ttala) we-ta/ the new words/tanə/.
5. Miss Brown asked you if you can teach her Korean.
6. Miss Choe suggested that you go together to the movies.
7. you heard that Mr. Chang's son is very bright.
8. you heard that Jones is a rich man.
9. James told you not to read that magazine.
10. your wife suggested that (she and) you not buy a foreign car.
11. 'I understand.' in Korean is expressed as 'I will know it.'
12. you heard about Korean customs.
13. the capital of France is called Paris.
14. you think riding taxis in Seoul is dangerous/wihəm-ha-ta/.
15. you think reading Korean newspapers is difficult.
16. you don't know if Korean is as easy as French.
17. you have an appointment to meet a friend at 3 p.m.
18. Jones asked you where you live.
19. your wife asked you what time the work ends.
20. the ambassador asked how difficult Korean was.

E. Mr. James has just telephoned and asked for Mr. Kim. Answer as follows:

1. 'Just a moment, please. I'll see if he is in.'
2. 'He isn't at his desk just now.'
3. 'Oh, gee, he went out just a minute ago.'
4. 'Who is calling, please?'
5. 'This is Miss Lee Suca (speaking). I'm Mr. Kim's secretary.'
6. 'He is in Mr. Park's office just now. It's extension/næsən/ 26.'
7. 'I mean Young-Soo Park.'
8. 'Would you like him to call you later?'
9. 'Yes, I understand, I will have him call you soon.'

F. Make the following telephone calls:

1. Call the Hanil Company and leave a message for Mr. Son that you are not coming today.
2. Call your home and tell the maid that you are going to the Kim's house for supper and will be home about 11:30.
3. Call a friend and ask her to go to the movies with you.
4. Call Mr. Kim's house and ask when Mr. Kim is returning to Seoul.
5. Call Mr. Han's house and ask Mr. Han to call Ambassador Wilson's office immediately.
6. Report that your telephone is out of order/kocang-na-ta/ and request that it be fixed/kochi-ta/.
7. Call your boss' house and tell his wife that he had some business in Inchon suddenly/kapcaki/ and that he said he'll call her from Inchon tonight around 9:00.
8. Call Mr. James' secretary and tell her Mr. James asked to call his office about his sickness.

제 18 과 을 기에 대해서

(대화 A)

나씨

좋군요

1. A: 오늘은 나씨가 꼭 좋군요!

가을 날씨

이렇게

2. B: 예, 한국(의) 가을 날씨는 대개 이렇게 좋습니다.

이런 날씨

계속

계속 합니까

3. A: 이런 날씨가 얼마 동안 계속 합니까?

시월 말

하늘

하늘이 맑고

차차

(차차) 추워집니다

4. B: 대개 시월 말까지는 하늘이 맑고 좋은 날씨가 계속 합니다. 그러나, 십일월부터 차차 추워집니다.

동북

미국 동북부

비슷합니다

비슷한 것 같습니다

5. A: 그림, 한국의 기후가 미국 동북부와 비슷한 것 같습니다.

같다고 생각합니다

6. B: 예, 남한의 기후는 뉴욕 주와 대개 같다고 생각합니다.

봄 철

뉴욕처럼

7. A: 여기에도 봄 철에는 뉴욕처럼 비가 많이 오는가요?

늦은 봄

이른 여름

장마 철

장마 철이라고 부릅니다

8. B: 대개 늦은 봄과 이른 여름에 비가 많이 오지요. 그래서, 유월과 칠월을 장마 철이라고 부릅니다.

(대화 B)

-토요일 아침에-

밖에

9. A: 지금 밖에 날씨가 어떻습니까?

비가 올 것 같습니다

A

- Tongpuk Northeast ('eastnorth')
 Mikuk Tongpukpu the Northeastern part of the U.S.
 pisithamnita [it] is similar
 pisithan kès kathsimnita it seems that [it]'s similar;
 kathsimnita. [it] looks like similar
5. Kilèm, Hankuk e kihu ka Mikuk Well, Korea's weather seems to be
 Tongpukpu wa pisithan kès similar to that of the Northeastern
 kathsimnita. part of the United States.

B

- kathta ko sëngkak-hamnita [I] think that [it]'s the same
 6. Ne, Nam-Han e kihu nin Nyuyok Cu Yes, I think South Korea's weather
 wa tækæ kathta ko sëngkak- is about the same as that of
 hamnita. New York State.

A

- pom chèl spring season
 Nyuyok chèlèm like New York; just as New York
 7. Yèki e to pom chèl e nin Nyuyok Does it rain here as much as it does
 chèlèm pi ka manhi onin ka yo? in New York in the spring (season)?

B

- nicin pom late spring
 ilin yèlim early summer
 cangma chèl rainy season
 cangma chèl ila ko pulimnita [we] call [it] the rainy season
 8. Tækæ nicin pom kwa ilin yèlim e Yes, it usually rains a lot in late
 pi ka manhi oci yo. Kilæ sè, summer. So we
 Yu-wèl kwa Chil-wèl il cangma call June and July the rainy
 chèl ila ko pulimnita. season.

Dialogue B

(..on a Saturday morning..)

A

- pakk (e) outside
 9. Cikim pakk (e) nalssi ka What's the weather like outside now?
 èttèhsimnikka?

10. B: 아마, 비가 올 것 같습니다. 날이 흐리고,
바람이 좀 불니다.

일기
일기 예보

11. A: 오늘 아침에 일기 예보를 들었습니까?

태디오
개입니다
개인다고 (만)했읍니다
기상대
틀립니다

12. B: 예, 아침 태디오에서는 날에 개인다고
말했지만 기상대도 가끔 틀리니까요.

큰 일
큰 일(이) 납니다

13. A: 비가 오면 큰 일 납니다.

기록
중대합니다. 중요합니다
중대한 기록, 중요한 기록

14. B: 왜요? 무슨 중대한 기록이 라도 있습니까?

등산
등산할 기록
등산할 기록입니다

15. A: 예, 오늘 오후에 등산할 기록이었읍니다.

B

- pi ka ol kès kathsimnita
 10. Ama, pi ka ol kès kathsimnita.
 Nal i hiliko, palam i com
 pumnita.
- it looks like rain
 It looks like it'll probably rain.
 It's cloudy and a little windy.

A

- ilki
 ilki yepo
 11. Onil achim e ilki yepo (lil)
 tilessimnikka?
- weather; climate
 weather forecast
 Did you hear the weather forecast
 this morning?

B

- lætio
 kæimnita
 kæinta ko (mal-)hæssimnita
 kisangtæ
 thillimnita/thilyimnita/
 12. Ne, achim lætio ese nin nac e
 kæintako mal-hæssci man,
 kisangtæ to kakkim thillini
 kka yo.
- radio
 [it] clears up
 [it] said that [it] clears up
 weather bureau, weather-man
 [it]'s wrong; [it] is not right
 Yes, the radio this morning said it
 would clear up at noon, but the
 weather-man is occasionally wrong.

A

- khin il
 khin il (i) namnita
 13. Pi ka omyen, khin il namnita.
- a big problem; a big trouble
 ('a big job')
 ('a big trouble comes up')
 It mustn't rain! ('If it rains, a
 big problem comes up.')

B

- kyehwek
 cungtæ-hamnita}
 cungyo-hamnita}
 cungtæ-han} kyehwek
 cungyo-han}
 musin kyehwek ilato
- plan(ning); plans
 [it] is important
 important plans
 any plans

예|...

정말

바랍니다

개이기 바랍니다

16. B: 예|..., 정말 오후에는 개이기 바랍니다.

14. Wæ yo? Musin cungtæ-han kyehwek
ilato issimnikka?

Why? Do you have some important
plans?

A

- tingsan
tingsan-hal kyehwek
tingsan-hal kyehwek imnita

hiking
(a) plan to hike
[I] I'm planning to hike

15. Ne, onil ohu e tingsan-hal
kyehwek iessimnita.

Yes, I was planning to go hiking
this afternoon.

B

- ne...?
cængmal
palamnita
kæiki palamnita

(oh, is that right?...)
certainly; truly; truth
[I] desire; [I] hope
[I] hope [it] clears up

16. Ne...? Cængmal ohu e nin
kæiki palamnita.

Oh, you were? I hope it clears up
in the afternoon.

NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. Iləhke 'this way' or 'like this', cəlehke 'that way' or 'like that', kiləhke 'that way' or 'so' or 'in such a way', occur as adverbials which are inflected from the verb stems iləh- 'to be like this', cəleh- 'to be like that' and kiləh- 'to be so'.
3. Ilən 'this kind of-', cələn 'that kind of-', kilən 'that kind of-', are the inflected present modifier words which are also based on the stem iləh- 'to be like this', cəleh- 'to be like that', and kiləh- 'to be so', respectively. The stem final sound h is dropped when the ending -(i)n is added.
4. Mal which occurs after certain time nominals is either a part of a word or a post-noun, meaning 'the end': wəlmal 'the end of the month', cumal 'weekend', nyənmal 'the end of the year', haknyən mal 'the end of the school year', Il-wəl mal 'the end of January', etc.
5. -Pu ('part') which occurs at the end of a word succeeding the names of directions (i.e. tong 'east', sə 'west', nam 'south', puk 'north') often designates geographical areas of the United States: Tongpu 'the Eastern part of U.S.', Səpu 'the Western part of U.S.', Nampu 'the South', Pukpu 'the North'. (See Drill B, Unit 15.)
8. X (i)la ko pulimnita. ('[We] call [it] X.') can be substituted by X (i)la ko hamnita. ('[We] say [it] is X.') (See Grammar Note 3, Unit 17.)
12. Thilli- 'to be wrong' has its antonymous verb mac- 'to be correct'. Mac- and olh- are synonymous.

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -ninkun/kun yo

An inflected form ending in -ninkun/kun + yo may be used as a kind of emphatic or exclamatory sentence final form. This construction is usually accompanied by the intonation patterns the same as the one in -ci yo? (Unit 6) or the one in an exclamation sentence. -Ninkun is added to an action verb stem; -kun is added to the copula or a description verb stem, or to any verb stem plus the honorific and/or tense suffixes. However, to an action verb stem which ends in -ss, -kun is added. Observe the following examples:

(a)

Sənsəng in Hankuk mal ɨl cal haninkun yo!	'You speak Korean very well!!'
Cə mal i cham cal ttwininkun yo!	'That horse runs sure fast!!'
Ai til i cham manhi məkninkun yo!	'The kids sure eat a lot!!'
Mikuk yəca til in uncən ɨl cal haninkun yo!	'The American women certainly are good drivers, aren't they?' ('The American women do driving certainly well.')
A, næ ka ki kəs ɨl mollasskun yo!	'Oh, gee, I didn't know that!!'

(b)

Onɨl nalssi ka phək cohkun yo!	{ 'The weather is very nice today, isn't it?' 'It's a nice day today!!'
Kim Sənsəng in cəngmal khi ka khikun yo!	{ 'Mr. Kim is really a tall man, isn't he?' 'Mr. Kim really is tall.'
A, kiləhkun yo!	'Oh, that's right (I didn't know that).'
Aiku, phək aphikesskun yo!	'Oh, no, [you] must hurt!!'

Note: In the further Units, we will see that the construction -ninkun/kun + yo can be substituted by -ninku/ku + man + yo with the same meaning. The inflected word ending in -ninkun/kun is considered to be one-word contraction from the two-word phrase -ninku/ku + man.

2. Infinitive + ci-

As an independent verb ci- is an intransitive action verb, of which meanings vary depending on what is its subject or topic: Hæ ka cinta.

'The sun sets.', Kkoch i ciessta. 'The flowers have withered.', (Namu iph i cimnita. 'The leaves are falling.', etc. However, preceded by the infinitive of a description verb, ci- occurs as an auxiliary verb, which denotes gradual change of the description of the preceding verb. The verb phrase Infinitive + ci- with or without an adverb cemcem (or chacha) 'gradually' is usually translated as either 'be getting -er' or 'become + adjective'. Examples:

- | | |
|---|---|
| Nalssi ka (chacha) chuwə cimnita. | 'The weather is getting (gradually) colder.' |
| Hankuk mal i tə əlyewə cimnita. | 'Korean is getting more difficult.' |
| Yosə mulkən kaps i phək pissa
ciesse yo. | 'Things became quite expensive these days.' |
| Nəəil ilki ka coha cil kka yo? | 'Will the weather be nice tomorrow (do you think)?' |

3. -n/in/nin kes kath-

The present inflected modifier word -n/in/nin + kes occurs without pause before the verb kath-, to denote the speaker's assumption for the probability of the action or description of the verb in the modifier word. The English translations for the construction -n/in/nin kes kath- are 'seems that...' or 'seems as if...' or 'looks like... ing', etc. Observe the following examples:

- | | |
|---|--|
| Pi ka <u>onin kes kathsimnita</u> . | 'It seems that it's raining (now).' |
| Ki ai ka <u>tætanhi ttokttokhan kes kathsimnita</u> . | 'That child seems to be very bright.' |
| Iyaki ka cəmi <u>issnin kes kathsimnikka</u> ? | 'Does the story sound interesting?'
('Does it seem that the story is interesting?') |
| Cə khi (ka) khin salam i cangkun
<u>in kes kathci yo</u> ? | 'That tall man looks like a general, doesn't he?' |
| Il i kili swipci <u>anhin kes kathə</u> yo. | 'The work doesn't seem to be that easy' |
| Təsa ka ce ilim il <u>anin kes kathci anhsimnita</u> . | 'The ambassador doesn't seem to know my name.' |

Note that the tenses and/or speech levels of the whole construction are generated in the verb kath- (1), but the tenses for the speaker's assumption of the probability are made by replacing the present modifier word ending -nin with the past modifier word ending -n/in form for the past and with the -(i)l form for the future, respectively (2). Examples:

(1)

Pusan e yekwan kaps i com pissan
kès kathessimnita.

Kim Sənsəng e il i cəmi issnin
kès kathesse yo.

Uli Yəngə sənsəng in ttal il
calang-hanın kès kathessimnita.

'It seemed that the hotels in Pusan
were a little expensive.'

'Mr. Kim's job sounded interesting.'

'Our English teacher seemed to be
proud of [his] daughter.'

(2a)

Kicha ka pəlsse ttənan kès
kathsimnita.

Kail i kəi cinan kès kathsimnita.

Pak Sənsəng in catongcha lɪl
pha(lı)n kès kathsimnita.

'It seems the train has already left.'

'It seems the autumn is almost over.'
 ('It seems that almost the autumn
 passed.')

'Mr. Park seems to have sold his car.'

Note: In case of copula and description verbs, -(a,e)sstən is added to the stem to show the past in the above construction. Example:

Kim Sənsəng puin in cəlməssil ttə
 (e) yeppesstən kès kathsimnita.

'It seems Mrs. Kim was pretty when
 she was young.'

(2b)

Pi ka ol kès kathsimnita.

'It looks like rain.' ('It seems
that it will rain.')

Munce ka manhil kès kathə yo.

'It seems there're going to be a lot
of problems.'

Nuka təthongyəng i twel kès
kathsimnikka?

'Who do you think will be the
 President?' ('Who, does it seem,
 will become the President?')

Hankuk mal i Cungkuk mal pota
 te əlyəul kès kathsimnita.

'Korean looks more difficult than
 Chinese.'

4. Particle chələm

A nominal + the particle chələm (or its synonym kathi) 'like + the Nominal' occurs as an adverbial expression for the following inflected expression.

Examples:

Kim Sənsəng chələm hasipsiyo.
 Kkolphi chələm cohın untong i
 əpsimnita.

'Please do [it] like Mr. Kim.'

'There aren't any good sports like
 golf.'

I cip i sə̄ cip chələm kkækkiθamnita. 'This house is clean like a new house.'
 Hankuk mal i Ilpon mal chələm
 elyəpsimnikka? { 'Is Korean difficult like Japanese?'
 { 'Is Korean as difficult as Japanese?'

5. Particle lato/ilato

Lato occurs after a word ending in a consonant and ilato after a word ending in a vowel. The particle lato/ilato occurs after either inflected or uninflected words. Observe the following constructions where lato/ilato occurs: (Compare lato/ilato with na/na, Grammar Note 4, Unit 10.).

(a) Interrogative expression + (i)lato = adverbial phrase 'any-!.

mues ilato	'anything' or 'whatever [it] is'
musin yaksok ilato	'any appointment' or 'whatever appointment [it] may be'
nuku lato	'anybody' or 'whoever [it] may be'
ənce lato	'anytime' or 'whenever [it] may be'
ətthəhke lato	'somehow' or 'whatever way [I] may take'

(b) After a nominal or an adverbial expression lato/ilato also occurs simply to emphasize the preceding expression as the possible alternative of choice for the following inflected expression. Examples:

Onil in cip ese <u>capci lato</u> ilkessə yo.	'I'm going to read at home today, say, magazines.'
<u>Na lato</u> kilən il in hal su issimnita.	'Even I can do such a job.'
Kiləm, <u>tapang e lato</u> kapsita.	'Well, let's go to, say, a tea-room, then.'
<u>Yəngə lato</u> kalichiko siphci man,.....	'I would like to teach even English but.....'
Kalichinin kəs i elyəumyən, <u>pəuki lato</u> hal su isskessci yo?	'If teaching is hard, [he] can do, say, learning, can't [he]?'

Note that we will learn in further units about the constructions in which other inflected words + lato/ilato occur.

6. -(i)l kyehwek i- 'be planning to...!'

The construction the -(i)l form + the noun kyehwek 'plan' + the copula i-, literally means '[it] is the plan to do...'. The usual translation, however, is

'be planning to do...'. The tense suffixes may occur in the copula i- for the whole construction. Examples:

Na nin næil tingsan-hal kyehwek
imnita.

Wellæ Sæul e kal kyehwek iæssci
man, kyehwek il pakkwesæ yo.

Miss Braun i kot kyælhon-hal
kyehwek in kæs kathsimnita.

Kim Paksa nin appathi ese sal
kyehwek ila ko mal-hæssimnita.

'I'm planning to go hiking
tomorrow.'

'Originally I was planning to go
to Seoul, but I have changed
plans.'

'Miss Brown seems to be planning
to get married soon.'

'Dr. Kim said that he was planning
to live in an apartment.'

.DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

1. Yu-wel kwa Chil-wel il cangma chèl
ila ko pulimnita. [We] call June and July the rainy season.
- *2. Səul il Hankuk e suto la ko pulimnita. Seoul is called the capital of Korea.
- *3. Il hanin kos il cikcang ila ko pulimnita. The place where [you] work is called the place of work.
- *4. Ton i manhin salam il puca la ko pulimnita. [We] call the person who has a lot of money a rich man.
- *5. Kukhwe iywən til il cəngchika la ko pulimnita. [We] call the members of the National Assembly politicians.
- *6. Mikuk il Hapcungkuk ila ko pulimnita. America is called the United States.
- *7. Pusan kathin tosi lil hangku la ko pulimnita. A city like Pusan is called a harbor.
- *8. Mulkən il mantinən te lil kongcang ila ko pulimnita. [We] call the place where goods are made a factory.
- *9. Kongcang esə il-hanin salam il cikkong ila ko pulimnita. [We] call the people working at factories (factory) workers.

B. Substitution Drill

1. Nam-Han e kihu nin Mikuk Tongpu wa kathta ko səngkak-hamnita.
2. Nam-Han e kihu nin Mikuk Tongpu wa kathta ko səngkak-hamnikka?
3. Cə yəca nin Mikuk salam ila ko səngkak-hamnikka?
4. Cə yəca nin Mikuk salam ila ko səngkak-haci anhsimnikka?
5. Kakkim yənghwa ponin kəs i cohta ko səngkak-haci anhsimnikka?
- *6. Kakkim yənghwa ponin kəs i cohta ko mitsimnita.
7. Pak Sənsəng i Yənge lil cal hanta ko mitsimnita.

I think South Korea's weather is the same as that of the eastern U.S.

Do you think South Korea's weather is the same as that of the eastern U.S.?

Do you think that woman is an American?

Don't you think that woman is an American?

Don't you think it is good to see the movies sometimes?

I believe that it is good to see the movies sometimes.

I believe that Mr. Park speaks English well.

8. Pak Sənsəng i Yəngə lil cal hanta ko tiləssimnita. I heard that Mr. Park speaks English well.
9. Kim Ssi e apəci ka tola kasyəssta ko tiləssimnita. I heard that Mr. Kim's father (had) passed away.
10. Kim Ssi e apəci ka tola kasyəssta ko (mal-)həssimnita. [They] (or Mr. Kim) said that Mr. Kim's (or his) father passed away.
11. Ceimsi nin tingsan-hal kyehwek ila ko həssimnita. James told me (or said) that he was planning to go hiking.
12. Ceimsi nin tingsan-hal kyehwek ila ko alessimnita. I understood (or knew) that James was planning to go hiking.
13. Sənsəng i Səul eṣe oləe tongan il-həssta ko alessimnita. I understood that you worked in Seoul for a long time.
14. Sənsəng i Səul eṣe oləe tongan il-həssta ko amnita. I understand that you have worked in Seoul for a long time.

C. Response Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal i əlyəwə yo?

'Is Korean difficult?'

Student 1: Ne, (Hankuk mal i) əlyəpta ko səngkak-hamnita.

'Yes, I think Korean is difficult.'

Student 2: Aniyo, (Hankuk mal i) əlyəpta ko səngkak-haci anhsimnita.

'No, I don't think Korean is difficult.'

1. Kongpu-haki cəmi issə yo?

Ne, (kongpu-haki) cəmi issta ko səngkak-hamnita.

2. Cə yəca ka yeppe yo?

Aniyo, (kongpu-haki) cəmi issta ko səngkak-haci anhsimnita.

Ne, (cə yəca ka) yeppita ko səngkak-hamnita.

Aniyo, (cə yəca ka) yeppita ko səngkak-haci anhsimnita.

3. Kim Sənsəng i Pullansə mal il cal həs yo?

Ne, (Kim Sənsəng i Pullansə mal il) cal hanta ko səngkak-hamnita.

Aniyo, (Kim Sənsəng i Pullansə mal il) cal hanta ko səngkak-haci anhsimnita.

4. Kicha ka phyəlli-hæ yo?
Ne, (kicha ka) phyəlli-hata ko
sængkak-hamnita.
Aniyo, (kicha ka) phyəlli-hata ko
sængkak-haci anhsimnita.
5. Hankuk san i alimtawə yo?
Ne, (Hankuk san i) alimtaptap ko
sængkak-hamnita.
Aniyo, (Hankuk san i) alimtaptap ko
sængkak-haci anhsimnita.
6. Nalssi ka phək chuwe cəsse yo?
Ne, (nalssi ka) phək chuwe cəssta ko
sængkak-hamnita.
Aniyo, (nalssi ka) phək chuwe cəssta
ko sængkak-haci anhsimnita.
7. Pakk e palam i tətanhı pule yo?
Ne, (pakk e palam i) tətanhı punta ko
sængkak-hamnita.
Aniyo, (pakk e palam i) tətanhı
punta ko sængkak-haci anhsimnita.
8. Mikuk kwa Hankuk e kihu ka
pisithan kəs kathə yo?
Ne, (Mikuk kwa Hankuk e kihu ka)
pisithan kəs kathta ko sængkak-
hamnita.
Aniyo, (Mikuk kwa Hankuk e kihu ka)
pisithan kəs kathta ko sængkak-
haci anhsimnita.
9. I sikye ka thillie yo?
Ne, (i sikye ka) thillita ko
sængkak-hamnita.
Aniyo, (i sikye ka) thillita ko
sængkak-haci anhsimnita.
10. Ki munce ka phək cungyo-hæ yo?
Ne, (ki munce ka) phək cungyo-hata
ko sængkak-hamnita.
Aniyo, (ki munce ka) phək cungyo-
hata ko sængkak-haci anhsimnita.
11. Cə ai ka ttokttokhan haksəng
iye yo?
Ne, (cə ai ka) ttokttokhan haksəng
ila ko sængkak-hamnita.
Aniyo, (cə ai ka) ttokttokhan haksəng
ila ko sængkak-haci anhsimnita.

D. Response Drill

Tutor: Pak Sənsəng i Yəngə lɪl cal
hanta ko həssə yo?

Student: Ne, (Pak Sənsəng i Yəngə lɪl)
cal hanta ko tɪləsə yo.

1. Consı Sənsəng i kot Səul e tola
onta ko həssə yo?
2. Hankuk e yəlim nalssi ka Nyuyok
pota tə mutəpta ko həssə yo?
('Did [they] say that the summer
weather in Korea is more muggy
than in New York?')
3. Yang Sənsəng i cəngchika ka
tweəssta ko həssə yo?
4. Pak Sənsəng puin i inhəng e
kinmu-hal kəs ila ko həssə yo?
5. Təku e kyothong i phyəlli-hata
ko həssə yo?
6. Hakkyo kal sikan i nicessta ko
həssə yo?

'Did [they] say that Mr. Park speaks
English well?'

'Yes, I heard [he] speaks English
well.'

Ne, (Consı Sənsəng i) kot Səul e
tola onta ko tɪləsə yo.

Ne, (Hankuk e yəlim nalssi ka
Nyuyok pota) tə mutəpta ko tɪləsə
yo.

Ne, (Yang Sənsəng i) cəngchika ka
tweəssta ko tɪləsə yo.

Ne, (Pak Sənsəng puin i) inhəng e
kinmu-hal kəs ila ko tɪləsə yo.

Ne, (Təku e kyothong i) phyəlli-
hata ko tɪləsə yo.

Ne, hakkyo kal sikan i nicessta ko
tɪləsə yo.

E. Response Drill

Tutor: Kakkim yənghwa lɪl ponin kəs
i cohta ko səngkak-hase yo?

Student: Ne, kakkim yənghwa lɪl ponin
kəs i cohta ko mitsimnita.

1. Cəng sənsəng i cikim Səul e kyesinta
ko səngkak-hase yo?
2. Hankuk mal il almyən, Hankuk ese
il-haki phyənhata ko səngkak-
hase yo?
3. Ki munce ka talita ko səngkak-
hase yo?
4. Ilpone munpəp i Cungkukə pota
pokcap-hata ko səngkak-hase yo?

'Do you think it's nice to see the
movies occasionally?'

'Yes, I believe it's nice to see
movies occasionally.'

Ne, Cəng Sənsəng i cikim Səul e
kyesinta ko mitsimnita.

Ne, Hankuk mal il almyən, Hankuk ese
il-haki phyənhata ko mitsimnita.

Ne, ki munce ka talita ko mitsimnita.

Ne, Ilpone munpəp i Cungkukə pota
pokcap-hata ko mitsimnita.

5. Sənsəng in kuntæ kyəngħem i philyo-hata ko səngkak-hase yo?
6. Ceimsi Sənsəng in Hankuk phungsok il cal ihæ-hanta ko səngkak-hase yo?
7. Pak Sənsəng (e) mal i thillita ko səngkak-hase yo?

Ne, kuntæ kyəngħem i philyo-hata ko mitsimnita.

Ne, (Ceimsi Sənsəng in) Hankuk phungsok il cal ihæ-hanta ko mitsimnita.

Ne, Pak Sənsəng (e) mal i thillita ko mitsimnita.

F. Response Drill

Tutor: Cə pun in wekyokwan imnikka?

'Is that man in the foreign service?'

Student: Ne, (cə pun in) wekyokwan ila ko alessimnita.

'Yes, I understood (or thought) that he is in the foreign service.'

1. Kim Sənsəng i Yəngə lil kalichimnikka?
2. Pak Yəngca ka kyəlhon-həssimnikka?
3. Cəng Sənsəng i təsa ka tweəssimnikka?
4. Hankuk e kyəul kihu ka Mikuk Tongpu wa pisithamnikka?
5. Hankuk sikol kil esə uncən-haki (ka) əlyəpsimnikka?
6. I Sənsəng e əməni nın nai ka manhsimnikka?

Ne, (Kim Sənsəng i) Yəngə lil kalichinta ko alessimnita.

Ne, (Pak Yəngca ka) kyəlhon-həssta ko alessimnita.

Ne, (Cəng Sənsəng i) təsa ka tweəsstə ko alessimnita.

Ne, (Hankuk e kyəul kihu ka Mikuk Tongpu wa) pisithata ko alessimnita.

Ne, Hankuk sikol kil esə uncən-haki (ka) əlyəpta ko alessimnita.

Ne, I Sənsəng e əməni nın nai ka manhta ko alessimnita.

G. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Onil nalssi ka phək cohci yo?

'The weather is very nice today, isn't it?'

Student: Ne, (onil nalssi ka) phək cohkun yo!

'Yes, it certainly is!'

1. Cohin nalssi ka kyesok-haci yo?

Ne, cohin nalssi ka kyesok-haninkun yo!

2. Il i pokcap-haci yo?

Ne, il i pokcap-hakun yo!

3. Imsik i mas i cohci yo?

Ne, imsik i mas i cohkun yo!

4. Hanil i tætanhi ma(l)kci yo?
 5. Kim Sønsæng e atil i phæk
 ttokttokhaci yo?
 6. Kot, pi ka ol kès kathci yo?
 7. Ki ai ka apèci wa pisithaci yo?
 8. Onil nalssi ka mutèpcí yo?
 ('Today's weather is muggy,
 isn't it?!')
 9. Kimchi ka cèngmal mæpcí yo?
- Ne, hanil i tætanhi ma(l)kkun yo!
 Ne, (Kim Sønsæng e atil i) phæk
 ttokttokhakun yo!
 Ne, kot, pi ka ol kès kathkun yo!
 Ne, (ki ai ka) apèci wa pisithakun yo!
 Ne, (onil nalssi ka) mutèpkun yo!
 Ne, (kimchi ka) cèngmal mæpkun yo!

H. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Nalssi ka chupsimnita.

'The weather is cold.'

Student: Nalssi ka cèmcèm chuwe cimnita.

'The weather is getting colder.'

1. Hankuk mal i əlyøpsimnita.
2. Pang an i ttattithamnita.
3. Cè nin nai ka manhsimnita.
4. Il e cæmi ka issimnita.
5. Munce ka talimnita.
6. Kyothong i phyøllihæ cimnita.
7. Ki ai nin khi ka khimnita.
8. Namphyøn kwa anæ e əlkul i
 pisithamnita.
9. Yosæ nin pihængki ka ppalimnita.

Hankuk mal i cèmcèm əlyøwe cimnita.
 Pang an i cèmcèm ttattithæ cimnita.
 Cè nin nai ka cèmcèm manhæ cimnita.
 Cèmcèm il e cæmi ka issæ cimnita.
 Munce ka cèmcèm talla cimnita.
 Kyothong i cèmcèm phyøllihæ cimnita.
 Ki ai nin cèmcèm khi ka khæ cimnita.
 Namphyøn kwa anæ e əlkul i cèmcèm
 pisithæ cimnita.
 Yosæ nin pihængki ka cèmcèm ppalla
 cimnita.

I. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Pi ka omnita.

'It's raining.'

Student: Pi ka onin kès kathsimnita.

'It seems to be raining (now).'

1. Il i acik kyesok-hamnita.
2. Pise ka thaiphi lil cal chimnita.
3. Acèssi ka ki sakèn e tæhæ sè
 amnita.

Il i acik kyesok-hanin kès
 kathsimnita.

Pise ka thaiphi lil cal chinin kès
 kathsimnita.

Acèssi ka ki sakèn e tæhæ sè anin
 kès kathsimnita.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4. Miss Braun in nai ka kili manhci anhsimnita. | Miss Braun in nai ka kili manhci anhin kès kathsimnita. |
| 5. I Sənsəng i onıl ttənal kyehwek imnita. | I Sənsəng i onıl ttənal kyehwek in kès kathsimnita. |
| 6. Ceimsi nin yəngsa ka tweki wənhamnita. | Ceimsi nin yəngsa ka tweki wənhanin kès kathsimnita. |
| 7. Miss Chwe ka tangsin il salang-hamnita. | Miss Chwe ka tangsin il salang-hanin kès kathsimnita. |
| 8. Ki salam e acessi ka puca imnita. | Ki salam e acessi ka puca in kès kathsimnita. |
| 9. Ce haksəng i phək ttokttokhamnita. | Ce haksəng i phək ttokttokhan kès kathsimnita. |

J. Response Drill

Tutor: Onıl ilki ka əce wa pisithamnikka?

'Is today's weather similar to that of yesterday?'

Student: Ne, (onıl ilki ka əce wa) pisithan kès kathsimnita.

'Yes, it looks the same.' ('It seems it is similar.')

1. Pakk e nalssi ka chupsimnnikka?

Ne, chuun kès kathsimnita.

2. Təesa ka Hankuk mal il ale titsimnnikka?

Ne, ale titnìn kès kathsimnita.

3. Hakkyo kal sikan i acik ilimnikka?

Ne, (acik) ilin kès kathsimnita.

4. Hanıl i hilimnikka?

Ne, hilin kès kathsimnita.

5. Samusil i com ətupsimnnikka?

Ne, (com) ətuun kès kathsimnita.

6. Kisangtæ e ilki yepo ka thillimnikka?

Ne, thillin kès kathsimnita.

7. Kim Sənsəng e mal i macsimnnikka?

Ne, macin kès kathsimnita.

8. Wekyokwan səenghwal e wekukə ka cungyo-hamnikka?

Ne, cungyo-han kès kathsimnita.

9. Mikuk təesa ka tangsin e ilim il molimnikka?

Ne, molinìn kès kathsimnita.

K. Response Drill

Tutor: Ohu e nun i ol kka yo?

'Will it snow in the afternoon?'

Student: Ne, (nun i) ol kès
kathsimnita.

'Yes, it looks like it.' ('It
seems that it will snow.')

1. I os i pissal kka yo?
Ne, pissal kès kathsimnita.
2. Hanil i kæil kka yo?
Ne, kæil kès kathsimnita.
3. Miss Braun i kot kyøhon hal kka yo?
Ne, kot kyøhon hal kès kathsimnita.
4. Ki yøca ka kilehke palal kka yo?
Ne, kilehke palal kès kathsimnita.
5. Ki chinku ka catongcha lìl tasi
pakkul kka yo?
Ne, tasi pakkul kès kathsimnita.
6. Puin i Hankuk il cohahal kka yo?
Ne, (anæ ka Hankuk il) cohahal kès
kathsimnita.
7. Næil nalssi ka mutøul kka yo?
Ne, mutøul kès kathsimnita.
8. Ilki yepo ka thillil kka yo?
Ne, thillil kès kathsimnita.
9. Kim Paksa mal i cøngmal il kka yo?
Ne, cøngmal il kès kathsimnita.

L. Response Drill

Tutor: Hanil i kæil kès kathsimnita.

'It seems the sky will clear up.'

Student: Cøngmal, kæiki palamnita.

'I sure hope it does.' ('Truly,
I hope it clears up.')

1. Ilki ka ttattithal kès kathsimnita.
Cøngmal, ttattithaki palamnita.
2. Il i onil ta kkith-nal kès
kathsimnita.
Cøngmal, onil ta kkith-naki
palamnita.
3. Ceimsi nin Hankuk mal kongpu lìl
kimantuci anhil kès kathsimnita.
Cøngmal, kimantuci anhki palamnita.
4. Munce ka øpsil kès kathsimnita.
Cøngmal, (munce ka) øpski palamnita.
5. Mikuk e tola ka to, Hankuk mal
kongpu ka kyesok-hal kès
kathsimnita.
Cøngmal, kyesok-haki palamnita.
6. Sønsæng kwa Wøsington ese tasi
mannal kès kathsimnita.
Cøngmal, tasi mannakì palamnita.
7. Kiløn il-haki ølyøpcì anhil kès
kathsimnita.
Cøngmal, ølyøpcì anhki palamnita.
8. Palam i pulci anhil kès kathsimnita.
Cøngmal, (palam i) pulci anhki
palamnita.

9. Tæsakwan eṣe uli eke allye cul Cengmal, allye cuki palamnita.
kès kathsimnita.

10. Sinæ e kil i pəncap-hal kès kathci Cengmal, pəncap-haci anhki palamnita.
anhsimnita.

EXERCISES

- A. Tell Pak Sønsæng that:

1. it's raining hard.
 2. it's snowing outside.
 3. it started to rain just a minute ago.
 4. it has stopped snowing.
 5. it is very windy and cloudy today.
 6. it rained all morning/achim nænæ/.
 7. it was snowy and cold yesterday at Panmunjom.
 8. it was awfully muggy all summer in Washington.
 9. it was hot but there was no humidity/sɪpki/.
 10. it has begun to cloud up/kulim i kki-ta/.
 11. it has begun to clear up.
 12. the sky was clear and the temperature/onto/ was cool.
 13. in winter, river always freeze/əl-ta/ but the sun shines most of the time.
 14. the rainy season begins in the warm spring season and lasts until the end of July.
 15. beginning early November the weather gets gradually colder.

- B. James asks: You:

 1. if you think the Korean winter is the same as that of New York State.
'Yes, I think so.'
 2. if it looks like rain.
'Yes, but I hope it won't rain.'
 3. if Koreans use chop-sticks like Japanese.
'Yes, they usually do.'
 4. whether it seems housing in Tokyo is less expensive than in the U.S.
'No, it seems to be about the same.'
 5. if you have any important plans.
'Yes, I have one, but not a specially important one.'

6. how long you're planning to to stay in Korea. 'Oh, maybe about two or three years.'
7. if you want to go hiking. 'Yes, only when the sky clears up.'
8. if you will go swimming /suyəng/ with him. 'Yes, if there is a good place to swim/suyəng-hal te/.'
9. if winter is good for hunting /sanyang-haki/. 'Yes, it is. But there are not many places to hunt/sanyang-hal kos/.'
10. if people go fishing/nakssi-cil (hale) ka-ta/ to the sea. 'Some people do, but you can also see people fishing/nakssi-cil hanin kes/ by the river sides.'

C. Make a short dialogue so that one of the following expressions is included in the response:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. iləhke | 'this way' |
| 2. cələhke | 'that way' |
| 3. kıləhke | 'that way, in such a way' |
| 4. ilən | 'this kind of' |
| 5. cələn | 'that kind of' |
| 6. kılən | 'such kind of' |
| 7. chacha <u>or</u> cəmcəm | 'gradually' |
| 8. onıl chələm | 'like today' |
| 9. Sənsəng e mal i macsimnita.
(<u>or</u> macəssimnita). | 'You are right.' |
| 10. Nəe ka thilliəssimnita. | 'I am wrong.' ('I was not right.') |
| 11. Nəe ka cal mot həssimnita. | 'I was wrong.' ('I couldn't do well.') |

Korean-English Glossary

The following is all of the vocabulary introduced in this text, except words used for pronunciation drills in the Introductory Unit. There are three vertical columns: the left column is the Korean in transcription; the middle is the same in Hankil; the right column is the meaning in English.

A verb is listed in the traditional Korean dictionary form ending in -ta with a hyphen after stem. Every verb or verb phrase is indicated as to transitive or intransitive by Vt & Vi respectively in the parenthesis immediately after the entry, and its Infinitive form is also entered right after Vt or Vi. A free noun or noun phrase is not indicated for its part-of-speech, but other entries are so indicated like verbs: (D) = Determinative, (DN) = Dependent Noun, (PN) = Post-Noun, (Ad) = Adverb, (P) = Particle, (C) = Counter, (Num Ch) = Numeral of Chinese Character origin, (Num K) = Numeral of Korean origin, (Int) = Interjection.

An Arabic number immediately following English meaning for each entry refers to the Unit in which it first occurs: the number alone refers to the Basic Dialogue or Dialogues of that unit; N, G or D preceded by a number refers to the Notes on Dialogues, Grammar Notes and Drills of the unit indicated by number respectively.

Examples:

9 means Unit 9, Basic Dialogue(s)

9-N means Unit 9, Notes on the Basic Dialogues

9-G means Unit 9, Grammar Notes

9-D means Unit 9, Drills

Entries are listed according to the alphabetical order of the Basic Syllable Chart in Introductory Unit: a, ə, o, u, ɪ, ɪ, e, ə, y, w, k, kk, kh, n, t, tt, th, l, m, p, pp, ph, s, ss, c, cc, ch, h, ng.

a

a (Int)	아	Oh! 1
ai	아이	child 2-D
aiku! (Int)	아이구!	Gee!, Oh! 17
a(1)-ta (Vt: ale)	아다: 알어	knows 2-G
Amnikka?	아니가?	Do you know? 3
akka (Ad)	아가	a little while ago, a few minutes ago 16-N
atil	아들	son 14
atnim	아드님	your son (honored) 14-N
ale t̄at-ta (Vt: ale tile)	알어 듣다: 들어 듣어	understands (by ears) 9
ale po-ta (Vt: ale pwa)	알어 보다: 들어 봐	finds out, recognizes 7-G
ale cu-ta (Vt: ale cuə)	알어 주다: 들어 줘	recognizes, gives credit 7-G
alimtap-ta (Vt: alimtawə)	아름답다: 아름다워	is beautiful 5-D
ama (Ad)	아마	perhaps, probably 11
amu (D)	아무	any
amu kes (ina)	아무 거(이나)	anything, whatever 12
an (Ad)	안	not 3
An m̄emnita.	안 면니다.	[It] is not far. 3
an	안	the inside 16-D
ani (Ad)	아니	no (plain speech) 17
aniyo (Ad)	아니요	no 1
Aniyo, kw̄anchanhsimnita.	아니요, 괜찮습니다.	(No), not at all. 1
anæ	아내	my wife 14

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

annyøng	안녕	peace, tranquility 1
Annyøng-hasimnikka?	안녕 하십니까?	How are you? 1
annyønghi (Ad)	안녕히	peacefully 1
Annyønghi kasipsiyo.	안녕히 가십시오.	Good bye (to someone leaving).1
Annyønghi kyesipsiyo.	안녕히 계십시오.	Good bye (to someone staying).1
ancu	안주	relish [taken with liquor], sidedish 12
anc-ta (Vi: ançø)	앉다	sits 11-D
ançø iss-ta	앉아 앉다	is seated 14-G
anh-ta (Vt: anhø)	아니다: 앉아	not 4
Pissaci anhsimnita.	파스파지 앉습니다.	[It] is not expensive. 4
apønim	아버지	father (honored) 14-N
apøci	아버지	father 13-D
aphi-ta (Vi: aphø)	아프다: 아파	is sick, hurts 6
acøssi	아저씨	uncle 14-D
acik (Ad)	아직	(not) yet, still 6-N
acu (Ad)	아주	very, extremely 10
acumøni	아주 머니	aunt 14-D
achim	아침	morning, breakfast 4-D
onil achim	오늘 아침	this morning 4-D
Achim il mekessimnita.	아침을 먹었습니다.	I had my breakfast. 12-D
achim siksa	아침 식사	breakfast ('morning meal') 12-D
ahile	아홉 일	nine days, the 9th day of the month 6-D
ahin (Num K)	아흔	ninety 5
ahop (Num K)	아홉	nine 5

어

əkkæ	어깨	shoulder 13
əti	어디	where, what place 2
əti e	어디에	where 2
əte (Ad)	어데	where 2
ətup-ta (Vi: ətuwə)	어둡다: 어두워	is dark 10-D
əttəh-ta (Vi: əttəhæ)	어떻다: 어妨碍	how is? 4
əttən	어떤	what kind of 5
I kəs i əttəhsimnikka?	이것이 어haps니까?	How is this? 4
əttəhke (Ad)	어떻게	how?, in what way? 1
əl-ta (Vi: ələ)	얼다: 얼어	freezes 18-D
əlim	얼음	ice 12-D
əlim mul	얼음 물	ice water 12-D
əli-ta (Vi: əlyə)	어리다: 어썩	is young, is childish 14
əlkul	얼굴	face 13
əlyəp-ta (Vi: əlyəwə)	어렵다: 어려워	is difficult 5-D
əlma	얼마	how much, what price 4
əlma imnikka?	얼마 입니까?	How much is it? 4
əlma na kəllimnikka?	얼마나 걸리니까?	How long does it take? 7
əlma tongan	얼마 동안	for how long, for some time 15-N
əməni	어머니	mother 13-G
əmenim	어머님	mother (honored) 14-N
əmma	엄마	mammy, mother 17
ənɪ (D)	어느	which, a certain 2
ənɪ kəs	어느 것	which one? 2
ənɪ hwesa ese	어느 회사에서	at some company 15

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

ənni	언니	older sister (of female) 14-D
ənce	언제	when 5-D
ənce tinci	언제든지	anytime 12
əps-ta (Vi: əpsə)	없다: 어어	does not exist, does not have 5
əsə	어서	quickly, please 4
əsə osipsiyo.	어서 오십시오.	Please come in. 4
əce	어제	yesterday 4
<u>o</u>		
o (Num Ch)	오	five 4
o-ta (Vi: wa)	오다: 와	comes 2-G
oln (D)	오른	right 2
oln ccok	오른 쪽	the right (side) 2-N
olæ	오래	a long time
Olæ kan man imnita.	오래가만 암(나)다.	(I haven't seen you for a long time.), Long time no see. 8
olæ tongan	오래 동안	for a long time 8-N
olla o-ta (Vi: olla wa)	올라 오다: 올라 와	comes up 7-G
olla ka-ta (Vi: olla ka)	올라 가다: 올라 가	goes up 7-G
olh-ta (Vi: olha)	옳다: 옳아	is right 18-N
onil	오늘	today 4
onto	온도	temperature 18-D
oppa	오빠	older brother (of female) 14-D
os	옷	clothes, dresses 4-D
ohu	오후	afternoon 4-D
onil ohu	오늘 오후	this afternoon 4-D

u

uyu	우유	milk 12-D
uli	우리	we, our 14
uli kacok	우리 가족	our family 14
untong	운동	physical exercise, sport 9-D
untong-ha-ta (Vi: untong-hæ)	운동 하다: 운동 해	takes exercises, plays [balls] 9-D
untongcang	운동장	playground 16-D
uncənsu	운전수	driver 16-D
uphyənkuk	우편국	post office 3-D

i

iywən	의원	congressman, member of the National Assembly 16-D
il/lil (P)	을 / 를	
Sənsəng in mues il hasimnikka?	선생은 무었을 하십니까?	What do you do? 1
Yəngə lil mal-hamnita.	영어를 말합니다.	I speak English. 1-G
ilo/lo (P)	으로 /로	
Wen ccok ilo kasipsiyo.	온쪽으로 가십시오.	Go to the left. 2
wekyokwan ilo	외교관으로	as a diplomat 7
pæ lo	배로	by ship 7
imsik	음식	food 7-D
imsikcəm	음식점	restaurant 10-D
in/nin (P)	은 / 는	as far 1
Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita.	제 이름은 제임스입니다.	My name is James. 1
Ce nin haksəng imnita.	저는 학생입니다.	I'm a student. 1-G
Sənsəng in mues il hasimnikka?	선생은 무었을 하십니까?	What are YOU doing? 1-G
inhæng	은행	bank 2-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

iyasa	의사	medical doctor 8-D
iycā	의자	chair 2-D
ing (Ad)	응	yes (plain speech) 17
	<u>i</u>	
I	이	Lee (family name) 1-D
i (Num Ch)	이	two 4
i (D)	이	this 2
i	이	tooth 13
i/ka (P)	이/가	
tæsakwan i	대사관이	the embassy (as subject) 2
Tæsakwan i eti e issimnikka?	대사관이 어디에 있습니까?	Where is the embassy? 2
i-ta (Copula: iye <u>or</u> iye)	이다: 이예: 이여	
elma iye yo?	얼마이예요?	How much is [it]? 5
iyaki	이야기	story 17 (see <u>yaki</u>)
iyaki-ha-ta (iyaki-hæ)	이야기하다: 이야기해	speaks, talks, tells
Sensæng e tæhæ se iyaki tillessimnita.	선생에 대해서서 이야기 들을까요니다.	I heard about you. 17
il	일	work, job 6
il-ha-ta (il-hæ)	일하다: 일해	works 3-G
il cali	일자리	job 16-D
il (DN)	일	experience, fact
Cungkuk imsik il mækə pon il i issimnikka?	중국 음식을 먹어 본 일이 있습니까?	Have you ever eaten Chinese food? 13
il (Num Ch)	일	one 4
il (C)	일	day
il-il	일일	the 1st day of the month 6
illato (P)	이타도	18-G (see <u>lato</u>)

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

iləna-ta (Vi: iləna)	일어나다: 일어나	gets up 12-D
iləh-ta (Vi: ilə or iləhə)	이렇다: 이래: 이릭해	is like this
ilən nalssi	이런 날씨	this kind of weather 18
illi-ta (Vi: illə)	이트다: 일터	is early
ilin yəlüm	이른 여름	early summer 18
ilim	이름	name 1
ilhın/ilin (Num K)	일흔/이른	seventy 5
ile	이례	seven days, the 7th day of the month 6-D
Ilyoil	이요일	Sunday 6-D
ilk-ta (Vt: ilke)	읽다: 읽어	reads 1-D
ilkop (Num K)	일곱	seven 5
ilki	일기	weather 15 (see <u>nalssi</u>)
Ilpon	일본	Japan 1-G
Ilpon mal	일본 말	Japanese (language) 1-D
Ilpon salam	일본 사말	Japanese 1-G
Ilpone	일본어	Japanese (language) 8-D
ilsang (D)	일상	daily 4
ilsang yongphum	일상 용품	daily necessities, daily things 4
ilcciki (Ad)	이즈거	early 11-D
imnita (Copula)	임니다:	(see <u>i-ta</u>)
Kim Kisu imnita.	김 기수 임니다.	[I] am Kisu Kim.
insa-ha-ta (Vi: insa-hə)	인사하다: 인사해	greets 9-D
insa-kwa	인사과	personnel section
insa-kwacang	인사 과장	personnel section chief, personnel officer 13-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

ina (P)	이나	10 (see <u>na</u>)
Into	인도	India 6-D
ip	입	mouth 13
ip-ta (Vt: ipə)	입다: 입어	puts on (clothes), dresses
ipə po-ta (ipə pwa)	입어 보다: 입어 봐	tries on (clothes) 7-G
ipku	입구	the entrance 16-D
itta (Ad)	이따	later (on the same day) 11
Itta mannapsita.	이따 만나시다.	See you later. 11
ithil	이튿	two days, the 2nd day of the month 6-D
Ithæli	이탈리	Italy 6-D
Ithælie	이탈리어	Italian 8-D
ippal	이빨	tooth 13 (see <u>i</u>)
isa	이사	moving (house)
isa-ha-ta (isa-hæ)	이사하다: 이사해	moves (house, office, etc.) 14
iss-ta (Vt: issə)	있다: 있어	exists, is
Cal issimnita.	자 있음니다.	[I]'m fine. (lit. '[I] exists well.') 1
icim	이즘	these days 8 (see <u>yocim</u>)
ingkhi	잉크	ink 7-G
ihæ	이해	understanding
ihæ-ha-ta (ihæ-hæ)	이해하다: 이해해	understand, comprehends 18-D
<u>e</u>		
e (P)	에	to
Seul yek e kamnita.	서울역에 갑니다.	I'm going to the Seoul Station. 3
e (P)	의	of, -'s 1
cə e ilim	저의 이름	my name 1-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

e (P)	에	at, on, in 2-G
eke (P) Ki cheek il na eke ilke kusipsiyo.	에게 그 책을 나에게 읽어 주십시오.	to (someone) Please read me the book. 11-G
ekesə (P) əmeni ekesə	에게서 어머니에게서	from (someone) 13 from mother 13-G
ese (P) Yeki ese memnikka? Kyosil ese konpu-hamnita.	에서 여기에서 멀니까? 교실에서 공부합니다.	from, at, in 3 Is [it] far from here? 3 [We] study in the classroom. 3-G
Y		
ya (P) Puchiə ya hamnita.	야 부쳐야 합니다.	only when, only if 11-G [I] have to mail. 11
yakpang	약방	drugstore 10-D
yaksok yaksok-ha-ta (yaksok-hæ)	약속 약속 하다: 약속 해	appointment, date, promise 17 promises, makes an appointment 17-N
yachə	야채	vegetable 13
yangnyem	양념	seasoning 13
yangmal	양말	sock(s), stocking(s) 4-D
yangpok	양복	suit(s) 4-D
yangsik	양식	western food 12-D
yangsikcəm	양식점	western restaurant 13
yek	역	railroad station 3
yeki	여기	here, this place 2-D
yeki e Yeki e issimnita. Yeki issimnita.	여기에 여기에 있읍니다. 여기 있읍니다.	here [It]'s here. 2-D Here you are! 5

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

yəkwan	여관	inn, hotel 2
yəksa	역사	history 9-D
yətəl - yətə(l)p (Num K)	여덟 - 여덟	eight 5
yətile	여드레	eight days, the 8th day of the month 6-D
yətin (Num K)	여든	eighty 5
ye-tongsæng	여동생	younger sister 16-D
yəl (Num K)	열	ten 5
yəl-ta (Vt: yələ)	열다: 열어	opens 11-D
yələ (D)	여러	several, many 4
yələ kaci	여러 가지	several kinds 4
yəlim	여름	summer 15
yəlhil	열흘	ten days, the 10th day of the month 6-D
yənphil	연필	pencil 2-D
yənsip	연습	practice 9
yənsip-ha-ta (Vt: yənsip-hæ)	연습 하다: 연습 해	practises 9-N
yənha-ta (Vi: yənhae)	연하다: 연해	is tender (meat) 13-D
Yəpose yo!	여보세요!	Hello there!, Say! 3
Yəposipsiyo!	여보십시오!	Hello there! 3-N (see <u>Yəpose yo.</u>)
yəph	옆	the side 2
yəph e	옆에	beside, (near)by 2
Sichəng yəph e issimnita.	시청 옆에 있읍니다.	[It] ₂ 's next to the City Hall.
yəses (Num K)	여섯	six 5

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

yesse	여새	six days, the 6th day of the month 6-D
yeca	여자	woman 1-D
yehæng	여행	travelling, trip 15
yehæng-ha-ta (yehæng-hæ)	여행하다: 여행해	makes a trip, travels 15
yeng	영	zero 16 (see <u>kong</u>)
Yengə	영어	English 1-G
Yengkuk	영국	England 1-G
Yengkuk salam	영국 사람	Englishman 1-G
yengsa	영사	consul 7-D
yəngsakwan	영사관	consulate 7-D
Yeng-Han	영한	English-Korean, British-Korean 5
yənghwa	영화	movies 9
Yi	이	Lee (family name) 1-D
yo (Particle)	요	4-G
Chənman e yo.	천만에요.	Not at all. 2
yoil (PN)	요일	week-day
musin yoil	무슨 요일	what day of the week 6
yosæ	요새	these days 8
yocim	요즘	lately, these days 1
yongphum	용품	items 4
ilsang yongphum	일상 용품	daily necessities 4
yuk (Num Ch)	육	six 4
yukci	육지	the land (in contrast to sea) 15-D
yumyəng	유명	fame
yumyəng-han salam	유명한 사람	famous man 15-N

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

yeopo	예보	forecast 18
yeppi-ta (Vi: yeppe)	예쁘다: 예뻐	is pretty 5-D
yesun (Num K)	예순	sixty 5
W		
wa/kwa (P)	와/과	with, and 4
na wa kathi	나와 같이	with me 4
cheek kwa yenphil	책과 연필	book and pencil 4-G
waisyassi	와이셔츠	dress shirt 4-D
wanheeng (cha)	완행(차)	local (train) 10-D
wihem-ha-ta (Vi: wihem-hæ)	위험하다	is dangerous, is in danger 17-D
wel (C)	월	
Sam-wel	삼월	March 6
walle (Ad)	원태	originally, formerly 14
Welyoil	월요일	Monday 6-D
Wellam	월남	Vietnam 6-D
wen (C)	원	Won (Korean monetary unit) 4
o-sip wen	오십 원	W50 4
wenha-ta (Vt: wenhae)	원하다: 원해	wants 4
we-ta (Vt: wee <u>or</u> wewə)	외다: 외어: 외워	memorizes, learns by heart 17-D
we e	외에	besides, not only (see <u>pakk e</u>)
hyeng nim we e	형님외에	besides an older brother 14-N
wekyokwan	외교관	diplomat, foreign service personnel 3
wekuk	외국	foreign country
wekuke	외국어	foreign language 8-D
Wemupu	외무부	Ministry of Foreign Affairs (Korea) 3-1

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

wen (D)	온	left 2
wen ccok ilo	온쪽으로	to the left 2
wehwan	외화	foreign currency 16
wæ (Ad)	왜	why 6
Wæsik	왜식	Japanese food 12-D
	<u>k</u>	
ka (P)	가	2 (see <u>i</u>)
Hakkyo ka issimnita.	학교 가 있음니다.	There is a school. ('A school exists.') 2-G
ka-ta (Vi: ka)	가다: 가	goes 1
Annyenghi kasipsiyo.	안녕히 가십시오.	Good bye (to someone leaving). 1
Wen ccok ilo kasipsiyo.	온쪽으로 가십시오.	Go to the left. 2
kail	가을	autumn 15
kakkap-ta (Vi: kakkawə)	가깝다: 가까워	is near 3
kakkai	가까이	a nearby place 11
kakkai (Ad)	가까이	nearby, at the nearby place 3-D
kakkim (Ad)	가끔	sometimes 9
kath-ta (Vi: kathə)	같다: 같아	is the same 5-D
kathi (Ad)	같이	together, with
Na wa kathi kapsita.	나와 같이 가시다.	Lets go with me. 4
kathi (P)	같이	as, like
Nyuyok kathi	뉴욕같이	like New York 18-N
kalak	가락	spindle
son kalak	손가락	finger 13
pal kalak	발가락	toe 13
cəs kalak	젓가락	chopsticks 13
sut kalak	술가락	(Korean) spoon 13
kalu	가루	powder 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kalichi-ta (Vt: kalichiə)	가르치다: 가르쳐	teaches 1-D
kamsa	감사	gratitude
kamsa-ha-ta (Vi: kamsa-hæ)	감사하다: 감사해	is grateful 2
Kamsa-hamnita.	감사합니다.	Thank you. 2
kantan	간단	simplicity
kantan-ha-ta (Vi: kantan-hæ)	간단하다: 간단해	is simple 8-D
kancang	간장	(soy) sauce 13
kapang	가방	briefcase 13-D
kapyəp-ta (Vi: kapyəwə)	가볍다: 가벼워	is light (in weight) 10-D
kap(s)	가	price 4
cip kaps	집 가	rent, the price of a house 4-D
kapcaki (Ad)	갑자기	suddenly 17-D
kasim	가슴	chest 13-D
kacang (Ad)	가장	best, most
Kacang ppalimnita.	가장 빠릅니다.	[It]'s fastest. 10
kacok	가족	family, a family member 14
kaci (PN)	가지	sorts, kinds 4
Yale kaci ka issimnita.	여러 가지가 있읍니다.	[We] have several kinds. 4
kaci-ta (Vt: kacə)	가지다: 가지	possesses
kacə o-ta	가지 오다	bring (something) 12
kacə ka-ta	가지 가다	takes (something) 12-N
kacə iss-ta	가지 있다	has, is possessing 14-G
kangsa	강사	instructor 8-D
təhak kangsa	대학 강사	college instructor 8-D
kəi (Ad)	거의	almost, nearly 11
kəi ta	거의 다	almost (all) 11
kəki	거기	there, that place 3

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kəki esə	거기에서	there, at that place, from there 3-G
kəkçəng	걱정	worry
kəkçəng-ha-ta (Vi&Vt)	걱정하다	worries 17-D
kel-ta (Vt: kələ)	걸다: 걸어	hangs
cənhwa (lil) kəl-ta	전화를 걸다	makes a phone-call 16
kət-ta (Vi: kələ)	걸다: 걸어	walks 10
kələ ka-ta	걸어 가다	walks, goes on foot
Kələ kal kka yo?	걸어 갈까요?	Shall we walk? (in contrast to taking an automobile) 11
kələ se	걸어서	on foot 10
kəli	거리	street 17-D
kəlli-ta (Vi: kəllyə)	걸리다: 걸려	takes (time) 7
(Sikan i) han sikan kəllimnita.	(시간이) 한 시간 걸립니다.	It takes an hour. 7-D
kəm-ta (Vi: kəmə)	걸다: 걸어	is dark 4-D
kənmul	건물	building 2
kənne-ta (Vt: kənne)	건너다: 건너	crosses
kənnən kil	건너길	the street where you can cross 11-D
kil kənne	길 건너	across the street 11-D
kes (PN)	것	(thing) 2
ce kes	저것	that (thing) (over there) 2
Ce kes in muəs imnikka?	저것은 무었입니까?	What is that? 2
ko (P)	고	
əti e kanta ko mal- həssimnikka?	어디에 간다고 말해요니까?	Did [he] say where [he] is going? 17-G
koyangi	고양이	cat 5-G
koki	고기	meat 13
kot (Ad)	곧	soon, immediately 11
kotanha-ta (Vi: kotanhə)	고단하다: 고단해	is tired, is fatigued 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

koting (D)	고등	higher
koting hakkyo	고등 학교	high school 10-D
kolmok	골목	corner (of the street) 11-D
komap-ta (Vi: komawə)	고맙다: 고마워	is grateful 1
Komapsimnita.	고맙습니다.	Thank you. 1
komthang	곰탕	(soup with rice and meat) 12
koppu	고부	cup 13
kophi-ta (Vi: kophə)	고파다: 고파	('is empty')
Pæ ka kophimnita.	배가 고팝니다.	I'm hungry. 12
kos (PN)	곳	place
kakkaun kos	가까운 곳	a nearby place 12
kocang	고장	mechanical trouble
kocang-na-ta (Vi: kocang-na)	끄진나다	is out of order 17-D
kochi-ta (Vt: kochie)	고치다	fixes, repairs 17-D
kochu	고추	red pepper 13
kochu kalu	고추 가루	(red pepper powder) 13
kohyang	고향	home town, native town 14
Kohyang i eti ise yo?	고향이 어디이세요?	Where do you come from? (H) 14
kong	공	zero 16
kong	공	ball 16-D
kongwən	공원	park 2-D
kongmuwən	공무원	civil servant 7-D
kongpo	공보	public information 2
kongpowən	공보원	information office 2
Mikuk Kongpowən	미국 공보원	USIS 2
kongpokwan	공보관	information officer 7-G
kongpu	공부	studying 1
kongpu-ha-ta (kongpu-hæ)	공부하다: 공부해	studies 1

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kongcang	공장	factory 18-D
kongchae	공책	notebook 4-D
ku (Num Ch)	구	nine 4
kuk	국	soup 13
kukyang	구경	sightseeing, show 9
Kukmuseng	국무성	State Department (U.S.) 13-D
Kukpangpu	국방부	Ministry of National Defence (Korea) 13-D
Kukpangseng	국방성	the Defense Department (U.S.) 13-D
kukcang	국장	bureau chief 16-D
kukce	국제	international 9
Kukce Kikcang	국제국장	International Theatre 9
Kukhwe	국회	National Assembly, Congress, Parliament 13-D
kutu	구두	shoe(s) 4-D
Kulapha	구파파	Europe 6-D
kulim	구름	cloud
kulim i kki-ta	구름이 끄다	clouds up 18-D
kunin	군인	soldier, military man 7-D
kunte	군대	military 7
ki (D)	그	that, the 2-G
ki kes	그것	that (thing), it 2
Ki kes in yekwan imnita.	그것은 예관입니다.	It's an inn. 2
kikcang	극장	theatre 3-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kiləh-ta (Vi: <u>kilæ</u> or kiləhæ)	그 ^을 <u>다</u> : 그 ^래 : 그 ^릭 ^해	is so, is such 1
Kilehsimnita.	그 ^을 ^습 <u>니</u> <u>다</u> .	It's so., That's right. 1
Kilehsimnikka?	그 ^을 ^습 <u>니</u> <u>까</u> ?	Is that so?, Is that right? 1
kiləm (Ad)	그 ^런 ^데	then, if so 4 (see <u>kilyəmyən</u>)
kiləna (Ad)	그 ^런 <u>나</u>	but, however 5
kilən kes	그 ^런 <u>것</u>	such a thing 8
kilənte	그 ^런 <u>데</u>	by the way 8
kiləha-ta (Vi: <u>kiləhæ</u>)	그 ^릭 ^하 <u>다</u> : 그 ^릭 ^해	is so, does so 4 (see <u>kiləh-ta</u>)
kiləhke (Ad)	그 ^릭 <u>게</u>	so, in such a way 9
kiləmyən (Ad)	그 ^릭 <u>면</u>	if so, then 5 (see <u>kiləm</u>)
kilehci man	그 ^릭 <u>지</u> <u>만</u>	however, nevertheless 9
kilæsə	그 ^래 <u>서</u>	therefore, so 9
kilis	그 ^릇	container, dish 13
kili (Ad)	그 ^리	(not) so, like that 4
Kili pissaci anhsimnita.	그 ^리 비 ^싸 ^싸 ^지 아 ^습 <u>니</u> <u>다</u> .	[It]'s not so expensive. 4
kilikə (Ad)	그 ^리 <u>고</u>	and 5
kilim	그 ^림	picture, painting 4-D
kilphi	그 ^파	two days after tomorrow 6-D
kilsse (Ad)	그 ^撕 <u>세</u>	well, maybe 4
Kilsse yo.	그 ^撕 <u>세</u> <u>요</u> .	Well. 4
kimantu-ta (Vi: <u>kimantwə</u>)	그 ^만 <u>두</u> <u>다</u> : 그 ^만 <u>두</u>	stops (doing), quits 11-D
Kimyoil	금 ^요 <u>일</u>	Friday 6-D
kimnyən	금 ^년	this year 6-D
kinmu	그 ^무	(paid) service

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kinmu-ha-ta (Vi: kinmu-hæ)	근무 하다: 근무 해	works, is employed 8
kiphaeng(cha)	급행(차)	express (train) 10-D
kice (Ad)	그저	just 1
Kice kiləhsimnita.	그저 그림습니다.	Just so so. 1
kicəkke	그저께	the day before yesterday 4-D
kitali-ta (Vt: kitaliə)	기다리다: 기다려	waits (for) 9
Kitalinin kəs i cohkessimnita.	기다리는 것이 좋겠습니다.	[You]'d better wait. ('That you wait will be good.') 11
kil	길	street, road 2-D
ki(l)-ta (Vi: kile)	길다: 길어	is long, is lengthy 10-D
Kim	김	(a family name) 1
Kim Kisu	김 기수	(a full name) 1
Kimchi	김치	(pickled vegetable) 13-D
kipun	기분	feeling 13
kisa	기사	article, column 17-D
kisangtæ	기상대	weather bureau, weatherman 18
kisuksa	기숙사	dormitory 13-D
kica	기자	reporter 8-D
sinmun kica	신문 기자	journalist 8-D
kicha	기차	train 7-G
kihu	기후	climate, weather 15
kihwe	기회	chance, opportunity 16-D
kæ (C)	개	
Yənphil han kæ cuse yo.	연필 한 개 주세요.	Please give a pencil. 5-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

ke	개	dog 5-G
kæi-ta (Vi: kæie)	개이다: 개여	(weather) clears up 18
kwa (PN)	과	department, section
Wehwan Kwa	외환과	the Foreign Currency Department 16
kwanha-ta (Vi: kwanhæ)	관하다: 관해	is concerned
kwanhæ se	관해서	concerning, about 17 (see <u>tehæ se</u>)
sənsəng e kwanhæ se	선생에 관해서	about you 17
kwacang	과장	department chief 16-D
kw	귀	ear 13
kwa (P)	과	with, and 4 (see <u>wa</u>)
kwail	과일	fruit 13
kwasil	과실	fruit 13
kwən (C)	권	volume of
Yəngə chək tu kwən	영어 책 두 권	two English books 5-G
kwənchanh-ta (Vi: kwənchanhæ)	괜찮다: 괜찮아	is OK, is alright 1
(Aniyo), kwənchanhsimnita.	아니요, 괜찮습니다.	Not at all., That's OK., It's not bad. 1
kyəul	겨울	winter 15
kyəlan	계란	egg 13 (see <u>talkyal</u>)
kyəngchal	경찰	police
kyəngchallkwan	경찰관	policeman 8-D
kyəngchalse	경찰서	police station 10-D
kyəlhon	결혼	marriage
kyəlhon-ha-ta (Vi: kyəlhon-hæ)	결혼하다: 결혼해	gets married, has a wedding 14

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kyanghem	경험	experience 18-D
kyesi-ta (Vi: kyesiə)	계시다: 계서	is, exists, stays (honored) 1 (see <u>iss-ta</u>)
Annyenghi kyesipsiyo.	안녕히 계십시오.	Good bye (to someone staying). 1
kyesok	계속	continuation
kyesok-ha-ta (Vi: kyesok-hə)	계속 하다: 계속 해	continues, lasts 18
kyehwek	계획	plans 18
T̄ngsan-hal kyehwek imnita. 등산 할 계획입니다.	등산 할 계획입니다.	[I]'m planning to hike. 18
kyothong	교통	traffic, transportation 10-D
Kyothong i p̄encaphamnita.	교통이 번잡합니다.	The traffic is jammed. 10-D
kyosu	교수	professor 8-D
kyosil	교실	classroom 2-D
kyocang	교장	principal (of school) 16-D
kyohwansu	교환수	telephone operator 16
kyohwe	교회	church 10-D
<u>kk</u>		
kka (DN)	까	
Kal kka yo?	까까요?	Shall we go? 5
ssani kka	싸니까	because [it]'s cheap 12
kkamah-ta (Vi: kkamee)	까마다: 까매	is black 4-N
kkaman sæk	까만색	black color 4-D
kkaci (P)	까지	as far as, to, until, by 7
Mikuk kkaci	미국 까지	as far as America 7
næil kkaci	내일 까지	by tomorrow 7-G
kkok (Ad)	꼭	exactly, without fail, by all means 15
kkolphi	골프	golf 18-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kkith	끝	the end, the ending
kkith-machi-ta (Vt: kkith-machie)	끝 마치다: 끝 마쳐	finishes, completes 14-D
kkith-na-ta (Vi: kkith-na)	끝 나다: 끝 나	ends, is over 6-D
kkith-næ-ta (Vt: kkith-næ)	끝 내다: 끝 내	finishes, completes 8-D
kkækkitha-ta (Vi: kkækkithæ)	깨끗하다: 깨끗해	is clean 18-G

kh

khal	칼	knife 5-D
kho	코	nose 13
khokhakhola	코카콜라	coca cola 12-D
khokhoa	코코아	cocoa 12-D
khong	콩	beans 12
khi-ta (Vi: khæ)	크다: 커	is big 5
khin chek	큰 책	a big book 5
khi-ta (Vi: khæ)	크다: 커	grows up, 15-D
khiki	크기	size 16-D
khike (Ad)	크게	loudly 16
khi	키	height (of person) 18
khi ka khi-ta	키가 크다	is tall 18-D

n

na	나	I 1 (see <u>ce</u>)
na e	나의	my 1 (see <u>ce e</u>)
na-ta (Vi: na)	나다: 나	comes out
Hæ ka nanta.	해가 난다.	Sun shines. 18-D
Khin il nassimnita.	くん イル ナシムニタ。	('[I] have a big problem.') 18

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

na/ina (P)	나/이나	
ppəsɪ na cəncha	버스나 전차	bus or streetcar 10
muəs ina	무엇이나	anything 12
nai	나이	age 14
Nai ka manhsimnita.	나이가 많습니다.	[He] is old. 14
Nai ka cəksimnita.	나이가 적습니다.	[He] is young. 14
na o-ta (Vt-Vi: na wa)	나오다: 나와	comes out, graduates 7-G
ənce hakkyo lɪl na wassimnikka?	언제 학교를 나 왔습니까?	When did you finish school? 15
na ka-ta (Vi: na ka)	나가다: 나가	goes out 9
nakksi-cil	낚시질	fishing
nakksi-cil-ha-ta	낚시질 하다	does fishing 18-D
nal	나	day 6-D
nala	나라	country, nation 10-D
nalssi	나씨	weather 15 (see <u>ilki</u>)
Nam-Mi	남미	South America 6-D
Nampu	남부	the Southern part, the South (U.S.) 15-D
namphən	남편	husband 14-D
Nam-Han	남한	South Korea 6-D
namtongsæng	남동생	younger brother 16-D
nappita (Vi: nappə)	나쁘다: 나뻐	is bad 4-N
nac	낮	daytime, noontime
nac e	낮에	in the daytime 6-D
nac-ta (Vi: nacə)	낮다: 낮여	is low 10-D
nah-ta (Vi: nahə)	낳다: 낳아	is born, gives a birth 15

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

nahil	나흘	four days, the 4th day of the month 6-D
ne	너	you (plain speech) 17-G
nei	너희	you (plural in plain speech) 17-G
nək (Num K) nək tal pan	너 너 달 반	(see <u>ne(s)</u>) four months and a half 8-D
nəlp-ta (Vi: nəlpə)	넓다: 넓어	is wide 5-D
nəmu (Ad) Nəmu nəcsimnita.	너무	too
nəmu nəmu	너무 늦습니다.	[It]'s too late. 11
nəngnəkha-ta (Vi: nəngnəkhæ)	넉넉하다: 넉넉해	is enough 13
nəh-ta (Vt: nəhə)	넣다: 넣어	puts in, deposits 16-N (see <u>noh-ta</u>)
nola(h)-ta (Vi: nolə) nolan sək	노랗다: 노태	is yellow 4
nolan sək	노란색	yellow color 4
nolla-ta (Vi: nolla)	놀라다: 놀라	is surprised 13-G
noph-ta (Vi: nophə)	높다: 높아	is high 10-D
noh-ta (Vt: noha) Cəkə nohassimnita.	놓다: 놓아	places, puts 16-G (see <u>tu-ta</u>)
	적어 놓았습니다.	I jot it down (for future use). 16-G
nongpu	농부	farmer 17-D
nongcang	농장	farm 15-D
nui	누이	sister (for male siblings)
nui tongsəng	누이 동생	younger sister 14
nuku	누구	who, what person 3
nuka	누가	who (subject) 3-N
nuku ləl	누구를	whom 3-N

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

nuləh-ta (Vi: nulæ)	누 ^을 다: 누 태	is yellowish 4-D
nun	눈	eyes 13
nun	눈	snow
Nun i omnita.	눈 이 읍 니다.	It snows. 15
nunim	누님	older sister (of male) 14-D
nil (Ad)	늘	all the time, always 9
nili-ta (Vi: nilyə)	느 ^을 다: 느 떡	is slow 10-D
ni(l)k-ta (Vi: nilkə)	늙다: 늙 어	is old, is aged 14-N
nin (P)	는	as for 1 (see <u>in</u>)
nic-ta (Vi: nice)	늦다: 늦 어	is late 11
nicke/nikke/ (Ad)	늦 게	late 10-D
nim	님	sweet-heart, lover 14-N
nim (PN)	님	
pumo nim	부모님	parents (honored) 14-N
ne (Ad)	네	yes 1
Ne?	네?	Beg your pardon!, Pardon me. 16-N
Ne....?	네....?	Is that right? 18
ne ka	네 가	you (subject in plain speech) 17-G
nekthai	넥타이	neck-tie 4-D
ne(s) (Num K)	네	four 5
ne kəli	네 거리	crossroad 11-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

næ ka	내가	I (subject) 1 (see <u>ce ka</u>)
næil	내일	tomorrow 4-D
næli-ta (Vi: næliə)	내려다: 내려	gets off, descends 7-N
næliə cu-ta (Vt: næliə cuə)	내려 주다: 내려 주어	drops [someone] off
Næliə cusipsiyo.	내려 주십시오.	Please drop [me] off. 11
næliə o-ta (Vi: næliə wa)	내려 오다: 내려 와	comes down 7-G
næliə ka-ta (Vi: næliə ka)	내려 가다: 내려 가	goes down 7-G
nænæ (Ad)	내내	all the way
achim nænæ	아침 내내	all morning 18-D
næ-nyən	내년	next year 6-D
næphikhin	내프킨	napkins 13-D
næsən	내선	(telephone-line) extension 17-D
nængmyən	냉면	(cold noodle) 12

	<u>t</u>	
ta	다	all 9
taim	다음	next, next time 5
taim cip	다음 집	the next door 5
tat-ta (Vt: tate)	닫다: 닫어	closes 11-D
ta(l)-ta (Vi: tale)	달다: 달어	is sweet, is sugary 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

tal	다	month, moon 6
tali-ta (Vi: talla) talin kës	다르다: 다른 것	is different 5 different one, other one 5
tali	다리	leg 13
tali	다리	bridge 10-D
ta(l)k	닭	chicken
ta(l)k koki	닭고기	chicken 13
talkyal	단가	egg 13 (see <u>kyalan</u>)
tampæ	담배	cigarettes, tobacco 4-D
tane	단어	word 17-D
tani-ta (Vi: tanië) Hakkyo e tanimnita.	다니다: 다녀 학교에 다녀나다.	attends (school) [I]'m attending school. 8
tapang	다방	tearoom 3-D
tases (Num K)	다섯	five 5
tasi (Ad) Tasi (hanpën) malssim hasipsiyo.	다시 다시 한 번 말씀 하십시오.	again 3 Please say it again. 3
tassæ	다섯	five days, the 5th day of the month 6-D
tah-ta (Vi: taha)	닿다: 닿아	arrives 6-N
tahëng	다행	fortunate thing
tahëng-ha-ta (Vi: tahëng-hë) A, tahëng imnita.	다행하다: 다행해	is fortunate 16 Oh, that's fortunate. 16
te (Ad) Te ssamnita. te ssan kës	더 더 싸니다. 더싼 것	more 5 [It]'s cheaper. 5 cheaper one 5

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

tekpun	덕분	favor, mercy 1
tekpun e	덕분에	(at your favor) 1
Tekpun e cal cinamnita.	덕분에 잘 지냅니다.	I'm doing fine, thank you. 1
tel (Ad)	덜	less
tel əlyəwn mal	덜 어려운 말	(a) less difficult language 5-G
tep-ta (Vi: təwə)	덥다: 더위	is hot 13
to (P)	도	also, too 1, even though 10
puin to	부인도	your wife also 1
na to	나도	me too 4
isse to	이어도	even though there is 10
toyaci	도야지	pig
toyaci koki	도야지 고기	pork 13 (see <u>tweci</u>)
Tokil	독일	Germany 1-D
Tokile	독일어	German (language) 8-D
tol-ta (Vi: tola)	돌다: 돌아	turns, make a turn 11-D
tola o-ta (Vi: tola wa)	돌아 오다: 돌아 와	comes back 7-G
tola ka-ta (Vi: tola ka)	돌아 가다: 돌아 가	goes back 7 passes away 11-G
tola po-ta (Vt: tola pwa)	돌아 보다: 돌아 봐	looks back 12-G
tollita (Vi: tollie)	돌리다: 돌리	rotates, switches, turns around 16
ton	돈	money 7-G
top-ta (Vt: towa)	돕다: 도와	helps
towa cu-ta (Vt: towa cuə)	도와 주다: 도와 주어	gives help, gives a helping hand 7-G
tosəkwān	도서관	library 10-D
tosi	도시	city, urban community 10-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

tohweci	도회지	metropolitan area, city 15-D
tongan (PN) Yete(l)p sikan tongan il-hamnita.	동안 여덟 시간 동안 있으니다.	for, during, while [I] work for eight hours. 6
Kulapha e issnín tongan	구 타파에 있는 동안	while [I] was in Europe 15
tongyo	동료	colleague, co-worker 13-D
Tongpu	동부	the East (U.S.), the eastern part 15-D
tongmul	동물	animal
tongmulwən	동물원	zoo ('animal house') 10-D
tongsæng	동생	a younger sibling 14
tu(l) (Num K)	둘	two 5
tu-ta (Vt: tuə) tuə iss-ta Ceke tuəssimnita.	두 다: 두 어 두 어 있다 적어 두었읍니다.	places, puts is being placed 14-G [I] wrote it down (for future use). 16-G
til (PN) ki kəs til ta til	들 그 거들 다들	they, those (things) 10 all, everybody 14
ti(l)-ta (Vt: tile) əsə tisipsiyo.	들다: 들어 어서 드십시오.	eats or drinks (food), lifts Please help yourself. 13
tit-ta (Vt: tile)	들다: 들어	listens to, hears 9
tile o-ta (Vi: tile wa).	들어 오다: 들어 와	comes in 7-G
tile ka-ta (Vi: tile ka)	들어 가다: 들어 가	goes in 7-G
tile ka po-ta (Vi: tile ka pwa)	들어 가 보다: 들어 가 봐	enters and sees, goes in to see 12-G
tilli-ta (Vt: tillə)	들르다: 들썩	stops by, drops in 4
tilli-ta (Vi: tillya)	들리다: 들썩	is heard, is audible 16

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

tinci/itinci (P)	든지: 이든지	(see <u>itinci</u>)
muəs itinci	무언이든지	anything 12-G
Yəngə tinci Tokile	영어든지 독일어	either English or German 12-G
ting (PN)	등	and so on, etc. 12
ting	등	back
Ting i aphimnita.	등이 아파니다.	I have a backache. 13
tingsan	등산	hiking
tingsan-ha-ta (Vi: tingsan-hæ)	등산하다: 등산해	hikes 18
te (PN)	데	place 10-D
kakkaun te	가까운 데	nearby place 12
tæ (C)	대	
catongcha tu tæ	자동차 두 대	two automobiles 6-G
tæk	댁	your home, home (honored) 4
tækæ (Ad)	대개	usually, generally 6
tætanhi (Ad)	대단히	very 2
tæthongyeng	대통령	the President 8-D
tælo (P)	대로	
maim tælo	마음대로	as one pleases, as you like 16-D
ki tælo	그대로	as it is
Tæman	대만	Formosa, Taiwan 6-D
tæmun	대문	gate 11-D
tæsa	대사	ambassador 7-G
tæsakwan	대사관	embassy 2
tæhak	대학	college 8-D
tæhakwən	대학원	graduate school 15-G
tæhakwən kongpu	대학원 공부	graduate studies 15-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

tæhakkyo	대학교	university 10-D
tæha-ta (Vt: tæhæ) kihu e tæhæ sə	대하다: 대해 기후에 대해서	faces, confronts with concerning (or about) the weather 15
Tæhan Minkuk	대한민국	the Republic of Korea 17-D
twe-ta (Vi: twee) Sam nyen tweessimnita. Sænsæng i tweessimnita.	되다: 되어 삼년 되었을 니다. 선생이 되었을 니다.	becomes, has been It's been 3 years. 8 [He] has become a teacher. 8-N
tweci	돼지	pig
tweci koki	돼지 고기	pork ('pig meat') 13
twi	뒤	back, rear 2-D
twi e	뒤에	behind, in back of
Cip twi e issimnita.	집 뒤에 있음 니다.	[It]'s behind the house. 2-D
ttattitha-ta (Vi: ttattithæ)	따뜻하다: 따뜻한 tt	is warm 15
ttal	딸	daughter 14
(ttala) we-ta	따라 외다	memorizes, learns by heart 17-D (see <u>we-ta</u>)
ttanim	딸님	your daughter (honored) 14-N
ttæna-ta (Vt: ttæna) Ttænalyæko hamnita.	떠나다: 떠나 떠나려고 합니다.	leaves 6 [I]'s going to leave. 7
tto (Ad)	또	again 1
Tto pwepkessimnita. Tto talin kæs i philyo-hamnikka?	또 뵙겠습니다. 또 다른 것의 필요 합니다?	So long., See you again. 1 Do you need anything else? 5
ttokttokha-ta (Vi: ttokttokhæ)	똑똑하다: 똑똑한 tt	is intelligent, is bright 17-G
ttokpalo (Ad)	똑바로	straight, straight ahead 3
ttikæp-ta (Vi: ttikæwæ)	뜨겁다: 뜨거워	is hot (solid, liquid) 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

tte (PN)	띠	time, occasion, when
ki tte (e)	그 띠(에)	(at) that time 7
tte tte lo	띠띠로	occasionally 9-D
hakkyo e kal tte (e)	학교에 가띠(에)	when [I] go to school 14-G
ttwi-ta (Vi: ttwiə)	뛰다: 뛰어	runs 18-G
Tækæ ttwiə kamnita.	태개 뛰어 가니다.	[I] usually run. ('I usually run and go.') 14-G

tha-ta (Vt: tha)	타다: th 타	rides, gets on 7
thako ka-ta	타고 가다	takes (bus, taxi, etc.) 10
thaiphı	타이프	typing
thaiphı congı	타이프 종이	typing paper 5
thek	턱	chin, jaw 13-D
Thoyoil	토요일	Saturday 6-D
thongyakkwan	통역관	interpreter 8-D
thonghwa	통화	telephone conversation
Thonghwa cung imnita.	통화 중입니다.	The line is busy. 16
thim	틈	free time, spare time 9
thilli-ta (Vi: thilliə)	틀리다: 틀썩	is wrong 18
thipi	티비	television 14-G
thæu-ta (Vt: thæwə)	택우다: 택의	gives a ride (to someone), loads 7-N
thæwə cu-ta (Vt: thæwə cuə)	택의 주다: 택의 주어	gives [someone] a ride 11-N
Thækuk	태국	Tailand 6-D
thækssi	택시	taxi 7-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

1

lako (P)	라고	
'Meli ka aphimnita.' lako mal-hessimnita.	미리 가 아프 니다. 라고 [He] said, "I have a headache." 말 헤스 니다.	18-G
lato/ilato (P)	라도 / 이라도	18-G
mues ilato	무엇이라도	whatever [it] is 18-G
na lato	나라도	even I 18-G
lætio	래디오	radio 9-D
lo (P)	로	to, as, by 2 (see <u>ilo</u>)
Hakkyo lo kamnita.	학교로 가니다.	[I] go to school. 2-G
wekyokwan ilo	외교관으로	as a diplomat 7
pæ lo	배로	by boat 7
lil (P)	를	l (see <u>il</u>)
m		
malm	마음	mind, heart 13-D
malm tælo	마음대로	as one pleases 16-D
moksa	목사	minister (of church) 16-D
mat (D)	마	first
mat atil	마 아들	the first son 14-G
mata (P)	마다	every, each
nal mata	나마다	everyday 8
mal	말	language, utterance, speech, word 1
Hankuk mal	한국 말	Korean (language) 1
mal-ha-ta (Vi-Vt: mal-hæ)	말하타: 말해	speaks 1-D
Sacən mal imnikka?	사전 말 익니까?	Do you mean a dictionary? 4
mal	말	horse 5-G
ma(l)-ta (Vt: male)	말타: 말여	not do 11-G
Thaci mapsita.	하지 말시다.	Let's not ride. 11

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

Kaci masipsiyo.	가지 마십시오.	Don't go. 11-G
mal-i-ta (Vi: malle)	마르다: 막터	dries
Mok i malimnita.	목이 마른니다.	I'm thirsty. ("Throat is dry."). 12
mali (C)	마리	head of
mal ne mali	마 네 마리	four heads of horses, four horses 5-G
malk-ta (Vi: malkə)	맑다: 맑아	is clear (water, air, etc.) 18
man (Num Ch)	만	ten-thousands 4
man (P)	만	only, just
Mianhaci man	미안하지만	I'm sorry but... 9
Mekcu tu pyeng man kacə osipsiyo.	맥주 두 병만 가져 오십시오.	Please bring me just two bottles of beer. 12
manna-ta (Vt: manna)	만나다: 만나	meets 3
mannyanphil	만년필	fountain-pen 4-D
manh-ta (Vi: manhə)	맑다: 맑아	is plenty, are many 9
manhi (Ad)	많이	a lot, much 8-D
mas	맛	taste 13
mas i iss-ta (or coh-ta)	맛이 있다 (or 좋다)	is delicious 13
mas i eps-ta	맛이 없다	is tasteless 13
masi-ta (Vt: masye)	마시다: 마셔	drinks 10
mac-ta (Vi: macə)	맞다: 맞아	is correct, fits 18-N
mahn (Num K)	마흔	forty 5
mangnæ	마내	the last child 14-N
mangnæ atil	마내 아들	the last son 14-N
mæk-ta (Vt: mækə)	먹다: 먹어	eats 2-G
mækə po-ta (Vt: mækə pwa)	먹어 보다: 먹어 봐	tries (food) 7-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

me(l)-ta (Vi: mələ)	멀다: 멀어	is far 3
Yəki eṣə məmnikka?	여기에서 멀니까?	Is [it] far from here? 3
məli	머리	head, hair 13
məli ka coh-ta	머리가 좋다	has brain 13-D
məlli (Ad)	멀리	far away 11-N
məmul-ta (Vi: məmule)	머물다: 머물어	stays 6-D
məmchu-ta (Vt-Vi: məmchwə)	멈추다: 멈춰おく	stops (car, taxi, etc.) 11-D
mənce (Ad)	먼저	first of all, above all 10
mok	목	neck, throat 12
Mok i malimnita.	목이 마릅니다.	I'm thirsty. 12
Mok i aphimnita.	목이 아프니다.	I have a sore throat. 13
Mokyoil	목요일	Thursday 6
moli-ta (Vt: malla)	모르다: 모른다	doesn't know 3
mole	모레	the day after tomorrow 4-D
mom	몸	body 6
Mom i aphimnikka?	몸이 아파니까?	Are you sick? 6
mot (Ad)	못	cannot
Ilkci mot hamnita.	읽지 못 합니다.	[I] cannot read. 8
Mot kamnita.	못 갑니다.	[I] cannot go. 8-G
motu	모두	all, in all, altogether 14
moca	모자	hat, cap 4-D
mocala-ta (Vi: mocala)	모자타다: 모자타	is not enough 13
muəs	무엇	what (thing) 1
muəs ɯl	무엇을	what (as direct object) 1
mukəp-ta (Vi: mukəwə)	무겁다: 무거워	is heavy 10-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

muke	무기	weight 10-D
mul	물	water 12-D
mut-ta (Vt: mule)	물다: 물어	inquires
mule po-ta (Vt: mule pwa)	물어보다: 물어봐	inquires 2
mulken	물건	goods 9-D
mun	문	door, window 11
aph mun	앞문	the front door 11
munpəp	문법	grammar 10-D
munce	문제	problem 10-D
musin (D)	무슨	what kind of 4
musin seek	무슨 색	what color, what kind of color 4
munpangku	문방구	stationaries
munpangkucəm	문방구점	stationary shop 5
Mianhamnita.	미안합니다.	I'm sorry. 1
Mianhaci man	미안하지만	I'm sorry but... 9
Mikuk	미국	America, the United States 1
Mikuk salam	미국 사람	an American 1
Mikuk mal	미국 말	the American language 1-D
mit-ta (Vt: mite)	밀다: 밀어	trusts, believes 18-D
menyu	메뉴	menu 12
meal (Ad)	매일	everyday 9-D
mekcu	맥주	beer 12
mæp-ta (Vi: mæwə)	맵다: 맵여	is (spicy) hot 13
meccuill	매주 일	every week 9-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

myənuli	며느리	daughter-in-law ('son's wife') 14-D
myəch/myət/ (D)	몇	how many, what
lyca ka myəch kæ issimnikka?	의자가 몇 개 있습니까?	How many chairs are there? 5-G
myəch-si	몇 시	what time 6
myəchil	몇 치	what day, some days, how many days
Onil i myəchil ici yo?	오늘 이 몇 치 이지요?	What's today's date? 6
myəngnyəng	명령	(executive) order 13-D

p		
Pak	박	Park (family name) 1-D
pakmulkwan	박물관	museum 10-D
paksa	박사	doctor (of philosophy) 16-D
pakk	밖	the outside 14-N
pakk e	밖에	outside, to the outside 16-D
Hankuk mal pakk e molimnita.	한국 마을 밖에 모릅니다.	I know only Korean. ('Outside of Korean, I don't know.') 16-G
pakku-ta (Vt: pakkwə)	바꾸다: 바꾸	exchanges, changes
Kim Sənsəng eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo.	김 선생에게 좀 바꾸 주십시오.	May I talk to Mr. Kim (on the phone)? 16
pata	바다	sea 16-D
pat-ta (Vt: patə)	받다: 받아	receives, gets 6
pal	발	foot 13
pal kalak	발가락	toe 13
pala-ta (Vt: palə)	바라다: 바래	hopes, wishes 8-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

pala po-ta (Vt: pala pwa)	바라 보다: 바라 봐	looks over (from the distance) 12-G
palam	바람	wind
Palam i pu(lí)mnita.	바람이 불니다.	It is windy. 15
palo (Ad)	바로	just, right 2
palo aph e	바로 앞에	right ahead 2
Palo aph e issimnita.	바로 앞에 있습니다.	[It]'s right up ahead. 2
palk-ta (Vi: palkə)	黠다: 끝어	is light 10-D
pam	밤	night 4-D
pan	반	half 6-D
panto	반도	peninsula
Panto Hwesa	반도 회사	Bando Company 8
pap	밥	rice (cooked), meal 12
pappita (Vi: pappe)	바쁘다: 바쁘	is busy 9
pang	방	room 4-D
pangsong	방송	broadcasting
pangsongkuk	방송국	broadcasting station, radio station 11-D
panghak	방학	school vacation 6-D
pəl (C)	벌	
yangpok tu pəl	양복 두 벌	two suits 5-G
pəlssə (Ad)	벌써	already 6
pən (PN)	번	time, number
i pən	이번	this time 7
han pən	한 번	once 7
myəch pən	몇 번	what number, how many times 16
pəncap-ha-ta (Vi: pəncap-hæ)	번잡하다: 번잡해	is crowded 10

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

pənho	번호	number 16
cən̥hwa pənho	전화 번호	telephone number 16
po-ta (Vt: pwa)	보다: 보	looks at, sees 4
poi-ta (Vi: poyə)	보이다: 보여	is seen, is visible 16
poyə cu-ta (Vt: poyə cuə)	보여 주다: 보여 주어	shows 5
pokcap	복잡	complexity
pokcap-ha-ta (Vi: pokcap-hə)	복잡하다: 복잡해	is complicated 8-D
pota (P)	보다	than
Hankuk mal i Tokil mal pota tə əlyəpsimnita.	한국 말이 토클 말 보다 더 어렵습니다.	Korean is more difficult than German. 8
pothong	보통	ordinary, ordinairly
pothong samu	보통 사무	ordinary office work 8
pom	봄	spring (season) 15
ponə-ta (Vt: ponə)	보내다: 보내	sends 11-D
ponkuk	본국	home country 15-D
pontho	본토	mainland 15-D
pongkip	봉급	pay, salary 13-D
puəkh	부엌	kitchen 16-D
puin	부인	lady, your wife, Mrs. _____. 1
pukin (PN)	부근	vicinity 10
i pukin	이 부근	this vicinity, around here 10
puk-pu	북부	the Northern part 15-D
Puk-Han	북한	North-Korea 6-D
putilep-ta (Vi: putilewə)	부드럽다: 부드러워	is tender, is soft 13-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

puthak	부탁	request of a favor, a favor
Chwe Sənsəng (eke) com puthak-hamnita.	최 선생(에게) 좀 부탁합니다.	May I speak to Mr. Choe, please? 16
Chinku ekesə puthak il patəssimnita.	친구에게서 부탁을 받았습니다.	My friend asked me of a favor. ('I received a request of favor from a friend.') 18-D
puthə (P)	부터	from
cikim puthə	지금부터	from now on 8-D
pul	불	fire, light
pul-koki	불고기	Korean style barbecue ('fire meat') 13
pu(l)-ta (Vi: pule) Palam i pu(l)i)mrita.	불타: 불어 바람이 불니다.	blows It's windy. ('Wind blows.') 15
puli-ta (Vt: pulle) nolæ lɪl puli-ta	부르다: 불티 노래를 부르다	calls 18 sings a song 18-N
pu(l)k-ta (Vi: pulke)	붉다: 붉어	is reddish 4-D
Pullansə	불란서	France 1
Pullansə mal	불란서 말	French (language) 8-D
Pullansə salam	불란서 사람	Frenchman 1-D
Pullansəe	불란서어	French 8-D
pulphyən	불편	inconvenience, discomfort
pulphyən-ha-ta (Vi: pulphyən-hæ)	불편하다: 불편해	is inconvenient, is uncomfortable 10-D
pumo	부모	parents 14
pun (PN)	분	person (honored) 3
ki pun	그분	he ('that person') 3
sənsəng se pun	선생 세 분	three teachers 5-G
pun (C)	분	minute 6
puncuha-ta (Vi: puncuhæ)	분주하다: 분주해	is busy, is hectic 8
Pusan	부산	Pusan 1-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

puca	부자	a rich man 17-G
pucok	부족	insufficiency, lack
pucock-ha-ta (Vi: pucok-hæ)	부족하다: 부족해	is not enough, is insufficient 13
puchi-ta (Vt: puchiə)	부친다: 부쳐	mails, ships 11
pi	비	rain
Pi ka omnita.	비가 옵니다.	It rains. ('Rain comes.') 8-G
pilli-ta (Vt: pillyə)	빌리다: 빌려	borrow 7-G
pillyə cu-ta (Vt: pillyə cuə)	빌려주다: 빌려 주어	loans, lends 7-G
pise	비서	secretary 7-G
pisitha-ta (Vi: pisithæ)	비슷하다: 비슷해	is similar 15
pissa-ta (Vi: pissa)	비싸다: 비싸	is expensive 4
pihangki	비행기	airplane 7
pihanggang	비행장	airport 7-D
pæ	배	ship 7
pæ	배	stomach
Pæ ka kophimnita.	배가 고풀니다.	I'm hungry. 12
pæ (PN)	배	times
i (or tu) pæ	이 (두) 배	two times 7-G
pæu-ta (Vt: pæwə)	배우다: 배워	learns 1-D
pæk (Num Ch)	백	hundred 4
pekhwacəm	백화점	department store 2
pyallo (Ad)	벼로	(not) particularly
Pyallo manhi məkci anhessimnita.	벼로 많이 먹지 않았습니다.	I didn't eat so much. 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

pyənhosa	변호사	lawyer 8-D
pyəng	병	sickness, disease 15-G
pyəng i na-ta	병이 나다	gets sick 15-G
pyəng	병	bottle
pyəng (C)	병	bottle of 12
pyəngwən	병원	hospital 10-D
pwep-ta (Vi: pwewə)	봄다: 봄이	('meets')
Chaim pwepsimnita.	처음 봄습니다.	(I'm glad to meet you.) ('I see you for the first time.') 1
Tto pwepkessimnita.	또 봄겠습니다.	See you again., So long. 1

pp

ppata	버터	butter 13-D
ppalita (Vi: ppalle)	버르다: 버터	is fast 10
ppalli (Ad)	빠르다	quickly, fast 16-D
ppang	빵	bread 13-D
ppes1	버스	bus 7-G
ppilu	버루	beer 13
ppyam	뺨	cheek 13

ph

phal (Num Ch)	파	eight 4
phal	팔다	arm 13
pha(1)-ta (Vt: phale)	파다: 팔다	sells 4
phala(h)-ta (Vi: phalæ) phalan seek	파란다: 파란색	is blue 4-N blue color 4-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

phansa	판사	judge 16-D
phæk (Ad)	퍽	quite, very 9
phuli-ta (Vi: phulile)	푸르다: 푸르러	is bluish 4-D
phungsok	풍속	custom 15-G
phiu-ta (Vt: phiwə)	피우다: 피워	smokes
Kim in tampæ lɪl phiuko siphə hæ yo.	김은 담배를 피우고 싶어 해요.	Kim wants to smoke. 9-D
phikon	피곤	fatigue
phikon-ha-ta (Vi: phikon-hæ)	피곤하다: 피곤해	is tired 13
philo	피로	fatigue
philo-ha-ta (Vi: philo-hæ)	피로하다: 피로해	is fatigued 13
philyo	필요	need, necessity
philyo-ha-ta (Vi: philyo-hæ)	필요하다: 필요해	is necessary, is needed 5
phen	펜	pen 5
phyən (PN)	편	side, way
ənɪ phyən	어느 편	which way 10
phyənci	편지	letter, mail 9-D
phyənha-ta (Vi: phyənħæ)	편하다: 편해	is comfortable 10-D
phyo	표	ticket 14-G

s

sa (Num Ch)	사	four 4
sa-ta (Vt: sa) Sassə yo?	사다: 사 샀어요?	buys 4 Did [you] buy? 4
saep	사업	business, enterprise
saepka	사업가	business-man 16-D
saita	사이다	(a kind of soft drink) 12
sawi	사위	son-in-law ('daughter's husband') 14-D
sakən	사건	incident, trouble 17-D
sako	사고	accident 17-D
sa(l)-ta (Vi: sale)	살다: 삐어	lives 9-G
sal (C) han sal	살 한 살	year old 5-G one year old 14
salam	사람	person, man 1
salam (C) haksəng tu salam	사람 학생 두 사람	two students 5-G
salang	사랑	love 9-G
salang-ha-ta (Vt: salang-hə)	사랑하다: 사랑해	loves 9-G
sam (Num Ch)	삼	three 4
samu	사무	office work 6-D
samuwən	사무원	clerk, office worker 7-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

samusil	사무실	office 3-D
san	산	mountain 10-D
sanyang	사냥	hunting
sanyang ka-ta	사냥가다	goes hunting 18-D
sanpo	산보	a walk, a stroll
sanpo-ha-ta (Vi: sanpo-hæ)	산보하다: 산보해	takes a walk, strolls 9-D
sacang	사장	president of company 8-D
sacən	사전	dictionary 5
sachon	사촌	cousin 14-D
sahil	사흘	three days, the 3rd of the month 6
sangyəng	상영	showing of movies
sangyəng-ha-ta (Vt: sangyəng-hæ)	상영하다: 상영해	shows movies 9
Sangwən	상원	Senate (U.S.)
Sangwən iywən	상원 의원	Senator 16-D
sangkwān	상관	supervisor, boss 13-D
sangcəm	상점	store, shop 2-D
sə (P)	서	so, and so
kilæ sə	그택서	so, therefore 9
Seul	서울	Seoul (Capital of Korea) 1-G
seul	서울	capital 17-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

sək (Num K)	석	8-D (see <u>se(s)</u>)
sək tal	석 달	three months 8-D
səlhin (Num K)	서흔	thirty 5
səlthang	설탕	sugar 13
səm	섬	island 15-D
sənmul	선물	present, gift 13-G
sənsənha-ta (Vt: sənsənha)	선선하다: 선선해	is cool (air) 15
sənsəng	선생	teacher, you, Mr. 1-N
Səpu	서부	the West (U.S.), the western part 15-D
sə-ta (Vi: sə)	서다: 서	stands up, stops (walking, vehicles) 11-D
sə iss-ta	서 있다	is standing 14-G
so	소	cattle, cow 5-G
so koki	소고기	beef 13
sokim	소금	salt 13
sohki (Ad)	속히	quickly 16-D
soli	소리	noise, sound, voice
mal soli	말 소리	voice 16-D
salam soli	사람 소리	voices 16-D
pal soli	발 소리	foot steps 16-D
son	손	hand 13
son kalak	손가락	finger 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

sonnim	손님	customer, quest 13-D
sonnye	손녀	granddaughter 14-D
sonca	손자	grandson 14-D
sopangsa	소방서	fire station 11-D
sosik	소식	news, whereabout 15-G
sohakkyo	소학교	elementary school 10-D
su (DN)	수	
(Mal) hal su issimnita. Hal su əpsimnita.	(마) 할 수 있습 니다. 할 수 없습 니다.	[I] can speak. 8 [I] cannot do., I'm unable to do. 8-N
suəp	수업	class (work) 6-D
ənce suəp i kkith-namnikka?	언제 수업이 끝나니까?	When does the class end? 6-D
suyəng	수영	swimming 18-D
suyəng ka-ta	수영 가다	goes swimming 18-D
Suyoil	수요일	Wednesday 6-D
sukən	수건	towel 4
son sukən	손수건	handkerchief 4-D
sukce	숙제	homework 16-G
suto	수도	capital city 17-D
sut kalak	술 가락	(Korean) spoon 13
sul	술	liquor, wine 12-D
suchəp	수첩	address book 16

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

simu (Num K)	스무	twenty 5
simu nal	스무 날	twenty days 6-D
simul (Num K)	스물	twenty 5
sipki	습기	humidity 18-D
singkip	승급	promotion 13-D
si (D)	시	(husband's side)
si pumo	시부모	husband's parents 14-D
si apəci	시아버지	husband's father 14-D
si eməni	시어머니	husband's mother 14-D
si tongsæng	시동상	husband's younger siblings 14-D
si nui	시누이	husband's sister 14-D
si cip	시집	husband's family 14-D
si-ta (Vi: siə)	시타: 시어	is sour 13
siwe	시외	suburb, out skirt of city 10-D
sikan	시간	time, hour 6
myəch sikan	몇 시간	how many hours 6
Sikan i issimnikka?	시간이 있음니까?	Do you have time. 6-N
sikol	시골	country, rural area 15-D
sikye	시계	watch, clock 2-D
siktang	식당	restaurant, dining hall 3-D
siksa	식사	meal 12-D
achim siksa	아침 식사	breakfast 12-D
sikmo	식모	maid 16-D
Sikhako	시카고	Chicago 15
sillye	시례	rudeness 1
Sillye-hamnita.	시례를 나니다.	Excuse me (on leaving <u>or</u> on interrupting) 1

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

Sillye-hakessimnita.	실례 허가해 니다.	Excuse me (for what I'm going to do). 1
Sillye-hässimnita.	실례 허가해 니다.	Excuse me (for what I did). 1
silhëha-ta (Vt: silhëhë)	싫어하다: 싫어해	dislikes 4-N
sinæ	시내	downtown 4
sinmun	신문	newspaper 4-D
sinmunsa	신문사	newspaper publisher 11-D
sip (Num Ch)	십	ten 4
siph-ta (Vt: siphë)	싫다: 싫어	
Poko siphsimnita.	보고 싶습니다.	I want to see. 9
sicak	시작	beginning
sicak-ha-ta (Vi-Vt: sicak-hë)	시작하다: 시작해	begins 3-G
sicang	시장	market-place 3-D
sicang po-ta	시장 보다	goes food shopping 9-D
sichëng	시청	city hall 2
sihëm	시험	test, examination
sihëm (il) po-ta	시험(을) 보다	takes an examination 15-G
singkëp-ta (Vi: singkëwë)	싱겁다: 싱거워	is not salty, is bland 13
se(s) (Num K)	셋	three 5
seu-ta (Vt: sewë)	세우다: 세워	parks, stops, erects 11-D
sæ (D)	새	new 11-D
sæk	색	color 4
sængil	생일	birthday 13-G
sængkak	생각	idea, thought 9
sængkak-ha-ta (Vt-Vi: sængkak-hë)	생각하다: 생각해	thinks 15

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

sængmyəng	상명	life 16-N
sængsən	상선	fish 13
sænghwal	상화	life, livelihood 15-D
syassi	샤쓰	shirts 4-D
swi-ta (Vi: swiə)	쉬다: 쉬어	rests, takes a rest 6
swin (Num K)	쉰	fifty 5
swip-ta (Vi: swiwe)	쉽다: 쉬워	is easy 5-D
ssə-ta (Vi: ssa)	싸다: <u>ss</u> 싸	is cheap 4
ssau-ta (Vi: ssawə)	싸우다: <u>ss</u> 싸워	fights, quarells 14-G
Ssolyən	쏘련	Soviet Union 6-D
Ssolyəne	쏘련어	Russian 8-D
ssi-ta (Vt: ssə)	쓰다: 써	writes, uses 8-D
ssi-ta (Vi: ssə)	쓰다: 써	is bitter (in taste) 13
ssik (P)	씩	each 14
hana ssik	하나씩	one at a time, one each 14
ca! (Int)	자!	<u>c</u> Here!, Well! 5
ca-ta (Vi-Vt: ca)	자다: 자	sleeps 11-G
cak-ta (Vi: cake)	작다: 작어	is small 5
cakin kəs	작은거	a small one 5
Cakke malssim-hasipsiyo.	작게 말씀 하십시오.	Please speak softly. 16-D
caknyən	작년	last year 6-D
catongcha	자동차	automobile 7-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

cal (Ad)	잘	well 1
cala-ta (Vi: cala)	자라다: 자라	grows up 14-D
calang	자랑	boasting
calang-ha-ta (Vt: calang-hæ)	자랑하다: 자랑해	is proud of (something) 18-G
cali	자리	seat 11-D
il cali	이 자리	job 16-D
cam	잠	sleep
Cam i omnita.	잠이 옵니다.	I'm sleepy. ('Sleep comes.') 13
(Cam il) camnita.	잠을 잡니다.	[I] 'm sleeping. 13
camkan (Ad)	잠깐	for a moment 2
Camkan man kitalise yo.	잠깐만 기다리세요.	Just a minute. 16
can (C)	잔	cup of
khəphi han can	커피 한 잔	a cup of coffee 5-G
capsusi-ta (Vt: capsusyə)	접수하다: 접수서	eats (honored) 12 (see <u>mak-ta</u>)
capci	잡지	magazine 4-D
cacənkə	자전거	bicycle 16-D
cacu (Ad)	자주	frequently, often 9-D
əlma na cacu	얼마나 자주	how often 9-D
cang (C)	장	sheet of, piece of 5
swin cang	쉰 장	50 sheets 5
cang	장	(soy) sauce 13 (see <u>kancang</u>)
cangin	장인	father-in-law ('wife's father') 14-D
cangkun	장군	general (of armed forces) 16-D
cangkap	장갑	gloves 16-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

cangkwan	장관	minister (of government) 16-D
cangma (chəl)	장마(철)	rainy season 18
cangmo	장모	mother-in-law ('wife's mother) 14-D
cə	저	I (polite) 1
cə e <u>or</u> ce	저의, 제	my 1
cə (D)	저	that 2
cə kənmul	저 건물	that building (over there) 2
cə(h)i	저희	we (polite) 17-G
cək (DN)	적	
Məkə pon cək i issimnikka?	먹어 본 적이 있읍 니?/가?	Have you ever eaten? 13
cək-ta (Vi: cəkə)	적다: 적어	is little 5-N
cək-ta (Vt: cəkə) Cəkə tuəssimnita.	적다: 적어 적어 두었읍 니다.	writes down, jots down [I] wrote it down (for later use). 16
cəki	저기	there, that place 2
cəki e	저기에	over there, at that place 2
cələh-ta (Vi: cələ)	저렇다: 저태	is like that
cələn kəs	저런 것	that kind of thing 18-D
cələhke (Ad)	저렇게	that way, like that 18-N
cə(l)m-ta (Vi: cəlmə)	젊다: 젊어	is young, is youthful 14-N
cəmsim	점심	lunch 12
cəmcəm (Ad)	점점	gradually 18
cən	전	before
yətel-si o pun cən	여덟 시 오분 전	five minutes to eight 6
cən e	전에	previously 7
Səul e oki cən e	서울에 오기 전에	before coming to Seoul, before [I] came to Seoul 15

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

cənyək	저녁	evening 4-D
onil cənyək	오늘 저녁	this evening 4-D
cənyək (siksa)	저녁 식사	supper 12-D
cənpo	전보	telegram, cable 13-D
cəncha	전차	streetcar 7-G
cənha-ta (Vt: cənhæ)	전하다: 전해	delivers 16
cənhal mal(ssim)	전화를 말(씀)	message (to leave) 16
cənhwa	전화	telephone 13-D
cənhwa-ha-ta (cənhwa-hæ)	전화하다: 전화해	telephones 16
cənhwa (lil) kel-ta	전화를 걸다	makes a telephone call 16
cənhwa pənho chæk	전화 번호 채	telephone book 16
cəs kalak	젓가락	chopsticks 13
Cəng	정	Chung (family name) 1-D
cəngwen	정원	the yard, garden 16-D
cəngkecang	정거장	station, railroad station 3
cəngpu	정부	government 8-D
cəngmal (Ad)	정말	certainly 18
cəngmal	정말	truth 18
Cəngmal imnikka?	정말인가니?	Are you sure?, Is it true? 18-N
cəngchika	정치가	politician 18-D
cəphanso	재판소	(law) court 10-D
coyonghi (Ad)	조용히	quietly 16-D
cokim (Ad)	조금	a little 8 (see <u>com</u>)
cokha	조카	nephew 14-D
cokha ttal	조카딸	niece 14-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

colep	졸업	graduation
colep-ha-ta (colep-hæ)	졸업하다: 졸업해	graduates (from) 14
com (Ad)	좀	a little 2
cop-ta (Vi: copa)	좁다: 좁아	is narrow 5-D
cocongsa	조종사	pilot 16-G
coh-ta (Vi: coha)	좋다: 좋아	is good, is nice 4
cohaha-ta (Vt: cohahæ)	좋아하다: 좋아해	prefers, likes 4
congi	종이	paper 5
Cu	주	State (U.S.) 15
cu-ta (Vt: cuə)	주다: 주어	gives 4
Cusipsiyo.	주십시오.	Please give [me]. 4
Ka cusipsiyo.	가 주십시오.	Please go (for me). 11
cuil	주일	week 6
cuin	주인	master, owner, my husband
uli cuin	우리 주인	my husband ('our master') 14-D
cuk-ta (Vi: cukə)	죽다: 죽어	dies 11-G
culo (Ad)	주로	mainly, mostly 8
cumal	주말	weekend 12-D
cumun	주문	order (of goods, food, etc) 1 13-D
cunpi	준비	preparation 15-G
cunpi-ha-ta (cunpi-hæ)	준비하다: 준비해	prepares for 17-G
cuso	주소	(one's) address 16-D
cuchacang	주차장	parking lot 16-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

cung (PN)	중	among, during 10
ki (kəs tɪl) cung ese	그(거드) 중에서	among them 10
cungang	중앙	center, central 11
cungyoha-ta (Vi: cungyohæ)	중요하다: 중요해	is important 18
Cungkuk	중국	China 1-G
Cungkuk mal	중국 말	Chinese (language) 1-G
Cungkuk salam	중국 사람	Chinese (man)
Cungkukə	중국어	Chinese (language) 8-D
cungtæha-ta (Vi: cungtæhæ)	중대하다: 중대해	is important 18
cunghakkyo	중학교	junior high school ('middle school') 10-D
ci (DN)	지	
əti e issnin ci asimnikka?	어디에 있는지 아니니? ʃiŋŋi?	Do you know where [it] is? 13
Kukmusəng e tile on ci,	국무성에 들어온지	since I joined the State Department, 15
ci-ta	지다	
chuwə ci-ta (chuwə cə)	추워 지다: 추워져	gets colder 18
cikap	지갑	wallet 16-D
cikəp	직업	occupation, profession 18-D
cikim	지금	now, present 5
cikcang	직장	place of work 18-D
cikkong	직공	factory worker, technician 18-D
cilki-ta (Vi: cilkiə)	질기다: 질기어	is tough 13
cilrun	질문	question(iars) 13-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

cina-ta (Vi: cina)	지나다: 지나	passes by, gets along
Yocim ettehe cinasimnikka?	요즘 어때가지나 십니까?	How are you getting along these days? 1
cinan	지난	last, past
cinan sahil	지난 사흘	last three days 6
cito	지도	map 2-D
cip	집	house, home 2-D
ce ka	제가	I (polite subject) 17-G
ceil (Ad)	제일	most, best, No. 1 10-N
Ceil phyəllihamnita.	제일 편리합니다.	[It]'s most convenient. 10
cæmi	재미	fun, interest 1
Sənsæng in cæmi ettəhsimnikka?	선생은 재미 어때습니까?	And how are YOU doing? 1
Cæmi (ka) issimnita.	재미(가) 있읍니다.	[It]'s interesting. 8
Ceimsi	제임스	James 1
cca-ta (Vt: cca)	짠다: 짠	is salty 13
ccali (PN)	짜리	worth, value 5
o-sip Wən ccali	오십 원짜리	50 Won worth, W50 bill 5
ccalp-ta (Vi: ccalpe)	짧다: 짧아	is short (in length) 10-D
ccok (PN)	쪽	side, direction 2
wen ccok	왼쪽	the left (side) 2
i ccok	이쪽	this way 2-D
Sichæng ccok ilo	시청쪽으로	in the direction of the City Hall 2-D
ccim (PN)	쯤	around, about
tasəs si ccim	다섯 시쯤	around 5 o'clock 6
ccæ (PN)	째	
tu pən ccæ	두 번째	the second time 7

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

ccæm	찻æ	jam 13-D
	<u>ch</u>	
cha	차	car 4-N
cha	차	tea 12-D
hongcha	홍차	black tea 10-G
cha-ta (Vi: cha)	차다: 차	is cold
chan mul	찬물	cold water 12-D
chako	차고	garage 16-D
cham (Ad)	참	really, very 9
Cham (Int)	참	By the way, Oh! 9-N
chac-ta (Vt: chace)	찾다: 찾어	looks for, seeks 3
eti lîl chac(s)imnikka?	어디를 찾습니까?	What (place) are you looking for? 3
chacha (Ad)	차차	gradually 18
chang (mun)	창(문)	window 11-D
chæ	처	my wife 14-D
chælm	처음	first, the first time 1
chælm ilo	처음으로	for the first time 7-N
chæl	절	season 18
chælæm (P)	처럼	
Nyuyok chælæm	뉴욕처럼	like (or just as) New York 18
chæn (Num Ch)	천	thousand 4
chænam	처남	brother-in-law ('wife's brother') 14-D
chænyæ	처녀	maiden, single woman, spinster 14-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

chənchənhi (Ad)	천천히	slowly 11-D
chenman	천만	ten-million 1
chenman e	천만에	of ten-million
Chənman e malssim i'mnita.	천만에 말씀입니다.	You're welcome. 1
chet (D)	첫	first 7 (see <u>chəim</u>)
chet ccə	첫째	first, the first 7
chet pen ccə	첫 번째	the first, the first time 7
chəce	처제	wife's younger sister 14-D
chəhyəng	처형	wife's older sister 14-D
chiəta po-ta (Vt: chiəta pwa)	쳐다 보다: 쳐다 봐	looks up to, beholds 12-G
cho	초	vinegar 13
chon	촌	village, rural area 15-D
chongcang	총장	president (of university) 16-D
chotə	초대	invitation 13-D
chongkak	총각	bachelor, unmarried man 14-G
chulipku	출입구	exit-entrance 16-D
chulku	출구	exit 16-D
chum	춤	dancing
chum (il) chu-ta (chum (il) chwə)	춤을 춘다: 춤을 쳐	dances 9-D
chup-ta (Vi: chwə)	춥다: 추워	is cold 18
chungpun	충분	sufficiency
chungpun-ha-ta (chungpun-hə)	충분하다: 충분해	is sufficient, is enough 13
chil (Num Ch)	칠	seven 4

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

chinku	친구	friend 3
chinchak	친척	relatives 14-D
chæk	책	book 1-G
chækpang	책방	book store 4
chæksang	책상	table, desk 2-D
Chwe	최	Choe (family name) 1-D

ha-ta (Vt: <u>hæ</u> or <u>hayə</u>)	<u>하-</u> 타: <u>하-</u> 여	does 1
Muəs (il) hasimnikka?	무 어스 <u>하-</u> 십니 <u>까</u> ?	What do you do (sir)? 1
haya(h)-ta (Vi: <u>hayə</u>)	<u>하-</u> 야타: <u>하-</u> 여	is white 4-N
hayan sæk	<u>하-</u> 야 <u>색</u>	white color 4-D
hako (P)	<u>하-</u> 고	with, and 9
na hako	나 <u>하-</u> 고	with me 9
chæk hako yənphil	책 <u>하-</u> 고 <u>연필</u>	book and pencil 9-G
hakki	<u>학-</u> 기	semester 10-D
hakkyo	<u>학-</u> 교	school 2
haknyən	<u>학-</u> 년	grade (school year), grader
haksæng	<u>학-</u> 생	student 1
hakca	<u>학-</u> 자	scholar 8-D
hakcang	<u>학-</u> 장	dean (of college) 16-D
halapəci	<u>하-</u> 라비치	grandfather 13-G
halu	<u>하-</u> 루	one day, the 1st day of the month 6
halməni	<u>하-</u> 마니	grandmother 14-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

han (D)	한	approximately 8
han sam nyən	한 삼 년	about 3 years 8
han(a) (Num K)	하나	one 4
hanil	하늘	heaven, sky 18
Hansik	한식	Korean food 12
Hankuk	한국	Korea 1
Hankuk mal	한국 말	Korean (language) 1
Hankuk salam	한국 사람	(a) Korean 1-G
Hankuk-e	한국 어	Korean 8-D
hanthe (P)	한테	to 11-G (see <u>eke</u>)
hapsing	hapsing	jitney 7-G
Hapcungkuk	합중국	United States 18-D
hangsang (Ad)	항상	all the time 9-N
hangku	항구	harbor 18-D
hangsi (Ad)	항시	always 9-N
heli	허리	waist 13-D
hok (Ad)	혹	by any chance 16
hoksi (Ad)	혹시	by any chance 16
hothel	호텔	hotel 2-D
honca	혼자	single, alone 14
Hocu	호주	Australia 6-D
hongcha	홍차	(black) tea 10-G
hu	후	the later time
hu e	후에	later, after a while 7

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

tæhak ɨl colep-han hu e	대학을 졸업한 후에	after graduation from the college 15
hullyungha-ta (Vi: hullyunghæ)	훌륭하다: 훌륭해	is excellent, is outstanding 13
huchu	후추	black pepper 13
huchu kalu	후추 가루	black pepper (power) 13
hili-ta (Vi: hiliə)	흐리다: 흐리어	is cloudy 18
hilkie po-ta (Vt: hilkie pwa)	흘겨 보다: 흘겨 봐	steers 12-G
hi-ta (Vi: hiə)	희다: 희어	is whitish 4-D
hæ	해	year, sun 6-D
musin hæ	무슨 해	what year 6-D
hæwe	해외	overseas, abroad 15-D
hyənkim	현금	cash 7-G
hyənkim ɨlo	현금으로	in cash 7-D
hyuka	휴가	vacation 6
Hyuka lɨl patəssimnita.	휴가를 밟았을 니다.	[I] took a vacation. 6
hyəng	형	older brother
nyəng nim	형님	older brother (honored) 14
hyəngce	형제	siblings, brothers and sisters 14
Hwayoil	화요일	Tuesday 6-D
Hwalan	화란	Holland 6-D
hwesa	회사	company, firm 8

Index to the Grammar Notes

References are to Unit and Grammar Note: for example, 3.1. refers to Unit 3, Grammar Note 1. The alphabetical order of the Index follows that of Korean-English Glossary. The letters which are not used in the Glossary are inserted as follows: D after T; F and Q after P; V after H.

- Action Verbs 3.1.
- Adverbial Phrases 6.4.
- Adverbs 5.3.
- an (negative) 'not' 3.4.
- Auxiliary Verb 7.6.
- il/il (Particle) 1.2.
- ile 'in order to-' 6.3. (See -le.)
- ilo (Particle) 2.2. (See lo/ilo.)
- ilyeko 7.3.
- ilyemyen 12.2.
- in/nin (Particle) 1.2.
- ini kka 'because-', 'since-' 12.1. (See -ni kka.)
- i/ka (Particle) 2.2.
- ina (Particle) 10.4. (See na.)
- Indirect Quotative Particle 17.3.
- Infinitive 4.1.
- Infinitive + iss- 14.5.
- Infinitive + to 'even though-', 'although-' 10.2.
- Infinitive + tu- (or noh-) 16.2.
- Infinitive + po- 12.3.
- Infinitive + pon il i iss- 13.2.
 cək əps-
- Infinitive + se 14.2.
- Infinitive + ci- 18.2.
- Infinitive + cu- 11.2.
- Interrogative + -n/in/nin ci 13.3.
- Intransitive Verbs 3.1.
- itinci (Particle) 12.4. (See tinci.)
- ilato (Particle) 18.5. (See lato.)
- imnita vs. issimnita 2.5.
- e (Particle) 'of', 'is' 1.2.
- e (Particle) 'at', 'on', 'in' 2.2.
- e (Particle) 'to' 3.6.
- Endings 2.1. (See Verb-Endings.)
- ese (Particle) 'from', 'at', 'in', 'on' 3.5.
- ya (Particle) 11.3.
- Infinitive + ya + ha- 'has to', 'must-' 11.3.a.
- Infinitive + ya 'only when (or if)-, 'must-' to-' 11.3.b.
- yo (Particle) 4.4.
- wa/kwa (Particle) 4.4.
- ka (Particle) 2.2. (See i/ka.)
- kathi (Particle) 18.4.
- kacang 'the most-' 10.3.
- ko 9.1.
- ko (Particle) 17.3. (See lako.)
- kun yo 18.1. (See -ninkun yo.)
- ki 8.1.
- ki cən e 'before doing-' 15.2.
- ke 16.3.
- kwa (Particle) 4.4. (See wa/kwa.)
- kkaci (Particle) 'to', 'as far as', 'until', 'till', 'by' 7.5.
- taim 15.1. (See hu.)
- to (Particle) 'also, too' 4.3.
- tinci/itinci (Particle) 12.4.
- Time Counters: nyən 'year', hæ 'year', -wel 'month', tal 'month', cuil

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

- 'week', il 'day', nal 'day', -si
'o'clock', sikan 'hour', pun
'minute' 6.1.
- ttæ 'time', 'occasion', 'when' 14.1.
- Transitive Verbs 3.1.
- Dependent Nouns 13.4.
- Description Verbs 3.1.
- Determinatives 2.3.
- Direct Quotative Particle 17.3.
- lako/ko (Particle) 17.3.
- lato/ilato (Particle) 18.5.
- lll (Particle) 1.2. (See ll/lil.)
- l/il kæs i- 11.5.
- l/il kyehwek i- 'be planning to-' 18.6.
- l/il kka yo? 'Shall I-?', 'Shall we-?',
'Will [it] - (do you think)?' 5.2.
- l/il su əps- 'cannot-', 'be unable
to-' 8.3.
- l/il su iss- 'can-', 'be able to-' 8.3.
- l/il + Nominal 9.3.
- lo/lo (Particle) 'to', 'toward' 2.2.
- lo/lo (Particle) 'as', 'in the capacity'
'by means of' 7.2.
- lyəko 7.3. (See illyəko.)
- lyəmyən 12.2. (See illyəmyən.)
- man (Particle) 'only', 'just' 12.5.
- mata (Particle) 8.2.
- myən/imyən 'if-' 10.1.
- na/ina '-but' 13.1.
- na/ina (Particle) 10.4.
- n/in/nin ka yo? 7.3.
- n/in/nin + kæs 11.4.
- n/in + il (or cek) i + iss- (or əps-)
'has (or has not), sometime up to
present, done so-and-so' 13.2.
- n/in/nin kæs kath- 18.3.
- n/in/nin te 16.1.
- n/in/nin + Noun 5.1.
- n/in/nin ci 16.4.
- n/in ci + period of time + twe- (or
cina-) 'It has been- (period of
time) since-' 15.3.
- n hu e 'after doing-' 15.1.
- nin (Particle) 1.2. (See in/nin.)
- nin + tongan 'while doing so-and-
so' 15.4.
- ninkun/kun yo 18.2.
- ni/ini kka 'since-', 'because-'
12.1.
- Nouns 1.3.
- Noun Phrases 1.3.
- Nominal (Expression) 1.3.
- Nominal + e tæhæ se 'concerning
Nominal', 'about Nominal' 15.5.
- Nominal + we (or pakk) e 14.3.
- Numerical Phrases 7.1.
- Numerals 4.6.
- Past Tenses: Simple Past and Remote
Past 4.2.
- Past Tense Suffixes 4.2.
- Particles 1.2.
- Personal Nouns in Polite and Plain
Speeches 17.2.
- Personal Nominal + eke (or hanthe)
11.2.
- Polite Speech: Formal 2.1.; Informal
4.1.
- Possessive Particle 1.2. (See e.)
- Post-Nouns 2.4.
- pota (Particle) 'than', 'more than'
8.4.
- Plain Speech: Formal and Informal
17.1.
- Present Noun-Modifier Ending 5.1.
- Present Noun-Modifier Words 9.3.
- Prospective Modifier Ending 9.3.
- Future Tense in Korean 3.2.
- Future Tense Suffix 3.2.

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

- Quotatives 17.3.
Suffixes 3.2. (See Verb Suffixes.)
ssik 'each', 'at one time' 14.4.
cən 'before', 'the previous time' 15.2.
-ci man '—but' 9.2.
-ci + anhsimnita 4.5.
-ci + ma(l) 11.1.
-ci mot ha- 'cannot—', 'is not—' 8.3.
-ci yo? 6.2.
ceil (or kacang) 'the most—' 10.3.
Copula 1.1.
Counter 4.6.
Counters: cang, can, kwən, kə, pun, mali,
pel, tæ 5.4.
chələm (Particle) 18.4.
hako (Particle) 9.4.
Honorifics 3.3. 11.6.
Honorific Suffix 3.3.
hu (or taim) 'after', 'the later time',
time!, 'next' 15.1.
Verbals 1.1.
Verb-Endings 2.1.
Verbs: Action vs. Description and
Intransitive vs. Transitive 3.1.
Verb Phrases 7.6.
Verb-Stems 2.1.
Verb Suffixes 3.2.